JVC

ENGLISH

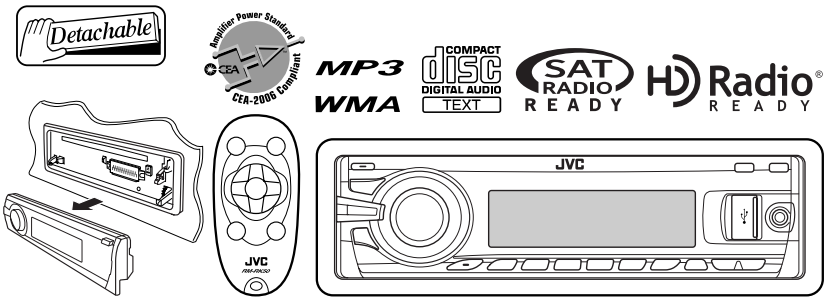
ESPAÑOL

FRANÇAIS

CD RECEIVER KD-APD89/KD-PDR80

RECEPTOR CON CD KD-APD89/KD-PDR80

RÉCEPTEUR CD KD-APD89/KD-PDR80



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 5.
Para cancelar la demostración en pantalla, consulte la página 5.
Pour annuler la démonstration des affichages, référez-vous à la page 5.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Para la instalación y las conexiones, refiérase al manual separado.
Pour l'installation et les raccordements, se référer au manuel séparé.

For customer Use:
Enter below the Model No. and Serial No. which are located on the top or bottom of the cabinet. Retain this information for future reference.

Model No. _____

Serial No. _____

INSTRUCTIONS

MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES

MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS

GET0519-001A
[J]

ENGLISH

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

INFORMATION (For U.S.A.)

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

– Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
– Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
– Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
– Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Caution:

Changes or modifications not approved by JVC could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** (For U.S.A.) Visible and/or invisible class II laser radiation when open. Do not stare into beam.
   (For Canada) Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

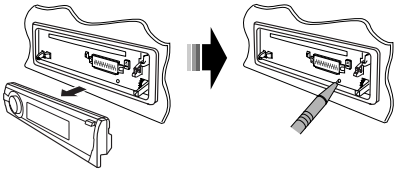
CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス 1M レーザー放射が出ます。光学装置で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS II LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG)

[European Union only]

KD-APD89 is equipped with the steering wheel remote control function.

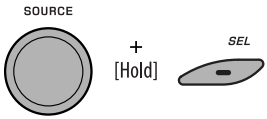
- See the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume) for connection.

How to reset your unit

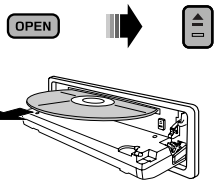


- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased (except the registered Bluetooth device, see pages 12 and 13).*

How to forcibly eject a disc



"Please Eject" appears on the display.



- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*
- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTIONS

Preparation 5

OPERATIONS

Basic operations 6
- Using the control panel 6
- Using the remote controller (RM-RK50) 7

Listening to the radio 8
Disc operations 10
Listening to the USB device 11

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Using the Bluetooth® devices 12
- Using the Bluetooth cellular phone 14
- Using the Bluetooth audio player 16

Listening to the HD Radio™ Broadcast 17
Listening to the CD changer 18
Listening to the satellite radio 19
Listening to the iPod 22
Listening to the other external components 24

SETTINGS

Selecting a preset sound mode 25
General settings—PSM 27
Bluetooth settings 32
Title assignment 33

REFERENCES

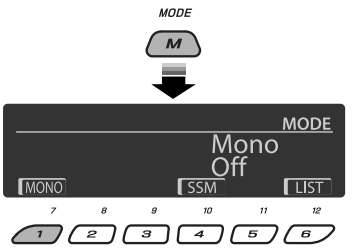
More about this unit 34
Troubleshooting 39
Maintenance 45
Specifications 46

ENGLISH

How to use the M MODE and SEL buttons

If you use M MODE or SEL (select), the display and some controls (such as the number buttons, ⏮ ⌄/⏭ ⌃ buttons, ▲/▼ buttons, and the control dial) enter the corresponding control mode.

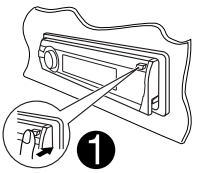
Ex.: When you press number button 1 after pressing M MODE, to operate the FM tuner.



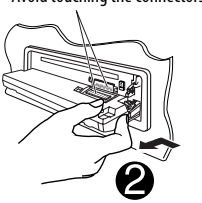
To use these controls for original functions, press M MODE again.

- However, pressing SEL makes the unit enters a different mode.
- Waiting for about 15 seconds (or 30 seconds for Bluetooth sources) without pressing any of these buttons will automatically cancels the control.

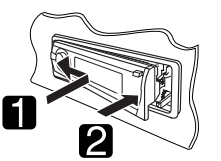
Detaching the control panel



Avoid touching the connectors.



Attaching the control panel



Caution:

If the temperature inside the car is below 0°C (32°F), the movement of animation and text scroll will be halted on the display to prevent the display from being blurred. L.TEMP appears on the display.
When the temperature increases, and the operating temperature is resumed, these functions will start working again.

Warning:

If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.

Caution on volume setting:

Digital devices (CD/USB) produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing these digital sources to avoid damaging the speakers by sudden increase of the output level.

Preparation

Cancel the display demonstration and set the clock

- See also pages 27 and 28.

1	⏻/I/ATT	**Turn on the power.**
2	SEL [Hold]	**Enter the PSM settings.**
3	SOURCE [Turn]	**Cancel the display demonstrations** Select "Demo," then "Off." **Set the clock** Select "Clock Hr" (hour), then adjust the hour. Select "Clock Min" (minute), then adjust the minute. Select "24H/12H," then "24Hours" or "12Hours."
4	SEL	**Finish the procedure.**

Changing the display information and pattern

When the power is turned off: Check the current clock time

DISP

Ex.: When tuner is selected as the source

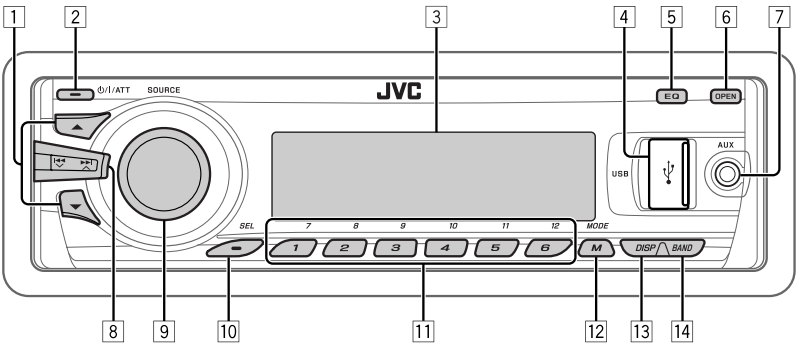
Source operation display

- If a station has been assigned a title, station title appears after about 5 seconds.
- To assign a title to a station, see page 33.

Audio level meter display
(see "LevelMeter" on page 27)

Basic operations

Using the control panel



1 • **TUNER:** Select preset station.
• **HD RADIO:** Select channel.
• **SIRIUS/XM:** Select category.
• **CD/USB/CD-CH:** Select folder.
• **USB-iPod:** Enter the main menu [Hold].
• **iPod:** Enter the main menu/Pause playback/Confirm selection.
• **BT-PHONE/BT-AUDIO:** Select a registered device.

2 • Turn on the power.
• Turn off the power [Hold].
• Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).

3 Display window

4 USB (Universal Serial Bus) input jack

5 Select the sound mode.

6 Flip down the control panel.
• To eject the disc, flip down the control panel then press ▲ on the unit.

7 AUX (auxiliary) input jack

8 • **TUNER/HD RADIO/SIRIUS/XM:** Search for station/channel.
• **CD/USB/CD-CH/USB-iPod/iPod:** Select track.
• **BT-AUDIO:** Reverse skip/forward skip.

9 • Volume control [Turn].
• Select the source [Press]*1.
TUNER*2 → **SIRIUS***3**/XM***3 → **CD***3 → **USB***3 (or **USB-iPod**)*3 → **CD-CH***3**/iPod***3 (or **EXT IN**) → **BT-PHONE***3 → **BT-AUDIO***3 → **AUX IN** → (back to the beginning)

10 • Select/adjust the sound mode.
• Enter the PSM settings [Hold].

11 • **TUNER/SIRIUS/XM:** Select preset station/channel.
• **CD/USB/CD-CH:** Select folder/track/disc (for CD changer).
• **USB-iPod:** Select preset top menu items.
• **BT-PHONE:** Dial preset phone number*4.

12 • Enter functions mode.
• **BT-PHONE:** Activate Voice Dialing [Hold].

13 Change the display information and pattern.

14 • **TUNER:** Select the bands.
• **USB-iPod:** Start/pause playback.
• **BT-AUDIO:** Start/pause playback.

*1 *Holding SOURCE will enter the Bluetooth menu.*

*2 *When the HD Radio tuner box is connected, the built-in tuner of this unit will be disable. To listen to the HD Radio broadcast, refer to "Listening to the radio" on page 8. For more features, see page 17.*

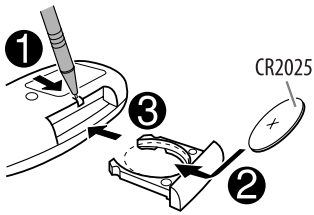
*3 *You cannot select these sources if they are not ready or not connected.*

*4 *For storing preset phone number, see page 16.*

Using the remote controller (RM-RK50)

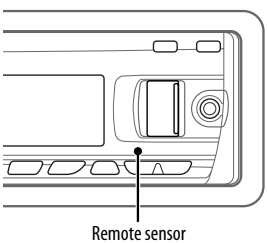
ENGLISH

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



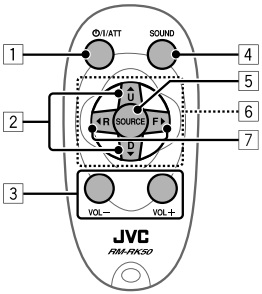
Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).



Warning (to prevent accidents and damage):

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent.
- Do not leave the remote controller in a place (such as dashboards) exposed to direct sunlight for a long time.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
- Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.



For USA-California Only:
This product contains a CR Coin Cell Lithium Battery which contains Perchlorate Material—special handling may apply.
See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate

1 • Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
  • Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 • Changes the FM/AM bands with ▲ U.
  • Changes the preset stations with D ▼.
  • Changes the folder of the MP3/WMA/WAV.
  • While playing an MP3 disc on an MP3-compatible CD changer:
    – Changes the disc if pressed briefly.
    – Changes the folder if pressed and held.
  • While listening to the satellite (SIRIUS or XM) radio:
    – Changes the categories.
  • While listening to an Apple iPod:

Connected to KS-PD100:

– Pauses or resumes playback with D ▼.
– Enters the main menu with ▲ U. (Now ▲ U/D ▼/◄ R/F ► work as the menu selecting buttons.)*

* ▲ U : *Returns to the previous menu.*
D ▼ : *Confirms the selection.*

Connected to the USB input jack:

– Enter the main menu if pressed and held.
– Select the desired menu if pressed briefly.
– Fast skip in every layer of the main menu if pressed and held.

Continued on the next page

3 Adjusts the volume level.
4 Selects the sound mode (iEQ: intelligent equalizer).
5 Selects the source.
6 For Bluetooth cellular phone:
– Answers calls if pressed briefly.
– Rejects calls if pressed and held.
7 • Searches for stations if pressed briefly.
• Fast-forwards or reverses the track if pressed and held.
• Changes the tracks if pressed briefly.
• While listening to the satellite (SIRIUS or XM) radio:
– Changes the channels if pressed briefly.
– Changes the channels rapidly if pressed and held.
• While listening to an iPod (in menu selecting mode):
Connected to KS-PD100:
– Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press D ▼ to confirm the selection.)
– Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.
Connected to the USB input jack:
– Start play back the selected folder directly if pressed and held.
• Reverse skip/forward skip for Bluetooth audio.

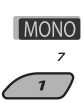
Listening to the radio

1		**Select "TUNER."**
2		**Select the bands.** FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM
3		**Search for a station to listen—Auto Search.** Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" lights up on the display, then press it repeatedly. • When receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength, ST lights up on the display.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1

2



Mono Off → Mono On

Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.
• MO lights up on the display.

3 Exit from the setting.

FM station automatic presetting —SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

You can preset up to six stations for each band.

1 While listening to a station...

MODE

M

2

SSM

10

4

3

SSM

10

4

Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the selected FM band.

- If an HD Radio tuner box is connected, you can also search and store the AM station automatically.

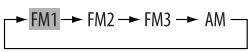
Manual presetting

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

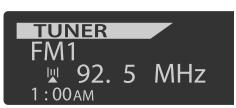
Using the number buttons

1

BAND



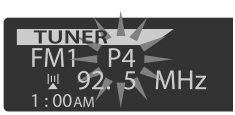
2



3

10

4 [Hold]



Preset number flashes for a while.

Using the Preset Station list

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Follow steps 1 and 2 of "Using the number buttons" on the left column.

- By holding ▲ / ▼, the Preset Station List will also appear (go to step **4**).

2

MODE

M

3 Display the Preset Station List.

LIST

12

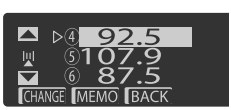
6

ENTER

7

1

4 Select the preset number you want to store into.



- You can move to the lists of the other FM bands by pressing number button 5 ( ) or 6 ( ) repeatedly.

5 Store the station.

MEMO

8

2

Continued on the next page

ENGLISH

Listening to the preset station on the Preset Station List

1 Display the Preset Station List, then select the preset station you want to listen to.

2 Change to the selected station.

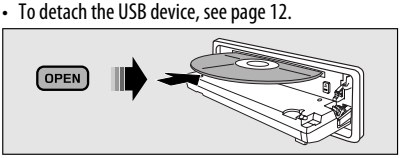
Disc operations

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

Caution:

Make sure to detach the USB device before opening the control panel, as it might block the opening mechanism.

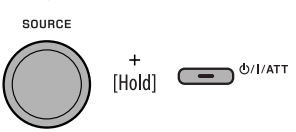
- To detach the USB device, see page 12.



To stop play and eject the disc

- Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.

Prohibiting disc ejection



To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure.

Pressing (or holding) the following buttons allows you to...

	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track
*1	MP3/WMA: Select folder
(Number buttons)*2	Locate particular folder*3 (for MP3/WMA disc) or track directly

*1 *By holding either one of the buttons, you can display the Folder List (see page 11).*

*2 *Press to select number 1 to 6; hold to select number 7 to 12.*

*3 *It is required that folders be assigned with 2-digit numbers at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.*

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks MP3/WMA: Within the same folder
	Repeat Track: Repeat current track **Repeat Folder:** MP3/WMA: Repeat current folder
	Random Folder: MP3/WMA: Randomly play all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Random Disc:** Randomly play all tracks

- You can also cancel the playback mode by selecting "**Off**" or press number button 4 (OFF).

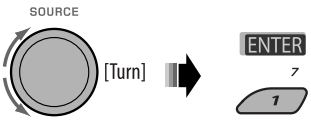
Selecting a folder/track on the list (only for MP3/WMA file)

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 MODE

2 Select "LIST."

3 Select the list type.



Folder ↔ File

4 Select an item.

Ex.: When "File" is selected in step **3**

- You can move to the other lists by pressing number button 5 ( ) or 6 ( ) repeatedly.

5 Change to the selected item.

Ⓐ If File List is selected

The list disappears and playback starts.

Ⓑ If Folder List is selected

- If the current folder is selected, File List appears, then repeat steps **4** and **5** Ⓐ to start playback.
- If another folder is selected, playback starts from the 1st file of the selected folder.

Listening to the USB device

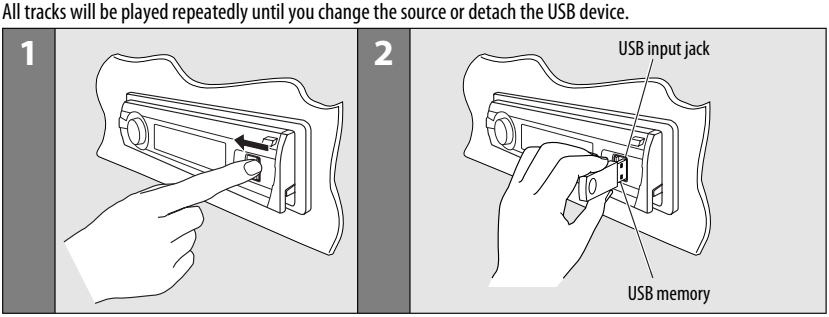
You can connect a USB mass storage class device such as a USB memory, Digital Audio Player*, portable HDD, etc. to the unit.

- You can also connect an Apple iPod to the USB input jack. For details of the operations, see pages 22 and 23.

This unit can play MP3/WMA/WMA-DRM10*/WAV tracks stored in a USB device.

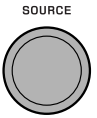
* *You can connect both MTP (Media Transfer Protocol) devices and USB mass storage class devices. See also page 36.*

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or detach the USB device.



Continued on the next page

If a USB device has been attached...



Playback starts from where it has been stopped previously.
- If a different USB device is currently attached, playback starts from the beginning.

To stop play and detach the USB device

Straightly pull it out from the unit.
- Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.

You can operate the USB device in the same way you operate the files on a disc. (See pages 10 and 11.)
- You can listen to WAV files by following the MP3/WMA files operations listed on pages 10 and 11.

Cautions:

- Avoid using the USB device if it might hinder your safety driving.
- Do not pull out and attach the USB device repeatedly while "Reading" is shown on the display.
- Do not start the car engine if a USB device is connected.
- This unit may not be able to play the files depending on the type of USB device.
- Operation and power supply may not work as intended for some USB devices.
- You cannot connect a computer to the USB input terminal of the unit.
- Make sure all important data has been backed up to avoid losing the data.
- Do not leave a USB device in the car, expose to direct sunlight, or high temperature to avoid deformation or cause damages to the device.
- Some USB devices may not work immediately after you turn on the power.
- For more details about USB operations, see pages 35 and 36.

Using the Bluetooth® devices

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the **Bluetooth Adapter** (KS-BTA200) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.
- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to check the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.
- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO").

Registering a Bluetooth device

Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in the Bluetooth menu to register and establish the connection with a device.
- Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO" as the source to operate the Bluetooth menu.

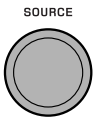
Open	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
Search	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the unit.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

Registering using "Open"

Preparation: Operate the device to turn on its Bluetooth function.

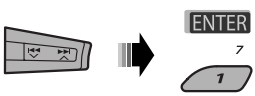
1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Select "New."

3 Enter setting menu.

4 Select "Open."



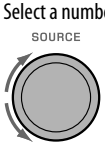
5 Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number) code to the unit.

- You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number). [Initial: 0000]
- To enter a PIN code less than 4-digit, firstly delete the initial PIN code (0000) by pressing number button 5 (CLEAR).

* *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*

1 Move to the next (or previous) number position.

2 Select a number or blank space.



[Turn]

3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you finish entering a PIN code.

4 Confirm the entry.

"Open..." flashes on the display.

6 Use the Bluetooth device to search and connect.

On the device to be connected, enter the same PIN code you have just entered for this unit.
"Connected (and device name)" appears on the display.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

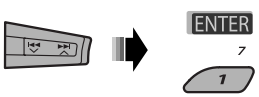
The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use "**Connect**" (or activate "**Auto Connect**") to connect the same device from next time on. (See the following and page 32.)

Connecting a device

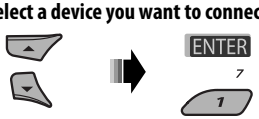
Perform steps **1** – **3** on the left column, then...

1

- **Select "Search" to search for available devices.**
  The unit searches and displays the list of the available devices.
  If no available device is detected, "Device Not Found" appears.
- **Select "Special" to connect a special device.**
  The unit displays the list of the preset devices.



2 Select a device you want to connect.



Continued on the next page

ENGLISH

3 • **For available devices...**

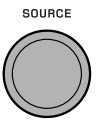
1 Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit.
Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code.

2 Use the Bluetooth device to connect.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

• **For special device...**
Use "Open" or "Search" to connect.

Connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device

1 **Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."**

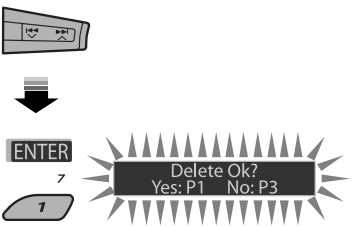


2 **Select a registered device you want to connect/disconnect/delete.**

3 **Enter setting menu.**

4 • **Select "Connect" or "Disconnect" to connect/disconnect the selected device.**

• **Select "Delete," then confirm the selection.**



Press number button 3 to select "No" or return to the previous screen.

You can set the unit to connect the Bluetooth device automatically when the unit is turned on. (See "**Auto Connect**" on page 32.)

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone

1		**Select "BT-PHONE."**
2		**Enter Bluetooth menu.**
3	—	**Establish the connection with a device, then make a call (or settings using the Bluetooth menu).**

When a call comes in....

The source is automatically changed to "BT-PHONE."

When "Auto Answer" is activated....

The unit answers the incoming calls automatically, see page 32.

- When "Auto Answer" is deactivated, press any button (except ⏻/ATT/control dial) to answer the incoming call.

To end the call

Hold any button (except ⏻/ATT/control dial).

- You can adjust the microphone volume level (see page 32).

When a text message comes in....

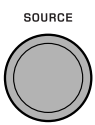
If the cellular phone is compatible with Text Message and "Message Info" is set to "Auto" (see page 32), the unit rings and "Received Message" appears on the display to inform you of the message arrival.

Making a call

You can make a call using one of the Dial Menu items.

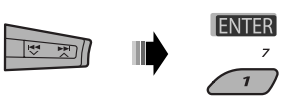
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Select "BT-PHONE."

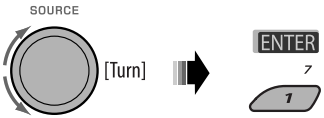


2 Enter setting menu.

3 Select "Dial Menu."



4 Select the method to make a call.



- **Redial***: Shows the list of the phone numbers you have dialed. Go to the following step.
- **Received***: Shows the list of the received calls. Go to the following step.
- **Phonebook***: Shows the phone book of the connected cellular phone. Go to the following step.
- **Missed***: Shows the list of the missed calls. Go to the following step.
- **Number**: Shows the phone number entry screen. See "How to enter phone number" on page 16.
- **Voice Dial** (Only accessible when the connected cellular phone has the voice recognition system): Speak the name (registered words) you want to call.

* **Displayed only when your cellular phone is equipped with these functions.**

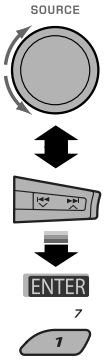
– If not displayed, try to transfer the phone book memory of the cellular phone to this unit. (Refer to the instruction manual supplied with your cellular phone.)

– With some cellular phones, the phone book memory is transferred automatically.

5 Select the name/phone number you want to call.

Continued on the next page

How to enter phone number



Using voice command

1 MODE / M — "Say..." appears on the display.

2 **Speak the name (registered words) you want to call.**

- You can also use voice command from the Dial Menu. Select "Voice Dial" from the Dial Menu.
- If your cellular phone does not support the voice recognition system, "Error" appears on the display.

Presetting the phone number

You can preset up to six phone numbers.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 **Display the phone number you want to preset by using one of the "Dial Menu" items.**

2 **Select a phone number.**

You can also enter a new phone number (see also "How to enter phone number" on the left column) to store.

3 **Select a preset number to store.**

[Hold]

To call a preset number

While in Bluetooth phone....

Using the Bluetooth audio player

- Operations and display indications differ depending on their availability on the connected audio player.

SOURCE	**Select "BT-AUDIO."** If playback does not start automatically, operate the Bluetooth audio player to start playback.

	Reverse skip/forward skip
BAND	Start/pause playback
MODE / M	Enter setting menu (Device list)

- Refer also to page 14 for connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device.

Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>.

Listening to the HD Radio™ Broadcast

Before operating, connect **HD Radio tuner box**, KT-HD300 (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

What is HD Radio Technology?

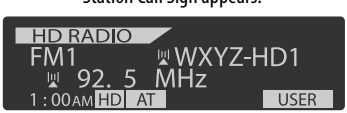
HD Radio Technology can deliver high-quality digital sound—AM digital will have FM-like quality (in stereo) and FM digital will have CD-like quality—with static-free and clear reception. Furthermore, stations can offer text and data, such as artist names and song titles.

- When the HD Radio tuner box is connected, it can also receive conventional analog broadcasts.
- Many HD Radio stations also offer more than one channel of programming. This service is called multicasting.
- To find HD Radio stations in your area, visit www.hdradio.com <http://www.hdradio.com/>.

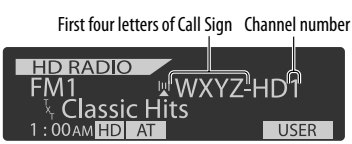
Refer also to pages 8 – 10 for basic radio operations.

When receiving an HD Radio station...

Station Call Sign appears.



When receiving HD Radio multicast channels...



Select your desired channel.

HD1 ⟷ HD2 ◄- - - ► HD8

Searching for HD Radio stations only

1 MODE

2

Changing HD Radio reception mode

While receiving an HD Radio broadcast, the unit tunes to digital or analog audio automatically due to the receiving condition.

1 While listening to an HD Radio station...

MODE

2 8

Auto → Digital → Analog
AT DIGI ANA

[Lights up] When holding the digital reception
[Flashes] When holding the analog reception

Auto: [Initial] Switch between digital and analog audio automatically

Digital: Tuning to digital audio only

Analog: Tuning to analog audio only

- If no sound can be heard from the selected setting, change the setting to "Analog" or "Digital."
- The setting automatically changes to "Auto" if you tuned in to or change to another station, or if you turned off the power.
- This setting cannot take effect for the conventional FM/AM stations.
- If the radio station forces the reception mode to digital or analog, the DIGI or ANA indicator lights up.

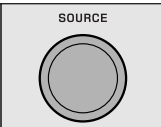
ENGLISH

Listening to the CD changer

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit. You can connect a CD changer to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

- You can only play conventional CDs (including CD Text) and MP3 discs.

Preparation: Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 29.

1		**Select "CD-CH."**
2		**Select a disc to start playing.** [Press] For selecting disc number 1 – 6. [Hold] For selecting disc number 7 – 12.

	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track
*	MP3: Select folders

* *By holding either one of the buttons, you can display the Disc List (see page 11).*

To select a disc/folder/track on the list

See "Selecting a folder/track on the list (only for MP3/WMA file)" on page 11.

Select "Disc" in step **3** to display the Disc List of the CD changer.

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks MP3: Within the same folder
RPT 8 	**Repeat Track:** Repeat current track **Repeat Folder:** MP3: Repeat all tracks of current folder **Repeat Disc:** Repeat all tracks of the current disc
RND 9 	**Random Folder:** MP3: Randomly play all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder **Random Disc:** Randomly play all tracks of current disc **Random All:** Randomly play all tracks of the discs in the magazine

- You can also cancel the playback mode by selecting "**Off**" or press number button 4 (OFF).

Listening to the satellite radio

Before operating, connect either one of the following (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- **JVC SIRIUS Satellite radio interface,** KS-SRA100, for listening to the SIRIUS Satellite radio.
- **JVC Smart Digital Adapter,** XMDJVC100, for listening to the XM Satellite radio.

GCI (Global Control Information) update

- If channels are updated after subscription, updating starts automatically.
  The following appears and no sound can be heard:
  – For SIRIUS Satellite radio: "Updating XX%* Completed"
  – For XM Satellite radio: "UPDATING"
- Update takes a few minutes to complete.
- During update, you cannot operate your satellite radio.

* *Changes every 20% of update is completion (ex. 20%, 40%, 60%)*

Activate your SIRIUS subscription after connection

1 ⏻/I/ATT

2 SOURCE → SIRIUS

SIRIUS Satellite radio starts updating all the SIRIUS channels.
Once completed, SIRIUS Satellite radio tunes in to the preset channel, CH184.

3 **Check your Sirius ID, see page 29.**

4 **Contact SIRIUS on the internet at <http://activate.siriusradio.com/> to activate your subscription, or you can call SIRIUS toll-free at 1-888-539-SIRIUS (7474).**
"Sub Updated Press Any Key" scrolls on the display once subscription has been completed.

Activate your XM subscription after connection

- Only Channel 0, 1, and 247 are available before activation.

1 ⏻/I/ATT

2 SOURCE → XM

XMDirect™ Universal Tuner Box starts updating all the XM channels. "Channel 1" is tuned in automatically.

3 **Check your XM Satellite radio ID labelled on the casing of the XMDirect™ Universal Tuner Box, or tune in to "Channel 0" (see page 20).**

4 **Contact XM Satellite radio on the internet at <http://xmradio.com/activation/> to activate your subscription, or you can call 1-800-XM-RADIO (1-800-967-2346).**
Once completed, the unit tunes in to one of the available channels (Channel 4 or higher).

Continued on the next page

1		**Select "SIRIUS" or "XM."**
2		**Select the bands.** SIRIUS: → SR1 → SR2 → SR3 → XM: → XM1 → XM2 → XM3 →
3		**Select a category.** SIRIUS: If you select "ALL," you can tune in to all the channels of all categories.
4		**Select a channel to listen.** • Holding the button changes the channels rapidly. • While searching, invalid and unsubscribed channels are skipped. XM: If you do not select a channel within 15 seconds, category selected in step **3** is canceled. You can select all channels of all categories now (including non-categorised channels).

Checking the XM Satellite radio ID

While selecting "XM1," "XM2," or "XM3," select "Channel 0."

The display alternately shows "RADIO ID" and the 8-digit (alphanumeric) ID number.

To cancel the ID number display, select any channel other than "Channel 0."

To change the display information while listening to a channel

Category name → Channel name → Artist/ composer* name → Song/program name → Audio level meter → (back to the beginning)

* *Only for SIRIUS Satellite radio.*

Storing channels in memory

You can preset six stations for each band.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.
- When ◄ / ► is shown on the display, you can move to the other lists by pressing number button 5 or 6 repeatedly.

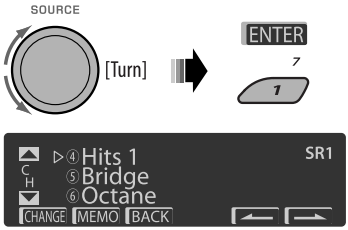
Ex.: Storing a SIRIUS channel into preset number 4 of the SR1 band.

1 **Tune in to a channel you want to listen to.**
- By holding BAND button, the Preset Channel List will appear (go to step **5**).

2

3 **Select "LIST."**

4 Select "Preset."



5 Select a preset number you want to store into.

6 Store the channel.

Listening to a user channel

1 Display the Preset Channel list, then select the preset number you want to listen to.

2 Change to the selected channel.

Selecting a category/channel on the list

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.
- When / is shown on the display, you can move to the other lists by pressing number button 5 or 6 repeatedly.

Ex.: When listening to the SIRIUS Satellite radio.

1 To select a category

1 Follow steps **2** to **4** of "Storing channels in memory" on page 20 and left column.
- In step **4**, select "Category."

The first channel of the selected category is tuned in.
- By holding ▲ / ▼, you can also show the Category List while listening to a channel.

2 Select a category.

To select a channel

1 Follow steps **2** to **4** of "Storing channels in memory" on page 20 and left column.
- In step **4**, select "Channel."

2 Select a channel.

2 Change to the selected item.

Listening to the iPod

You can play songs in an Apple iPod by:

– Connecting it with the USB cable supplied with your iPod to the USB input jack on the control panel.
– Connecting the Interface adapter for iPod, KS-PD100 (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

Preparation: Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 29.

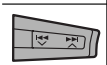
- You can control playback from the unit.
- Disconnecting the iPod will stop playback. Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.
- For details, refer also to the manual supplied for your iPod.

Caution:

- Avoid using the iPod if it might hinder your safety while driving.
- Make sure all important data has been backed up to avoid losing the data.

1	—	**Connect an iPod to the USB input jack or through KS-PD100.** Playback starts automatically from where it had been paused previously. • If an iPod has been connected, press SOURCE to select "USB-iPod" or "iPod" as the playback source.
2		**Select a track.**
3	—	**Adjust the volume and sound as you want. (See pages 25 and 26.)**

Playback control from the unit

Button	For iPod connected through KS-PD100	For iPod connected to the USB input jack
	[Press] Go to the next or previous track [Hold] Fast-forward or reverse the track during playback	[Press] Go to the next or previous track [Hold] Fast-forward or reverse the track during playback
	[Press] Enter main menu when you press ▲. Pause/resume playback when ▼ is pressed.	[Hold] Enter main menu [Press] Go to the top menu of "Playlists," "Artists," "Albums," "Songs," "Podcasts," "Genres," "Composers," or "Audiobooks" in the main menu. • Pressing the number buttons (1 – 6) or holding 1 (7) and 2 (8) can also select the preset top menus.
	—	[Press] Pause/resume playback.

Selecting a track from the menu

No.	Operation	For iPod connected through KS-PD100	For iPod connected to the USB input jack
1	**Enter the main menu.**		[Hold]
2	**Select the desired menu.**	Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Genres ↔ Composers	Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Podcasts ↔ Genres ↔ Composers ↔ Audiobooks
3	**Confirm the selection.**	• By holding ⏮ ∨/⏭ ∧, you can fast skip during song search in the main menu.	• By holding ⏭ ∧, you can start play back the selected item directly. • By holding ⏮ ∨, you can go back to the previous menu. • By holding ▲/▼, you can fast skip in every layer of the main menu.
		• If a track is selected, playback starts automatically. • If the selected item has another layer, you will enter the layer. Repeat steps **2** and **3** until the desired track is played.	

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

RPT 8 2	**Repeat One:** Same as "Repeat One." **Repeat All:** Same as "Repeat All." **Repeat Off:** Cancels.
RND 9 3	**Random Album*:** Same as "Shuffle Albums." **Random Song:** Same as "Shuffle Songs." **Random Off:** Cancels.

* *Functions only if you select "All Albums" or "All" in "Albums" of the main "MENU."*

The menu selecting mode will be canceled:

- If no operations are performed for about:
  - 5 seconds for iPod connected through KS-PD100.
  - 15 seconds for iPod connected to the USB input jack.
- When you confirm the selection of a track.

Listening to the other external components

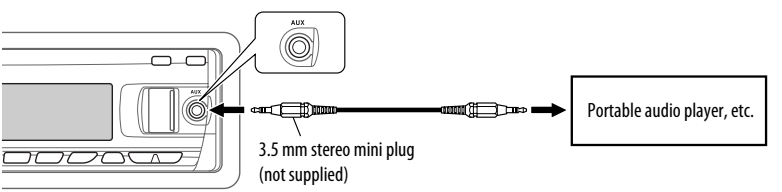
You can connect an external component to:

- CD changer jack on the rear of this unit using the following adapters:
  - **Line Input Adapter,** KS-U57
  - **AUX Input Adapter,** KS-U58

  Preparation: Make sure "Ext In" is selected for the external input setting, see page 29.
- AUX (auxiliary) input jack on the control panel.

1		**Select "EXT IN" or "AUX IN."**
2	—	**Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**
3		**Adjust the volume.**
4	—	**Adjust the sound as you want (see pages 25 and 26).**

Connecting an external component to the AUX input jack



Selecting a preset sound mode

You can select a preset sound mode suitable to the music genre (iEQ: intelligent equalizer).

EQ → USER → ROCK → CLASSIC → JAZZ → HIP HOP → POPS →

Preset value setting for each sound mode

Sound mode	Preset value								
	Bass			Mid (mid-range)			Treble		
	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q
USER	60 Hz	00	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	00	–
ROCK	100 Hz	+03	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	–
CLASSIC	80 Hz	+01	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	–
POPS	100 Hz	+02	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	+01	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	–
HIP HOP	60 Hz	+04	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	–02	Q1.0	10.0 kHz	+01	–
JAZZ	80 Hz	+03	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	–

Freq.: Frequency Q: Q-slope

Adjusting the sound

You can adjust the sound characteristics to your preference.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3 or 6.

1

2

EQ ↔ Fad/Bal ↔ Subwoofer* ↔ Loudness ↔ VolAdjust

- For "EQ" setting, see page 26.

* *Displayed only when "L/O Mode" is set to "Woofer" (see page 29).*

3 Adjust the selected setting item.

Ⓐ **Fad/Bal (Fader/Balance)**

1 Press number button 1 (SELECT) to move to the "Fad/Bal" adjustment display.

2 Adjust the speaker output balance by pressing:

▲ / ▼: between the front and rear speakers. [F6 to R6]

⏮ / ⏭: between the left and right speakers. [L6 to R6]

Ⓑ **Subwoofer**

1 Press number button 1 (SELECT) to move to the "Subwoofer" adjustment display.

2 Use ⏮ / ⏭ to select a cutoff frequency to the subwoofer.

- OFF: All signals are sent to the subwoofer.
- 80Hz: Frequencies higher than 80 Hz are cut off.
- 120Hz: Frequencies higher than 120 Hz are cut off.
- 160Hz: Frequencies higher than 160 Hz are cut off.

Continued on the next page

3 Turn the control dial to adjust the subwoofer output level. [0 to 8]
4 Press number button 1 (MORE) to select the subwoofer phase. [0deg (normal) or 180deg (reverse)]

Ⓒ **VolAdjust,** [–5 to +5]
Turn the control dial to adjust the input level of each source (except FM).
Adjust to match the input level of the FM sound level.
- Before making an adjustment, select the source you want to adjust.

Ⓓ **Loudness,** [Off or On]
Turn the control dial to select "Off" or "On." When "On" is selected, low and high frequencies sound are boosted to produce a well-balanced sound at low volume level.

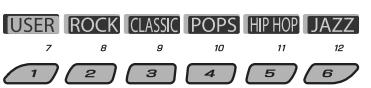
4 Exit from the setting.

Storing your own sound modes

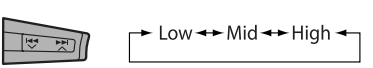
You can adjust the sound modes and store your own adjustments in memory.
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 6.

1

2 Select a sound mode.



3 Select a frequency range.



4 Adjust the sound elements of the selected frequency range.

1 Use ▲ / ▼ to adjust the level.
2 Press number button 5 (FREQ), then turn the control dial to select the frequency.
3 Press number button 5 (Q), then turn the control dial to select the quality slope (Q).

Sound elements	Range/selectable items		
	Low	Mid	High
Frequency	60 Hz 80 Hz 100 Hz 200 Hz	500 Hz 1 kHz 1.5 kHz 2.5 kHz	10 kHz 12.5 kHz 15 kHz 17.5 kHz
Level	–6 to +6	–6 to +6	–6 to +6
Q	Q1.0 Q1.25 Q1.5 Q2.0	Q0.5 Q0.75 Q1.0 Q1.25	Fix

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to adjust the other frequency bands.

6 Store the adjustments.

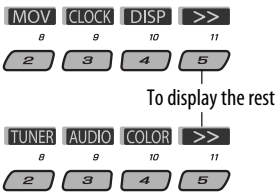
General settings — PSM

You can change PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) items listed in the table below and on pages 28 –30.

1 Enter the PSM settings.

[Hold]

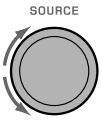
2 Select a PSM category.



3 Select a PSM item.

By pressing either one of the buttons repeatedly, you can also move to the item of the other categories.

4 Adjust the selected PSM item.



[Turn]

5 Repeat steps 2 – 4 to adjust other PSM items if necessary.

6 Finish the procedure.

Category	Indication	Item (__: Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
MOV (movie)	**Demo** Display demonstration	• **On** • **Off**	: Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [5]. : Cancels.
	LevelMeter Audio level meter	• **Meter 1** • **Meter 2**	: Select the different level meter patterns. • Press DISP to show the selected level meter.
CLOCK	**Clock Disp***1 Clock display	• **On** • **Off**	: Clock time is shown on the display when the power is turned off. : Cancels; pressing DISP will show the clock time for about 5 seconds when the power is turned off, [5].

*1 *If the power supply is not interrupted by turning off the ignition key of your car, it is recommended to select "Off" to save the car's battery.*

Continued on the next page

Category	Indication	Item (__: Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
CLOCK	**Clock Hr** Hour adjustment	**1 – 12AM/ 1 – 12PM (0 – 23)**	: Initial: 1 (1:00AM), [5].
	Clock Min Minute adjustment	**00 – 59**	: Initial: 00 (1:00AM), [5].
	24H/12H Time display mode	• **12Hours** • **24Hours**	: See also page 5 for setting.
	Clock Adj*2 Clock adjustment	• **Auto** • **Off**	: The built-in clock is automatically adjusted using the clock data provided via the satellite radio channel. : Cancels.
	Time Zone*2,*3 Time zone	—	: Select your residential area from one of the time zones for clock adjustment. **Eastern, Atlantic, Newfondlnd, Alaska, Pacific, Mountain, Central**
	DST*2,*3 Daylight savings time	• **On** • **Off**	: Activates daylight savings time if your residential area is subject to DST. : Cancels.
DISP (display)	**Scroll***4,*5 Scroll	• **Once** • **Auto** • **Off**	: Scrolls the track information once. : Repeats scrolling (at 5-second intervals). : Cancels. (Holding DISP can scroll the display regardless of the setting.)
	Dimmer Dimmer	• **Auto** • **Off** • **On** • **Time Set**	: Dims the display when you turn on the headlights. : Cancels. : Dims the display and button illumination. : Set the timer for dimmer, [30].
	From – To*6	—	Any hour – Any hour : Initial: 6PM – 7AM.
	Contrast Contrast	**1 – 8** Initial: 5	: Adjust the display contrast to make the display indications clear and legible.
	LCD Type Display type	• **Auto** • **Positive** • **Negative**	: Positive pattern will be selected during the day time*7; while negative pattern will be used during the night time*7. : Positive pattern of the display. : Negative pattern of the display.

*2 *Displayed only when SIRIUS Satellite radio or XM Satellite radio is connected.*

*3 *Adjustable only when "Clock Adj" is set to "Auto." Press number button 1 (MORE) to show the setting display.*

*4 *Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.*

*5 *Not applicable to HD Radio text scrolling.*

*6 *Adjustable only when "Dimmer" is set to "Time Set."*

*7 *Depends on the "Dimmer" setting.*

Category	Indication	Item (__: Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
DISP (display)	**Tag** Tag display	• **On** • **Off**	: Shows the tag while playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks. : Cancels.
TUNER	**IF Band** Intermediate frequency band	• **Auto** • **Wide**	: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) : Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
	AreaChange Tuner channel interval	• **US** • **EU** • **SA**	: When using in North/Central/South America. AM/FM intervals are set to 10 kHz/200 kHz. : When using in any other areas. AM/FM intervals are set to 9 kHz/50 kHz (100 kHz during auto search). : When using in South American countries where FM interval is 100 kHz. AM interval is set to 10 kHz.
	Sirius ID*8 SIRIUS ID	—	: The 12-digit SIRIUS identification number appears on the display, [19].
AUDIO	**Ext Input***10 External input	• **Changer** • **Ext In**	: To use a JVC CD changer, [18], or an Apple iPod, [22]. : To use any other external component, [24].
	Beep Key-touch tone	• **On** • **Off**	: Activates the key-touch tone. : Deactivates the key-touch tone.
	Telephone*11 Telephone muting	• **Muting1/ Muting2** • **Off**	: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using a cellular phone. : Cancels. • Playback pauses/mutes while telephone muting is working.
	AudioBooks*9 Speed control of "Audiobook"	• **Normal** • **Faster** • **Slower**	: You can select the playback speed of the "Audiobook" sound file in your iPod. • Initial selected item depends on your iPod setting.
	L/O Mode Line output mode	• **Rear** • **Woofer**	: Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting the rear speakers (through an external amplifier). : Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting a subwoofer (through an external amplifier).
	Amp Gain Amplifier gain control	• **High PWR** • **Low PWR** • **Off***11	: Volume 00 – Volume 50 : Volume 00 – Volume 30 (Select if the maximum power of each speaker is less than 50 W to prevent damaging the speaker.) : Deactivates the built-in amplifier.

*8 *Displayed only when SIRIUS Satellite radio is connected.*

*9 *Displayed only when an iPod is connected to the USB input jack and playback is controlled from the unit.*

*10 *Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—TUNER, SIRIUS, XM, CD, USB, or Bluetooth.*

*11 *Only for KD-APD89.*

Continued on the next page

Category	Indication	Item (__: Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
COLOR	**Color Sel** Color selection	Initial: All Source; Color: Pale	: Select your favorite display color for each source (or for all sources), [30, 31].
	Color Set Color setting	—	: Create your own colors, and select them for the display color, [31].
		Day Color	: User color during the day time*12.
		NightColor	: User color during the night time*12.
	Red	**00 — 11**	: Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05
	Green	**00 — 11**	: Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05
	Blue	**00 — 11**	: Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05
	Key Illum Illumination switch	• **Red** • **Green**	: You can select the button illumination according to your preference.

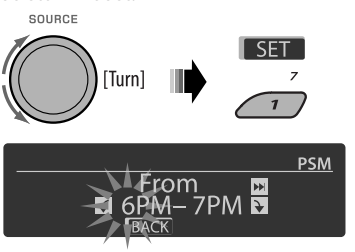
*12 *Depends on the "Dimmer" setting.*

Setting the time for dimmer

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 27.
- In step **2**, select "DISP."
- In step **3**, select "Dimmer."

2 Select "Time Set."



3 Adjust the dimmer start time.

1 Turn the control dial to set the dimmer start time.

2 Press ►►I ^ to select "To." Then, turn the control dial to set the dimmer end time.

4 Exit from the setting.

Changing the display color

You can select your favorite display color for each source (or all sources).

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3 or 6.

Setting the display color

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 27.
- In step **2**, select "COLOR."
- In step **3**, select "Color Sel."

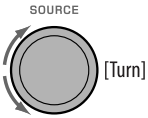
2

3 Select a source.

All Source*1 ↔ **CD** ↔ **Changer***3 (or **Ext In***2) ↔ **USB***3 ↔ **FM** ↔ **AM** ↔ **Sirius***3/**XM***3 ↔ **iPod***3 ↔ **Aux In** ↔ **BT Phone***3 ↔ **BT Audio***3 ↔ (back to the beginning)

*1 *When you select "All Source," you can use the same color for all the sources.*
*2 *Depends on the "Ext Input" setting, see page 29.*
*3 *Displayed only when the target component is connected.*

4 Select a color.



Pale ↔ Aqua ↔ Sky ↔ Sea ↔ Leaves ↔ Grass ↔ Apple ↔ Rose ↔ Amber ↔ Honey ↔ Violet ↔ Grape ↔ Every*4 ↔ **User***5 ↔ (back to the beginning)

*4 *The color changes every 2 seconds.*
*5 *The user-edited colors—"Day Color" and "NightColor" will be applied (see the right column for details).*

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to select the color for each source (except when selecting "All Source" in step 3).

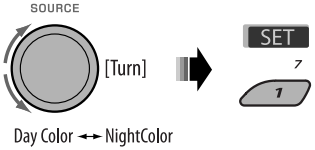
6 Exit from the setting.

Creating your own color—User Color

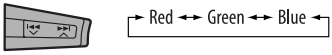
You can create your own colors—"Day Color" or "NightColor."

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 27.
- In step **2**, select "COLOR."
- In step **3**, select "Color Set."

2 Select "Day Color" or "NightColor."



3 Select a primary color.



4 Adjust the level (00 to 11) of the selected primary color.

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to adjust other primary colors.

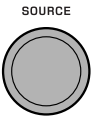
6 Exit from the setting.

Bluetooth settings

You can change the settings listed on the right column according to your preference.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

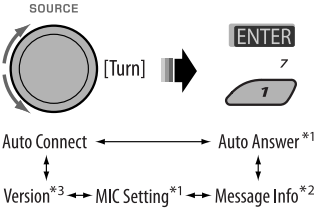
1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Enter the Bluetooth menu.

3 Select "Setting."

4 Select a setting item.

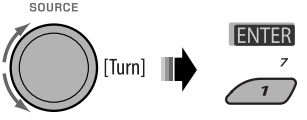


*1 *Displayed only when a Bluetooth phone is connected.*

*2 *Displayed only when a Bluetooth phone is connected and it is compatible with text message.*

*3 *Bluetooth Audio: Shows only "Version."*

5 Change the setting accordingly.



Setting menu (__ : Initial)

Auto Connect

When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with...

Off: No Bluetooth device.
Last: The last connected Bluetooth device.
Order: The available registered Bluetooth device found at first.

Auto Answer

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

On: The unit answers the incoming calls automatically.
Off: The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually.
Reject: The unit rejects all incoming calls.

Message Info

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

Auto: The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "Received Message."
Manual: The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.

MIC setting (microphone setting)

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."
Adjust the built-in microphone volume, [LEVEL 01/02/03].

Version

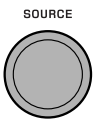
The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

Title assignment

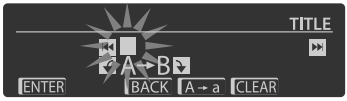
You can assign titles to 30 station frequencies (FM and AM) using 10 characters (maximum) for each title.

- When HD Radio tuner box is connected, this feature will be disable.
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Select "TUNER."



2 Show the title entry screen.



3 Assign a title.

1 Press number button 4 (A→a) repeatedly to select a character set.

→ Lower case (a – z)
↓
Numbers and symbols (0 – 9)
↓
Upper case (A – Z)

2 Turn the control dial to select a character. (For available characters, see the right column.)

3 Use ◄◄ ∨/►►| ∧ to move to the next (or previous) character position.

4 Repeat steps 1 to 3 until you finish entering the title.

4 Store the title.

To erase the entire title

In step **3** on the left column...

Available characters

Upper case

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N
O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	space	

Lower case

a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n
o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	space	

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	space							

More about this unit

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback also starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a track, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously next time you turn on the power.

General

- If you change the source while listening to a disc, playback stops.
  Next time you select "CD" as the playback source, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously.
- After ejecting a disc or removing a USB device, "No Disc" or "No USB" appears and you cannot operate some of the buttons. Insert another disc, reattach a USB device, or press SOURCE to select another playback source.

Tuner operations

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
  - – All previously stored stations are erased and the stations are stored anew.
  - – Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
  - – When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, the previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

Disc/USB operations

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

General

- This unit has been designed to reproduce CDs/CD Texts, and CD-Rs (Recordable)/CD-RWs (Rewritable) in audio CD (CD-DA), MP3 and WMA formats.
- When a disc is inserted upside down, "Please Eject" appears on the display. Press OPEN, then ⏏ to eject the disc.
- In this manual, words "track" and "file" are interchangeably used.
- While fast-forwarding or reversing on an MP3/WMA/WAV files, you can only hear intermittent sounds.
- File/folder list may not appear correctly if too many hierarchies and folders are used.
- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust. Playback starts automatically.

Playing a CD-R or CD-RW

- Use only "finalized" CD-Rs or CD-RWs.
- This unit can only play back files of the same type as those which are detected first if a disc includes both audio CD (CD-DA) files and MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some CD-Rs or CD-RWs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, or for the following reasons:
  - – Discs are dirty or scratched.
  - – Moisture condensation has occurred on the lens inside the unit.
  - – The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.

– The files on the CD-R/CD-RW are written using the "Packet Write" method.
– There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stained, scratched, warped, etc.).

- CD-RWs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of CD-RWs is lower than that of regular CDs.
- Do not use the following CD-Rs or CD-RWs:
  – Discs with stickers, labels, or a protective seal stuck to the surface.
  – Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

  Using these discs under high temperature or high humidity may cause malfunctions or damage to the unit.

Playing an MP3/WMA disc

- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3 files and for WMA files.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files meeting the conditions below:

  MP3:
  – Bit rate: 8 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz, 12 kHz, 11.025 kHz, 8 kHz

  WMA:
  – Bit rate: 32 kbps — 192 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz
  – Disc format: ISO 9660 Level 1/Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names vary depending on the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3> or <.wma>).
  – ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
  – ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
  – Romeo*: up to 128 characters
  – Joliet*: up to 64 characters
  – Windows long file name*: up to 128 characters

* *The parenthetic figure is the maximum number of characters for file/folder names in case the total number of files and folders is 271 or more.*

- This unit can recognize a total of 512 files, 200 folders, and 8 hierarchical levels.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).

  Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in the elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. In particular, this difference becomes noticeable after performing the search function.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded in MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriate format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded in lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks from a USB device

- Connecting a USB device automatically changes the source to "USB."
- While playing from a USB device, the playback order may differ from the one from other players.
- This unit may be unable to play back some USB devices or some files due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- Depending on the shape of the USB devices and connection ports, some USB devices may not be attached properly or the connection might be loose.
- When connecting a USB mass storage class device, refer also to its instructions.

Continued on the next page

- Connect one USB mass storage class device to the unit at a time. Do not use a USB hub.
- You can connect two types of USB device to this unit—MTP device and Mass storage class device. If you connect an MTP device featuring "USB digital media streaming" to this unit, you can play back the WMA-DRM10 (Digital Right Management) files purchased through the music distributing web sites, through this unit.
- This unit is compatible with the USB Full-Speed.
- If the connected USB device does not have the correct files, "No File" appears.
- This unit can show ID3 Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3 and WMA/WAV Tag.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA/WAV files meeting the conditions below:
  MP3:
  – Bit rate: 32 kbps — 320 kbps (MPEG-1)
    8 kbps — 160 kbps (MPEG-2)
  – Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
  WMA:
  – Bit rate: 5 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 8 kHz — 48 kHz
  – Channel: 1 ch/2 ch
  WAV:
  – Bit rate: Linear PCM at 705 kbps and 1 411 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 44.1 kHz
  – Channel: 1 ch/2 ch
- This unit can play back MP3 files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- The maximum number of characters for folder and file names is 25 characters; 128 characters for MP3/WMA/WAV Tag.
- This unit can recognize a total of 20 000 files and 2 000 folders (999 files per folder). However, the display can shows until 9 999 folders/files.
- The unit cannot recognize a USB mass storage class device whose rating is other than 5 V and exceeds 500 mA.
- USB devices equipped with special functions such as data security functions cannot be used with the unit.
- Do not use a USB device with 2 or more partitions.
- This unit may not recognized a USB device connected through a USB card reader.
- This unit may not play back files in a USB device properly when using a USB extension cord.
- This unit cannot assure proper functions or supply power to all types of USB devices.

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on the circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

appears when the connection is established.

	Appears when the Bluetooth phone is connected.
	Appears when the Bluetooth audio player is connected.
	Appears when the Bluetooth phone and Bluetooth audio player are connected.

Icons for phone types

These icons indicate the phone type set on the device:

: Cellular phone	: General
: Household phone	: Other than above
: Office	: Unknown

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **Connection Error:**
  The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use "Connect" to connect the device again. (See page 14.)
- **Error**
  Try the operation again. If "Error" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **Device Not Found**
  No available Bluetooth device is detected by "Search...".
- **Loading...**
  The unit is updating the phone book and/or text messages.
- **Please Wait...**
  The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **Reset 08**
  Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

HD Radio reception

- HD Radio can normally be received in the USA, but it may also be received in countries where test broadcasting has already started.
- During SSM search...
  – All stations including conventional FM/AM stations are searched and stored for the selected band.

Satellite radio

- You can also connect the JVC SIRIUS radio PnP (Plug and Play), using the JVC SIRIUS radio adapter, KS-U100K (not supplied) to the CD changer jack on the rear.
  By turning on/off the power of the unit, you can turn on/off the JVC PnP. However, you cannot control it from this unit.
- To know more about SIRIUS Satellite radio or to sign up, visit <http://www.sirius.com>.
- For the latest channel listings and programming information, or to sign up for XM Satellite radio, visit <http://www.xmradio.com>.

iPod

- Controllable iPod (connected through....):
  (A) KS-PD100:
  – iPod with dock connector (3rd Generation)
  – iPod with click wheel (4th Generation)
  – iPod nano (1st & 2nd*1 Generation)
  – iPod mini (1st Generation)
  – iPod video (5th Generation)*2
  – iPod photo
  (B) USB input jack:
  – iPod nano (1st & 2nd Generation)
  – iPod video (5th Generation)

*1 *When you connect the iPod nano to the interface adapter, be sure to disconnect the headphones; otherwise, no sound is heard.*

*2 *It is not possible to browse video files on the "Videos" menu while the iPod is connected to the interface adapter.*

- Update your iPod to the latest software version before using it with this unit.
  – You can check the software version of your iPod under "About" in the "Setting" menu of the iPod.
  – For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- While the unit is being turned on, the iPod is charged through this unit.
- While connecting an iPod with Video:
  – No video shows on the iPod's display or the external monitor (only the audio part is available).
  – It is not possible to browse video files on the "Video" menu. (If you connect the iPod during the playback or pausing of a video file, resuming playback will not work.)
- iPod shuffle and iPhone cannot be used with this unit.

Continued on the next page

- You can control the iPod from this unit when "JVC" or "√" appears on the iPod display after connection.
- The song order displayed on the selection menu of this unit may differ from that of the iPod.
- If playback is stopped, select a track from the selection menu or press BAND to play back the same track again.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly:
  – Some characters such as accented letters cannot be shown correctly on the display.
  – Communication between the iPod and the unit is not stable.
- If the text information includes more than 16 characters, it scrolls on the display. This unit can display up to 128 characters.

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>

Title assignment

- If you try to assign titles to more than 30 station frequencies, "Name Full" appears. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.

General settings—PSM

- "Auto" setting for "Dimmer" may not work correctly on some vehicles, particularly on those having a control dial for dimming.
  In this case, change the "Dimmer" setting to any other than "Auto."
- If "LCD Type" is set to "Auto," the display pattern will change to the "Positive" or "Negative" pattern depending on the "Dimmer" setting.
- If you change the "Amp Gain" setting from "High PWR" to "Low PWR" while the volume level is set higher than "Volume 30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "Volume 30."

- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- HD Radio™ and the HD Radio Ready logo are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.
- "SIRIUS" and the SIRIUS dog logo are registered trademarks of SIRIUS Satellite Radio Inc.
- XM and its corresponding logos are registered trademarks of XM Satellite Radio Inc.
- "SAT Radio," the SAT Radio logo and all related marks are trademarks of SIRIUS Satellite Radio Inc., and XM Satellite Radio, Inc.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).
	• "Connect Error" appears on the display.	Remove the control panel, wipe the connector, then attach it again (see page 4).
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the antenna firmly.
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played back. • Tracks on the CD-R/CD-RW cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized CD-R/CD-RW. • Finalize the CD-R/CD-RW with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc can neither be played back nor ejected.	• Unlock the disc (see page 10). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 3).
	• Disc sound is sometimes interrupted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
	• Disc cannot be recognized ("No Disc," "CD Loading Error," or "Eject Error" flashes).	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 3).
	• "Please Eject" appears on the display.	This occurs sometimes due to over-heating. Eject the disc or change to another playback source.

Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Use a disc with MP3/WMA tracks recorded in a format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet. • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• A longer readout time is required ("Reading" keeps flashing on the display).	Do not use too many hierarchical levels and folders.
	• Tracks do not play back in the order you have intended them to play.	The playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	• The elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc (eg. variable bit rate).
	• "Please Eject" appears on the display.	Insert a disc that contains MP3/WMA tracks.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	Skip to the next track encoded in an appropriate format or to the next non-copy-protected WMA track.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (capital: A – Z, small: a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols (see page 33).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
USB device	• Noise is generated.	• The track played back is not a playable file format (MP3/WMA/WAV). Skip to another file. • Do not add the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav> to non-MP3/WMA/WAV tracks.
	• Tracks cannot play back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differs from the one played back using other players.
	• "Reading" keeps flashing on the display.	• Readout time varies depending on the USB device. • Do not use too many hierarchy, folders and empty folders.* • Turn off the power then on again. • Do not pull out or connect the USB device repeatedly while "Reading" is displayed on the display. * *Folder that is phisically empty or folder that contains data but does not contain valid MP3/WMA/WAV track.*
	• "No File" flashes on the display. • "No USB" appears on the display.	Connect a USB device that contains tracks encoded in an appropriate format.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	The track is unplayable.
	• "Read Failed" or "Cannot Play" appears on the display, then returns to the previous source.	The connected USB device may be malfunctioning, or may not have been formatted correctly. The files included in the USB device are corrupted.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	For available characters, see page 33.
	• While playing a track, sound is sometimes interrupted.	The tracks have not been properly copied into the USB device. Copy tracks again into the USB device, and try again.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a USB device.	• Turn off, then turn on the unit. • Connect the device again, when the sound is not yet restored.

Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Bluetooth®	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	The unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio device at a time. While connecting a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device. After the device detects the unit, select "Open..." on the unit to connect the device. (See page 13.)
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. • Select the device name from "Special," then try to connect again. (See page 13.)
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to a place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a Bluetooth audio player.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio player. • Disconnect the device connected for "BT-PHONE." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • Connect the player again, when the sound is not yet restored.
	• The connected audio player cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio player supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile). (Operations depend on the connected audio player.)

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
HD Radio reception	• Sound quality changes when receiving HD Radio stations.	Fix the reception mode either to "Digital" or "Analog" (see page 17).
	• No sound can be heard.	• "Analog" is selected when receiving all digital broadcast of HD Radio station. Select "Digital" or "Auto" (see page 17). • "Digital" is selected when receiving weak digital signals or receiving conventional radio broadcast. Select "Analog" or "Auto" (see page 17).
	• "Reset 08" appears on the display.	Reconnect this unit and the HD Radio tuner box correctly, then reset the unit.
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).
Satellite radio	• "CALL 1-888-539-SIRIUS TO SUBSCRIBE" scrolls on the display while listening to the SIRIUS Satellite radio.	Starts subscribing to SIRIUS Satellite radio (see page 19).
	• "Updating XX%* Completed" appears on the display.	The unit is updating the channel information and it takes a few minutes to complete.
	• "No Signal" appears on the display.	Move to an area where signals are stronger.
	• "No Antenna" appears on the display.	Connect the antenna firmly.
	• "Invalid Channel" appears on the display for about 5 seconds, then returns to the previous display while listening to the SIRIUS Satellite radio.	No broadcast on the selected channel. Select another channel or continue listening to the previous channel.
	• "No Name" scrolls on the display while listening to the SIRIUS Satellite radio. • "----" appears on the display while listening to the XM Satellite radio.	No text information for the selected channel.

* *Changes every 20% of update is completion, (ex. 20%, 40%, 60%).*

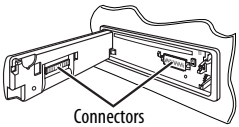
Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Satellite radio	• "OFF AIR" appears on the display while listening to the XM Satellite radio.	Selected channel is not broadcasting at this time. Select another channel or continue listening to the previous channel.
	• "----" appears on the display for about 2 seconds, then returns to the previous channel while listening to the XM Satellite radio.	Selected channel is no longer available or is unauthorized. Select another channel or continue listening to the previous channel.
	• "LOADING" appears on the display while listening to the XM Satellite radio.	The unit is loading the channel information and audio. Text information are temporarily unavailable.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the display.	The unit is loading the channel information and audio. Text information are temporarily unavailable.
	• Satellite radio does not work at all.	Reconnect this unit and the satellite radio correctly, then reset the unit.
iPod	• The iPod does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version. • Charge the battery.
	• The sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the display.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Charge the battery.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation (see page 22).
	• No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano.	• Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano. • Update the firmware version of the iPod nano.
	• "No File" appears on the display.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the display.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect it again.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the display.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors. To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connectors

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture has evaporated.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc in its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs in cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

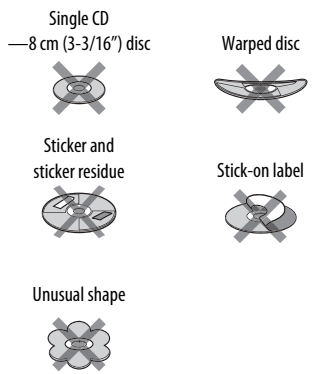
- Do not use any solvents (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:



ENGLISH

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION		
Power Output:	**20 W RMS × 4 Channels at 4 Ω and ≤ 1% THD+N**	
Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	80 dBA (reference: 1 W into 4 Ω)	
Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
Tone Control Range:	Bass:	±12 dB (60 Hz, 80 Hz, 100 Hz, 200 Hz)
	Mid-range:	±12 dB (500 Hz, 1.0 kHz, 1.5 kHz, 2.5 kHz)
	Treble:	±12 dB (10.0 kHz, 12.5 kHz, 15.0 kHz, 17.5 kHz)
Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Line-Out Level/Impedance:	KD-APD89:	5.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
	KD-PDR80:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
Subwoofer-Out Level/Impedance:	KD-APD89:	5.0 V /20 kΩ load (full scale)
	KD-PDR80:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
Output Impedance:		1 kΩ
Other Terminal:		CD changer jack, AUX (auxiliary) input jack, USB input jack, Steering wheel remote input (only for KD-APD89), Antenna input

TUNER SECTION			
Frequency Range:	FM:	with channel interval set to 100 kHz or 200 kHz	87.5 MHz to 107.9 MHz
		with channel interval set to 50 kHz	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
	AM:	with channel interval set to 10 kHz	530 kHz to 1 710 kHz
		with channel interval set to 9 kHz	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
FM Tuner:	Usable Sensitivity:		11.3 dBf (1.0 µV/75 Ω)
	50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:		16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
	Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):		65 dB
	Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
	Stereo Separation:		35 dB
AM Tuner:	Sensitivity:		20 µV
	Selectivity:		35 dB

CD PLAYER SECTION	
Type:	Compact disc player
Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)
Number of Channels:	2 channels (stereo)
Frequency Response:	5 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Dynamic Range:	96 dB
Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	98 dB
Wow and Flutter:	Less than measurable limit
MP3 Decoding Format: (MPEG1/2 Audio Layer 3)	Max. Bit Rate: 320 kbps
WMA (Windows Media® Audio) Decoding Format:	Max. Bit Rate: 192 kbps

USB SECTION		
USB Standards:	USB 1.1, USB 2.0	
Data Transfer Rate:	Full Speed:	Maximum 12 Mbps
	Low Speed:	Maximum 1.5 Mbps
Compatible Device:	Mass storage class	
Compatible File System:	FAT 32/16/12	
Playable Audio Format:	MP3/WMA/WAV	
Max. Current:	500 mA/5 V	

GENERAL		
Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
Grounding System:		Negative ground
Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C (32°F to 104°F)
Dimensions (W × H × D): (approx.)	Installation Size:	182 mm × 52 mm × 160 mm (7-3/16″ × 2-1/16″ × 6-5/16″)
	Panel Size:	188 mm × 58 mm × 6 mm (7-7/16″ × 2-5/16″ × 1/4″)
Mass:		1.4 kg (3.1 lbs) (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

If a kit is necessary for your car, consult your telephone directory for the nearest car audio speciality shop.

Having TROUBLE with operation?
Please reset your unit
Refer to page of How to reset your unit
Still having trouble??

USA ONLY

Call 1-800-252-5722
http://www.jvc.com
We can help you!

JVC

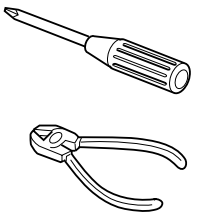
EN, SP, FR

© 2007 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

1207DTSMDTJEIN

KD-APD89/KD-PDR80

Installation/Connection Manual
Manual de instalación/conexión
Manuel d'installation/raccordement



GET0519-002A
[J]

1207DTSMDTJEIN
EN, SP, FR

© 2007 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

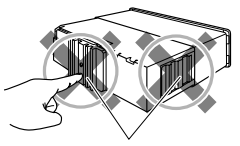
WARNINGS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with a maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amp Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 29 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



Heat sink / Sumidero térmico / *Dissipateur de chaleur*

ESPAÑOL

Esta unidad está diseñada para funcionar con **12 V de CC, con sistemas eléctricos de masa NEGATIVA**. Si su vehículo no posee este sistema, será necesario un inversor de tensión, que puede ser adquirido en los concesionarios de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles.

ADVERTENCIAS

Para evitar cortocircuitos, recomendamos que desconecte el terminal negativo de la batería y que efectúe todas las conexiones eléctricas antes de instalar la unidad.

- **Asegúrese de volver a conectar a masa esta unidad al chasis del automóvil después de la instalación.**

Notas:

- Reemplace el fusible por uno con la corriente especificada. Si el fusible se quemase frecuentemente consulte con su concesionario de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles.
- Se recomienda conectar altavoces que tengan una potencia máxima de más de 50 W (tanto en las partes delantera como trasera, con una impedancia de **4 Ω á 8 Ω**). Si la potencia máxima es de menos de 50 W, cambie "Amp Gain" para evitar daños en los altavoces (consulte la página 29 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES).
- Para evitar cortocircuitos, cubra los terminales de los conductores NO UTILIZADOS con cinta aislante.
- El sumidero térmico estará muy caliente después del uso. Asegúrese de no tocarlo al desmontar esta unidad.

FRANÇAIS

Cet appareil est conçu pour fonctionner sur des sources de **courant continu de 12 V à masse NEGATIVE**. *Si votre véhicule n'offre pas ce type d'alimentation, il vous faut un convertisseur de tension, que vous pouvez acheter chez un revendeur d'autoradios JVC.*

AVERTISSEMENTS

Pour éviter tout court-circuit, nous vous recommandons de débrancher la borne négative de la batterie et d'effectuer tous les raccordements électriques avant d'installer l'appareil.

- **Assurez-vous de raccorder de nouveau la mise à la masse de cet appareil au châssis de la voiture après l'installation.**

Remarques:

- *Remplacer le fusible par un de la valeur précisée. Si le fusible saute souvent, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC.*
- *Il est recommandé de connecter des enceintes avec une puissance maximum de plus de 50 W (à l'arrière et à l'avant et avec une impédance de* **4 Ω à 8 Ω***). Si la puissance maximum est inférieure à 50 W, changez "Amp Gain" pour éviter d'endommager vos enceintes (voir page 29 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).*
- *Pour éviter les courts-circuits, recouvrez les extrémités des fils INUTILISÉS avec une bande isolante.*
- *Le dissipateur de chaleur devient très chaud après usage. Faire attention de ne pas le toucher en retirant cet appareil.*

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

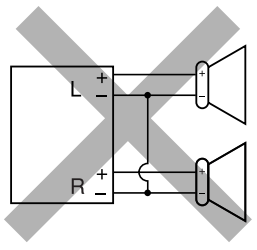
- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

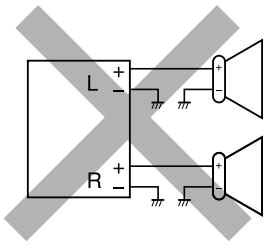
PRECAUCIONES sobre las conexiones de la fuente de alimentación y de los altavoces:

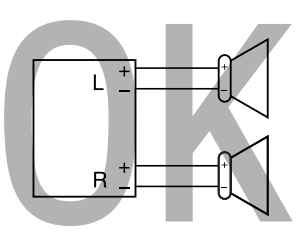
- **NO conecte los conductores de altavoz del cable de alimentación a la batería de automóvil, pues podrían producirse graves daños en la unidad.**
- ANTES de conectar a los altavoces los conductores de altavoz del cable de alimentación, verifique el conexionado de altavoz de su automóvil.

PRECAUTIONS sur l'alimentation et la connexion des enceintes:

- **NE CONNECTEZ PAS les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation à la batterie; sinon, l'appareil serait sérieusement endommagé.**
- *AVANT de connecter les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation aux enceintes, vérifiez le câblage des enceintes de votre voiture.*

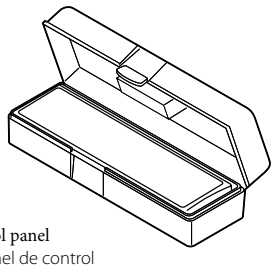






Parts list for installation and connection

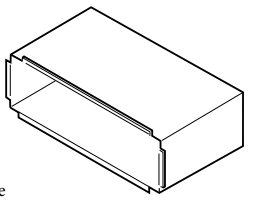
The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC car audio dealer immediately.



Ⓐ / Ⓑ
Hard case/Control panel
Estuche duro/Panel de control
Etui de transport/Panneau de commande

Lista de piezas para instalación y conexión

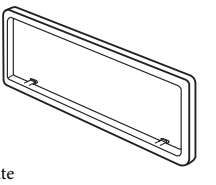
Con esta unidad se suministran las siguientes piezas. Si hay algún elemento faltante, consulte inmediatamente con su concesionario de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles.



Ⓒ
Sleeve
Cubierta
Manchon

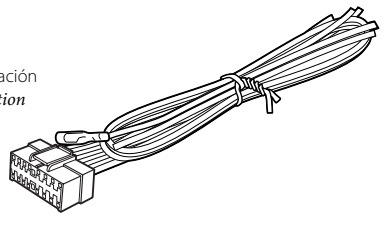
Liste des pièces pour l'installation et raccordement

Les pièces suivantes sont fournies avec cet appareil. Si quelque chose manquait, consultez votre revendeur autoradio JVC immédiatement.



Ⓓ
Trim plate
Placa de guarnición
Plaque d'assemblage

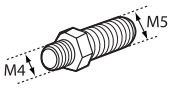
Ⓔ
Power cord
Cordón de alimentación
Cordon d'alimentation



Ⓕ
Washer (ø5)
Arandela (ø5)
Rondelle (ø5)

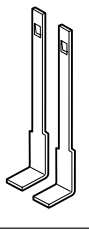
Ⓖ
Lock nut (M5)
Tuerca de seguridad (M5)
Ecrou d'arrêt (M5)

Ⓗ
Mounting bolt—M4 × 5 mm (M4 × 1/4");
M5 × 12.5 mm (M5 × 1/2")
Perno de montaje—M4 × 5 mm (M4 × 1/4 pulgada);
M5 × 12,5 mm (M5 × 1/2 pulgada)
Boulon de montage—M4 × 5 mm (M4 × 1/4 pouces);
M5 × 12,5 mm (M5 × 1/2 pouces)

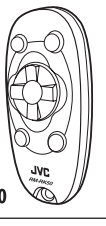


Ⓘ
Rubber cushion
Cojín de goma
Amortisseur en caoutchouc

Ⓙ
Handles
Manijas
Poignées



Ⓚ
Remote controller
Control remoto
Télécommande



RM-RK50

Ⓛ
Battery
Pila
Pile

CR2025

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

INSTALACION (MONTAJE EN EL TABLERO DE INSTRUMENTOS)

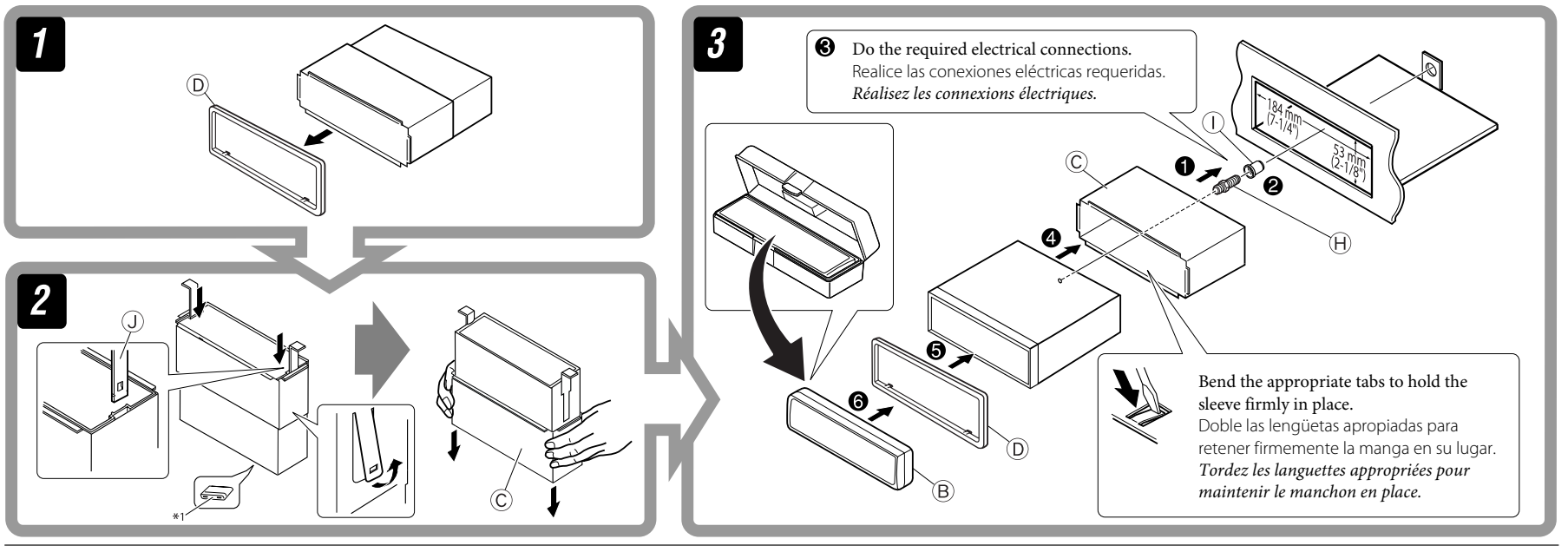
La siguiente ilustración muestra una instalación típica. Si tiene alguna pregunta o necesita información acerca de las herramientas para instalación, consulte con su concesionario de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles o a una compañía que suministra tales herramientas.

- Si usted no está seguro de cómo instalar correctamente la unidad, hágala instalar por un técnico cualificado.

INSTALLATION (MONTAGE DANS LE TABLEAU DE BORD)

L'illustration suivante est un exemple d'installation typique. Si vous avez des questions ou avez besoin d'information sur des kits d'installation, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC ou une compagnie d'approvisionnement.

- *Si l'on n'est pas sûr de pouvoir installer correctement cet appareil, le faire installer par un technicien qualifié.*



Removing the unit

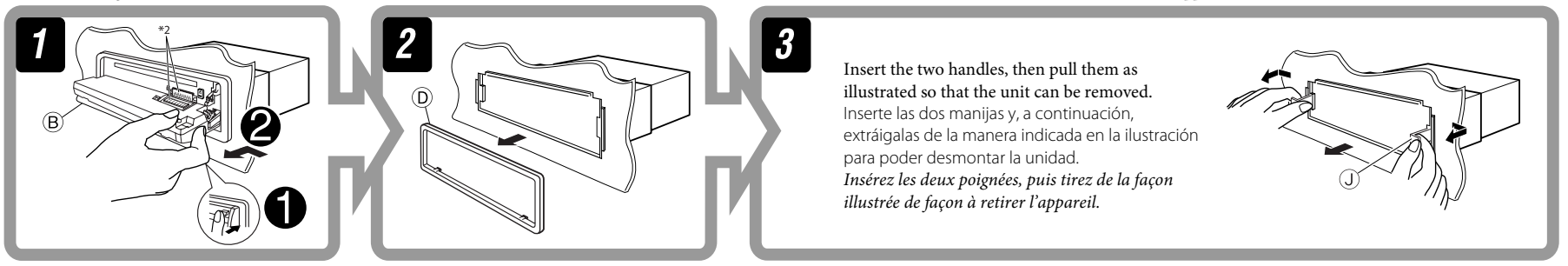
Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

Extracción de la unidad

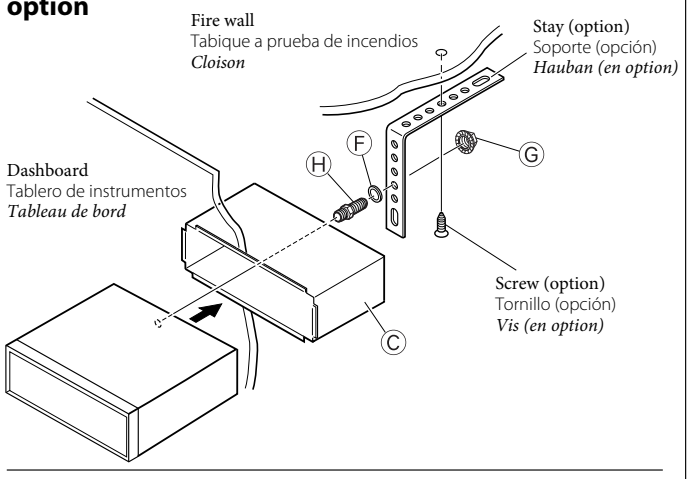
Antes de extraer la unidad, libere la sección trasera.

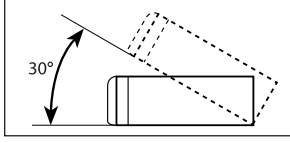
Retrait de l'appareil

Avant de retirer l'appareil, libérer la section arrière.


1
*2
B
❷
❶
2
D
3
Insert the two handles, then pull them as illustrated so that the unit can be removed.
Inserte las dos manijas y, a continuación, extráigalas de la manera indicada en la ilustración para poder desmontar la unidad.
Insérez les deux poignées, puis tirez de la façon illustrée de façon à retirer l'appareil.
J

When using the optional stay / Cuando emplea un soporte opcional / Lors de l'utilisation du hauban en option

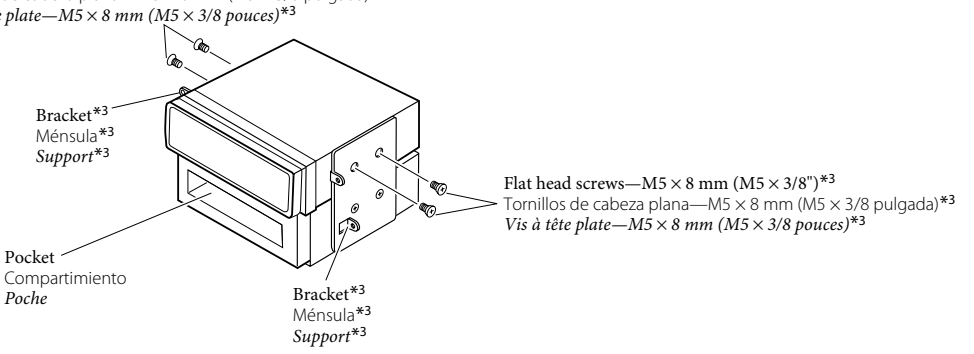




Install the unit at an angle of less than 30°.
Instale la unidad a un ángulo de menos de 30°.
Installez l'appareil avec un angle de moins de 30°.

When installing the unit without using the sleeve / Instalación de la unidad sin utilizar la cubierta / Lors de l'installation de l'appareil scans utiliser de manchon

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.
En un automóvil Toyota, por ejemplo, en primer lugar desmonte el autorradio e instale la unidad en su lugar.
Dans une voiture Toyota, par exemple, retirez d'abord l'autoradio et installez l'appareil à sa place.


Flat head screws—M5 × 8 mm (M5 × 3/8")*3
Tornillos de cabeza plana—M5 × 8 mm (M5 × 3/8 pulgada)*3
Vis à tête plate—M5 × 8 mm (M5 × 3/8 pouces)*3
Bracket*3
Ménsula*3
Support*3
Flat head screws—M5 × 8 mm (M5 × 3/8")*3
Tornillos de cabeza plana—M5 × 8 mm (M5 × 3/8 pulgada)*3
Vis à tête plate—M5 × 8 mm (M5 × 3/8 pouces)*3
Pocket
Compartimiento
Poche
Bracket*3
Ménsula*3
Support*3

Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm (3/8") -long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

Nota : Cuando instala la unidad en la ménsula de montaje, asegúrese de utilizar los tornillos de 8 mm (3/8 pulgada) de longitud. Si se utilizan tornillos más largos, éstos pueden dañar la unidad.

Remarque : *Lors de l'installation de l'appareil sur le support de montage, s'assurer d'utiliser des vis d'une longueur de 8 mm (3/8 pouces). Si des vis plus longues sont utilisées, elles peuvent endommager l'appareil.*

*1 When you stand the unit, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
*2 Avoid touching the connectors.
*3 Not supplied for this unit.

*1 Al poner la unidad vertical, tenga cuidado de no dañar el fusible provisto en la parte posterior.
*2 Evite tocar los conectores.
*3 No suministrado con esta unidad.

*1 *Lorsque vous mettez l'appareil à la verticale, faire attention de ne pas endommager le fusible situé sur l'arrière.*
*2 *Évitez de toucher les connecteurs.*
*3 *Non fourni avec cet appareil.*

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
* Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **This unit becomes hot.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This unit does not work at all.**
* Have you reset your unit?

LOCALIZACION DE AVERIAS

- **El fusible se quema.**
* ¿Están los conductores rojo y negro correctamente conectados?
- **No es posible conectar la alimentación.**
* ¿Está el cable amarillo conectado?
- **No sale sonido de los altavoces.**
* ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz cortocircuitado?
- **El sonido presenta distorsión.**
* ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz conectado a masa?
* ¿Están los terminales "–" de los altavoces L y R conectados a una masa común?
- **Perturbación de ruido.**
* ¿El terminal de tierra trasero está conectado al chasis del automóvil utilizando los cordones más corto y más grueso?
- **Esta unidad se calienta.**
* ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz conectado a masa?
* ¿Están los terminales "–" de los altavoces L y R conectados a una masa común?
- **Esta unidad no funciona en absoluto.**
* ¿Reinicializó la unidad?

EN CAS DE DIFFICULTES

- **Le fusible saute.**
* *Les fils rouge et noir sont-ils racordés correctement?*
- **L'appareil ne peut pas être mise sous tension.**
* *Le fil jaune est-elle raccordée?*
- **Pas de son des enceintes.**
* *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il court-circuité?*
- **Le son est déformé.**
* *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?*
* *Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?*
- **Interférence avec les sons.**
* *La prise arrière de mise à la terre est-elle connectée au châssis de la voiture avec un cordon court et épais?*
- **Cet appareil devient chaud.**
* *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?*
* *Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?*
- **Cet appareil ne fonctionne pas du tout.**
* *Avez-vous réinitialisé votre appareil?*

ENGLISH

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

ESPAÑOL

CONEXIONES ELECTRICAS

FRANÇAIS

RACCORDEMENTS ELECTRIQUES

A Typical connections / Conexiones tipicas / Raccordements typiques

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

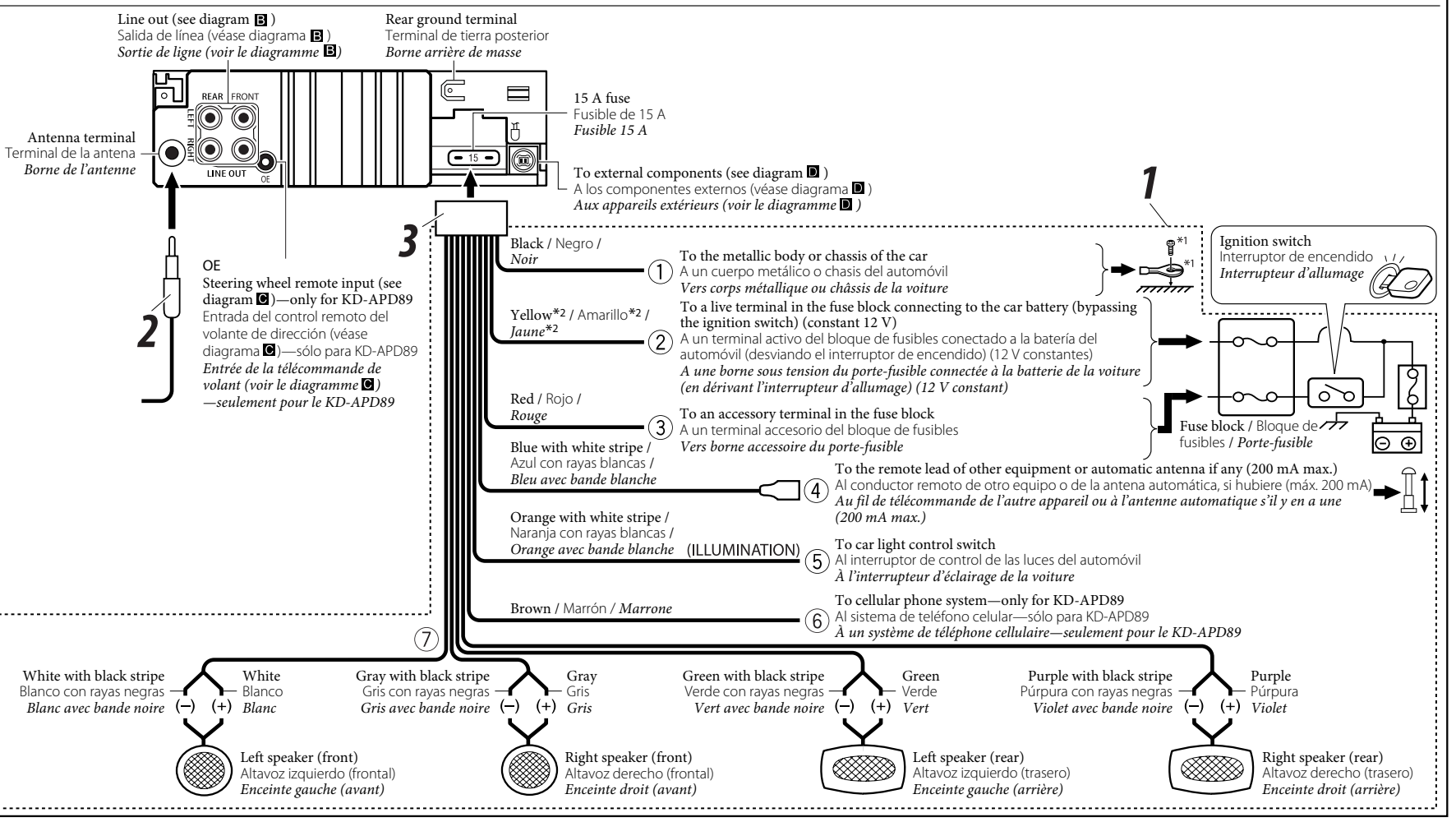
1. Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
2. Connect the antenna cord.
3. Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

Antes de la conexión: Verifique atentamente el conexionado del vehículo. Una conexión incorrecta podría producir daños graves en la unidad.
Los cordones del cable de alimentación y los del conector procedentes de la carrocería del automóvil podrían ser de diferentes en color.

1. Conecte los conductores de color del cable de alimentación en el orden especificado en la ilustración de abajo.
2. Conecte el cable de antena.
3. Por último, conecte el cable de alimentación a la unidad.

Avant de commencer la connexion: *Vérifiez attentivement le câblage du véhicule. Une connexion incorrecte peut endommager sérieusement l'appareil.*
Le fil du cordon d'alimentation et ceux des connecteurs du châssis de la voiture peuvent être différents en couleur.

1. *Connectez les fils colorés du cordon d'alimentation dans l'ordre spécifié sur l'illustration ci-dessous.*
2. *Connectez le cordon d'antenne.*
3. *Finalement, connectez le faisceau de fils à l'appareil.*


Line out (see diagram B)
Salida de línea (véase diagrama B)
Sortie de ligne (voir le diagramme B)
Rear ground terminal
Terminal de tierra posterior
Borne arrière de masse
REAR
FRONT
LEFT
RIGHT
LINE OUT
OE
15
Antenna terminal
Terminal de la antena
Borne de l'antenne
15 A fuse
Fusible de 15 A
Fusible 15 A
To external components (see diagram D)
A los componentes externos (véase diagrama D)
Aux appareils extérieurs (voir le diagramme D)
1
2
3
OE
Steering wheel remote input (see diagram C)—only for KD-APD89
Entrada del control remoto del volante de dirección (véase diagrama C)—sólo para KD-APD89
Entrée de la télécommande de volant (voir le diagramme C)
—seulement pour le KD-APD89
Black / Negro / Noir
1
To the metallic body or chassis of the car
A un cuerpo metálico o chasis del automóvil
Vers corps métallique ou châssis de la voiture
*1
Ignition switch
Interruptor de encendido
Interrupteur d'allumage
Yellow*2 / Amarillo*2 / Jaune*2
2
To a live terminal in the fuse block connecting to the car battery (bypassing the ignition switch) (constant 12 V)
A un terminal activo del bloque de fusibles conectado a la batería del automóvil (desviando el interruptor de encendido) (12 V constantes)
A une borne sous tension du porte-fusible connectée à la batterie de la voiture (en dérivant l'interrupteur d'allumage) (12 V constant)
Red / Rojo / Rouge
3
To an accessory terminal in the fuse block
A un terminal accesorio del bloque de fusibles
Vers borne accessoire du porte-fusible
Fuse block / Bloque de fusibles / Porte-fusible
Blue with white stripe / Azul con rayas blancas / Bleu avec bande blanche
4
To the remote lead of other equipment or automatic antenna if any (200 mA max.)
Al conductor remoto de otro equipo o de la antena automática, si hubiere (máx. 200 mA)
Au fil de télécommande de l'autre appareil ou à l'antenne automatique s'il y en a une (200 mA max.)
Orange with white stripe / Naranja con rayas blancas / Orange avec bande blanche
(ILLUMINATION)
5
To car light control switch
Al interruptor de control de las luces del automóvil
À l'interrupteur d'éclairage de la voiture
Brown / Marrón / Marrone
6
To cellular phone system—only for KD-APD89
Al sistema de teléfono celular—sólo para KD-APD89
À un système de téléphone cellulaire—seulement pour le KD-APD89
7
White with black stripe / Blanco con rayas negras / Blanc avec bande noire
White / Blanco / Blanc
Left speaker (front)
Altavoz izquierdo (frontal)
Enceinte gauche (avant)
Gray with black stripe / Gris con rayas negras / Gris avec bande noire
Gray / Gris / Gris
Right speaker (front)
Altavoz derecho (frontal)
Enceinte droit (avant)
Green with black stripe / Verde con rayas negras / Vert avec bande noire
Green / Verde / Vert
Left speaker (rear)
Altavoz izquierdo (trasero)
Enceinte gauche (arrière)
Purple with black stripe / Púrpura con rayas negras / Violet avec bande noire
Purple / Púrpura / Violet
Right speaker (rear)
Altavoz derecho (trasero)
Enceinte droit (arrière)

B Connecting the external amplifiers or subwoofer / Conexión de los amplificadores o subwoofer externos / Connexion d'amplificateurs extérieurs ou d'un caisson de grave

You can connect amplifiers to upgrade your car stereo system.

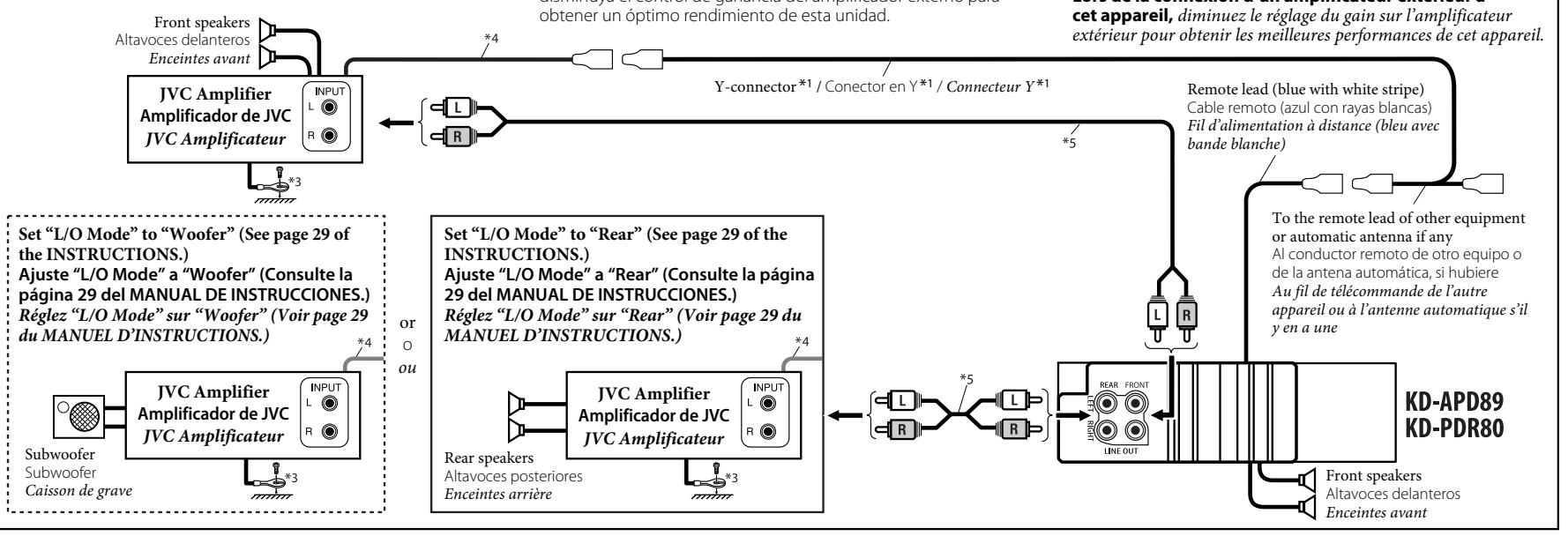
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **For amplifier only:**
  Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.
  – Only for KD-APD89: You can switch off the built-in amplifier and send the audio signals only to the external amplifier(s) to get clear sounds and to prevent internal heat built-up inside the unit. See page 29 of the INSTRUCTIONS (separate volume).
  – Only for KD-APD89: The line output level of this unit is kept high to maintain the hi-fi sounds reproduced from this unit.
  When connecting an external amplifier to this unit, turn down the gain control on the external amplifier to obtain the best performance from this unit.

Usted podrá conectar amplificadores para mejorar el sistema estéreo de su automóvil.

- Conecte el conductor remoto (azul con rayas blancas) al conductor remoto del otro equipo para poderlo controlar a través de esta unidad.
- **Sólo para el amplificador:**
  Desconecte los altavoces de esta unidad y conéctelos al amplificador. Los cables de los altavoces de esta unidad quedan sin usar.
  – Sólo para KD-APD89: Podrá desconectar el amplificador incorporado y enviar las señales de audio solamente al(los) amplificador(es) externo(s) para obtener sonidos nítidos y evitar que se caliente el interior de la unidad. Consulte la página 29 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES (volumen separado).
  – Sólo para KD-APD89: El nivel de salida de línea de esta unidad permanece alto para que corresponda con los sonidos de alta fidelidad reproducidos por esta unidad.
  Cuando conecte un amplificador externo a esta unidad, disminuya el control de ganancia del amplificador externo para obtener un óptimo rendimiento de esta unidad.

Vous pouvez connecter des amplificateurs pour améliorer votre système autoradio.

- *Connectez le fil de commande à distance (bleu avec bande blanche) au fil de commande à distance de l'autre appareil de façon qu'il puisse être commandé via cet appareil.*
- **Pour l'amplificateur seulement:**
  Déconnectez les enceintes de cet appareil et connectez-les à l'amplificateur. Laissez les fils d'enceintes de cet appareil inutilisés.
  – *Uniquement pour le KD-APD89: Vous pouvez mettre hors service l'amplificateur intégré et envoyer les signaux audio uniquement sur un ou plusieurs amplificateurs extérieurs afin d'obtenir un son clair et d'éviter tout échauffement interne de l'autoradio. Voir page 29 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS (volume séparé).*
  – *Uniquement pour le KD-APD89: Le niveau de sortie de ligne de cet appareil est maintenu à un niveau élevé pour maintenir une qualité Hi-Fi pour les sons reproduits par cet appareil.*
  Lors de la connexion d'un amplificateur extérieur à cet appareil, *diminuez le réglage du gain sur l'amplificateur extérieur pour obtenir les meilleures performances de cet appareil.*


Front speakers
Altavoces delanteros
Enceintes avant
*4
JVC Amplifier
Amplificador de JVC
JVC Amplificateur
INPUT
L
R
*3
Y-connector*1 / Conector en Y*1 / Connecteur Y*1
*5
Remote lead (blue with white stripe)
Cable remoto (azul con rayas blancas)
Fil d'alimentation à distance (bleu avec bande blanche)
To the remote lead of other equipment or automatic antenna if any
Al conductor remoto de otro equipo o de la antena automática, si hubiere
Au fil de télécommande de l'autre appareil ou à l'antenne automatique s'il y en a une
Set "L/O Mode" to "Woofer" (See page 29 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)
Ajuste "L/O Mode" a "Woofer" (Consulte la página 29 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES.)
Réglez "L/O Mode" sur "Woofer" (Voir page 29 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS.)
or
o
ou
Subwoofer
Subwoofer
Caisson de grave
Set "L/O Mode" to "Rear" (See page 29 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)
Ajuste "L/O Mode" a "Rear" (Consulte la página 29 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES.)
Réglez "L/O Mode" sur "Rear" (Voir page 29 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS.)
Rear speakers
Altavoces posteriores
Enceintes arrière
REAR
FRONT
LEFT
RIGHT
LINE OUT
KD-APD89
KD-PDR80
Front speakers
Altavoces delanteros
Enceintes avant

*1 Not supplied for this unit.
*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected; otherwise, the power cannot be turned on.
*3 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.
*4 Remote lead
*5 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)

*1 No suministrado con esta unidad.
*2 Antes de comprobar el funcionamiento de esta unidad previa a de la instalación, es necesario conectar este cable, de lo contrario no se podrá conectar la alimentación.
*3 Fije firmemente el cable de tierra a la carrocería metálica o al chasis—a un lugar no cubierto con pintura (si está cubierto con pintura, quítela antes de fijar el cable). De lo contrario, se podrían producir daños en la unidad.
*4 Cable remoto
*5 Cable de señal (no suministrado con esta unidad)

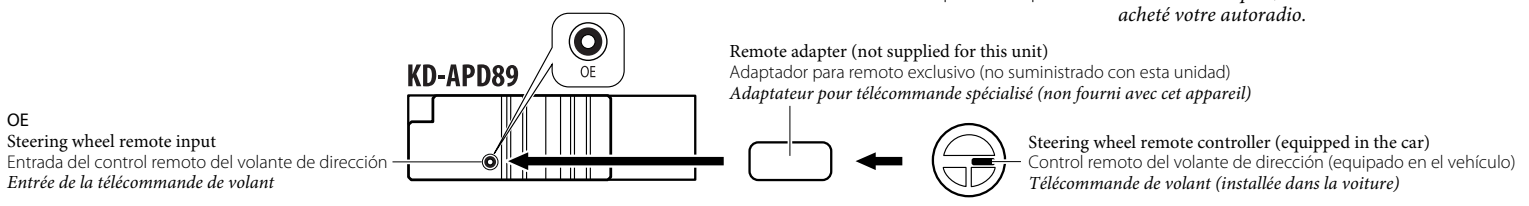
*1 *Non fourni avec cet appareil.*
*2 *Pour vérifier le fonctionnement de cet appareil avant installation, ce fil doit être raccordé, sinon l'appareil ne peut pas être mis sous tension.*
*3 *Attachez solidement le fil de mise à la masse au châssis métallique de la voiture—à un endroit qui n'est pas recouvert de peinture (s'il est recouvert de peinture, enlevez d'abord la peinture avant d'attacher le fil). L'appareil peut être endommagé si cela n'est pas fait correctement.*
*4 *Fil d'alimentation à distance*
*5 *Cordon de signal (non fourni avec cet appareil)*

C Connecting to the steering wheel remote controller (only for KD-APD89) / Conexión al control remoto del volante de dirección (sólo para KD-APD89) / Connexion de la télécommande de volant (seulement pour le KD-APD89)

If your car is equipped with the steering wheel remote controller, you can operate this unit using the controller. For connection, an exclusive remote adapter (not supplied) which matches your car is required. For details, consult the same car audio dealer as where the unit is purchased.

Si su automóvil está equipado con control remoto en el volante de dirección, podrá controlar este receptor utilizando el control remoto. Para la conexión, se requiere un adaptador remoto exclusivo (no suministrado) que sea adecuado para su automóvil. Para los detalles, consulte con el concesionario car audio donde compró el receptor.

Si votre voiture est équipée d'une télécommande de volant, vous pouvez commander cet autoradio en utilisant cette télécommande. Pour la connexion, vous avez besoin d'un adaptateur de télécommande spécialisé (non fourni) correspondant à votre voiture. Pour en savoir plus, consultez le revendeur autoradio où vous avez acheté votre autoradio.


KD-APD89
OE
OE
Steering wheel remote input
Entrada del control remoto del volante de dirección
Entrée de la télécommande de volant
Remote adapter (not supplied for this unit)
Adaptador para remoto exclusivo (no suministrado con esta unidad)
Adaptateur pour télécommande spécialisé (non fourni avec cet appareil)
Steering wheel remote controller (equipped in the car)
Control remoto del volante de dirección (equipado en el vehículo)
Télécommande de volant (installée dans la voiture)

D Connecting the external components / Conexión de los componentes externos / Connexion des appareils extérieurs

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.
HD Radio™ tuner box	KT-HD300

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.
- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
XMDirect™ Universal Tuner Box	Smart Digital Adapter	XMDJVC100
SIRIUS satellite radio	SIRIUS satellite radio interface	KS-SRA100
JVC SIRIUS PnP	SIRIUS radio adapter	KS-U100K
Portable audio player with line input jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm (3/16") stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

When connecting more than one component (maximum: three), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.
- XM Radio and SIRIUS satellite radio cannot be used together.

Cuando conecte componentes externos, consulte, también, los manuales suministrados con los componentes y el adaptador.

PRECAUCION:
Antes de conectar los componentes externos, asegúrese de que la unidad esté apagada.

Puede conectar los siguientes componentes JVC al jack del cambiador de CD.

Componente JVC	Nombre del modelo
Cambiador de CD (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.
Sintonizador HD Radio™	KT-HD300

También puede conectar los siguientes componentes mediante los diversos adaptadores JVC.
- Puede ser necesario comprar los cables de conexión por separado.

Componente	Adaptador	Nombre del modelo
Dispositivo Bluetooth	Adaptador Bluetooth	KS-BTA200
iPod	Adaptador de interfaz para iPod	KS-PD100
Sintonizador universal XMDirecto™	Adaptador digital inteligente	XMDJVC100
Radio por satélite SIRIUS	Interfaz para radio por satélite SIRIUS	KS-SRA100
SIRIUS PnP de JVC	Adaptador para radio SIRIUS	KS-U100K
Reproductor de audio portátil con jacks de entrada por línea	Adaptador de entrada por línea	KS-U57
Reproductor de audio portátil con jack mini estéreo de 3,5 mm (3/16 pulgada)	Adaptador de entrada AUX	KS-U58

Cuando conecte más de un componente (máximo: tres), se recomienda que conecte los componentes en serie, como se explica a continuación.
- No puede utilizar juntas la radio XM y la radio satelital SIRIUS.

Lors de la connexion des appareils extérieurs, référez-vous aussi aux manuels fournis avec les appareils et les adaptateurs.

PRECAUTION:
Avant de connecter les appareils extérieurs, assurez-vous que l'appareil est hors tension.

Vous pouvez connecter les appareils JVC suivants à la prise de changeur de CD.

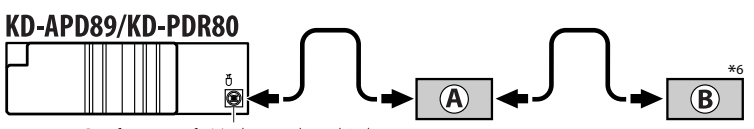
Appareil JVC	Nom du modèle
Changeur de CD (CD-CH)	*CH-X1500, etc.*
Tuner HD Radio™	*KT-HD300*

Vous pouvez aussi connecter les appareils suivants en utilisant divers adaptateurs JVC.
- *Vous pouvez avoir besoin d'acheter certains cordons de connexion séparément.*

Appareil	Adaptateur	Nom du modèle
Périphérique Bluetooth	*Adaptateur Bluetooth*	*KS-BTA200*
iPod	*Adaptateur d'interface pour iPod*	*KS-PD100*
Tuner universel XMDirect™	*Adaptateur numérique intelligent*	*XMDJVC100*
Radio satellite SIRIUS	*Interface pour radio satellite SIRIUS*	*KS-SRA100*
JVC SIRIUS PnP	*Adaptateur radio SIRIUS*	*KS-U100K*
Lecteur audio portable avec prise d'entrée	*Adaptateur d'entrée de ligne*	*KS-U57*
Lecteur audio portable avec mini fiche stéréo de 3,5 mm (3/16 pouces)	*Adaptateur d'entrée auxiliaire*	*KS-U58*

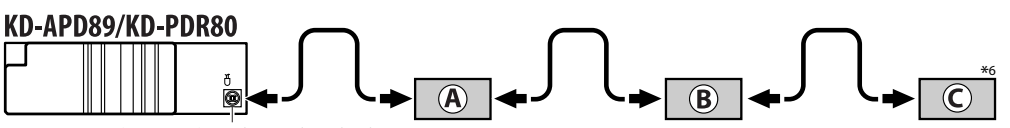
Lors de la connexion de plus d'un appareil (maximum: trois), il est recommandé que vous connectiez les appareils en série comme nous l'expliquons ci-dessous.
- *La radio XM et SIRIUS ne peuvent pas être utilisées en même temps.*

When connecting two components in series / Cuando conecta dos componentes en serie / Lors de la connexion de deux appareils en série



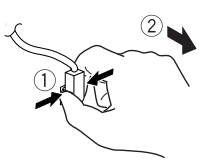
Ⓐ **KT-HD300***7 / **KS-SRA100***7 / **KS-BTA200** / **XMDJVC100**
Ⓑ*6 **CD-CH** / **KS-PD100** / **KS-U57** / **KS-U58** / **KS-U100K**

When connecting three components in series / Cuando conecta tres componentes en serie / Lors de la connexion de trois appareils en série



Ⓐ **KT-HD300***7 / **KS-SRA100***7 / **XMDJVC100**
Ⓑ **KS-BTA200**
Ⓒ*6 **KS-PD100** / **KS-U57** / **KS-U58** / **KS-U100K**

To disconnect the connector / Para desconectar el cable / ***Pour déconnecter le connecteur***



Hold the connector tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
Sostenga el conector con firmeza (①), a continuación, tire de él para sacarlo (②).
Tenez le connecteur solidement (①), puis tirez-le vers l'extérieur (②).

HD Radio™ is a proprietary trademark of iBiquity Digital Corp.
iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

HD Radio™ es una marca comercial de iBiquity Digital Corp.
iPod es una marca comercial de Apple Inc., registrada en los EE.UU. y otros países.

HD Radio™ est une marque de commerce d'iBiquity Digital Corp.
iPod est une marque de commerce d'Apple Inc., enregistrée aux États-Unis et dans les autres pays.

*6 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 29 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
*7 Power cannot be supplied to the component through the CD changer jack. You need to connect the power cord supplied for the component separately.

*6 Para utilizar estos componentes, configure el ajuste de entrada externa correctamente (consulte la página 29 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES).
*7 No puede suministrar energía eléctrica al componente a través del jack del cambiador de CD. Es necesario conectar, aparte, el cable de alimentación suministrado con el componente.

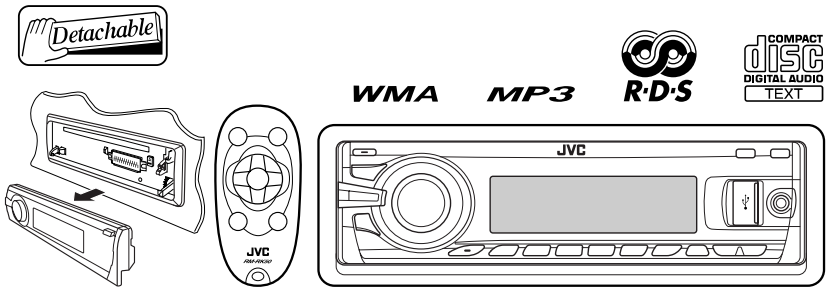
*6 *Pour utiliser ces appareils, réglez l'entrée extérieure correctement (voir page 29 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).*
*7 *L'alimentation ne peut pas être fournie à l'appareil par la prise de changeur de CD. Vous devez connecter séparément le cordon d'alimentation fourni pour l'appareil.*

ENGLISH

FRANÇAIS

CD RECEIVER
RÉCEPTEUR CD

KD-PDR61



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 4.
Pour annuler la démonstration des affichages, référez-vous à la page 4.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Pour l'installation et les raccordements, se référer au manuel séparé.

INSTRUCTIONS
MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS

GET0524-003A
[EX]

ENGLISH

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス1Mレーザー放射が出ます。光学装置で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1 LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG)

This symbol is only valid in the European Union.

Information for Users on Disposal of Old Equipment

This symbol indicates that the product with this symbol should not be disposed as general household waste at its end-of-life. If you wish to dispose of this product, please do so in accordance with applicable national legislation or other rules in your country and municipality. By disposing of this product correctly, you will help to conserve natural resources and will help prevent potential negative effects on the environment and human health.

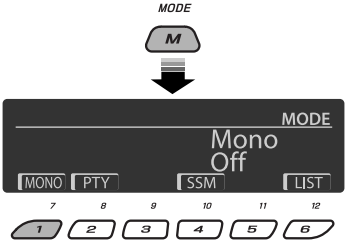
Warning:

If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.

How to use the M MODE and SEL buttons

If you use M MODE or SEL (select), the display and some controls (such as the number buttons, ⏮/⏭ buttons, ▲/▼ buttons, and the control dial) enter the corresponding control mode.

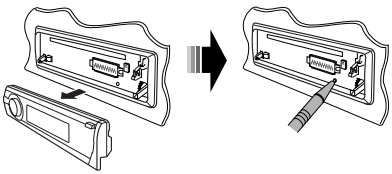
Ex.: When you press number button 1 after pressing M MODE, to operate the FM tuner.



To use these controls for original functions, press M MODE again.

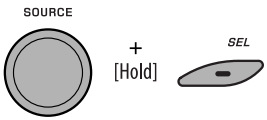
- However, pressing SEL makes the unit enters a different mode.
- Waiting for about 15 seconds (or 30 seconds for Bluetooth sources) without pressing any of these buttons will automatically cancels the control.

How to reset your unit

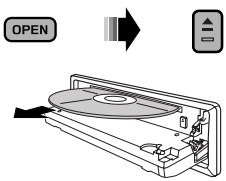


- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased (except the registered Bluetooth device, see pages 14 and 15).*

How to forcibly eject a disc



"Please Eject" appears on the display.



- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*
- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*

For security reasons, a numbered ID card is provided with this unit, and the same ID number is imprinted on the unit's chassis. Keep the card in a safe place, as it will help the authorities to identify your unit if stolen.

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTIONS

Preparation 4

OPERATIONS

Basic operations 5
- Using the control panel 5
- Using the remote controller (RM-RK50) 6

Listening to the radio 7
Disc operations 11
Listening to the USB device 13

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Using the Bluetooth® devices 14
- Using the Bluetooth cellular phone 16
- Using the Bluetooth audio player 18

Listening to the CD changer 19
Listening to the iPod 20
Listening to the DAB tuner 22
Listening to the other external components 25

SETTINGS

Selecting a preset sound mode 26
General settings—PSM 28
Bluetooth settings 33

REFERENCES

More about this unit 34
Troubleshooting 38
Maintenance 43
Specifications 44

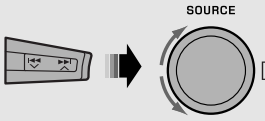
For detaching/attaching the control panel, see page 42.

ENGLISH

Preparation

Cancel the display demonstration and set the clock

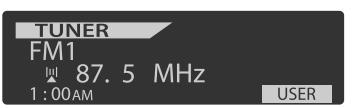
- See also pages 28 and 29.

1		**Turn on the power.**
2	[Hold]	**Enter the PSM settings.**
3	 [Turn]	**Cancel the display demonstrations** Select "Demo," then "Off." **Set the clock** Select "Clock Hr" (hour), then adjust the hour. Select "Clock Min" (minute), then adjust the minute. Select "24H/12H," then "24Hours" or "12Hours."
4		**Finish the procedure.**

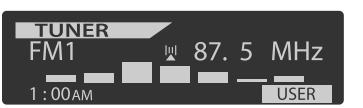
Changing the display information and pattern

When the power is turned off: Check the current clock time

Ex.: When tuner is selected as the source



Source operation display



Audio level meter display
(see "LevelMeter" on page 28)

Caution:

If the temperature inside the car is below 0°C, the movement of animation and text scroll will be halted on the display to prevent the display from being blurred. L.TEMP appears on the display.
When the temperature increases, and the operating temperature is resumed, these functions will start working again.

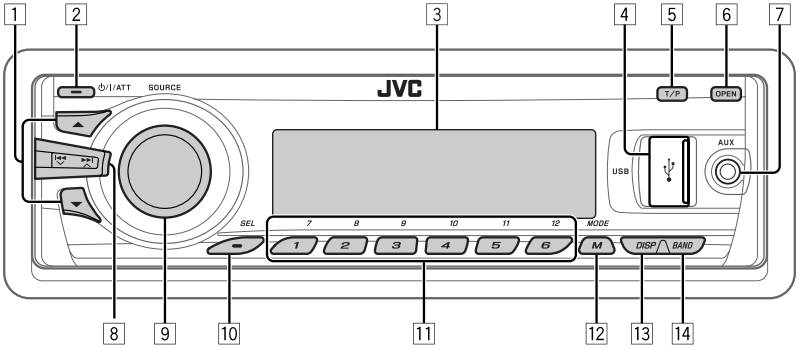
Caution on volume setting:

Digital devices (CD/USB) produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing these digital sources to avoid damaging the speakers by sudden increase of the output level.

This unit is equipped with the steering wheel remote control function.
- See the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume) for connection.

Basic operations

Using the control panel



1 • **DAB**: Select DAB service
  • **CD/USB/CD-CH:** Select folder.
  • **USB-iPod:** Enter the main menu [Hold].
  • **iPod:** Enter the main menu/Pause playback/Confirm selection.
  • **BT-PHONE/BT-AUDIO:** Select a registered device.

2 • Turn on the power.
  • Turn off the power [Hold].
  • Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).

3 Display window

4 USB (Universal Serial Bus) input jack

5 • Activate/deactivate TA Standby Reception.
  • Enter programme type searching mode [Hold].

6 Flip down the control panel.
  • To eject the disc, flip down the control panel then press ⏏ on the unit.

7 AUX (auxiliary) input jack

8 • **TUNER:** Search for station.
  • **DAB**: Search for DAB ensemble.
  • **CD/USB/CD-CH/USB-iPod/iPod:** Select track.
  • **BT-AUDIO:** Reverse skip/forward skip.

9 • Volume control [Turn].
  • Select the source [Press]*1.
  TUNER → **DAB***2 → **CD***2 → **USB***2 (or **USB-iPod**)*2 → **CD-CH***2/**iPod***2 (or **EXT IN**) → **BT-PHONE***2 → **BT-AUDIO***2 → **AUX IN** → (back to the beginning)

10 • Select/adjust the sound mode.
  • Enter the PSM settings [Hold].

11 • **TUNER:** Select preset station.
  • **DAB**: Select preset DAB service.
  • **CD/USB/CD-CH:** Select folder/track/disc (for CD changer).
  • **USB-iPod:** Select preset top menu items.
  • **BT-PHONE:** Dial preset phone number*3.

12 • Enter functions mode.
  • **BT-PHONE:** Activate Voice Dialing [Hold].

13 Change the display information and pattern.

14 • **TUNER:** Select the bands.
  • **USB-iPod/BT-AUDIO:** Start/pause playback.

*1 *Holding SOURCE will enter the Bluetooth menu.*

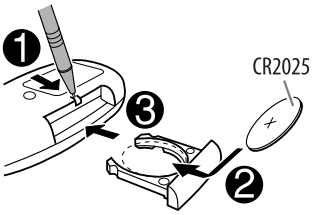
*2 *You cannot select these sources if they are not ready or not connected.*

*3 *For storing preset phone number, see page 18.*

Using the remote controller (RM-RK50)

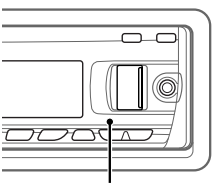
ENGLISH

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



Before using the remote controller:

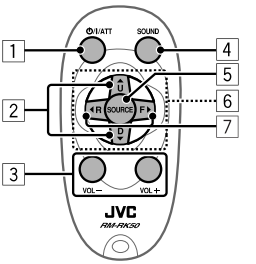
- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).



Remote sensor

Warning (to prevent accidents and damage):

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent.
- Do not leave the remote controller in a place (such as dashboards) exposed to direct sunlight for a long time.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
- Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.



1 • Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
  • Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 • Changes the FM/AM/DAB bands with ▲ U.
  • Changes the preset stations with D ▼.
  • Changes the folder of the MP3/WMA/WAV.
  • While playing an MP3 disc on an MP3-compatible CD changer:
    – Changes the disc if pressed briefly.
    – Changes the folder if pressed and held.
  • While listening to an Apple iPod:

  Connected to KS-PD100:
    – Pauses or resumes playback with D ▼.
    – Enters the main menu with ▲ U. (Now ▲ U/D ▼/◄ R/F ► work as the menu selecting buttons.)*

  * ▲ U : *Returns to the previous menu.*
    D ▼ : *Confirms the selection.*

  Connected to the USB input jack:
    – Enter the main menu if pressed and held.
    – Select the desired menu if pressed briefly.
    – Fast skip in every layer of the main menu if pressed and held.

3 Adjusts the volume level.

4 Selects the sound mode (iEQ: intelligent equalizer).

5 Selects the source.

6 For Bluetooth cellular phone:
  – Answers calls if pressed briefly.
  – Rejects calls if pressed and held.

7 • Searches for stations if pressed briefly.
  • Fast-forwards or reverses the track if pressed and held.
  • Changes the tracks if pressed briefly.

- While listening to an iPod (in menu selecting mode):
  Connected to KS-PD100:
  – Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press D ▼ to confirm the selection.)
  – Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.
  Connected to the USB input jack:
  – Start play back the selected folder directly if pressed and held.
- Reverse skip/forward skip for Bluetooth audio.

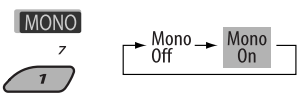
Listening to the radio

1		**Select "TUNER."**
2		**Select the bands.** FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM
3		**Search for a station to listen—Auto Search.** Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" lights up on the display, then press it repeatedly. • When receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength, ST lights up on the display.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1

2



Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.
• MO lights up on the display.

3 **Exit from the setting.**

FM station automatic presetting —SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

You can preset up to six stations for each band.

1 **While listening to a station...**

2

3

Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the selected FM band.

Continued on the next page

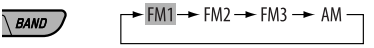
ENGLISH

Manual presetting

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

Using the number buttons

1



2

3

Preset number flashes for a while.

Using the Preset Station list

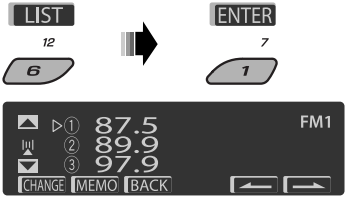
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 **Follow steps 1 and 2 of "Using the number buttons" above.**

- By holding ▲ / ▼, the Preset Station List will also appear (go to step **4**).

2

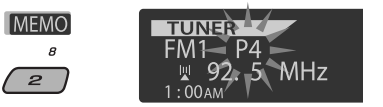
3 **Display the Preset Station List.**



4 **Select the preset number you want to store into.**

- You can move to the lists of the other FM bands by pressing number button 5 ( ) or 6 ( ) repeatedly.

5 **Store the station.**



Listening to the preset station on the Preset Station List

1 **Display the Preset Station List, then select the preset station you want to listen to.**

2 **Change to the selected station.**

The following features are available only for FM RDS stations.

Searching for FM RDS programme —PTY Search

You can search for your favorite programmes being broadcast by selecting the PTY code for your favorite programmes.

- When BACK appears on the display, you can move back to the previous display by pressing number button 3.

• When [ ] / [ ] appears on the display, you can move to the other lists by pressing number button 5 or 6 repeatedly.

1 T/P [Hold]

2 Select "Search."

The three preset PTY codes appears on the display.

3 Select a PTY code.

You can select a PTY code from the 29 preset PTY codes or from the six stored PTY codes.

• To store your favorite programme types, see the following.

4 Start searching for your favorite programme.

If there is a station broadcasting a programme of the same PTY code as you have selected, that station is tuned in.

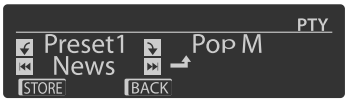
Storing your favorite programme types

You can store six favorite programme types.

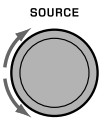
• When BACK appears on the display, you can move back to the previous display by pressing number button 3.

1 T/P [Hold]

2 Select "Memory."



3 Select a preset number ("Preset1"–"Preset6") you want to store into.



[Turn]

4 Select one of the PTY codes.

5 Store the selected PTY code.

Ex.: When "Classics" is selected in step **5**

6 Repeat steps 3 to 5 to store other PTY codes into other preset numbers.

7 Exit from the setting.

Activating TA/PTY Standby Reception

TA Standby Reception

Continued on the next page

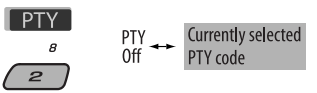
TP either lights up or flashes on the display.
- If TP lights up, the unit temporarily will switch to Traffic Announcement (TA), if available, from any source other than AM.
  The volume changes to the preset TA volume level if the current level is lower than the preset level (see page 30).
- If TP flashes, TA Standby reception is not yet activated. Tune in to another station providing the RDS signals.

To deactivate TA Standby Reception, press T/P again. TP goes off.

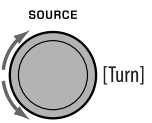
PTY Standby Reception

1

2



3 Select a PTY code.



4 Exit from the setting.

PTY either lights up or flashes on the display.
- If PTY lights up, the unit temporarily will switch to your favorite PTY programme from any source other than AM.
- If PTY flashes, PTY Standby reception is not yet activated. Tune in to another station (or service) providing the RDS signals.

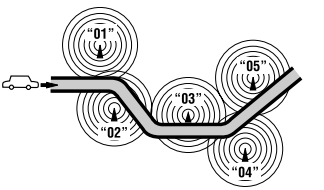
To deactivate PTY Standby Reception, select "Off" in step **2**. PTY goes off.

- When a DAB tuner is connected, TA/PTY Standby Reception also searches for services. (See also page 23.)
- The unit will not switch to Traffic Announcement or PTY programme when a call connection is established through "BT-PHONE."

Tracing the same programme— Network-Tracking Reception

When driving in an area where FM reception is not sufficient enough, this unit automatically tunes in to another FM RDS station of the same network, possibly broadcasting the same programme with stronger signals (see the illustration below).

Programme A broadcasting on different frequency areas (01 – 05)



When shipped from the factory, Network-Tracking Reception is activated.

To change the Network-Tracking Reception setting, see "AF-Regn'l" on page 30.
- When the DAB tuner is connected, refer to "Tracing the same programme—Alternative Frequency Reception (DAB AF)" on page 24.

Automatic station selection— Programme Search

Usually when you press the number buttons, the preset station is tuned in.
If the signals from the FM RDS preset station are not sufficient for good reception, this unit, using the AF data, tunes in to another frequency broadcasting the same programme as the original preset station is broadcasting.
- The unit takes some time to tune in to another station using programme search.
- See also page 30.

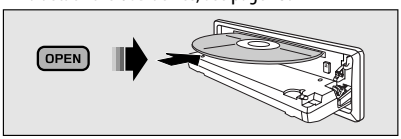
Disc operations

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

Caution:

Make sure to detach the USB device before opening the control panel, as it might block the opening mechanism.

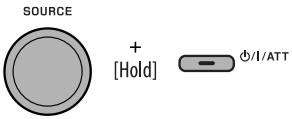
- To detach the USB device, see page 13.



To stop play and eject the disc

- Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.

Prohibiting disc ejection



To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure.

Pressing (or holding) the following buttons allows you to...

	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track
*1	MP3/WMA: Select folder
(Number buttons)*2	Locate particular folder*3 (for MP3/WMA disc) or track directly

*1 *By holding either one of the buttons, you can display the Folder List (see page 12).*

*2 *Press to select number 1 to 6; hold to select number 7 to 12.*

*3 *It is required that folders be assigned with 2-digit numbers at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.*

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks MP3/WMA: Within the same folder
	Repeat Track: Repeat current track **Repeat Folder:** MP3/WMA: Repeat current folder
	Random Folder: MP3/WMA: Randomly play all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Random Disc:** Randomly play all tracks

- You can also cancel the playback mode by selecting "**Off**" or press number button 4 (OFF).

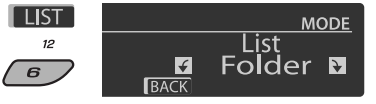
Continued on the next page

Selecting a folder/track on the list (only for MP3/WMA file)

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1

2 Select "LIST."



3 Select the list type.

Folder ↔ File

4 Select an item.

Ex.: When "File" is selected in step **3**

- You can move to the other lists by pressing number button 5 ( ) or 6 ( ) repeatedly.

5 Change to the selected item.

Ⓐ If File List is selected

The list disappears and playback starts.

Ⓑ If Folder List is selected

- If the current folder is selected, File List appears, then repeat steps **4** and **5** Ⓐ to start playback.
- If another folder is selected, playback starts from the 1st file of the selected folder.

Listening to the USB device

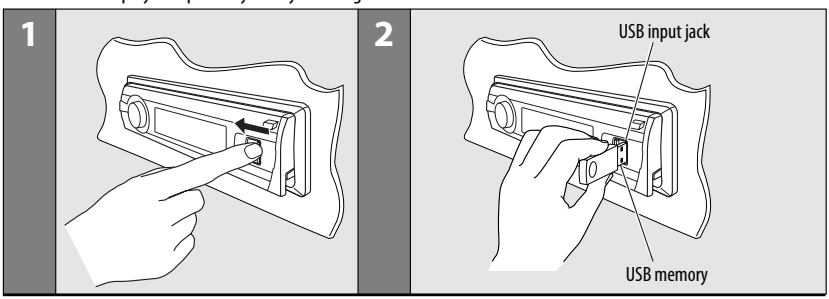
You can connect a USB mass storage class device such as a USB memory, Digital Audio Player*, portable HDD, etc. to the unit.

- You can also connect an Apple iPod to the USB input jack. For details of the operations, see pages 20 and 21.

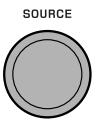
This unit can play MP3/WMA/WMA-DRM10*/WAV tracks stored in a USB device.

* *You can connect both MTP (Media Transfer Protocol) devices and USB mass storage class devices. See also page 36.*

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or detach the USB device.



If a USB device has been attached...



Playback starts from where it has been stopped previously.

- If a different USB device is currently attached, playback starts from the beginning.

To stop play and detach the USB device

Straightly pull it out from the unit.

- Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.

You can operate the USB device in the same way you operate the files on a disc. (See pages 11 and 12.)

- You can listen to WAV files by following the MP3/WMA files operations listed on pages 11 and 12.

Cautions:

- Avoid using the USB device if it might hinder your safety driving.
- Do not pull out and attach the USB device repeatedly while "Reading" is shown on the display.
- Do not start the car engine if a USB device is connected.
- This unit may not be able to play the files depending on the type of USB device.
- Operation and power supply may not work as intended for some USB devices.
- You cannot connect a computer to the USB input terminal of the unit.
- Make sure all important data has been backed up to avoid losing the data.
- Do not leave a USB device in the car, expose to direct sunlight, or high temperature to avoid deformation or cause damages to the device.
- Some USB devices may not work immediately after you turn on the power.
- For more details about USB operations, see page 36.

Using the Bluetooth® devices

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the **Bluetooth Adapter** (KS-BTA200) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to check the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.

- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO").

Registering a Bluetooth device

Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in the Bluetooth menu to register and establish the connection with a device.

- Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO" as the source to operate the Bluetooth menu.

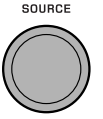
Open	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
Search	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the unit.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

Registering using "Open"

Preparation: Operate the device to turn on its Bluetooth function.

1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Select "NEW."

3 Enter setting menu.

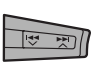
4 Select "Open."

5 Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number) code to the unit.

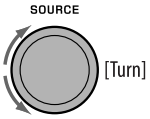
- You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number). [Initial: 0000]
- To enter a PIN code less than 4-digit, firstly delete the initial PIN code (0000) by pressing number button 5 (CLEAR).

* *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*

1 Move to the next (or previous) number position.



2 Select a number or blank space.



3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you finish entering a PIN code.

4 Confirm the entry.

"Open..." flashes on the display.

6 Use the Bluetooth device to search and connect.

On the device to be connected, enter the same PIN code you have just entered for this unit.
"Connected (and device name)" appears on the display.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

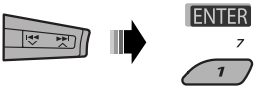
The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use "**Connect**" (or activate "**Auto Connect**") to connect the same device from next time on. (See the following and page 33.)

Connecting a device

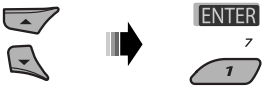
Perform steps **1** – **3** on page 14, then...

1 • **Select "Search" to search for available devices.**
The unit searches and displays the list of the available devices.
If no available device is detected, "Device Not Found" appears.

• **Select "Special" to connect a special device.**
The unit displays the list of the preset devices.



2 Select a device you want to connect.

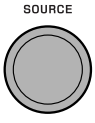


3 • **For available devices...**
1 Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit.
Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code.
2 Use the Bluetooth device to connect.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

• **For special device...**
Use "Open" or "Search" to connect.

Connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device

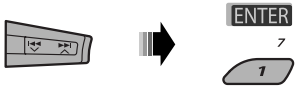
1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Select a registered device you want to connect/disconnect/delete.

3 Enter setting menu.

4 • **Select "Connect" or "Disconnect" to connect/disconnect the selected device.**



Continued on the next page

ENGLISH

- **Select "Delete," then confirm the selection.**

Press number button 3 to select "No" or return to the previous screen.

You can set the unit to connect the Bluetooth device automatically when the unit is turned on. (See "**Auto Connect**" on page 33.)

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone

1	SOURCE	**Select "BT-PHONE."**
2	MODE M	**Enter Bluetooth menu.**
3	—	**Establish the connection with a device, then make a call (or settings using the Bluetooth menu).**

When a call comes in....

The source is automatically changed to "BT-PHONE."

When "Auto Answer" is activated....

The unit answers the incoming calls automatically, see page 33.

- When "Auto Answer" is deactivated, press any button (except ⏻/I/ATT/control dial) to answer the incoming call.

To end the call

Hold any button (except ⏻/I/ATT/control dial).

- You can adjust the microphone volume level (see page 33).

When an SMS comes in....

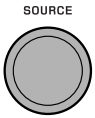
If the cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service) and "Message Info" is set to "Auto" (see page 33), the unit rings and "Received Message" appears on the display to inform you of the message arrival.

Making a call

You can make a call using one of the Dial Menu items.

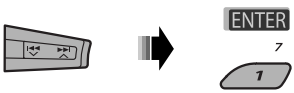
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Select "BT-PHONE."



2 Enter setting menu.

3 Select "Dial Menu."



4 Select the method to make a call.

- **Redial***: Shows the list of the phone numbers you have dialed. Go to the following step.
- **Received***: Shows the list of the received calls. Go to the following step.
- **Phonebook***: Shows the phone book of the connected cellular phone. Go to the following step.
- **Missed***: Shows the list of the missed calls. Go to the following step.
- **Number**: Shows the phone number entry screen. See "How to enter phone number" on the right column.
- **Voice Dial** (Only accessible when the connected cellular phone has the voice recognition system): Speak the name (registered words) you want to call.

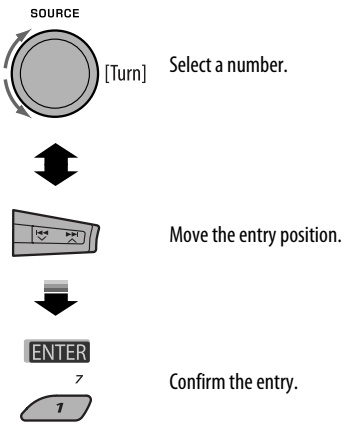
*** Displayed only when your cellular phone is equipped with these functions.**

– If not displayed, try to transfer the phone book memory of the cellular phone to this unit. (Refer to the instruction manual supplied with your cellular phone.)

– With some cellular phones, the phone book memory is transferred automatically.

5 Select the name/phone number you want to call.

How to enter phone number



Continued on the next page

Using voice command

1 MODE M "Say..." appears on the display.

2 Speak the name (registered words) you want to call.

- You can also use voice command from the Dial Menu. Select "Voice Dial" from the Dial Menu.
- If your cellular phone does not support the voice recognition system, "Error" appears on the display.

Presetting the phone number

You can preset up to six phone numbers.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Display the phone number you want to preset by using one of the "Dial Menu" items.

2 Select a phone number.

You can also enter a new phone number (see also "How to enter phone number" on page 17) to store.

3 Select a preset number to store.

[Hold]

To call a preset number

While in Bluetooth phone....

Using the Bluetooth audio player

- Operations and display indications differ depending on their availability on the connected audio player.

SOURCE	**Select "BT-AUDIO."** If playback does not start automatically, operate the Bluetooth audio player to start playback.

	Reverse skip/forward skip
BAND	Start/pause playback
MODE M	Enter setting menu (Device list)

- Refer also to pages 15 and 16 for connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device.

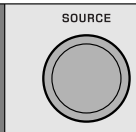
Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>.

Listening to the CD changer

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit. You can connect a CD changer to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

- You can only play conventional CDs (including CD Text) and MP3 discs.

Preparation: Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 30.

1		**Select "CD-CH."**
2		**Select a disc to start playing.** [Press] For selecting disc number 1 – 6. [Hold] For selecting disc number 7 – 12.

	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track
*	MP3: Select folders

* *By holding either one of the buttons, you can display the Disc List (see page 12).*

To select a disc/folder/track on the list

See "Selecting a folder/track on the list (only for MP3/WMA file)" on page 12.

Select "Disc" in step **3** to display the Disc List of the CD changer.

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks MP3: Within the same folder
	Repeat Track: Repeat current track **Repeat Folder:** MP3: Repeat all tracks of current folder **Repeat Disc:** Repeat all tracks of the current disc
	Random Folder: MP3: Randomly play all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder **Random Disc:** Randomly play all tracks of current disc **Random All:** Randomly play all tracks of the discs in the magazine

- You can also cancel the playback mode by selecting "**Off**" or press number button 4 (OFF).

Listening to the iPod

You can play songs in an Apple iPod by:

– Connecting it with the USB cable supplied with your iPod to the USB input jack on the control panel.

– Connecting the Interface adapter for iPod, KS-PD100 (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

Preparation: Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 30.

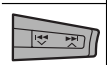
- You can control playback from the unit.
- Disconnecting the iPod will stop playback. Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.
- For details, refer also to the manual supplied for your iPod.

Caution:

- Avoid using the iPod if it might hinder your safety while driving.
- Make sure all important data has been backed up to avoid losing the data.

1	—	**Connect an iPod to the USB input jack or through KS-PD100.** Playback starts automatically from where it had been paused previously. • If an iPod has been connected, press SOURCE to select "USB-iPod" or "iPod" as the playback source.
2		**Select a track.**
3	—	**Adjust the volume and sound as you want. (See pages 26 and 27.)**

Playback control from the unit

Button	For iPod connected through KS-PD100	For iPod connected to the USB input jack
	[Press] Go to the next or previous track [Hold] Fast-forward or reverse the track during playback	[Press] Go to the next or previous track [Hold] Fast-forward or reverse the track during playback
	[Press] Enter main menu when you press ▲. Pause/resume playback when ▼ is pressed.	[Hold] Enter main menu [Press] Go to the top menu of "Playlists," "Artists," "Albums," "Songs," "Podcasts," "Genres," "Composers," or "Audiobooks" in the main menu. • Pressing the number buttons (1 – 6) or holding 1 (7) and 2 (8) can also select the preset top menus.
	—	[Press] Pause/resume playback.

Selecting a track from the menu

No.	Operation	For iPod connected through KS-PD100	For iPod connected to the USB input jack
1	**Enter the main menu.**		[Hold]
2	**Select the desired menu.**	Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Genres ↔ Composers	Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Podcasts ↔ Genres ↔ Composers ↔ Audiobooks
3	**Confirm the selection.**	• By holding ⏮ ∨/⏭ ∧, you can fast skip during song search in the main menu.	• By holding ⏭ ∧, you can start play back the selected item directly. • By holding ⏮ ∨, you can go back to the previous menu. • By holding ▲/▼, you can fast skip in every layer of the main menu.
		• If a track is selected, playback starts automatically. • If the selected item has another layer, you will enter the layer. Repeat steps **2** and **3** until the desired track is played.	

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

RPT 8 2	**Repeat One:** Same as "Repeat One." **Repeat All:** Same as "Repeat All." **Repeat Off:** Cancels.
RND 9 3	**Random Album*:** Same as "Shuffle Albums." **Random Song:** Same as "Shuffle Songs." **Random Off:** Cancels.

* *Functions only if you select "All Albums" or "All" in "Albums" of the main "MENU."*

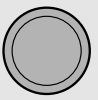
The menu selecting mode will be canceled:

- If no operations are performed for about:
  - 5 seconds for iPod connected through KS-PD100.
  - 15 seconds for iPod connected to the USB input jack.
- When you confirm the selection of a track.

Listening to the DAB tuner

Before operating, connect the **JVC DAB tuner**, KT-DB1000 (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

Preparation: Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 30 .

1		**Select "DAB."**
2		**Select the bands.** → DAB1 → DAB2 → DAB3 →
3		**Searching for an ensemble.** Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" flashes on the display, then press it repeatedly.
4		**Select a service (either primary or secondary) to listen to.**

When surrounding sounds are noisy

Some services provide Dynamic Range Control (DRC) signals together with their regular programme signals. DRC will reinforce the low level sounds to improve your listening.

1

2 Select one of the DRC signals levels (1, 2, or 3).

→ 1 → 2 → 3 → Off (Canceled) →

- As the number increases, the effect becomes stronger.

3 Exit from the setting.

DRC appears on the display.

- DRC will be highlighted only when receiving DRC signals from the tuned service.

Storing DAB services in memory

You can preset six DAB services (primary) for each band.

- When BACK appears on the display, you can move back to the previous display by pressing number button 3.
- When ◄ / ► appears on the display, you can move to the other lists by pressing number button 5 or 6 repeatedly.

Ex.: Storing an ensemble (primary service) into the preset number 4 of the DAB 1 band.

Using the number buttons

1 BAND → DAB1 → DAB2 → DAB3

2 **Select an ensemble (primary service).**

3 10 / 4 [Hold] — Preset number "P4" appears on the display.

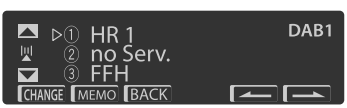
Using the Preset Service List

1 **Follow steps 1 and 2 above.**
- By holding ▲ / ▼, the Preset Service List will appear (go to step **4**).

2 MODE / M

3 **Display the Preset Service List.**

LIST (12 / 6) → ENTER (7 / 1)



4 **Select a preset number you want to store into.**

5 **Store the service.**

MEMO / 8 / 2 — Preset number "P4" appears on the display.

Listening to the preset service using the Preset Service List

1 **Display the Preset Service List, then select the preset DAB service you want to listen to.**

2 **Change to the selected DAB service.**

CHANGE / 7 / 1

Using the standby reception

You can use three types of Standby Reception.
- Road Traffic News Standby Reception—TA Standby Reception
- Announcement Standby Reception
- PTY Standby Reception

Activating/deactivating TA/PTY Standby Reception
- Operations are exactly the same as explained on pages 9 and 10 for FM RDS stations.
- You cannot store PTY codes separately for the DAB tuner and for the FM tuner.

Announcement Standby Reception

Announcement Standby Reception allows the unit to switch temporarily to your favorite service (announcement type).

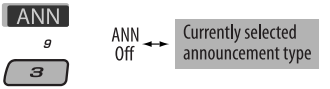
To activate the Announcement Standby Reception and select the announcement type

1 MODE / M

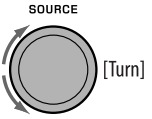
Continued on the next page

2 Activating the Announcement Standby Reception.

Display the currently selected announcement type.



3 Selecting an announcement type.



4 Exit from the setting.

ANN either lights up or flashes on the playback display.

- If ANN lights up, Announcement Standby Reception is activated.
- If ANN flashes, Announcement Standby Reception is not yet activated.
  To activate, tune in to another service providing the related signals. ANN will stop flashing and remain lit.

To deactivate the Announcement Standby Reception

Select "Announce Off" in step **2**.
ANN goes off.

Announcement types

Travel, Warning, News, Weather, Event, Special, Rad Inf (Radio Information), Sports, Finance

Tracing the same programme—Alternative Frequency Reception (DAB AF)

You can keep listening to the same programme by activating the Alternative Frequency Reception.

- **While receiving a DAB service:**
  When driving in an area where a service cannot be received, this unit automatically tunes in to another ensemble or FM RDS station, broadcasting the same programme.
- **While receiving an FM RDS station:**
  When driving in an area where a DAB service is broadcasting the same programme as the FM RDS station is broadcasting, this unit automatically tunes in to the DAB service.

When shipped from the factory, Alternative Frequency Reception is activated.

To deactivate the Alternative Frequency Reception, see page 30.

To show the Dynamic Label Segment (DLS) information

While listening to an ensemble that supports DLS....

Lights up when receiving a service providing Dynamic Label Segment (DLS)—DAB radio text.

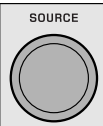
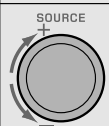
- The DLS display will be temporarily canceled when you operate the unit.

Listening to the other external components

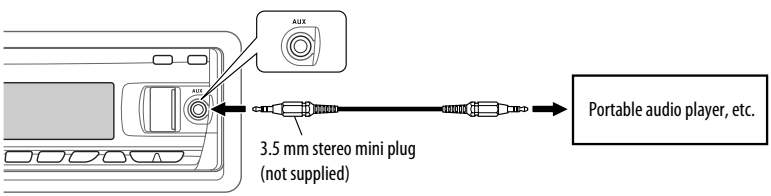
You can connect an external component to:

- CD changer jack on the rear of this unit using the following adapters:
  - – **Line Input Adapter,** KS-U57
  - – **AUX Input Adapter,** KS-U58

  Preparation: Make sure "Ext Input" is selected for the external input setting, see page 30.
- AUX (auxiliary) input jack on the control panel.

1		**Select "EXT IN" or "AUX IN."**
2	—	**Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**
3		**Adjust the volume.**
4	—	**Adjust the sound as you want (see pages 26 and 27).**

Connecting an external component to the AUX input jack



Selecting a preset sound mode

You can select a preset sound mode suitable to the music genre (iEQ: intelligent equalizer).

1		**Enter setting menu.**
2		**Select "EQ."**
3		**Select a sound mode.** USER, ROCK, CLASSIC, POPS, HIP HOP, JAZZ

Preset value setting for each sound mode

Sound mode	Preset value								
	Bass			Mid (mid-range)			Treble		
	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q
USER	60 Hz	00	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	00	–
ROCK	100 Hz	+03	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	–
CLASSIC	80 Hz	+01	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	–
POPS	100 Hz	+02	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	+01	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	–
HIP HOP	60 Hz	+04	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	–02	Q1.0	10.0 kHz	+01	–
JAZZ	80 Hz	+03	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	–

Freq.: Frequency Q: Q-slope

Adjusting the sound

You can adjust the sound characteristics to your preference.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3 or 6.

1

2

EQ ↔ Fad/Bal ↔ Subwoofer* ↔ Loudness ↔ VolAdjust

- For "EQ" setting, see above.

* *Displayed only when "L/O Mode" is set to "Woofer" (see page 30).*

3 Adjust the selected setting item.

Ⓐ **Fad/Bal (Fader/Balance)**

1 Press number button 1 (SELECT) to move to the "Fad/Bal" adjustment display.

2 Adjust the speaker output balance by pressing:

▲ / ▼: between the front and rear speakers. [F6 to R6]

|◄◄ ∨/►►| ∧: between the left and right speakers. [L6 to R6]

Ⓑ **Subwoofer**

1 Press number button 1 (SELECT) to move to the "Subwoofer" adjustment display.

2 Use |◄◄ ∨/►►| ∧ to select a cutoff frequency to the subwoofer.

- OFF: All signals are sent to the subwoofer.
- 80Hz: Frequencies higher than 80 Hz are cut off.
- 120Hz: Frequencies higher than 120 Hz are cut off.
- 160Hz: Frequencies higher than 160 Hz are cut off.

3 Turn the control dial to adjust the subwoofer output level. [0 to 8]

4 Press number button 1 (MORE) to select the subwoofer phase. [0deg (normal) or 180deg (reverse)]

Ⓒ **VolAdjust,** [–5 to +5]

Turn the control dial to adjust the input level of each source (except FM).

Adjust to match the input level of the FM sound level.

- Before making an adjustment, select the source you want to adjust.

Ⓓ **Loudness,** [Off or On]

Turn the control dial to select "Off" or "On." When "On" is selected, low and high frequencies sound are boosted to produce a well-balanced sound at low volume level.

4 Exit from the setting.

Storing your own sound modes

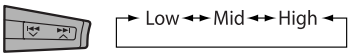
You can adjust the sound modes and store your own adjustments in memory.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 6.

1

2 Select a sound mode.

3 Select a frequency range.



4 Adjust the sound elements of the selected frequency range.

1 Use ▲ / ▼ to adjust the level.

2 Press number button 5 (FREQ), then turn the control dial to select the frequency.

3 Press number button 5 (Q), then turn the control dial to select the quality slope (Q).

Sound elements	Range/selectable items		
	Low	Mid	High
Frequency	60 Hz 80 Hz 100 Hz 200 Hz	500 Hz 1 kHz 1.5 kHz 2.5 kHz	10 kHz 12.5 kHz 15 kHz 17.5 kHz
Level	–6 to +6	–6 to +6	–6 to +6
Q (Q-slope)	Q1.0 Q1.25 Q1.5 Q2.0	Q0.5 Q0.75 Q1.0 Q1.25	Fix

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to adjust the other frequency bands.

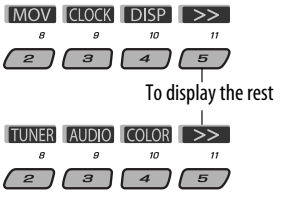
6 Store the adjustments.

General settings—PSM

You can change PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) items listed in the table below and on pages 29 – 31.

1 Enter the PSM settings.

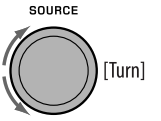
2 Select a PSM category.



3 Select a PSM item.

By pressing either one of the buttons repeatedly, you can also move to the item of the other categories.

4 Adjust the selected PSM item.



5 Repeat steps 2 – 4 to adjust other PSM items if necessary.

6 Finish the procedure.

Category	Indication	Item (__ : Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
MOV (movie)	**Demo** Display demonstration	• **__On__**	: Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [4].
		• **Off**	: Cancels.
	LevelMeter Audio level meter	• **__Meter 1__**	: Select the different level meter patterns.
		• **Meter 2**	• Press DISP to show the selected level meter.
CLOCK	**Clock Disp***1 Clock display	• **On**	: Clock time is shown on the display when the power is turned off.
		• **__Off__**	: Cancels; pressing DISP will show the clock time for about 5 seconds when the power is turned off, [4].

*1 *If the power supply is not interrupted by turning off the ignition key of your car, it is recommended to select "Off" to save the car's battery.*

Category	Indication	Item (__ : Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
CLOCK	**Clock Hr** Hour adjustment	**0 – 23** **(1 – 12AM/ 1 – 12PM)**	: Initial: 0 (0:00AM), [4].
	Clock Min Minute adjustment	**00 – 59**	: Initial: 00 (0:00AM), [4].
	24H/12H Time display mode	• **12Hours** • **24Hours**	: See also page 4 for setting.
	Clock Adj Clock adjustment	• **Auto** • **Off**	: The built-in clock is automatically adjusted using the CT (clock time) data in the RDS signal. : Cancels.
DISP (display)	**Scroll***2 Scroll	• **Once** • **Auto** • **Off**	: For track information: scrolls the track information only once. For DAB text: scrolls the detailed DAB text. : For track information: repeats the scroll (in 5-second intervals). For DAB text: scrolls the detailed DAB text. : For track information: cancels. For DAB text: shows only headline if any. • Pressing DISP for more than one second can scroll the display regardless of the setting.
	Dimmer Dimmer **From – To***3	• **Auto** • **Off** • **On** • **Time Set** —	: Dims the display when you turn on the headlights. : Cancels. : Dims the display and button illumination. : Set the timer for dimmer, [31]. Any hour – Any hour : Initial: 18 – 7.
	Contrast Contrast	**1 – 8** Initial: 5	: Adjust the display contrast to make the display indications clear and legible.
	LCD Type Display type	• **Auto** • **Positive** • **Negative**	: Positive pattern will be selected during the day time*4; while negative pattern will be used during the night time*4. : Positive pattern of the display. : Negative pattern of the display.
	Tag Tag display	• **On** • **Off**	: Shows the tag while playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks. : Cancels.

*2 *Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.*

*3 *Adjustable only when "Dimmer" is set to "Time Set."*

*4 *Depends on the "Dimmer" setting.*

Continued on the next page

Category	Indication	Item (__: Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
TUNER	**AF-Regn'l** Alternative frequency/ regionalization reception	• **AF**	: When the currently received signals become weak, the unit switches to another station or service (the programme may differ from the one currently received), [10].
		• **AF REG**	: When the currently received signals become weak, the unit switches to another station broadcasting the same programme.
		• **Off**	: Cancels (not selectable when "DAB AF" is set to "On").
	TA Volume Traffic announcement volume	• **Volume 0 – Volume 30** • **Volume 0 – Volume 50***5	: Initial: Volume 15
	P-Search Programme search	• **On**	: Activates Programme Search, [10].
		• **Off**	: Cancels.
	IF Band Intermediate frequency band	• **Auto**	: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.)
		• **Wide**	: Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
	DAB AF*6 Alternative frequency reception	• **On**	: Traces the programme among DAB services and FM RDS stations, [24].
		• **Off**	: Cancels.
AUDIO	**Ext Input***7 External input	• **Changer**	: To use a JVC CD changer, [19], JVC DAB tuner, [22], or an Apple iPod, [20].
		• **Ext In**	: To use any other external component, [25].
	Telephone Telephone muting	• **Muting1/ Muting2**	: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using a cellular phone.
		• **Off**	: Cancels. • Playback pauses/mutes while telephone muting is working.
	AudioBooks*8 Speed control of "Audiobook"	• **Normal** • **Faster** • **Slower**	: You can select the playback speed of the "Audiobook" sound file in your iPod. • Initial selected item depends on your iPod setting.
	L/O Mode Line output mode	• **Rear**	: Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting the rear speakers (through an external amplifier).
		• **Woofer**	: Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting a subwoofer (through an external amplifier).

*5 *Depends on the amplifier gain control.*

*6 *Displayed only when DAB tuner is connected.*

*7 *Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—TUNER, DAB, CD, USB, or Bluetooth.*

*8 *Displayed only when an iPod is connected to the USB input jack and playback is controlled from the unit.*

Category	Indication	Item (__ : Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
AUDIO	**Amp Gain** Amplifier gain control	• **High PWR**	: Volume 00 – Volume 50
		• **Low PWR**	: Volume 00 – Volume 30 (Select if the maximum power of each speaker is less than 50 W to prevent damaging the speaker.)
COLOR	**Color Sel** Color selection	Initial: All Source; Color: Pale	: Select your favorite display color for each source (or for all sources), [31, 32].
	Color Set Color setting	—	: Create your own colors, and select them for the display color, [32].
		Day Color	: User color during the day time*9.
		NightColor	: User color during the night time*9.
	Red	**00 — 11**	: Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05
	Green	**00 — 11**	: Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05
	Blue	**00 — 11**	: Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05
	Key Illum Illumination switch	• **Red**	: You can select the button illumination according to your preference.
		• **Green**	

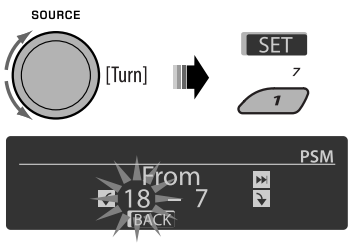
*9 *Depends on the "Dimmer" setting.*

Setting the time for dimmer

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 28.
- In step **2**, select "DISP."
- In step **3**, select "Dimmer."

2 Select "Time Set."



3 Adjust the dimmer start time.

1 Turn the control dial to set the dimmer start time.

2 Press ►►I ^ to select "To." Then, turn the control dial to set the dimmer end time.

4 Exit from the setting.

Changing the display color

You can select your favorite display color for each source (or all sources).

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3 or 6.

Setting the display color

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 28.
- In step **2**, select "COLOR."
- In step **3**, select "Color Sel."

Continued on the next page

2

3 Select a source.

All Source*1 ↔ **CD** ↔ **Changer***3 (or **Ext In***2) ↔ **USB***3 ↔ **FM** ↔ **AM** ↔ **DAB***3 ↔ **iPod***3 ↔ **Aux In** ↔ **BT Phone***3 ↔ **BT Audio***3 ↔ (back to the beginning)

*1 *When you select "All Source," you can use the same color for all the sources.*
*2 *Depends on the "Ext Input" setting, see page 30.*
*3 *Displayed only when the target component is connected.*

4 Select a color.

Pale ↔ **Aqua** ↔ **Sky** ↔ **Sea** ↔ **Leaves** ↔ **Grass** ↔ **Apple** ↔ **Rose** ↔ **Amber** ↔ **Honey** ↔ **Violet** ↔ **Grape** ↔ **Every***4 ↔ **User***5 ↔ (back to the beginning)

*4 *The color changes every 2 seconds.*
*5 *The user-edited colors—"Day Color" and "NightColor" will be applied (see the right column for details).*

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to select the color for each source (except when selecting "All Source" in step 3).

6 Exit from the setting.

Creating your own color—User Color

You can create your own colors—"Day Color" or "NightColor."

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 28.
- In step **2**, select "COLOR."
- In step **3**, select "Color Set."

2 Select "Day Color" or "NightColor."

Day Color ↔ NightColor

3 Select a primary color.

4 Adjust the level (00 to 11) of the selected primary color.

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to adjust other primary colors.

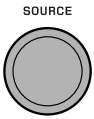
6 Exit from the setting.

Bluetooth settings

You can change the settings listed on the right column according to your preference.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

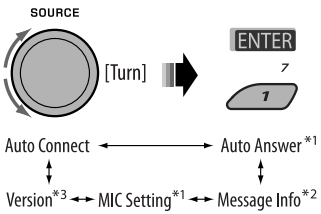
1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Enter the Bluetooth menu.

3 Select "Setting."

4 Select a setting item.

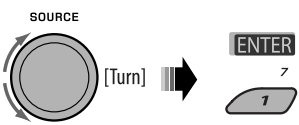


*1 *Displayed only when a Bluetooth phone is connected.*

*2 *Displayed only when a Bluetooth phone is connected and it is compatible with text message.*

*3 *Bluetooth Audio: Shows only "Version."*

5 Change the setting accordingly.



Setting menu (__ : Initial)

Auto Connect

When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with...

Off: No Bluetooth device.
Last: The last connected Bluetooth device.
Order: The available registered Bluetooth device found at first.

Auto Answer

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

On: The unit answers the incoming calls automatically.
Off: The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually.
Reject: The unit rejects all incoming calls.

Message Info

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

Auto: The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "Received Message."
Manual: The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.

MIC setting (microphone setting)

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."
Adjust the built-in microphone volume, [LEVEL 01/02/03].

Version

The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

ENGLISH

More about this unit

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback also starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a track, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously next time you turn on the power.

General

- If you change the source while listening to a disc, playback stops.
  Next time you select "CD" as the playback source, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously.
- After ejecting a disc or removing a USB device, "No Disc" or "No USB" appears and you cannot operate some of the buttons. Insert another disc, reattach a USB device, or press SOURCE to select another playback source.

FM/AM/RDS

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
  – All previously stored stations are erased and the stations are stored anew.
  – Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
  – When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, the previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

FM RDS operations

- Network-Tracking Reception requires two types of RDS signals—PI (Programme Identification) and AF (Alternative Frequency) to work correctly. Without receiving these data correctly, Network-Tracking Reception will not operate correctly.
- If a Traffic Announcement is received by TA Standby Reception, the volume level automatically changes to the preset level (TA Volume) if the current level is lower than the preset level.
- When Alternative Frequency Reception is activated (with AF selected), Network-Tracking Reception is also activated automatically. On the other hand, Network-Tracking Reception cannot be deactivated without deactivating Alternative Frequency Reception. (See page 30.)
- If you want to know more about RDS, visit <http://www.rds.org.uk>.

Disc/USB operations

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

General

- This unit has been designed to reproduce CDs/CD Texts, and CD-Rs (Recordable)/CD-RWs (Rewritable) in audio CD (CD-DA), MP3 and WMA formats.
- When a disc is inserted upside down, "Please Eject" appears on the display. Press OPEN, then ⏏ to eject the disc.
- In this manual, words "track" and "file" are interchangeably used.
- While fast-forwarding or reversing on MP3/WMA/WAV files, you can only hear intermittent sounds.
- File/folder list may not appear correctly if too many hierarchies and folders are used.

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot again to protect it from dust. Playback starts automatically.

Playing a CD-R or CD-RW

- Use only "finalized" CD-Rs or CD-RWs.
- This unit can only play back files of the same type as those which are detected first if a disc includes both audio CD (CD-DA) files and MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some CD-Rs or CD-RWs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, or for the following reasons:
  – Discs are dirty or scratched.
  – Moisture condensation has occurred on the lens inside the unit.
  – The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
  – The files on the CD-R/CD-RW are written using the "Packet Write" method.
  – There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stained, scratched, warped, etc.).
- CD-RWs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of CD-RWs is lower than that of regular CDs.
- Do not use the following CD-Rs or CD-RWs:
  – Discs with stickers, labels, or a protective seal stuck to the surface.
  – Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

  Using these discs under high temperature or high humidity may cause malfunctions or damage to the unit.

Playing an MP3/WMA disc

- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3 files and for WMA files.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files meeting the conditions below:

  MP3:
  – Bit rate: 8 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz, 12 kHz, 11.025 kHz, 8 kHz

  WMA:
  – Bit rate: 32 kbps — 192 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz
  – Disc format: ISO 9660 Level 1/Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names vary depending on the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3> or <.wma>).
  – ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
  – ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
  – Romeo*: up to 128 characters
  – Joliet*: up to 64 characters
  – Windows long file name*: up to 128 characters

* *The parenthetic figure is the maximum number of characters for file/folder names in case the total number of files and folders is 271 or more.*

- This unit can recognize a total of 512 files, 200 folders, and 8 hierarchical levels.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).

  Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in the elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. In particular, this difference becomes noticeable after performing the search function.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded in MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriate format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded in lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.

Continued on the next page

– WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
– Files which have data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks from a USB device

- Connecting a USB device automatically changes the source to "USB."
- While playing from a USB device, the playback order may differ from the one from other players.
- This unit may be unable to play back some USB devices or some files due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- Depending on the shape of the USB devices and connection ports, some USB devices may not be attached properly or the connection might be loose.
- When connecting a USB mass storage class device, refer also to its instructions.
- Connect one USB mass storage class device to the unit at a time. Do not use a USB hub.
- You can connect two types of USB device to this unit—MTP device and Mass storage class device. If you connect an MTP device featuring "USB digital media streaming" to this unit, you can play back the WMA-DRM10 (Digital Right Management) files purchased through the music distributing web sites, through this unit.
- This unit is compatible with the USB Full-Speed.
- If the connected USB device does not have the correct files, "No File" appears.
- This unit can show ID3 Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3 and WMA/WAV Tag.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA/WAV files meeting the conditions below:
  MP3:
  – Bit rate: 32 kbps — 320 kbps (MPEG-1)
    8 kbps — 160 kbps (MPEG-2)
  – Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
  WMA:
  – Bit rate: 5 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 8 kHz — 48 kHz
  – Channel: 1 ch/2 ch
  WAV:
  – Bit rate: Linear PCM at 705 kbps and 1 411 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 44.1 kHz
  – Channel: 1 ch/2 ch
- This unit can play back MP3 files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- The maximum number of characters for folder and file names is 25 characters; 128 characters for MP3/WMA/WAV Tag.
- This unit can recognize a total of 20 000 files and 2 000 folders (999 files per folder). However, the display can shows until 9 999 folders/files.
- The unit cannot recognize a USB mass storage class device whose rating is other than 5 V and exceeds 500 mA.
- USB devices equipped with special functions such as data security functions cannot be used with the unit.
- Do not use a USB device with 2 or more partitions.
- This unit may not recognized a USB device connected through a USB card reader.
- This unit may not play back files in a USB device properly when using a USB extension cord.
- This unit cannot assure proper functions or supply power to all types of USB devices.

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on the circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

appears when the connection is established.

	Appears when the Bluetooth phone is connected.
	Appears when the Bluetooth audio player is connected.
	Appears when the Bluetooth phone and Bluetooth audio player are connected.

Icons for phone types

These icons indicate the phone type set on the device:

: Cellular phone	: General
: Household phone	: Other than above
: Office	: Unknown

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **Connection Error:**
  The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use "Connect" to connect the device again. (See page 15.)
- **Error**
  Try the operation again. If "Error" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **Device Not Found**
  No available Bluetooth device is detected by "Search...".
- **Loading...**
  The unit is updating the phone book and/or text messages.
- **Please Wait...**
  The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **Reset 08**
  Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

DAB

- Only the primary DAB service can be preset even when you store a secondary service.
- A previously preset DAB service is erased when a new DAB service is stored in the same preset number.

iPod

- Controllable iPod (connected through....):
  (A) KS-PD100:
  – iPod with dock connector (3rd Generation)
  – iPod with click wheel (4th Generation)
  – iPod nano (1st & 2nd*1 Generation)
  – iPod mini (1st Generation)
  – iPod video (5th Generation)*2
  – iPod photo
  (B) USB input jack:
  – iPod nano (1st & 2nd Generation)
  – iPod video (5th Generation)

*1 *When you connect the iPod nano to the interface adapter, be sure to disconnect the headphones; otherwise, no sound is heard.*

*2 *It is not possible to browse video files on the "Videos" menu while the iPod is connected to the interface adapter.*

- Update your iPod to the latest software version before using it with this unit.
  – You can check the software version of your iPod under "About" in the "Setting" menu of the iPod.
  – For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- While the unit is being turned on, the iPod is charged through this unit.
- While connecting an iPod with Video:
  – No video shows on the iPod's display or the external monitor (only the audio part is available).
  – It is not possible to browse video files on the "Video" menu. (If you connect the iPod during the playback or pausing of a video file, resuming playback will not work.)
- iPod shuffle and iPhone cannot be used with this unit.
- You can control the iPod from this unit when "JVC" or "√" appears on the iPod display after connection.

Continued on the next page

- The song order displayed on the selection menu of this unit may differ from that of the iPod.
- If playback is stopped, select a track from the selection menu or press BAND to play back the same track again.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly:
  – Some characters such as accented letters cannot be shown correctly on the display.
  – Communication between the iPod and the unit is not stable.
- If the text information includes more than 16 characters, it scrolls on the display. This unit can display up to 128 characters.

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>

General settings—PSM

- "Auto" setting for "Dimmer" may not work correctly on some vehicles, particularly on those having a control dial for dimming.
  In this case, change the "Dimmer" setting to any other than "Auto."
- If "LCD Type" is set to "Auto," the display pattern will change to the "Positive" or "Negative" pattern depending on the "Dimmer" setting.
- If you change the "Amp Gain" setting from "High PWR" to "Low PWR" while the volume level is set higher than "Volume 30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "Volume 30."

Available characters

Upper case

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N
O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	space	

Lower case

a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n
o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	space	

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	space							

Available PTY codes
News, Affairs, Info, Sport, Educate, Drama, Culture, Science, Varied, Pop M (music), Rock M (music), Easy M (music), Light M (music), Classics, Other M (music), Weather, Finance, Children, Social, Religion, Phone In, Travel, Leisure, Jazz, Country, Nation M (music), Oldies, Folk M (music), Document

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).
	• "Connect Error" appears on the display.	Remove the control panel, wipe the connector, then attach it again (see page 42).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the aerial firmly.
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played back. • Tracks on the CD-R/CD-RW cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized CD-R/CD-RW. • Finalize the CD-R/CD-RW with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc can neither be played back nor ejected.	• Unlock the disc (see page 11). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 3).
	• Disc sound is sometimes interrupted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
	• Disc cannot be recognized ("No Disc," "CD Loading Error," or "Eject Error" flashes).	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 3).
	• "Please Eject" appears on the display.	This occurs sometimes due to over-heating. Eject the disc or change to another playback source.
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Use a disc with MP3/WMA tracks recorded in a format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet. • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• A longer readout time is required ("Reading" keeps flashing on the display).	Do not use too many hierarchical levels and folders.
	• Tracks do not play back in the order you have intended them to play.	The playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	• The elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc (eg. variable bit rate).
	• "Please Eject" appears on the display.	Insert a disc that contains MP3/WMA tracks.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	Skip to the next track encoded in an appropriate format or to the next non-copy-protected WMA track.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (capital: A – Z, small: a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols (see page 38).

Continued on the next page

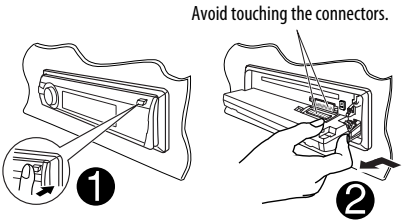
	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
USB device	• Noise is generated.	• The track played back is not a playable file format (MP3/WMA/WAV). Skip to another file. • Do not add the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav> to non-MP3/WMA/WAV tracks.
	• Tracks cannot play back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differs from the one played back using other players.
	• "Reading" keeps flashing on the display.	• Readout time varies depending on the USB device. • Do not use too many hierarchy, folders and empty folders.* • Turn off the power then on again. • Do not pull out or connect the USB device repeatedly while "Reading" is displayed on the display. * *Folder that is phisically empty or folder that contains data but does not contain valid MP3/WMA/WAV track.*
	• "No File" flashes on the display. • "No USB" appears on the display.	Connect a USB device that contains tracks encoded in an appropriate format.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	The track is unplayable.
	• "Read failed" appears on the display.	The connected USB device may be malfunctioning, or may not have been formatted correctly. The files included in the USB device are corrupted.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	For available characters, see page 38.
	• While playing a track, sound is sometimes interrupted.	The tracks have not been properly copied into the USB device. Copy tracks again into the USB device, and try again.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a USB device.	• Turn off, then turn on the unit. • Connect the device again, when the sound is not yet restored.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Bluetooth®	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	The unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio device at a time. While connecting a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device. After the device detects the unit, select "Open..." on the unit to connect the device. (See page 14.)
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. • Select the device name from "Special," then try to connect again. (See page 15.)
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to a place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a Bluetooth audio player.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio player. • Disconnect the device connected for "BT-PHONE." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • Connect the player again, when the sound is not yet restored.
	• The connected audio player cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio player supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile). (Operations depend on the connected audio player.)
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).

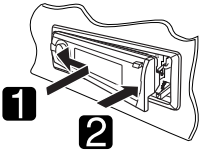
Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
DAB	• "noSIGNAL" appears on the display.	Move to an area with stronger signals.
	• "RESET 8" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly and reset the unit (see page 3).
	• "ANTENANG" appears on the display.	Check the cords and connections.
	• The DAB tuner does not work at all.	Reconnect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly and reset the unit (see page 3).
iPod	• The iPod does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version. • Charge the battery.
	• The sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the display.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Charge the battery.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation (see page 20).
	• No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano.	• Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano. • Update the firmware version of the iPod nano.
	• "No File" appears on the display.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the display.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect it again.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the display.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.

Detaching the control panel



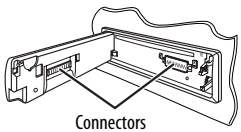
Attaching the control panel



Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors. To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connectors

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture has evaporated.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc in its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs in cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvents (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:

Single CD (8 cm disc)

Warped disc

Sticker and sticker residue

Stick-on label

Unusual shape

- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Tone Control Range:	Bass:	±12 dB (60 Hz, 80 Hz, 100 Hz, 200 Hz)
		Mid-range	±12 dB (500 Hz, 1.0 kHz, 1.5 kHz, 2.5 kHz)
		Treble:	±12 dB (10.0 kHz, 12.5 kHz, 15.0 kHz, 17.5 kHz)
	Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Signal to Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Audio Output Level:	Line-Out Level/Impedance:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
		Subwoofer-Out Level/Impedance:	2.5 V /20 kΩ load (full scale)
	Other Terminals:	CD changer jack, AUX (auxiliary) input jack, USB input jack, Aerial input, Steering wheel remote input	

TUNER SECTION	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	MW: 522 kHz to 1 620 kHz LW: 144 kHz to 279 kHz
	FM Tuner:	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 µV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	30 dB
	MW Tuner:	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 µV/35 dB
	LW Tuner:	Sensitivity:	50 µV

CD PLAYER SECTION	Type:		Compact disc player
	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)	
	Number of Channels:		2 channels (stereo)
	Frequency Response:		5 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Dynamic Range:		96 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		98 dB
	Wow and Flutter:		Less than measurable limit
	MP3 Decoding Format: (MPEG1/2 Audio Layer 3)	Max. Bit Rate:	320 kbps
	WMA (Windows Media® Audio) Decoding Format:	Max. Bit Rate:	320 kbps

USB SECTION	USB Standard:		USB 1.1, USB 2.0
	Data Transfer Rate (Full Speed):	Full Speed:	Max. 12 Mbps
		Low Speed:	Max. 1.5 Mbps
	Compatible Device:		Mass storage class
	Compatible File System:		FAT 32/16/12
	Playable Audio Format:		MP3/WMA/WAV
	Max. Current:		500 mA/5V

GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
	Grounding System:		Negative ground
	Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C
	Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 52 mm × 160 mm
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 58 mm × 12 mm
	Mass (approx.):		1.4 kg (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?
Please reset your unit
Refer to page of How to reset your unit

Vous avez des PROBLÈMES de fonctionnement?
Réinitialisez votre appareil
Référez-vous à la page intitulée Comment réinitialiser votre appareil

Dear Customer,
This apparatus is in conformance with the valid European directives and standards regarding electromagnetic compatibility and electrical safety.

European representative of Victor Company of Japan, Limited is:
JVC Technology Centre Europe GmbH
Company name changed in:
JVC Technical Services Europe GmbH
Postfach 10 05 52
61145 Friedberg
Germany

Cher(e) client(e),
Cet appareil est conforme aux directives et normes européennes en vigueur concernant la compatibilité électromagnétique et à la sécurité électrique.

Représentant européen de la société Victor Company of Japan, Limited:
JVC Technology Centre Europe GmbH
Le nom de la compagnie a changé dans:
JVC Technical Services Europe GmbH
Postfach 10 05 52
61145 Friedberg
Allemagne.

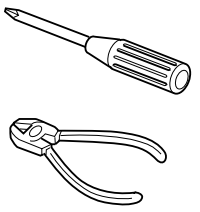
EN, FR

© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0108DTSMDTJEIN

KD-PDR61

Installation/Connection Manual
Manuel d'installation/raccordement



GET0524-010A
[EX]

0108DTSMDTJEIN
EN, FR
© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealers.

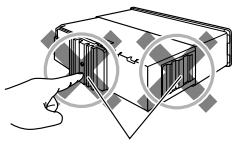
WARNINGS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with a maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amp Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 31 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



Heat sink
Dissipateur de chaleur

FRANÇAIS

Cet appareil est conçu pour fonctionner sur des sources de **courant continu de 12 V à masse NEGATIVE**. *Si votre véhicule n'offre pas ce type d'alimentation, il vous faut un convertisseur de tension, que vous pouvez acheter chez un revendeur d'autoradios JVC.*

AVERTISSEMENTS

Pour éviter tout court-circuit, nous vous recommandons de débrancher la borne négative de la batterie et d'effectuer tous les raccordements électriques avant d'installer l'appareil.

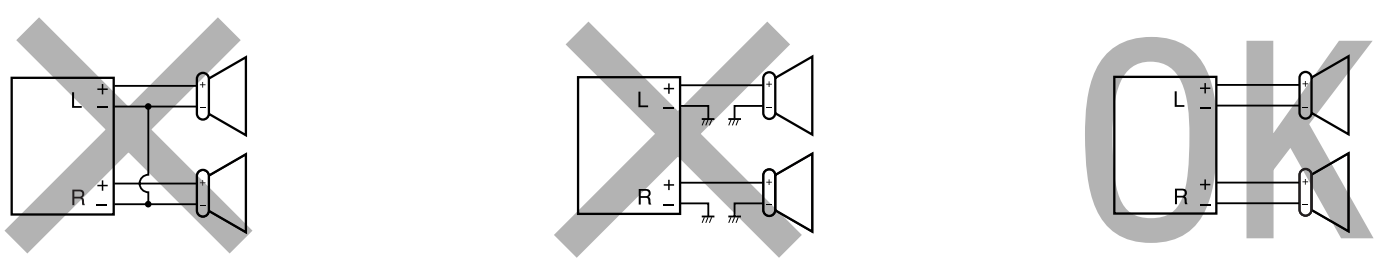
- **Assurez-vous de raccorder de nouveau la mise à la masse de cet appareil au châssis de la voiture après l'installation.**

Remarques:

- *Remplacer le fusible par un de la valeur précisée. Si le fusible saute souvent, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC.*
- *Il est recommandé de connecter des enceintes avec une puissance maximum de plus de 50 W (à l'arrière et à l'avant et avec une impédance de* **4 Ω à 8 Ω**). *Si la puissance maximum est inférieure à 50 W, changez "Amp Gain" pour éviter d'endommager vos enceintes (voir page 31 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).*
- *Pour éviter les courts-circuits, recouvrez les extrémités des fils INUTILISÉS avec une bande isolante.*
- *Le dissipateur de chaleur devient très chaud après usage. Faire attention de ne pas le toucher en retirant cet appareil.*

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.



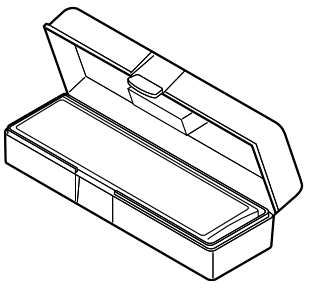
PRECAUTIONS sur l'alimentation et la connexion des enceintes:

- **NE CONNECTEZ PAS les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation à la batterie; sinon, l'appareil serait sérieusement endommagé.**
- *AVANT de connecter les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation aux enceintes, vérifiez le câblage des enceintes de votre voiture.*

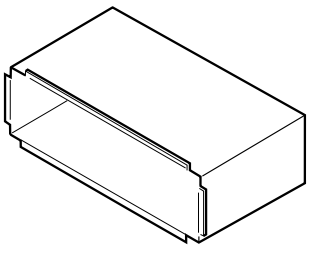
Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer immediately.

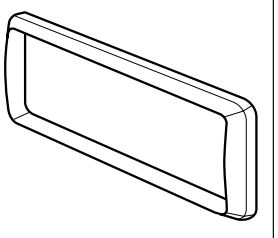
Ⓐ / Ⓑ
Hard case/Control panel
Etui de transport/Panneau de commande



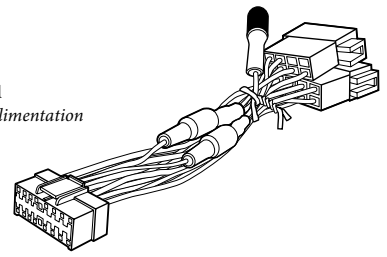
Ⓒ
Sleeve
Manchon



Ⓓ
Trim plate
Plaque d'assemblage



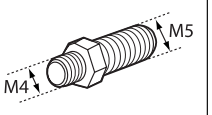
Ⓔ
Power cord
Cordon d'alimentation



Ⓕ
Washer (ø5)
Rondelle (ø5)

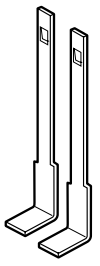
Ⓖ
Lock nut (M5)
Ecrou d'arrêt (M5)

Ⓗ
Mounting bolt
(M4 × 5 mm; M5 × 12.5 mm)
Boulon de montage
(M4 × 5 mm; M5 × 12,5 mm)



Ⓘ
Rubber cushion
Amortisseur en caoutchouc

Ⓙ
Handles
Poignées



Ⓚ
Remote controller
Télécommande

RM-RK50

Ⓛ
Battery
Pile

CR2025

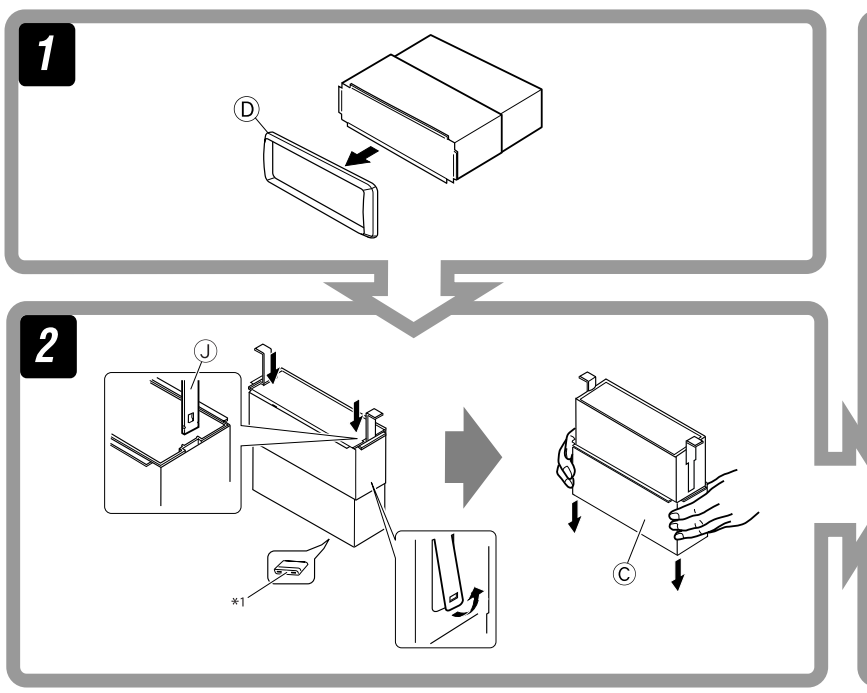
Liste des pièces pour l'installation et raccordement

Les pièces suivantes sont fournies avec cet appareil. Si quelque chose manquait, consultez votre revendeur autoradio JVC immédiatement.

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.



INSTALLATION (MONTAGE DANS LE TABLEAU DE BORD)

L'illustration suivante est un exemple d'installation typique. Si vous avez des questions ou avez besoin d'information sur des kits d'installation, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC ou une compagnie d'approvisionnement.

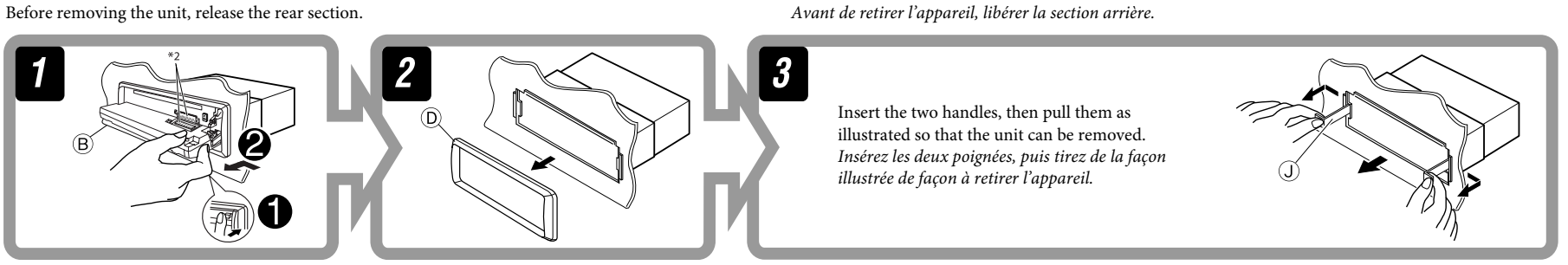
- *Si l'on n'est pas sûr de pouvoir installer correctement cet appareil, le faire installer par un technicien qualifié.*

Removing the unit

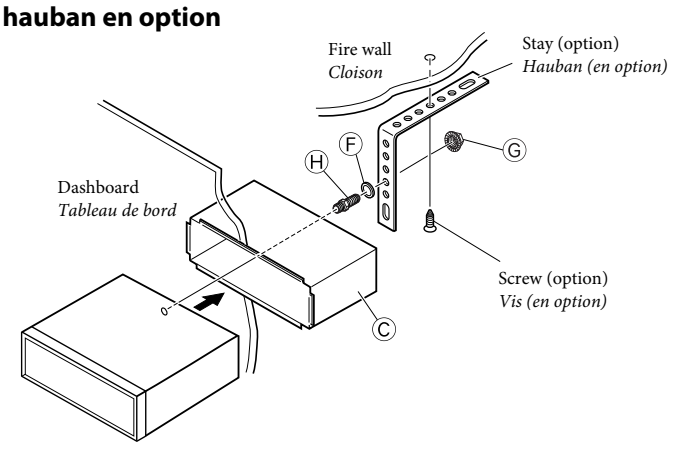
Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

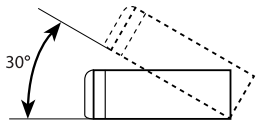
Retrait de l'appareil

Avant de retirer l'appareil, libérer la section arrière.



When using the optional stay / Lors de l'utilisation du hauban en option

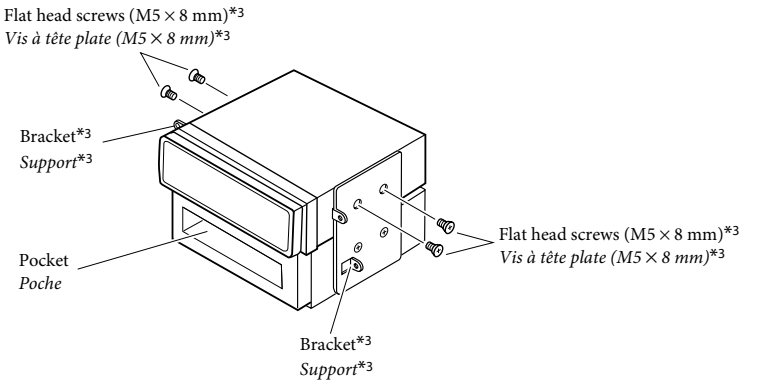




Install the unit at an angle of less than 30°.
Installez l'appareil avec un angle de moins de 30°.

When installing the unit without using the sleeve / Lors de l'installation de l'appareil scans utiliser de manchon

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.
Dans une voiture Toyota, par exemple, retirez d'abord l'autoradio et installez l'appareil à sa place.



Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

Remarque : *Lors de l'installation de l'appareil sur le support de montage, s'assurer d'utiliser des vis d'une longueur de 8 mm. Si des vis plus longues sont utilisées, elles peuvent endommager l'appareil.*

*1 When you stand the unit, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
*2 Avoid touching the connectors.
*3 Not supplied for this unit.

*1 *Lorsque vous mettez l'appareil à la verticale, faire attention de ne pas endommager le fusible situé sur l'arrière.*
*2 *Évitez de toucher les connecteurs.*
*3 *Non fourni avec cet autoradio.*

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?

- **Power cannot be turned on.**
* Is the yellow lead connected?

- **No sound from the speakers.**
* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?

- **Sound is distorted.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?

- **This unit becomes hot.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **This unit does not work at all.**
* Have you reset your unit?

EN CAS DE DIFFICULTES

- **Le fusible saute.**
* *Les fils rouge et noir sont-ils racordés correctement?*

- **L'appareil ne peut pas être mise sous tension.**
* *Le fil jaune est-elle raccordée?*

- **Pas de son des enceintes.**
* *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il court-circuité?*

- **Le son est déformé.**
* *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?*
* *Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?*

- **Interférence avec les sons.**
* *La prise arrière de mise à la terre est-elle connectée au châssis de la voiture avec un cordon court et épais?*

- **Cet appareil devient chaud.**
* *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?*
* *Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?*

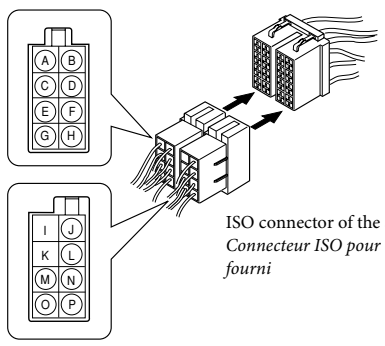
- **Cet appareil ne fonctionne pas du tout.**
* *Avez-vous réinitialisé votre appareil?*

ENGLISH

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A If your car is equipped with the ISO connector / Si votre voiture est équippée d'un connecteur ISO

- Connect the ISO connectors as illustrated.
- *Connectez les connecteurs ISO comme montré sur l'illustration.*



From the car body
De la carrosserie de la voiture

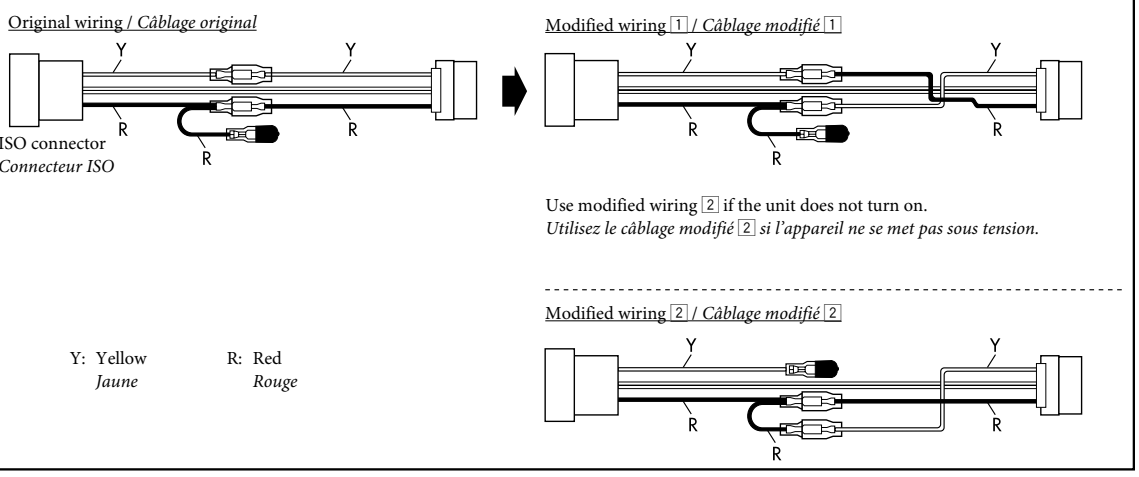
ISO connector of the supplied power cord
Connecteur ISO pour le cordon d'alimentation fourni

View from the lead side
Vue à partir du côté des fils

For some VW/Audi or Opel (Vauxhall) automobiles / Pour certaines automobiles VW/Audi ou Opel (Vauxhall)

You may need to modify the wiring of the supplied power cord as illustrated.
- Contact your authorized car dealer before installing this unit.

Vous aurrez peut-être besoin de modifier le câblage du cordon d'alimentation fourni comme montré sur l'illustration.
- *Contactez votre revendeur automobile autorisé avant d'installer l'appareil.*


Original wiring / Câblage original
Y
R
ISO connector
Connecteur ISO
Modified wiring 1 / Câblage modifié 1
Use modified wiring 2 if the unit does not turn on.
Utilisez le câblage modifié 2 si l'appareil ne se met pas sous tension.
Modified wiring 2 / Câblage modifié 2

Y: Yellow *Jaune*
R: Red *Rouge*

B Connections without using the ISO connector / Connexions sans utiliser le connecteur ISO

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

1 Cut the ISO connector.

2 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.

3 Connect the aerial cord.

4 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

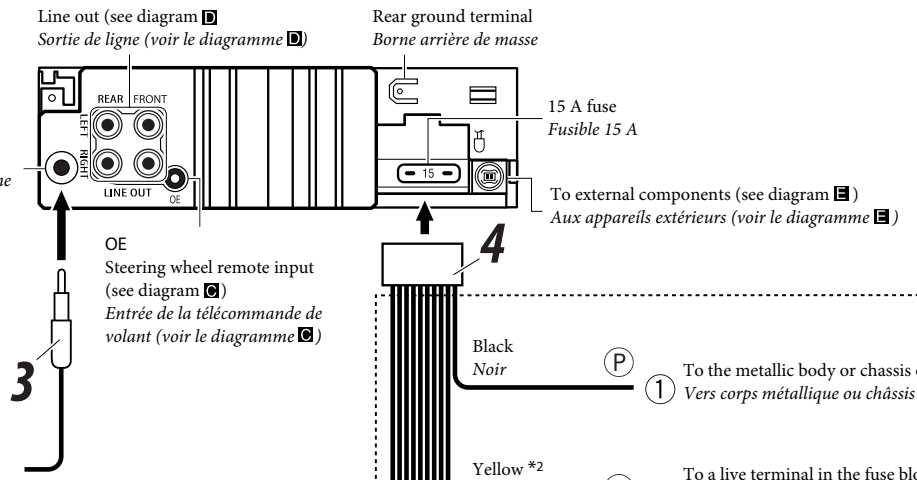
Avant de commencer la connexion: *Vérifiez attentivement le câblage du véhicule. Une connexion incorrecte peut endommager sérieusement l'appareil.*
Le fil du cordon d'alimentation et ceux des connecteurs du châssis de la voiture peuvent être différents en couleur.

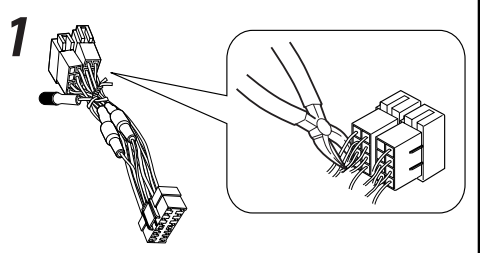
1 *Coupez le connecteur ISO.*

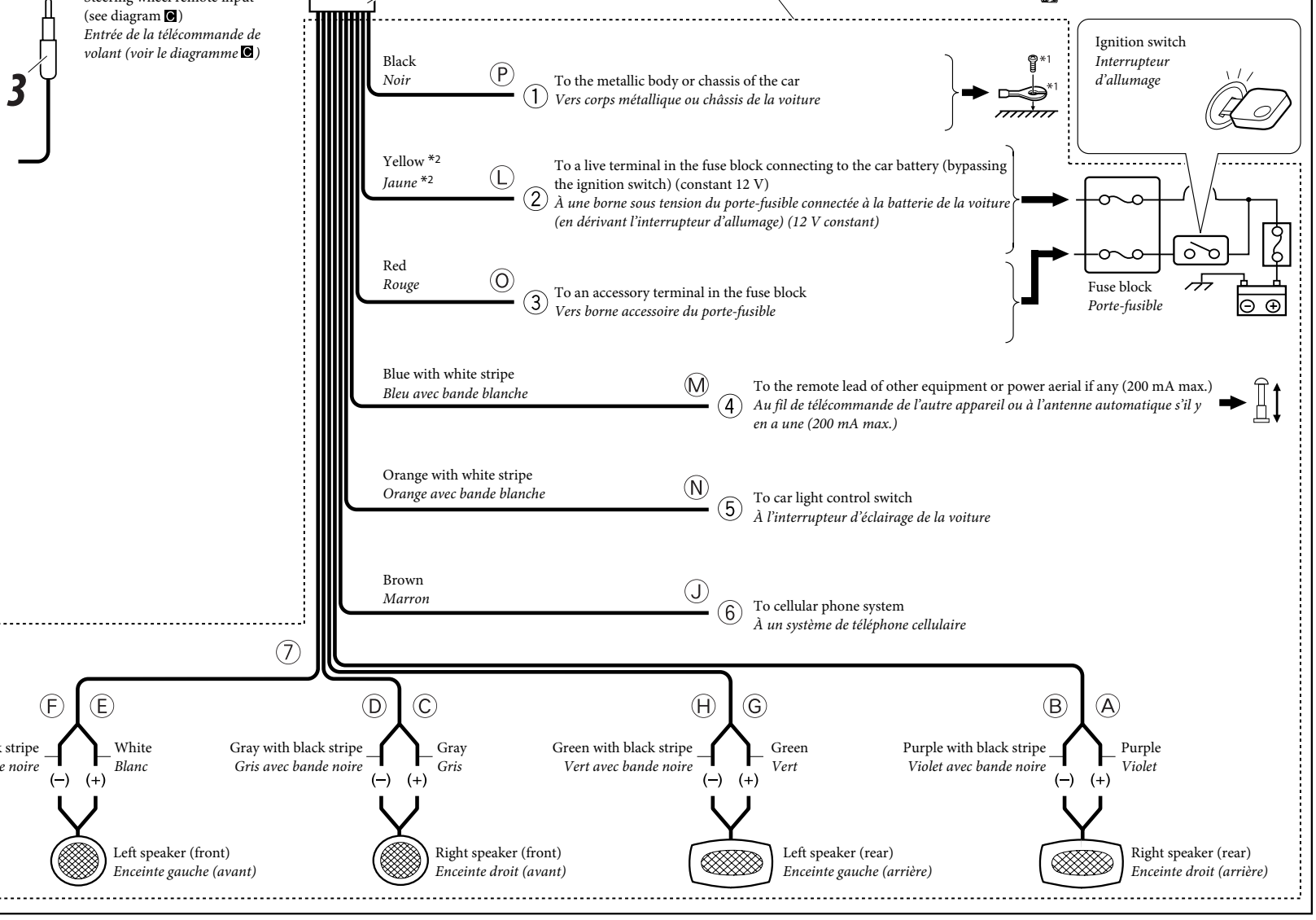
2 *Connectez les fils colorés du cordon d'alimentation dans l'ordre spécifié sur l'illustration ci-dessous.*

3 *Connectez le cordon d'antenne.*

4 *Finalement, connectez le faisceau de fils à l'appareil.*







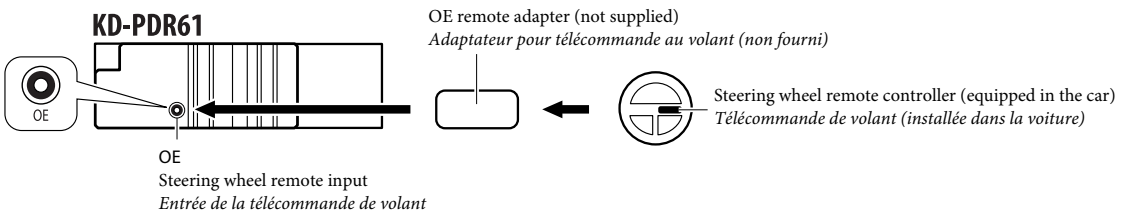
*1 Not supplied for this unit.
*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise the power cannot be turned on.

*1 *Non fourni avec cet autoradio.*
*2 *Pour vérifier le fonctionnement de cet appareil avant installation, ce fil doit être raccordé, sinon l'appareil ne peut pas être mis sous tension.*

C Connecting to the steering wheel remote controller / Connexion de la télécommande de volant

If your car is equipped with the steering wheel remote controller, you can operate this unit using the controller. To do it, a JVC's OE remote adapter (not supplied) which matches with your car is required. Consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer for details.

Si votre voiture est munie d'une télécommande de volant, vous pouvez commander cet autoradio en utilisant la télécommande. Pour le faire, un adaptateur pour télécommande au volant JVC (non fourni) correspondant à votre voiture est nécessaire. Consultez votre revendeur d'autoradio JVC pour les détails.


KD-PDR61
OE
OE remote adapter (not supplied)
Adaptateur pour télécommande au volant (non fourni)
Steering wheel remote controller (equipped in the car)
Télécommande de volant (installée dans la voiture)
OE
Steering wheel remote input
Entrée de la télécommande de volant

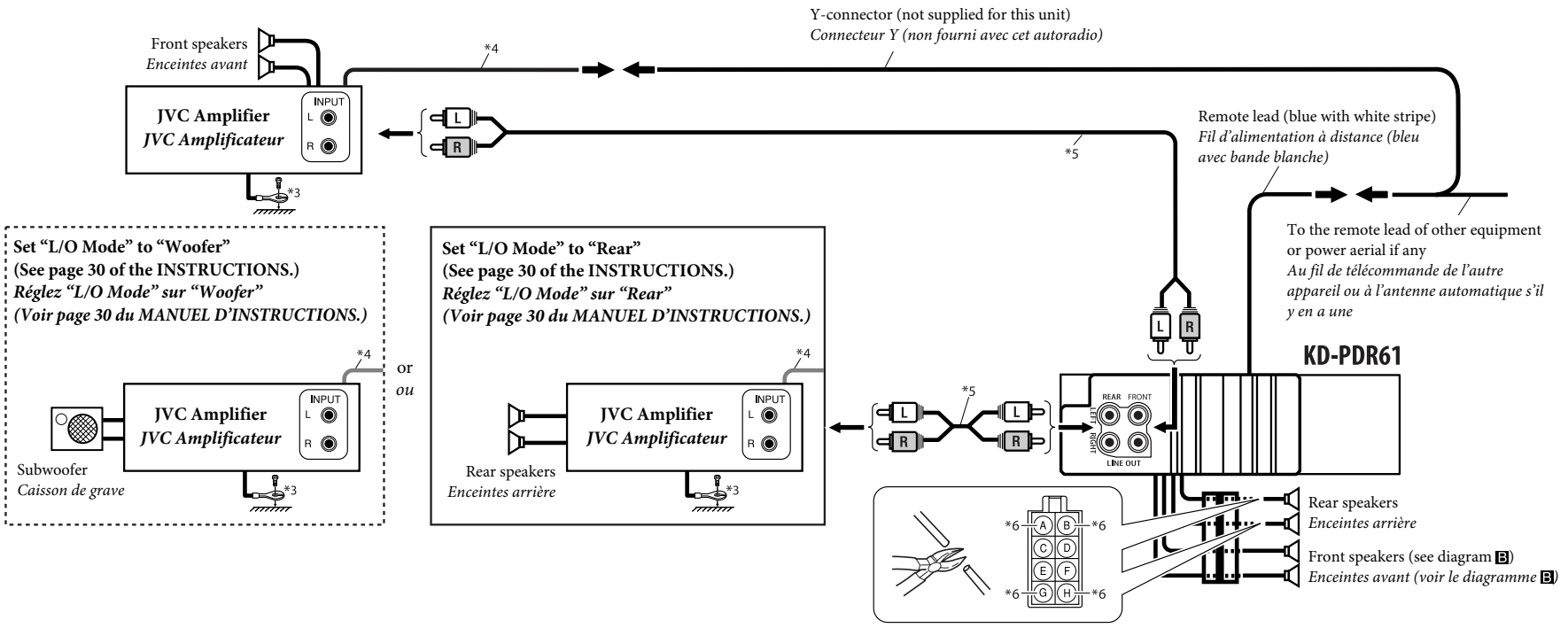
D Connecting the external amplifiers and/or subwoofer / Connexion d'amplificateurs extérieurs et/ou d'un caisson de grave

You can connect amplifiers to upgrade your car stereo system.

- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**

Vous pouvez connecter des amplificateurs pour améliorer votre système stéréo.

- *Connectez le fil de commande à distance (bleu avec bande blanche) au fil de commande à distance de l'autre appareil de façon qu'il puisse être commandé via cet appareil.*
- **Déconnectez les enceintes de cet appareil et connectez-les à l'amplificateur. Laissez les fils d'enceintes de cet appareil inutilisés.**



E Connecting the external components / Connexion des appareils extérieurs

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

Lors de la connexion des appareils extérieurs, référez-vous aussi aux manuels fournis avec les appareils et les adaptateurs.

PRECAUTION:
Avant de connecter les appareils extérieurs, assurez-vous que l'appareil est hors tension.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.
JVC DAB tuner	KT-DB1000

Vous pouvez connecter les appareils JVC suivants à la prise de changeur de CD.

Appareil JVC	Nom du modèle
Changeur de CD (CD-CH)	*CH-X1500, etc.*
Tuner DAB JVC	*KT-DB1000*

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.

- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

Vous pouvez aussi connecter les appareils suivants en utilisant divers adaptateurs JVC.

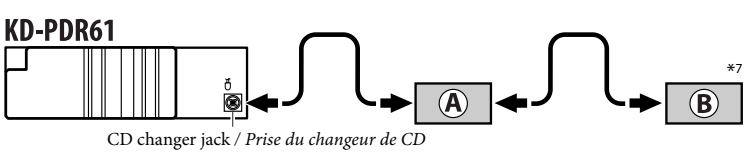
- *Vous pouvez avoir besoin d'acheter certains cordons de connexion séparément.*

Appareil	Adaptateur	Nom du modèle
Périphérique Bluetooth	*Adaptateur Bluetooth*	*KS-BTA200*
iPod	*Adaptateur d'interface pour iPod*	*KS-PD100*
Lecteur audio portable avec prises de sortie de ligne	*Adaptateur d'entrée de ligne*	*KS-U57*
Lecteur audio portable avec mini fiche stéréo de 3,5 mm	*Adaptateur d'entrée auxiliaire*	*KS-U58*

When connecting more than one component (maximum: two), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

Lors de la connexion de plus d'un appareil (maximum: deux), il est recommandé que vous connectiez les appareils en série comme nous l'expliquons ci-dessous.

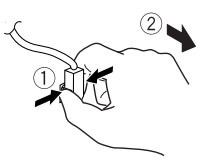
When connecting two components in series /
Lors de la connexion de deux appareils en série



Ⓐ **KS-BTA200**

Ⓑ*7 **CD-CH / KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58**

To disconnect the connector / *Pour déconnecter le connecteur*



Hold the connector tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
Tenez le connecteur solidement (①), puis tirez-le vers l'extérieur (②).

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
iPod est une marque de commerce d'Apple Inc., enregistrée aux États-Unis et dans les autres pays.

*3 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.
*4 Remote lead
*5 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit).
*6 Cut the rear speaker leads of the car's ISO connector and connect them to the amplifier.
*7 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 30 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

*3 *Attachez solidement le fil de mise à la masse au châssis métallique de la voiture—à un endroit qui n'est pas recouvert de peinture (s'il est recouvert de peinture, enlevez d'abord la peinture avant d'attacher le fil). L'appareil peut être endommagé si cela n'est pas fait correctement.*
*4 *Fil d'alimentation à distance*
*5 *Cordon de signal (non fourni avec cet autoradio).*
*6 *Coupez les fils des enceintes arrière du connecteur ISO de la voiture et connectez-les à l'amplificateur.*
*7 *Pour utiliser ces appareils, réglez l'entrée extérieure correctement (voir page 30 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).*

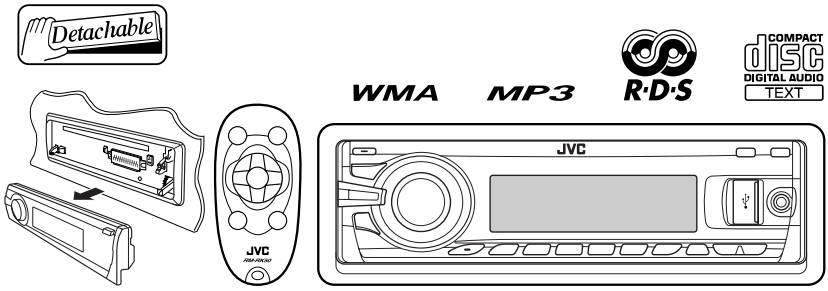
ENGLISH

DEUTSCH

РУССКИЙ

CD RECEIVER
CD-RECEIVER
РЕСИВЕР С ПРОИГРЫВАТЕЛЕМ КОМПАКТ-ДИСКОВ

KD-PDR61



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 4.
Zum Abbrechen der Displaydemonstration siehe Seite 4.
Информацию об отмене демонстрации функций дисплея см. на стр. 4.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Für den Einbau und die Anschlüsse siehe das eigenständige Handbuch.
Указания по установке и выполнению соединений приводятся в отдельной инструкции.

INSTRUCTIONS
BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG
ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ

GET0524-006A
[EY]

ENGLISH

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス 1M レーザー放射が出ます。光学機器で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS II LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG)

This symbol is only valid in the European Union.

Information for Users on Disposal of Old Equipment

This symbol indicates that the product with this symbol should not be disposed as general household waste at its end-of-life. If you wish to dispose of this product, please do so in accordance with applicable national legislation or other rules in your country and municipality. By disposing of this product correctly, you will help to conserve natural resources and will help prevent potential negative effects on the environment and human health.

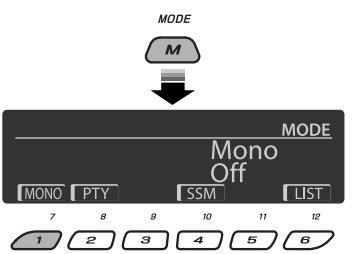
Warning:

If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.

How to use the M MODE and SEL buttons

If you use M MODE or SEL (select), the display and some controls (such as the number buttons, ⏮/⏭ buttons, ▲/▼ buttons, and the control dial) enter the corresponding control mode.

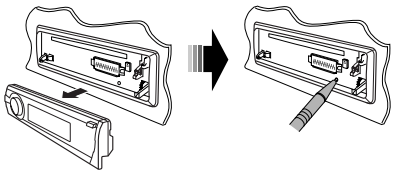
Ex.: When you press number button 1 after pressing M MODE, to operate the FM tuner.



To use these controls for original functions, press M MODE again.

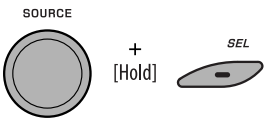
- However, pressing SEL makes the unit enters a different mode.
- Waiting for about 15 seconds (or 30 seconds for Bluetooth sources) without pressing any of these buttons will automatically cancels the control.

How to reset your unit

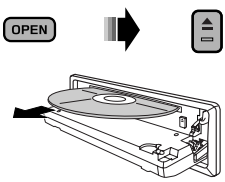


- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased (except the registered Bluetooth device, see pages 14 and 15).*

How to forcibly eject a disc



"Please Eject" appears on the display.



- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*
- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*

For security reasons, a numbered ID card is provided with this unit, and the same ID number is imprinted on the unit's chassis. Keep the card in a safe place, as it will help the authorities to identify your unit if stolen.

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTIONS

Preparation 4

OPERATIONS

Basic operations 5
- Using the control panel 5
- Using the remote controller (RM-RK50) 6

Listening to the radio 7
Disc operations 11
Listening to the USB device 13

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Using the Bluetooth® devices 14
- Using the Bluetooth cellular phone 16
- Using the Bluetooth audio player 18

Listening to the CD changer 19
Listening to the iPod 20
Listening to the DAB tuner 22
Listening to the other external components 25

SETTINGS

Selecting a preset sound mode 26
General settings—PSM 28
Bluetooth settings 33

REFERENCES

More about this unit 34
Troubleshooting 38
Maintenance 43
Specifications 44

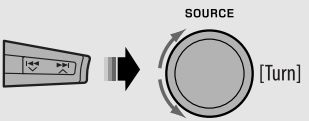
For detaching/attaching the control panel, see page 42.

ENGLISH

Preparation

Cancel the display demonstration and set the clock

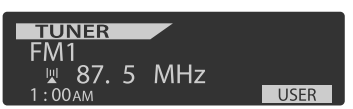
• See also pages 28 and 29.

1		**Turn on the power.**
2	[Hold]	**Enter the PSM settings.**
3	 [Turn]	**Cancel the display demonstrations** Select "Demo," then "Off." **Set the clock** Select "Clock Hr" (hour), then adjust the hour. Select "Clock Min" (minute), then adjust the minute. Select "24H/12H," then "24Hours" or "12Hours."
4		**Finish the procedure.**

Changing the display information and pattern

When the power is turned off: Check the current clock time

Ex.: When tuner is selected as the source



Source operation display

Audio level meter display
(see "LevelMeter" on page 28)

Caution:

If the temperature inside the car is below 0°C, the movement of animation and text scroll will be halted on the display to prevent the display from being blurred. L.TEMP appears on the display.
When the temperature increases, and the operating temperature is resumed, these functions will start working again.

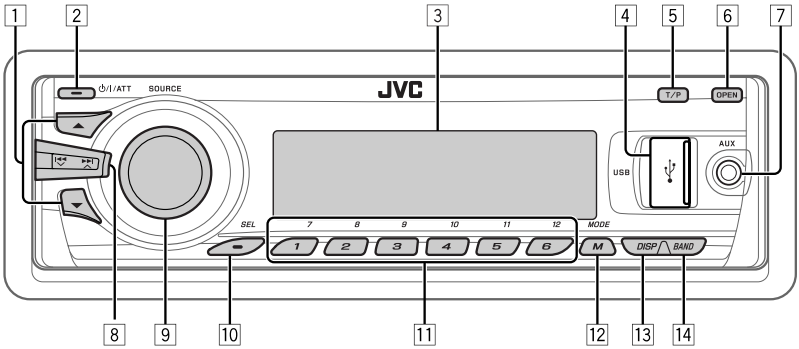
Caution on volume setting:

Digital devices (CD/USB) produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing these digital sources to avoid damaging the speakers by sudden increase of the output level.

This unit is equipped with the steering wheel remote control function.
• See the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume) for connection.

Basic operations

Using the control panel



1 • **DAB**: Select DAB service
- **CD/USB/CD-CH:** Select folder.
- **USB-iPod:** Enter the main menu [Hold].
- **iPod:** Enter the main menu/Pause playback/ Confirm selection.
- **BT-PHONE/BT-AUDIO:** Select a registered device.

2 • Turn on the power.
- Turn off the power [Hold].
- Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).

3 Display window

4 USB (Universal Serial Bus) input jack

5 • Activate/deactivate TA Standby Reception.
- Enter programme type searching mode [Hold].

6 Flip down the control panel.
- To eject the disc, flip down the control panel then press ⏏ on the unit.

7 AUX (auxiliary) input jack

8 • **TUNER:** Search for station.
- **DAB**: Search for DAB ensemble.
- **CD/USB/CD-CH/USB-iPod/iPod:** Select track.
- **BT-AUDIO:** Reverse skip/forward skip.

9 • Volume control [Turn].
- Select the source [Press]*1.
  TUNER → **DAB***2 → **CD***2 → **USB***2 (or **USB-iPod**)*2 → **CD-CH***2/**iPod***2 (or **EXT IN**) → **BT-PHONE***2 → **BT-AUDIO***2 → **AUX IN** → (back to the beginning)

10 • Select/adjust the sound mode.
- Enter the PSM settings [Hold].

11 • **TUNER:** Select preset station.
- **DAB**: Select preset DAB service.
- **CD/USB/CD-CH:** Select folder/track/disc (for CD changer).
- **USB-iPod:** Select preset top menu items.
- **BT-PHONE:** Dial preset phone number*3.

12 • Enter functions mode.
- **BT-PHONE:** Activate Voice Dialing [Hold].

13 Change the display information and pattern.

14 • **TUNER:** Select the bands.
- **USB-iPod/BT-AUDIO:** Start/pause playback.

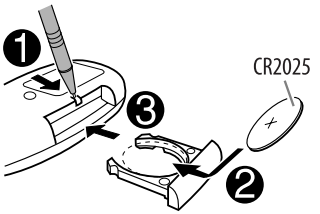
*1 *Holding SOURCE will enter the Bluetooth menu.*

*2 *You cannot select these sources if they are not ready or not connected.*

*3 *For storing preset phone number, see page 18.*

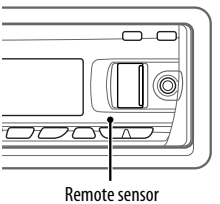
Using the remote controller (RM-RK50)

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



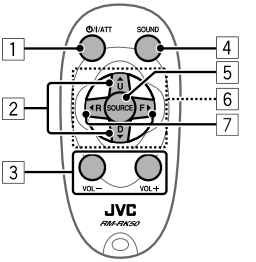
Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).



Warning (to prevent accidents and damage):

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent.
- Do not leave the remote controller in a place (such as dashboards) exposed to direct sunlight for a long time.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
- Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.



1 • Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
  • Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 • Changes the FM/AM/DAB bands with ▲ U.
  • Changes the preset stations with D ▼.
  • Changes the folder of the MP3/WMA/WAV.
  • While playing an MP3 disc on an MP3-compatible CD changer:
    – Changes the disc if pressed briefly.
    – Changes the folder if pressed and held.
  • While listening to an Apple iPod:

  Connected to KS-PD100:
    – Pauses or resumes playback with D ▼.
    – Enters the main menu with ▲ U. (Now ▲ U/D ▼/◄ R/F ► work as the menu selecting buttons.)*

  * ▲ U : *Returns to the previous menu.*
    D ▼ : *Confirms the selection.*

  Connected to the USB input jack:
    – Enter the main menu if pressed and held.
    – Select the desired menu if pressed briefly.
    – Fast skip in every layer of the main menu if pressed and held.

3 Adjusts the volume level.

4 Selects the sound mode (iEQ: intelligent equalizer).

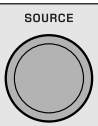
5 Selects the source.

6 For Bluetooth cellular phone:
  – Answers calls if pressed briefly.
  – Rejects calls if pressed and held.

7 • Searches for stations if pressed briefly.
  • Fast-forwards or reverses the track if pressed and held.
  • Changes the tracks if pressed briefly.

- While listening to an iPod (in menu selecting mode):
  Connected to KS-PD100:
  – Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press D ▼ to confirm the selection.)
  – Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.
  Connected to the USB input jack:
  – Start play back the selected folder directly if pressed and held.
- Reverse skip/forward skip for Bluetooth audio.

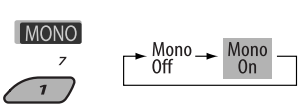
Listening to the radio

1		**Select "TUNER."**
2		**Select the bands.** → FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM →
3		**Search for a station to listen—Auto Search.** Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" lights up on the display, then press it repeatedly. • When receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength, ST lights up on the display.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1

2



Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.
- MO lights up on the display.

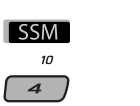
3 **Exit from the setting.**

FM station automatic presetting —SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

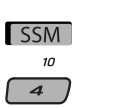
You can preset up to six stations for each band.

1 **While listening to a station...**

2



3



Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the selected FM band.

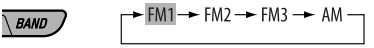
Continued on the next page

Manual presetting

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

Using the number buttons

1



2

3

Preset number flashes for a while.

Using the Preset Station list

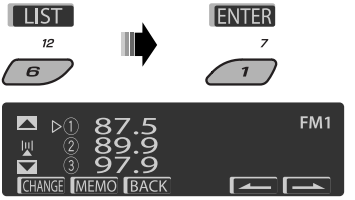
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Follow steps 1 and 2 of "Using the number buttons" above.

- By holding ▲ / ▼, the Preset Station List will also appear (go to step **4**).

2

3 Display the Preset Station List.



4 Select the preset number you want to store into.

- You can move to the lists of the other FM bands by pressing number button 5 ( ) or 6 ( ) repeatedly.

5 Store the station.

Listening to the preset station on the Preset Station List

1 Display the Preset Station List, then select the preset station you want to listen to.

2 Change to the selected station.

The following features are available only for FM RDS stations.

Searching for FM RDS programme —PTY Search

You can search for your favorite programmes being broadcast by selecting the PTY code for your favorite programmes.

- When BACK appears on the display, you can move back to the previous display by pressing number button 3.

• When / appears on the display, you can move to the other lists by pressing number button 5 or 6 repeatedly.

1 T/P [Hold]

2 Select "Search."

The three preset PTY codes appears on the display.

3 Select a PTY code.

You can select a PTY code from the 29 preset PTY codes or from the six stored PTY codes.

• To store your favorite programme types, see the following.

4 Start searching for your favorite programme.

PTY Search

If there is a station broadcasting a programme of the same PTY code as you have selected, that station is tuned in.

Storing your favorite programme types

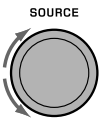
You can store six favorite programme types.

• When BACK appears on the display, you can move back to the previous display by pressing number button 3.

1 T/P [Hold]

2 Select "Memory."

3 Select a preset number ("Preset1"–"Preset6") you want to store into.



[Turn]

4 Select one of the PTY codes.

5 Store the selected PTY code.

Ex.: When "Classics" is selected in step **5**

6 Repeat steps 3 to 5 to store other PTY codes into other preset numbers.

7 Exit from the setting.

Activating TA/PTY Standby Reception

TA Standby Reception

T/P

Continued on the next page

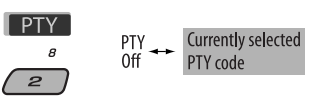
TP either lights up or flashes on the display.
- If TP lights up, the unit temporarily will switch to Traffic Announcement (TA), if available, from any source other than AM.
  The volume changes to the preset TA volume level if the current level is lower than the preset level (see page 30).
- If TP flashes, TA Standby reception is not yet activated. Tune in to another station providing the RDS signals.

To deactivate TA Standby Reception, press T/P again. TP goes off.

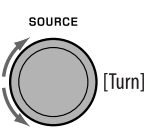
PTY Standby Reception

1

2



3 Select a PTY code.



4 Exit from the setting.

PTY either lights up or flashes on the display.
- If PTY lights up, the unit temporarily will switch to your favorite PTY programme from any source other than AM.
- If PTY flashes, PTY Standby reception is not yet activated. Tune in to another station (or service) providing the RDS signals.

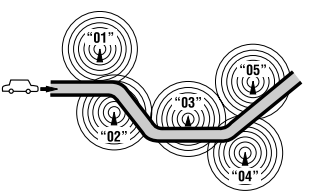
To deactivate PTY Standby Reception, select "Off" in step **2**. PTY goes off.

- When a DAB tuner is connected, TA/PTY Standby Reception also searches for services. (See also page 23.)
- The unit will not switch to Traffic Announcement or PTY programme when a call connection is established through "BT-PHONE."

Tracing the same programme— Network-Tracking Reception

When driving in an area where FM reception is not sufficient enough, this unit automatically tunes in to another FM RDS station of the same network, possibly broadcasting the same programme with stronger signals (see the illustration below).

Programme A broadcasting on different frequency areas (01 – 05)



When shipped from the factory, Network-Tracking Reception is activated.

To change the Network-Tracking Reception setting, see "AF-Regn'l" on page 30.
- When the DAB tuner is connected, refer to "Tracing the same programme—Alternative Frequency Reception (DAB AF)" on page 24.

Automatic station selection— Programme Search

Usually when you press the number buttons, the preset station is tuned in.
If the signals from the FM RDS preset station are not sufficient for good reception, this unit, using the AF data, tunes in to another frequency broadcasting the same programme as the original preset station is broadcasting.
- The unit takes some time to tune in to another station using programme search.
- See also page 30.

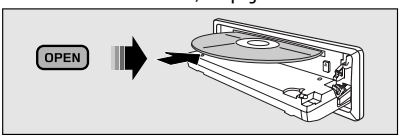
Disc operations

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

Caution:

Make sure to detach the USB device before opening the control panel, as it might block the opening mechanism.

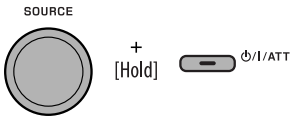
- To detach the USB device, see page 13.



To stop play and eject the disc

- Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.

Prohibiting disc ejection



To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure.

Pressing (or holding) the following buttons allows you to...

	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track
*1	MP3/WMA: Select folder
(Number buttons)*2	Locate particular folder*3 (for MP3/WMA disc) or track directly

*1 *By holding either one of the buttons, you can display the Folder List (see page 12).*

*2 *Press to select number 1 to 6; hold to select number 7 to 12.*

*3 *It is required that folders be assigned with 2-digit numbers at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.*

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks MP3/WMA: Within the same folder
	Repeat Track: Repeat current track **Repeat Folder:** MP3/WMA: Repeat current folder
	Random Folder: MP3/WMA: Randomly play all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Random Disc:** Randomly play all tracks

- You can also cancel the playback mode by selecting "**Off**" or press number button 4 (OFF).

Continued on the next page

Selecting a folder/track on the list (only for MP3/WMA file)

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1

2 **Select "LIST."**

3 **Select the list type.**

Folder ↔ File

4 **Select an item.**

Ex.: When "File" is selected in step **3**

- You can move to the other lists by pressing number button 5 ( ) or 6 ( ) repeatedly.

5 **Change to the selected item.**

Ⓐ If File List is selected

The list disappears and playback starts.

Ⓑ If Folder List is selected

- If the current folder is selected, File List appears, then repeat steps **4** and **5** Ⓐ to start playback.
- If another folder is selected, playback starts from the 1st file of the selected folder.

Listening to the USB device

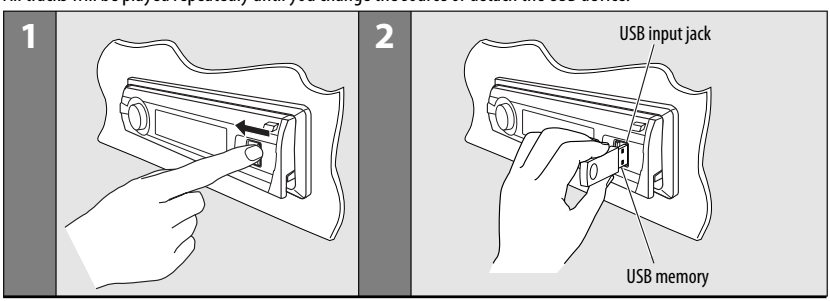
You can connect a USB mass storage class device such as a USB memory, Digital Audio Player*, portable HDD, etc. to the unit.

- You can also connect an Apple iPod to the USB input jack. For details of the operations, see pages 20 and 21.

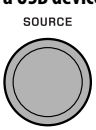
This unit can play MP3/WMA/WMA-DRM10*/WAV tracks stored in a USB device.

* *You can connect both MTP (Media Transfer Protocol) devices and USB mass storage class devices. See also page 36.*

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or detach the USB device.



If a USB device has been attached...



Playback starts from where it has been stopped previously.

- If a different USB device is currently attached, playback starts from the beginning.

To stop play and detach the USB device

Straightly pull it out from the unit.

- Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.

You can operate the USB device in the same way you operate the files on a disc. (See pages 11 and 12.)

- You can listen to WAV files by following the MP3/WMA files operations listed on pages 11 and 12.

Cautions:

- Avoid using the USB device if it might hinder your safety driving.
- Do not pull out and attach the USB device repeatedly while "Reading" is shown on the display.
- Do not start the car engine if a USB device is connected.
- This unit may not be able to play the files depending on the type of USB device.
- Operation and power supply may not work as intended for some USB devices.
- You cannot connect a computer to the USB input terminal of the unit.
- Make sure all important data has been backed up to avoid losing the data.
- Do not leave a USB device in the car, expose to direct sunlight, or high temperature to avoid deformation or cause damages to the device.
- Some USB devices may not work immediately after you turn on the power.
- For more details about USB operations, see page 36.

Using the Bluetooth® devices

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the **Bluetooth Adapter** (KS-BTA200) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to check the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.

- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO").

Registering a Bluetooth device

Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in the Bluetooth menu to register and establish the connection with a device.

- Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO" as the source to operate the Bluetooth menu.

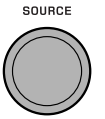
Open	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
Search	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the unit.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

Registering using "Open"

Preparation: Operate the device to turn on its Bluetooth function.

1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Select "NEW."

3 Enter setting menu.

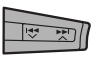
4 Select "Open."

5 Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number) code to the unit.

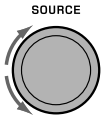
- You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number). [Initial: 0000]
- To enter a PIN code less than 4-digit, firstly delete the initial PIN code (0000) by pressing number button 5 (CLEAR).

* *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*

1 Move to the next (or previous) number position.



2 Select a number or blank space.



3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you finish entering a PIN code.

4 Confirm the entry.

"Open..." flashes on the display.

6 Use the Bluetooth device to search and connect.

On the device to be connected, enter the same PIN code you have just entered for this unit.
"Connected (and device name)" appears on the display.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

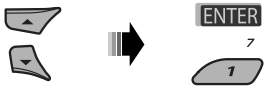
The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use "**Connect**" (or activate "**Auto Connect**") to connect the same device from next time on. (See the following and page 33.)

Connecting a device

Perform steps **1** – **3** on page 14, then...

1
- **Select "Search" to search for available devices.**
  The unit searches and displays the list of the available devices.
  If no available device is detected, "Device Not Found" appears.
- **Select "Special" to connect a special device.**
  The unit displays the list of the preset devices.

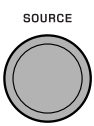
2 Select a device you want to connect.



3
- **For available devices...**
  1 Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit.
  Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code.
  2 Use the Bluetooth device to connect.
  Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.
- **For special device...**
  Use "Open" or "Search" to connect.

Connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device

1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Select a registered device you want to connect/disconnect/delete.

3 Enter setting menu.

4
- **Select "Connect" or "Disconnect" to connect/disconnect the selected device.**

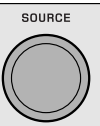
Continued on the next page

- **Select "Delete," then confirm the selection.**

Press number button 3 to select "No" or return to the previous screen.

You can set the unit to connect the Bluetooth device automatically when the unit is turned on. (See "**Auto Connect**" on page 33.)

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone

1		**Select "BT-PHONE."**
2		**Enter Bluetooth menu.**
3	—	**Establish the connection with a device, then make a call (or settings using the Bluetooth menu).**

When a call comes in....

The source is automatically changed to "BT-PHONE."

When "Auto Answer" is activated....

The unit answers the incoming calls automatically, see page 33.

- When "Auto Answer" is deactivated, press any button (except ⏻/I/ATT/control dial) to answer the incoming call.

To end the call

Hold any button (except ⏻/I/ATT/control dial).

- You can adjust the microphone volume level (see page 33).

When an SMS comes in....

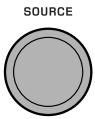
If the cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service) and "Message Info" is set to "Auto" (see page 33), the unit rings and "Received Message" appears on the display to inform you of the message arrival.

Making a call

You can make a call using one of the Dial Menu items.

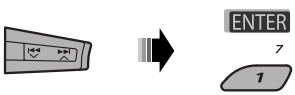
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Select "BT-PHONE."

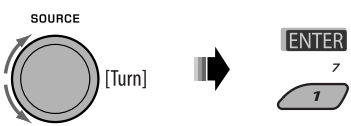


2 Enter setting menu.

3 Select "Dial Menu."



4 Select the method to make a call.



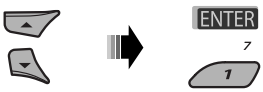
- **Redial***: Shows the list of the phone numbers you have dialed. Go to the following step.
- **Received***: Shows the list of the received calls. Go to the following step.
- **Phonebook***: Shows the phone book of the connected cellular phone. Go to the following step.
- **Missed***: Shows the list of the missed calls. Go to the following step.
- **Number**: Shows the phone number entry screen. See "How to enter phone number" on the right column.
- **Voice Dial** (Only accessible when the connected cellular phone has the voice recognition system): Speak the name (registered words) you want to call.

*** Displayed only when your cellular phone is equipped with these functions.**

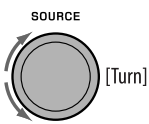
– If not displayed, try to transfer the phone book memory of the cellular phone to this unit. (Refer to the instruction manual supplied with your cellular phone.)

– With some cellular phones, the phone book memory is transferred automatically.

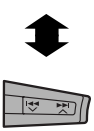
5 Select the name/phone number you want to call.



How to enter phone number



Select a number.



Move the entry position.

Confirm the entry.

Continued on the next page

Using voice command

1 MODE / M — "Say..." appears on the display.

2 Speak the name (registered words) you want to call.

- You can also use voice command from the Dial Menu. Select "Voice Dial" from the Dial Menu.
- If your cellular phone does not support the voice recognition system, "Error" appears on the display.

Presetting the phone number

You can preset up to six phone numbers.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Display the phone number you want to preset by using one of the "Dial Menu" items.

2 Select a phone number.

You can also enter a new phone number (see also "How to enter phone number" on page 17) to store.

3 Select a preset number to store.

[Hold]

To call a preset number

While in Bluetooth phone....

Using the Bluetooth audio player

- Operations and display indications differ depending on their availability on the connected audio player.

SOURCE	**Select "BT-AUDIO."** If playback does not start automatically, operate the Bluetooth audio player to start playback.

	Reverse skip/forward skip
BAND	Start/pause playback
MODE / M	Enter setting menu (Device list)

- Refer also to pages 15 and 16 for connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device.

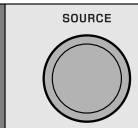
Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>.

Listening to the CD changer

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit. You can connect a CD changer to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

- You can only play conventional CDs (including CD Text) and MP3 discs.

Preparation: Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 30.

1		**Select "CD-CH."**
2		**Select a disc to start playing.** [Press] For selecting disc number 1 – 6. [Hold] For selecting disc number 7 – 12.

	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track
*	MP3: Select folders

* *By holding either one of the buttons, you can display the Disc List (see page 12).*

To select a disc/folder/track on the list

See "Selecting a folder/track on the list (only for MP3/WMA file)" on page 12.

Select "Disc" in step **3** to display the Disc List of the CD changer.

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks MP3: Within the same folder
RPT 8 	**Repeat Track:** Repeat current track **Repeat Folder:** MP3: Repeat all tracks of current folder **Repeat Disc:** Repeat all tracks of the current disc
RND 9 	**Random Folder:** MP3: Randomly play all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder **Random Disc:** Randomly play all tracks of current disc **Random All:** Randomly play all tracks of the discs in the magazine

- You can also cancel the playback mode by selecting "**Off**" or press number button 4 (OFF).

ENGLISH

Listening to the iPod

You can play songs in an Apple iPod by:

– Connecting it with the USB cable supplied with your iPod to the USB input jack on the control panel.
– Connecting the Interface adapter for iPod, KS-PD100 (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

Preparation: Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 30.

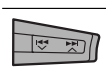
- You can control playback from the unit.
- Disconnecting the iPod will stop playback. Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.
- For details, refer also to the manual supplied for your iPod.

Caution:

- Avoid using the iPod if it might hinder your safety while driving.
- Make sure all important data has been backed up to avoid losing the data.

1	—	**Connect an iPod to the USB input jack or through KS-PD100.** Playback starts automatically from where it had been paused previously. • If an iPod has been connected, press SOURCE to select "USB-iPod" or "iPod" as the playback source.
2		**Select a track.**
3	—	**Adjust the volume and sound as you want. (See pages 26 and 27.)**

Playback control from the unit

Button	For iPod connected through KS-PD100	For iPod connected to the USB input jack
	[Press] Go to the next or previous track [Hold] Fast-forward or reverse the track during playback	[Press] Go to the next or previous track [Hold] Fast-forward or reverse the track during playback
	[Press] Enter main menu when you press ▲. Pause/resume playback when ▼ is pressed.	[Hold] Enter main menu [Press] Go to the top menu of "Playlists," "Artists," "Albums," "Songs," "Podcasts," "Genres," "Composers," or "Audiobooks" in the main menu. • Pressing the number buttons (1 – 6) or holding 1 (7) and 2 (8) can also select the preset top menus.
	—	[Press] Pause/resume playback.

Selecting a track from the menu

No.	Operation	For iPod connected through KS-PD100	For iPod connected to the USB input jack
1	**Enter the main menu.**		[Hold]
2	**Select the desired menu.**	Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Genres ↔ Composers	Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Podcasts ↔ Genres ↔ Composers ↔ Audiobooks
3	**Confirm the selection.**	• By holding I◄◄ ⌄/►►I ⌃, you can fast skip during song search in the main menu.	• By holding ►►I ⌃, you can start play back the selected item directly. • By holding I◄◄ ⌄, you can go back to the previous menu. • By holding ▲/▼, you can fast skip in every layer of the main menu.
		• If a track is selected, playback starts automatically. • If the selected item has another layer, you will enter the layer. Repeat steps **2** and **3** until the desired track is played.	

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

RPT 8 2	**Repeat One:** Same as "Repeat One." **Repeat All:** Same as "Repeat All." **Repeat Off:** Cancels.
RND 9 3	**Random Album*:** Same as "Shuffle Albums." **Random Song:** Same as "Shuffle Songs." **Random Off:** Cancels.

* *Functions only if you select "All Albums" or "All" in "Albums" of the main "MENU."*

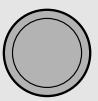
The menu selecting mode will be canceled:

- If no operations are performed for about:
  - 5 seconds for iPod connected through KS-PD100.
  - 15 seconds for iPod connected to the USB input jack.
- When you confirm the selection of a track.

Listening to the DAB tuner

Before operating, connect the **JVC DAB tuner**, KT-DB1000 (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

Preparation: Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 30 .

1		**Select "DAB."**
2		**Select the bands.** → DAB1 → DAB2 → DAB3
3		**Searching for an ensemble.** Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" flashes on the display, then press it repeatedly.
4		**Select a service (either primary or secondary) to listen to.**

When surrounding sounds are noisy

Some services provide Dynamic Range Control (DRC) signals together with their regular programme signals. DRC will reinforce the low level sounds to improve your listening.

1

2 Select one of the DRC signals levels (1, 2, or 3).

→ 1 → 2 → 3 → Off (Canceled)

- As the number increases, the effect becomes stronger.

3 Exit from the setting.

DRC appears on the display.

- DRC will be highlighted only when receiving DRC signals from the tuned service.

Storing DAB services in memory

You can preset six DAB services (primary) for each band.

- When BACK appears on the display, you can move back to the previous display by pressing number button 3.
- When / appears on the display, you can move to the other lists by pressing number button 5 or 6 repeatedly.

Ex.: Storing an ensemble (primary service) into the preset number 4 of the DAB 1 band.

Using the number buttons

1 BAND → DAB1 → DAB2 → DAB3

2 Select an ensemble (primary service).

3 10 (4) [Hold] Preset number "P4" appears on the display.

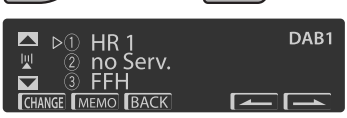
Using the Preset Service List

1 Follow steps 1 and 2 above.
- By holding ▲ / ▼, the Preset Service List will appear (go to step **4**).

2 MODE (M)

3 Display the Preset Service List.

LIST (12) (6) → ENTER (7) (1)



4 Select a preset number you want to store into.

5 Store the service.

MEMO (8) (2) Preset number "P4" appears on the display.

Listening to the preset service using the Preset Service List

1 Display the Preset Service List, then select the preset DAB service you want to listen to.

2 Change to the selected DAB service.

CHANGE (7) (1)

Using the standby reception

You can use three types of Standby Reception.
- Road Traffic News Standby Reception—TA Standby Reception
- Announcement Standby Reception
- PTY Standby Reception

Activating/deactivating TA/PTY Standby Reception
- Operations are exactly the same as explained on pages 9 and 10 for FM RDS stations.
- You cannot store PTY codes separately for the DAB tuner and for the FM tuner.

Announcement Standby Reception

Announcement Standby Reception allows the unit to switch temporarily to your favorite service (announcement type).

To activate the Announcement Standby Reception and select the announcement type

1 MODE (M)

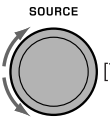
Continued on the next page

2 Activating the Announcement Standby Reception.

Display the currently selected announcement type.

ANN Off ↔ Currently selected announcement type

3 Selecting an announcement type.



4 Exit from the setting.

ANN either lights up or flashes on the playback display.

- If ANN lights up, Announcement Standby Reception is activated.
- If ANN flashes, Announcement Standby Reception is not yet activated.
  To activate, tune in to another service providing the related signals. ANN will stop flashing and remain lit.

To deactivate the Announcement Standby Reception

Select "Announce Off" in step **2**.
ANN goes off.

Announcement types

Travel, Warning, News, Weather, Event, Special, Rad Inf (Radio Information), Sports, Finance

Tracing the same programme—Alternative Frequency Reception (DAB AF)

You can keep listening to the same programme by activating the Alternative Frequency Reception.

- **While receiving a DAB service:**
  When driving in an area where a service cannot be received, this unit automatically tunes in to another ensemble or FM RDS station, broadcasting the same programme.
- **While receiving an FM RDS station:**
  When driving in an area where a DAB service is broadcasting the same programme as the FM RDS station is broadcasting, this unit automatically tunes in to the DAB service.

When shipped from the factory, Alternative Frequency Reception is activated.

To deactivate the Alternative Frequency Reception, see page 30.

To show the Dynamic Label Segment (DLS) information

While listening to an ensemble that supports DLS....

Lights up when receiving a service providing Dynamic Label Segment (DLS)—DAB radio text.

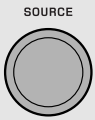
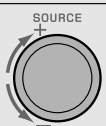
- The DLS display will be temporarily canceled when you operate the unit.

Listening to the other external components

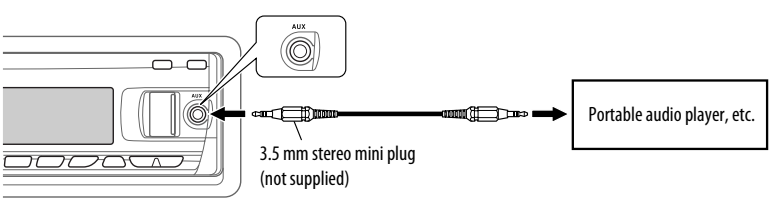
You can connect an external component to:

- CD changer jack on the rear of this unit using the following adapters:
  - **Line Input Adapter,** KS-U57
  - **AUX Input Adapter,** KS-U58

  Preparation: Make sure "Ext Input" is selected for the external input setting, see page 30.
- AUX (auxiliary) input jack on the control panel.

1		**Select "EXT IN" or "AUX IN."**
2	—	**Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**
3		**Adjust the volume.**
4	—	**Adjust the sound as you want (see pages 26 and 27).**

Connecting an external component to the AUX input jack



Selecting a preset sound mode

You can select a preset sound mode suitable to the music genre (iEQ: intelligent equalizer).

1		**Enter setting menu.**
2		**Select "EQ."**
3		**Select a sound mode.** USER, ROCK, CLASSIC, POPS, HIP HOP, JAZZ

Preset value setting for each sound mode

Sound mode	Preset value								
	Bass			Mid (mid-range)			Treble		
	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q
USER	60 Hz	00	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	00	–
ROCK	100 Hz	+03	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	–
CLASSIC	80 Hz	+01	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	–
POPS	100 Hz	+02	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	+01	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	–
HIP HOP	60 Hz	+04	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	–02	Q1.0	10.0 kHz	+01	–
JAZZ	80 Hz	+03	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	–

Freq.: Frequency Q: Q-slope

Adjusting the sound

You can adjust the sound characteristics to your preference.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3 or 6.

1

2

EQ ↔ Fad/Bal ↔ Subwoofer* ↔ Loudness ↔ VolAdjust ↔

- For "EQ" setting, see above.

* *Displayed only when "L/O Mode" is set to "Woofer" (see page 30).*

3 Adjust the selected setting item.

Ⓐ **Fad/Bal (Fader/Balance)**

1 Press number button 1 (SELECT) to move to the "Fad/Bal" adjustment display.

2 Adjust the speaker output balance by pressing:

▲ / ▼: between the front and rear speakers. [F6 to R6]

⏮ ∨ / ⏭ ∧: between the left and right speakers. [L6 to R6]

Ⓑ **Subwoofer**

1 Press number button 1 (SELECT) to move to the "Subwoofer" adjustment display.

2 Use ⏮ ⌄/⏭ ⌃ to select a cutoff frequency to the subwoofer.

- OFF: All signals are sent to the subwoofer.
- 80Hz: Frequencies higher than 80 Hz are cut off.
- 120Hz: Frequencies higher than 120 Hz are cut off.
- 160Hz: Frequencies higher than 160 Hz are cut off.

3 Turn the control dial to adjust the subwoofer output level. [0 to 8]

4 Press number button 1 (MORE) to select the subwoofer phase. [0deg (normal) or 180deg (reverse)]

Ⓒ **VolAdjust,** [–5 to +5]
Turn the control dial to adjust the input level of each source (except FM).
Adjust to match the input level of the FM sound level.

- Before making an adjustment, select the source you want to adjust.

Ⓓ **Loudness,** [Off or On]
Turn the control dial to select "Off" or "On." When "On" is selected, low and high frequencies sound are boosted to produce a well-balanced sound at low volume level.

4 Exit from the setting.

Storing your own sound modes

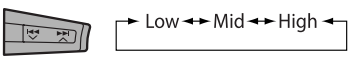
You can adjust the sound modes and store your own adjustments in memory.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 6.

1

2 Select a sound mode.

3 Select a frequency range.



4 Adjust the sound elements of the selected frequency range.

1 Use ▲ / ▼ to adjust the level.

2 Press number button 5 (FREQ), then turn the control dial to select the frequency.

3 Press number button 5 (Q), then turn the control dial to select the quality slope (Q).

Sound elements	Range/selectable items		
	Low	Mid	High
Frequency	60 Hz 80 Hz 100 Hz 200 Hz	500 Hz 1 kHz 1.5 kHz 2.5 kHz	10 kHz 12.5 kHz 15 kHz 17.5 kHz
Level	–6 to +6	–6 to +6	–6 to +6
Q (Q-slope)	Q1.0 Q1.25 Q1.5 Q2.0	Q0.5 Q0.75 Q1.0 Q1.25	Fix

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to adjust the other frequency bands.

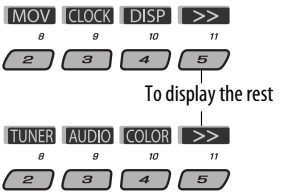
6 Store the adjustments.

General settings—PSM

You can change PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) items listed in the table below and on pages 29 – 31.

1 Enter the PSM settings.

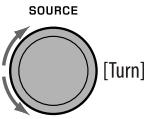
2 Select a PSM category.



3 Select a PSM item.

By pressing either one of the buttons repeatedly, you can also move to the item of the other categories.

4 Adjust the selected PSM item.



5 Repeat steps 2 – 4 to adjust other PSM items if necessary.

6 Finish the procedure.

Category	Indication	Item (__ : Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
MOV (movie)	**Demo** Display demonstration	• **__On__	: Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [4].
		• **Off**	: Cancels.
	LevelMeter Audio level meter	• **__Meter 1__**	: Select the different level meter patterns.
		• **Meter 2**	• Press DISP to show the selected level meter.
CLOCK	**Clock Disp***1 Clock display	• **On**	: Clock time is shown on the display when the power is turned off.
		• **__Off__**	: Cancels; pressing DISP will show the clock time for about 5 seconds when the power is turned off, [4].

*1 *If the power supply is not interrupted by turning off the ignition key of your car, it is recommended to select "Off" to save the car's battery.*

Category	Indication	Item (__ : Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
CLOCK	**Clock Hr** Hour adjustment	**0 – 23** **(1 – 12AM/** **1 – 12PM)**	: Initial: 0 (0:00AM), [4].
	Clock Min Minute adjustment	**00 – 59**	: Initial: 00 (0:00AM), [4].
	24H/12H Time display mode	• **12Hours** • **24Hours**	: See also page 4 for setting.
	Clock Adj Clock adjustment	• **Auto** • **Off**	: The built-in clock is automatically adjusted using the CT (clock time) data in the RDS signal. : Cancels.
DISP (display)	**Scroll***2 Scroll	• **Once** • **Auto** • **Off**	: For track information: scrolls the track information only once. For DAB text: scrolls the detailed DAB text. : For track information: repeats the scroll (in 5-second intervals). For DAB text: scrolls the detailed DAB text. : For track information: cancels. For DAB text: shows only headline if any. • Pressing DISP for more than one second can scroll the display regardless of the setting.
	Dimmer Dimmer	• **Auto** • **Off** • **On** • **Time Set**	: Dims the display when you turn on the headlights. : Cancels. : Dims the display and button illumination. : Set the timer for dimmer, [31].
	From – To*3	—	Any hour – Any hour : Initial: 18 – 7.
	Contrast Contrast	**1 – 8** Initial: 5	: Adjust the display contrast to make the display indications clear and legible.
	LCD Type Display type	• **Auto** • **Positive** • **Negative**	: Positive pattern will be selected during the day time*4; while negative pattern will be used during the night time*4. : Positive pattern of the display. : Negative pattern of the display.
	Tag Tag display	• **On** • **Off**	: Shows the tag while playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks. : Cancels.

*2 *Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.*

*3 *Adjustable only when "Dimmer" is set to "Time Set."*

*4 *Depends on the "Dimmer" setting.*

Continued on the next page

Category	Indication	Item (__ : Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
TUNER	**AF-Regn'l** Alternative frequency/ regionalization reception	• **AF** • **AF REG** • **Off**	: When the currently received signals become weak, the unit switches to another station or service (the programme may differ from the one currently received), [10]. : When the currently received signals become weak, the unit switches to another station broadcasting the same programme. : Cancels (not selectable when "DAB AF" is set to "On").
	TA Volume Traffic announcement volume	• **Volume 0 – Volume 30** • **Volume 0 – Volume 50***5	: Initial: Volume 15
	P-Search Programme search	• **On** • **Off**	: Activates Programme Search, [10]. : Cancels.
	IF Band Intermediate frequency band	• **Auto** • **Wide**	: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) : Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
	DAB AF*6 Alternative frequency reception	• **On** • **Off**	: Traces the programme among DAB services and FM RDS stations, [24]. : Cancels.
AUDIO	**Ext Input***7 External input	• **Changer** • **Ext In**	: To use a JVC CD changer, [19], JVC DAB tuner, [22], or an Apple iPod, [20]. : To use any other external component, [25].
	Telephone Telephone muting	• **Muting1/ Muting2** • **Off**	: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using a cellular phone. : Cancels. • Playback pauses/mutes while telephone muting is working.
	AudioBooks*8 Speed control of "Audiobook"	• **Normal** • **Faster** • **Slower**	: You can select the playback speed of the "Audiobook" sound file in your iPod. • Initial selected item depends on your iPod setting.
	L/O Mode Line output mode	• **Rear** • **Woofer**	: Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting the rear speakers (through an external amplifier). : Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting a subwoofer (through an external amplifier).

*5 *Depends on the amplifier gain control.*

*6 *Displayed only when DAB tuner is connected.*

*7 *Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—TUNER, DAB, CD, USB, or Bluetooth.*

*8 *Displayed only when an iPod is connected to the USB input jack and playback is controlled from the unit.*

Category	Indication	Item (__ : Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
AUDIO	**Amp Gain** Amplifier gain control	• **<u>High PWR</u>** • **Low PWR**	: Volume 00 – Volume 50 : Volume 00 – Volume 30 (Select if the maximum power of each speaker is less than 50 W to prevent damaging the speaker.)
COLOR	**Color Sel** Color selection	Initial: All Source; Color: Pale	: Select your favorite display color for each source (or for all sources), [31, 32].
	Color Set Color setting	—	: Create your own colors, and select them for the display color, [32].
		<u>Day Color</u>	: User color during the day time*9.
		NightColor	: User color during the night time*9.
	Red	**00 — 11**	: Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05
	Green	**00 — 11**	: Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05
	Blue	**00 — 11**	: Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05
	Key Illum Illumination switch	• **Red** • **<u>Green</u>**	: You can select the button illumination according to your preference.

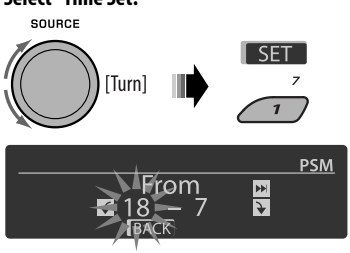
*9 *Depends on the "Dimmer" setting.*

Setting the time for dimmer

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 28.
- In step **2**, select "DISP."
- In step **3**, select "Dimmer."

2 Select "Time Set."



3 Adjust the dimmer start time.

1 Turn the control dial to set the dimmer start time.

2 Press ►►| ^ to select "To." Then, turn the control dial to set the dimmer end time.

4 Exit from the setting.

Changing the display color

You can select your favorite display color for each source (or all sources).

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3 or 6.

<u>Setting the display color</u>

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 28.
- In step **2**, select "COLOR."
- In step **3**, select "Color Sel."

Continued on the next page

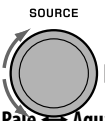
2

3 Select a source.

All Source*1 ↔ **CD** ↔ **Changer***3 (or **Ext In***2) ↔ **USB***3 ↔ **FM** ↔ **AM** ↔ **DAB***3 ↔ **iPod***3 ↔ **Aux In** ↔ **BT Phone***3 ↔ **BT Audio***3 ↔ (back to the beginning)

*1 *When you select "All Source," you can use the same color for all the sources.*
*2 *Depends on the "Ext Input" setting, see page 30.*
*3 *Displayed only when the target component is connected.*

4 Select a color.



Pale ↔ **Aqua** ↔ **Sky** ↔ **Sea** ↔ **Leaves** ↔ **Grass** ↔ **Apple** ↔ **Rose** ↔ **Amber** ↔ **Honey** ↔ **Violet** ↔ **Grape** ↔ **Every***4 ↔ **User***5 ↔ (back to the beginning)

*4 *The color changes every 2 seconds.*
*5 *The user-edited colors—"Day Color" and "NightColor" will be applied (see the right column for details).*

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to select the color for each source (except when selecting "All Source" in step 3).

6 Exit from the setting.

Creating your own color—User Color

You can create your own colors—"Day Color" or "NightColor."

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 28.
- In step **2**, select "COLOR."
- In step **3**, select "Color Set."

2 Select "Day Color" or "NightColor."

Day Color ↔ NightColor

3 Select a primary color.

4 Adjust the level (00 to 11) of the selected primary color.

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to adjust other primary colors.

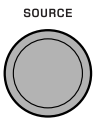
6 Exit from the setting.

Bluetooth settings

You can change the settings listed on the right column according to your preference.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

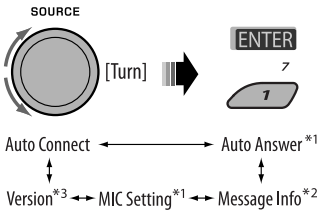
1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Enter the Bluetooth menu.

3 Select "Setting."

4 Select a setting item.

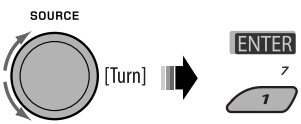


*1 *Displayed only when a Bluetooth phone is connected.*

*2 *Displayed only when a Bluetooth phone is connected and it is compatible with text message.*

*3 *Bluetooth Audio: Shows only "Version."*

5 Change the setting accordingly.



Setting menu (__ : Initial)

Auto Connect

When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with...

Off: No Bluetooth device.

Last: The last connected Bluetooth device.

Order: The available registered Bluetooth device found at first.

Auto Answer

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

On: The unit answers the incoming calls automatically.

Off: The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually.

Reject: The unit rejects all incoming calls.

Message Info

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

Auto: The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "Received Message."

Manual: The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.

MIC setting (microphone setting)

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

Adjust the built-in microphone volume, [LEVEL 01/02/03].

Version

The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

ENGLISH

More about this unit

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback also starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a track, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously next time you turn on the power.

General

- If you change the source while listening to a disc, playback stops.
  Next time you select "CD" as the playback source, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously.
- After ejecting a disc or removing a USB device, "No Disc" or "No USB" appears and you cannot operate some of the buttons. Insert another disc, reattach a USB device, or press SOURCE to select another playback source.

FM/AM/RDS

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
  - All previously stored stations are erased and the stations are stored anew.
  - Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
  - When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, the previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

FM RDS operations

- Network-Tracking Reception requires two types of RDS signals—PI (Programme Identification) and AF (Alternative Frequency) to work correctly. Without receiving these data correctly, Network-Tracking Reception will not operate correctly.
- If a Traffic Announcement is received by TA Standby Reception, the volume level automatically changes to the preset level (TA Volume) if the current level is lower than the preset level.
- When Alternative Frequency Reception is activated (with AF selected), Network-Tracking Reception is also activated automatically. On the other hand, Network-Tracking Reception cannot be deactivated without deactivating Alternative Frequency Reception. (See page 30.)
- If you want to know more about RDS, visit <http://www.rds.org.uk>.

Disc/USB operations

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

General

- This unit has been designed to reproduce CDs/CD Texts, and CD-Rs (Recordable)/CD-RWs (Rewritable) in audio CD (CD-DA), MP3 and WMA formats.
- When a disc is inserted upside down, "Please Eject" appears on the display. Press OPEN, then ⏏ to eject the disc.
- In this manual, words "track" and "file" are interchangeably used.
- While fast-forwarding or reversing on MP3/WMA/WAV files, you can only hear intermittent sounds.
- File/folder list may not appear correctly if too many hierarchies and folders are used.

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot again to protect it from dust. Playback starts automatically.

Playing a CD-R or CD-RW

- Use only "finalized" CD-Rs or CD-RWs.
- This unit can only play back files of the same type as those which are detected first if a disc includes both audio CD (CD-DA) files and MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some CD-Rs or CD-RWs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, or for the following reasons:
  - Discs are dirty or scratched.
  - Moisture condensation has occurred on the lens inside the unit.
  - The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
  - The files on the CD-R/CD-RW are written using the "Packet Write" method.
  - There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stained, scratched, warped, etc.).
- CD-RWs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of CD-RWs is lower than that of regular CDs.
- Do not use the following CD-Rs or CD-RWs:
  - Discs with stickers, labels, or a protective seal stuck to the surface.
  - Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

  Using these discs under high temperature or high humidity may cause malfunctions or damage to the unit.

Playing an MP3/WMA disc

- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3 files and for WMA files.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files meeting the conditions below:

  MP3:
  - Bit rate: 8 kbps — 320 kbps
  - Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz, 12 kHz, 11.025 kHz, 8 kHz

  WMA:
  - Bit rate: 32 kbps — 192 kbps
  - Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz
  - Disc format: ISO 9660 Level 1/Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names vary depending on the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3> or <.wma>).
  - ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
  - ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
  - Romeo*: up to 128 characters
  - Joliet*: up to 64 characters
  - Windows long file name*: up to 128 characters

* *The parenthetic figure is the maximum number of characters for file/folder names in case the total number of files and folders is 271 or more.*

- This unit can recognize a total of 512 files, 200 folders, and 8 hierarchical levels.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).

  Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in the elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. In particular, this difference becomes noticeable after performing the search function.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  - MP3 files encoded in MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  - MP3 files encoded in an inappropriate format.
  - MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  - WMA files encoded in lossless, professional, and voice format.
  - WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.

Continued on the next page

– WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
– Files which have data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks from a USB device

- Connecting a USB device automatically changes the source to "USB."
- While playing from a USB device, the playback order may differ from the one from other players.
- This unit may be unable to play back some USB devices or some files due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- Depending on the shape of the USB devices and connection ports, some USB devices may not be attached properly or the connection might be loose.
- When connecting a USB mass storage class device, refer also to its instructions.
- Connect one USB mass storage class device to the unit at a time. Do not use a USB hub.
- You can connect two types of USB device to this unit—MTP device and Mass storage class device. If you connect an MTP device featuring "USB digital media streaming" to this unit, you can play back the WMA-DRM10 (Digital Right Management) files purchased through the music distributing web sites, through this unit.
- This unit is compatible with the USB Full-Speed.
- If the connected USB device does not have the correct files, "No File" appears.
- This unit can show ID3 Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3 and WMA/WAV Tag.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA/WAV files meeting the conditions below:
  MP3:
  – Bit rate: 32 kbps — 320 kbps (MPEG-1)
    8 kbps — 160 kbps (MPEG-2)
  – Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
  WMA:
  – Bit rate: 5 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 8 kHz — 48 kHz
  – Channel: 1 ch/2 ch
  WAV:
  – Bit rate: Linear PCM at 705 kbps and 1 411 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 44.1 kHz
  – Channel: 1 ch/2 ch
- This unit can play back MP3 files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- The maximum number of characters for folder and file names is 25 characters; 128 characters for MP3/WMA/WAV Tag.
- This unit can recognize a total of 20 000 files and 2 000 folders (999 files per folder). However, the display can shows until 9 999 folders/files.
- The unit cannot recognize a USB mass storage class device whose rating is other than 5 V and exceeds 500 mA.
- USB devices equipped with special functions such as data security functions cannot be used with the unit.
- Do not use a USB device with 2 or more partitions.
- This unit may not recognized a USB device connected through a USB card reader.
- This unit may not play back files in a USB device properly when using a USB extension cord.
- This unit cannot assure proper functions or supply power to all types of USB devices.

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on the circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

appears when the connection is established.

	Appears when the Bluetooth phone is connected.
	Appears when the Bluetooth audio player is connected.
	Appears when the Bluetooth phone and Bluetooth audio player are connected.

Icons for phone types

These icons indicate the phone type set on the device:

: Cellular phone	: General
: Household phone	: Other than above
: Office	: Unknown

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **Connection Error:**
  The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use "Connect" to connect the device again. (See page 15.)
- **Error**
  Try the operation again. If "Error" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **Device Not Found**
  No available Bluetooth device is detected by "Search...".
- **Loading...**
  The unit is updating the phone book and/or text messages.
- **Please Wait...**
  The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **Reset 08**
  Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

DAB

- Only the primary DAB service can be preset even when you store a secondary service.
- A previously preset DAB service is erased when a new DAB service is stored in the same preset number.

iPod

- Controllable iPod (connected through....):
  (A) KS-PD100:
  – iPod with dock connector (3rd Generation)
  – iPod with click wheel (4th Generation)
  – iPod nano (1st & 2nd*1 Generation)
  – iPod mini (1st Generation)
  – iPod video (5th Generation)*2
  – iPod photo
  (B) USB input jack:
  – iPod nano (1st & 2nd Generation)
  – iPod video (5th Generation)

*1 *When you connect the iPod nano to the interface adapter, be sure to disconnect the headphones; otherwise, no sound is heard.*

*2 *It is not possible to browse video files on the "Videos" menu while the iPod is connected to the interface adapter.*

- Update your iPod to the latest software version before using it with this unit.
  – You can check the software version of your iPod under "About" in the "Setting" menu of the iPod.
  – For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- While the unit is being turned on, the iPod is charged through this unit.
- While connecting an iPod with Video:
  – No video shows on the iPod's display or the external monitor (only the audio part is available).
  – It is not possible to browse video files on the "Video" menu. (If you connect the iPod during the playback or pausing of a video file, resuming playback will not work.)
- iPod shuffle and iPhone cannot be used with this unit.
- You can control the iPod from this unit when "JVC" or "√" appears on the iPod display after connection.

Continued on the next page

- The song order displayed on the selection menu of this unit may differ from that of the iPod.
- If playback is stopped, select a track from the selection menu or press BAND to play back the same track again.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly:
  – Some characters such as accented letters cannot be shown correctly on the display.
  – Communication between the iPod and the unit is not stable.
- If the text information includes more than 16 characters, it scrolls on the display. This unit can display up to 128 characters.

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>

General settings—PSM

- "Auto" setting for "Dimmer" may not work correctly on some vehicles, particularly on those having a control dial for dimming.
  In this case, change the "Dimmer" setting to any other than "Auto."
- If "LCD Type" is set to "Auto," the display pattern will change to the "Positive" or "Negative" pattern depending on the "Dimmer" setting.
- If you change the "Amp Gain" setting from "High PWR" to "Low PWR" while the volume level is set higher than "Volume 30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "Volume 30."

Available characters

Upper case

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N
O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	space	

Lower case

a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n
o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	space	

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	space							

Available PTY codes
News, Affairs, Info, Sport, Educate, Drama, Culture, Science, Varied, Pop M (music), Rock M (music), Easy M (music), Light M (music), Classics, Other M (music), Weather, Finance, Children, Social, Religion, Phone In, Travel, Leisure, Jazz, Country, Nation M (music), Oldies, Folk M (music), Document

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).
	• "Connect Error" appears on the display.	Remove the control panel, wipe the connector, then attach it again (see page 42).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the aerial firmly.
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played back. • Tracks on the CD-R/CD-RW cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized CD-R/CD-RW. • Finalize the CD-R/CD-RW with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc can neither be played back nor ejected.	• Unlock the disc (see page 11). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 3).
	• Disc sound is sometimes interrupted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
	• Disc cannot be recognized ("No Disc," "CD Loading Error," or "Eject Error" flashes).	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 3).
	• "Please Eject" appears on the display.	This occurs sometimes due to over-heating. Eject the disc or change to another playback source.
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Use a disc with MP3/WMA tracks recorded in a format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet. • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• A longer readout time is required ("Reading" keeps flashing on the display).	Do not use too many hierarchical levels and folders.
	• Tracks do not play back in the order you have intended them to play.	The playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	• The elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc (eg. variable bit rate).
	• "Please Eject" appears on the display.	Insert a disc that contains MP3/WMA tracks.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	Skip to the next track encoded in an appropriate format or to the next non-copy-protected WMA track.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (capital: A – Z, small: a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols (see page 38).

Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
USB device	• Noise is generated.	• The track played back is not a playable file format (MP3/WMA/WAV). Skip to another file. • Do not add the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav> to non-MP3/WMA/WAV tracks.
	• Tracks cannot play back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differs from the one played back using other players.
	• "Reading" keeps flashing on the display.	• Readout time varies depending on the USB device. • Do not use too many hierarchy, folders and empty folders.* • Turn off the power then on again. • Do not pull out or connect the USB device repeatedly while "Reading" is displayed on the display. * *Folder that is phisically empty or folder that contains data but does not contain valid MP3/WMA/WAV track.*
	• "No File" flashes on the display. • "No USB" appears on the display.	Connect a USB device that contains tracks encoded in an appropriate format.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	The track is unplayable.
	• "Read failed" appears on the display.	The connected USB device may be malfunctioning, or may not have been formatted correctly. The files included in the USB device are corrupted.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	For available characters, see page 38.
	• While playing a track, sound is sometimes interrupted.	The tracks have not been properly copied into the USB device. Copy tracks again into the USB device, and try again.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a USB device.	• Turn off, then turn on the unit. • Connect the device again, when the sound is not yet restored.

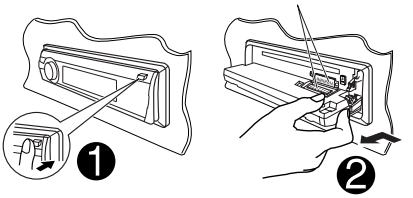
	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Bluetooth®	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	The unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio device at a time. While connecting a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device. After the device detects the unit, select "Open..." on the unit to connect the device. (See page 14.)
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. • Select the device name from "Special," then try to connect again. (See page 15.)
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to a place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a Bluetooth audio player.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio player. • Disconnect the device connected for "BT-PHONE." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • Connect the player again, when the sound is not yet restored.
	• The connected audio player cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio player supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile). (Operations depend on the connected audio player.)
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).

Continued on the next page

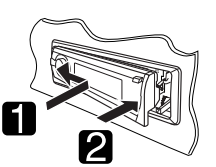
	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
DAB	• "noSIGNAL" appears on the display.	Move to an area with stronger signals.
	• "RESET 8" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly and reset the unit (see page 3).
	• "ANTENANG" appears on the display.	Check the cords and connections.
	• The DAB tuner does not work at all.	Reconnect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly and reset the unit (see page 3).
iPod	• The iPod does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version. • Charge the battery.
	• The sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the display.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Charge the battery.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation (see page 20).
	• No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano.	• Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano. • Update the firmware version of the iPod nano.
	• "No File" appears on the display.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the display.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect it again.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the display.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.

Detaching the control panel

Avoid touching the connectors.



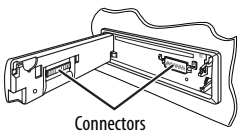
Attaching the control panel



Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors. To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connectors

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture has evaporated.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc in its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs in cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvents (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:

Single CD (8 cm disc)

Warped disc

Sticker and sticker residue

Stick-on label

Unusual shape

- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

ENGLISH

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Tone Control Range:	Bass:	±12 dB (60 Hz, 80 Hz, 100 Hz, 200 Hz)
		Mid-range	±12 dB (500 Hz, 1.0 kHz, 1.5 kHz, 2.5 kHz)
		Treble:	±12 dB (10.0 kHz, 12.5 kHz, 15.0 kHz, 17.5 kHz)
	Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Signal to Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Audio Output Level:	Line-Out Level/Impedance:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
		Subwoofer-Out Level/Impedance:	2.5 V /20 kΩ load (full scale)
	Other Terminals:	CD changer jack, AUX (auxiliary) input jack, USB input jack, Aerial input, Steering wheel remote input	

TUNER SECTION	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	MW: 522 kHz to 1 620 kHz LW: 144 kHz to 279 kHz
	FM Tuner:	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 µV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	30 dB
	MW Tuner:	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 µV/35 dB
	LW Tuner:	Sensitivity:	50 µV

CD PLAYER SECTION	Type:		Compact disc player
	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)	
	Number of Channels:		2 channels (stereo)
	Frequency Response:		5 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Dynamic Range:		96 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		98 dB
	Wow and Flutter:		Less than measurable limit
	MP3 Decoding Format: (MPEG1/2 Audio Layer 3)	Max. Bit Rate:	320 kbps
	WMA (Windows Media® Audio) Decoding Format:	Max. Bit Rate:	320 kbps

USB SECTION	USB Standard:		USB 1.1, USB 2.0
	Data Transfer Rate (Full Speed):	Full Speed:	Max. 12 Mbps
		Low Speed:	Max. 1.5 Mbps
	Compatible Device:		Mass storage class
	Compatible File System:		FAT 32/16/12
	Playable Audio Format:		MP3/WMA/WAV
	Max. Current:		500 mA/5V

GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
	Grounding System:		Negative ground
	Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C
	Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 52 mm × 160 mm
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 58 mm × 12 mm
	Mass (approx.):		1.4 kg (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?
Please reset your unit
Refer to page of How to reset your unit

Haben Sie PROBLEME mit dem Betrieb?
Bitte setzen Sie Ihr Gerät zurück
Siehe Seite Zurücksetzen des Geräts

Затруднения при эксплуатации?
Пожалуйста, перезагрузите Ваше устройство
Для получения информации о перезагрузке Вашего устройства обратитесь на соответствующую страницу

Dear Customer,
This apparatus is in conformance with the valid European directives and standards regarding electromagnetic compatibility and electrical safety.

European representative of Victor Company of Japan, Limited is:
JVC Technology Centre Europe GmbH
Company name changed in:
JVC Technical Services Europe GmbH
Postfach 10 05 52
61145 Friedberg
Germany

Sehr geehrter Kunde, sehr geehrte Kundin,
dieses Gerät stimmt mit den gültigen europäischen Richtlinien und Normen bezüglich elektromagnetischer Verträglichkeit und elektrischer Sicherheit überein.

Die europäische Vertretung für die Victor Company of Japan, Limited ist:
JVC Technology Centre Europe GmbH
Firmenname geändert in:
JVC Technical Services Europe GmbH
Postfach 10 05 52
61145 Friedberg
Deutschland

Уважаемый клиент.
Данное устройство соответствует действительным Европейским директивам и стандартам по электромагнитной совместимости и электрической безопасности.

Представительство компании Victor Company of Japan, Limited в Европе:
JVC Technology Centre Europe GmbH
Название компании изменено на:
JVC Technical Services Europe GmbH
Postfach 10 05 52
61145 Friedberg
Германия

JVC

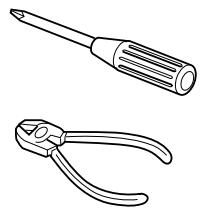
EN, GE, RU

© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0108DTSMDTJEIN

KD-PDR61

Installation/Connection Manual
Einbau/Anschlußanleitung
Руководство по установке/подключению



GET0524-013A
[EY]

0108DTSMDTJEIN
EN, GE, RU
© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealers.

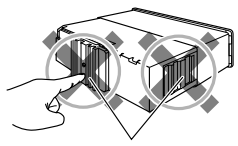
WARNINGS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with a maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amp Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 31 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



Heat sink
Abstrahlblech
Радиатор

DEUTSCH

Dieses Gerät ist für einen Betrieb in **elektrischen Anlagen mit 12 V Gleichstrom und (–) Erdung ausgelegt**. *Verfügt Ihr Fahrzeug nicht über diese Anlage, ist ein Spannungsinverter erforderlich, der bei JVC Autoradiohändler erworben werden kann.*

WARNUNGEN

Zur Vermeidung von Kurzschlüssen empfehlen wir, daß Sie den negativen Batterieanschluß abtrennen und alle elektrischen Anschlüsse herstellen, bevor das Gerät eingebaut wird.

- **Sicherstellen, daß das Gerät nach dem Einbau a Chassis des Fahrzeugs geerdet wird.**

Hinweise:

- *Die Sicherung mit einer der entsprechenden Nennleistung ersetzen. Brennt die Sicherung häufig durch, wenden Sie sich an ihren JVC Autoradiohändler.*
- *Es wird empfohlen, Lautsprecher mit einer Maximalleistung von mehr als 50 W anzuschließen (sowohl hinten als auch vorne, mit einer Impedanz von* **4 Ω bis 8 Ω**). *Wenn die Maximalleistung weniger als 50 W beträgt, stellen Sie „Amp Gain" anders ein, um Schäden an den Lautsprechern zu vermeiden (siehe Seite 31 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG).*
- *Um Kurzschlüsse zu verhindern, die Klemmen der NICHT VERWENDETEN Leitungen mit Isolierband abdecken.*
- *Das Abstrahlblech wird nach dem Gebrauch sehr heiß. Beim Ausbau des Geräts darauf achten, das Abstrahlblech nicht zu berühren.*

РУССКИЙ

Это устройство разработано для эксплуатации на **12 В постоянного напряжения с минусом на массе**. Если Ваш автомобиль не имеет этой системы, требуется инвертор напряжения, который может быть приобретен у дилера автомобилнего специалиста JVC.

ПРЕДУПРЕЖДЕНИЯ

Для предотвращения коротких замыканий мы рекомендуем Вам отсоединить отрицательный разъем аккумулятора и осуществить все подключения перед установкой устройства.

- **После установки обязательно заземлите данное устройство на шасси автомобиля.**

Примечания:

- Заменяйте предохранитель другим предохранителем указанного класса. Если предохранитель сгорает слишком часто, обратитесь к дилеру автомобилнего специалиста JVC.
- Рекомендуется подключать динамики с максимальной мощностью более 50 Вт (к задней и передней панели устройства, с полным сопротивлением от **4 Ω до 8 Ω**). Если максимальная мощность динамиков менее 50 Вт, перейдите в режим "Amp Gain", чтобы предотвратить их повреждение (см. ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ на стр. 31).
- Для предотвращения коротких замыканий обмотайте терминалы НЕИСПОЛЬЗУЕМЫХ проводов изоляционной лентой.
- Радиатор во время использования сильно нагревается. Старайтесь его не трогать во время удаления устройства.

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

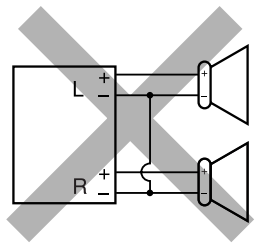
- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

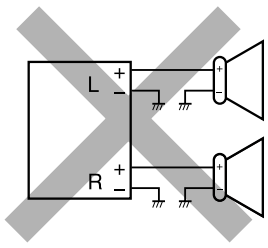
VORSICHTSMASSREGELN beim Anschließen der Stromversorgung und Lautsprecher:

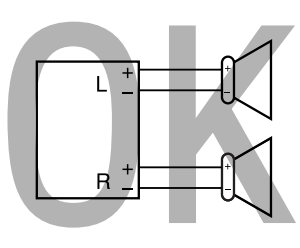
- **Die Lautsprecherleitungen des Netzkabels NICHT an der Autobatterie anschließen, da sonst das Gerät schwer beschädigt wird.**
- *VOR dem Anschließen der Lautsprecherleitungen des Spannunsgversorgungskabels an die Lautsprecher, die Lautsprecherverdrahtung in Ihrem Auto überprüfen.*

ПРЕДОСТЕРЕЖЕНИЯ по питанию и подключению громкоговорителей:

- **НЕ подключайте провода громкоговорителей к аккумулятору автомобиля, иначе устройство будет повреждено.**
- ПЕРЕД подключением проводов громкоговорителей к кабелю питания громкоговорителя проверьте схему соединений громкоговорителей в Вашем автомобиле.







Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer immediately.

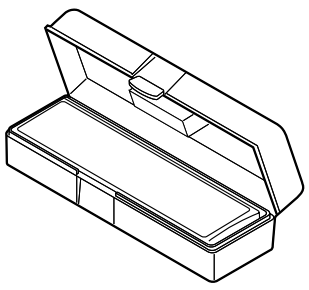
Teileliste für den Einbau und Anschluß

Die folgenden Teile werden zusammen mit diesem Gerät geliefert. Falls ein Artikel fehlt, wenden Sie sich sofort an Ihren JVC-Autoradiohändler.

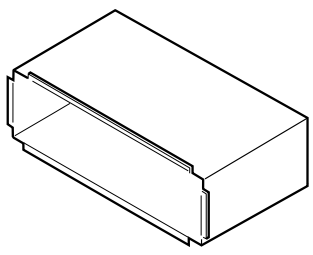
Список деталей для установки и подключения

Следующие детали поставлены в комплекте с устройством. При отсутствии какого-либо элемента немедленно свяжитесь с дилером автомобильного специалиста JVC.

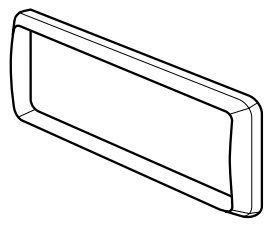
Ⓐ / Ⓑ
Hard case/Control panel
Etui/Schalttafel
Жесткий футляр/панель управления



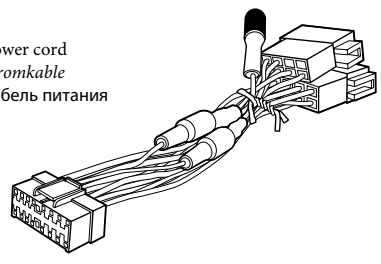
Ⓒ
Sleeve
Halterung
Муфта



Ⓓ
Trim plate
Frontrahmen
Декоративную панель



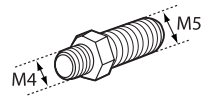
Ⓔ
Power cord
Stromkable
Кабель питания



Ⓕ
Washer (ø5)
Unterlegscheibe (ø5)
Шайба (ь5)

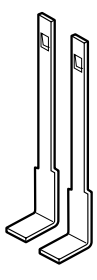
Ⓖ
Lock nut (M5)
Sicherungsmutter (M5)
Фиксирующая гайка (M5)

Ⓗ
Mounting bolt
(M4 × 5 mm; M5 × 12.5 mm)
Befestigungsschraube
(M4 × 5 mm; M5 × 12,5 mm)
Крепежный болт
(M4 × 5 мм; M5 × 12,5 мм)



Ⓘ
Rubber cushion
Gummipuffer
Резиновый чехол

Ⓙ
Handles
Griffe
Рычаги



Ⓜ
Remote controller
Fernbedienung
Дистанционного управления
RM-RK50

Ⓝ
Battery
Batterie
Батарейка
CR2025

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

EINBAU (IM ARMATURENBRETT)

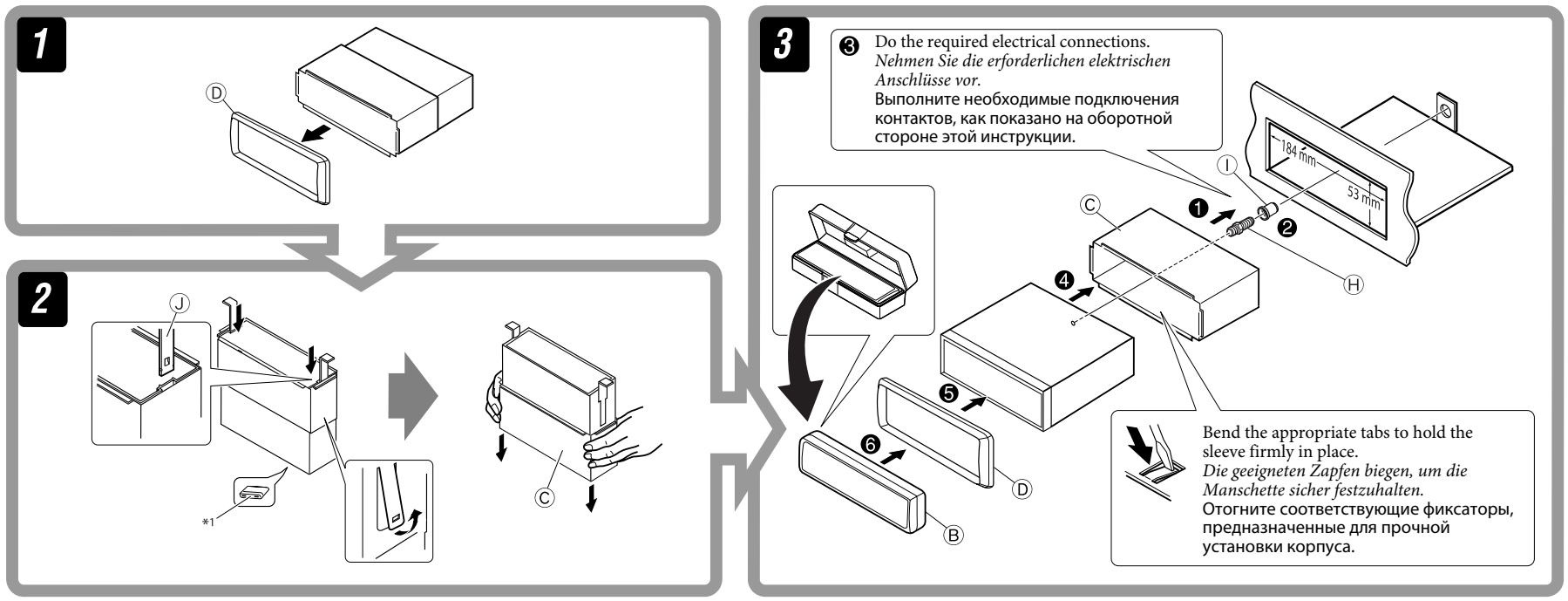
Die folgende Abbildung zeigt einen typischen Einbau. Bei irgendwelchen Fragen oder wenn Sie Informationen hinsichtlich des Einbausatzes brauchen, wenden Sie sich an ihren JVC Autoradiohändler oder ein Unternehmen das diese Einbausätze vertreibt.

- *Sind Sie sich über den richtigen Einbau des Geräts nicht sicher, lassen Sie es von einem qualifizierten Techniker einbauen.*

УСТАНОВКА (УСТАНОВКА В ПРИБОРНУЮ ПАНЕЛЬ)

На следующих иллюстрациях показана типовая установка. Если у Вас есть какие-либо вопросы, касающиеся установки, обратитесь к Вашему дилеру автомобилнего специалиста JVC или в компанию, поставляющую соответствующие принадлежности.

- Если Вы не знаете точно, как следует устанавливать это устройство, обратитесь к квалифицированному специалисту.



Removing the unit

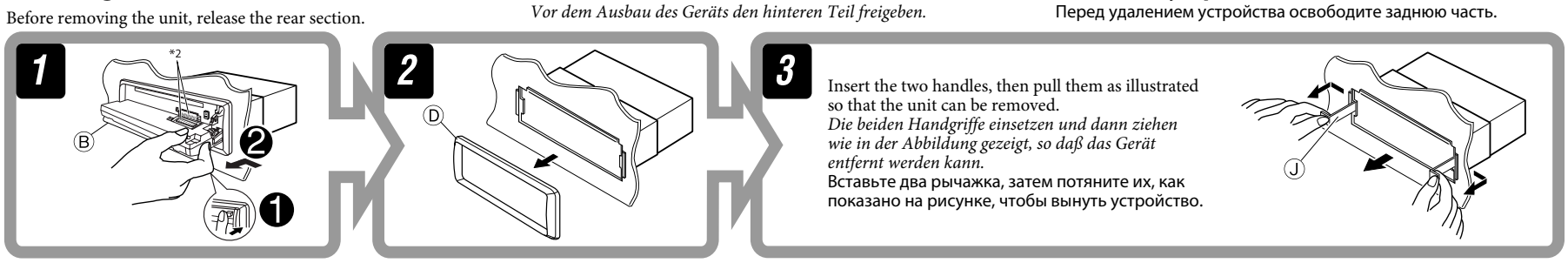
Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

Ausbau des Geräts

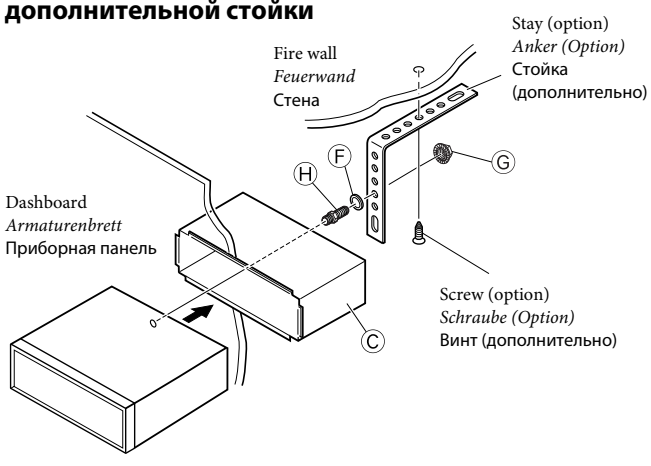
Vor dem Ausbau des Geräts den hinteren Teil freigeben.

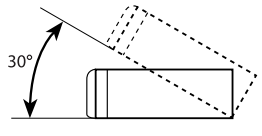
Удаление устройства

Перед удалением устройства освободите заднюю часть.


1
*2
B
❷
❶
2
D
3
Insert the two handles, then pull them as illustrated so that the unit can be removed.
Die beiden Handgriffe einsetzen und dann ziehen wie in der Abbildung gezeigt, so daß das Gerät entfernt werden kann.
Вставьте два рычажка, затем потяните их, как показано на рисунке, чтобы вынуть устройство.
J

When using the optional stay / Beim Verwenden der Anker-Option / При использовании дополнительной стойки

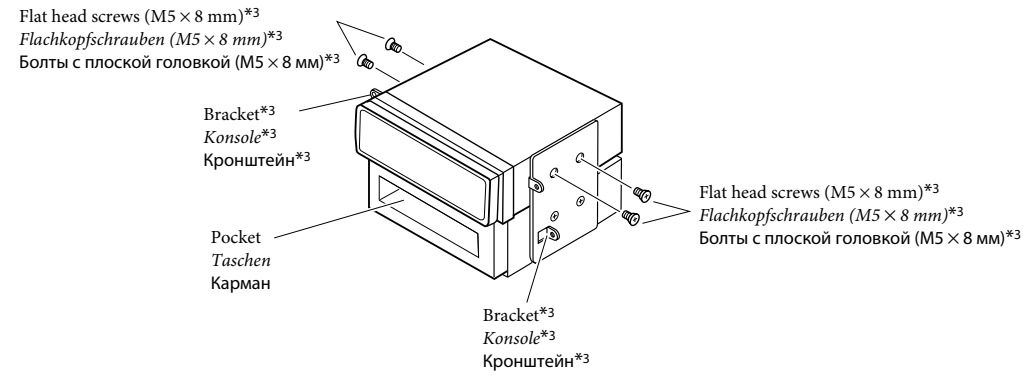




Install the unit at an angle of less than 30°.
Stellen Sie das Gerät mit einem Winkel von weniger als 30° auf.
Установите устройство под углом менее 30°.

When installing the unit without using the sleeve / Beim Einbau des Geräts ohne Halterung / При установке устройства без использования муфты

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.
Zum Beispiel in einem Toyota zuerst das Autoradio ausbauen und dann das Gerät an seinem Platz einbauen.
В автомобиле Тойота, например, сначала извлеките автомобильный радиоприемник и установите устройство на место.



Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

Hinweis : *Beim Anbringen des Gerät an der Konsole sicherstellen, daß 8 mm lange Schrauben verwendet werden. Wenn längere Schrauben verwendet werden, können diese die Einheit beschädigen.*

Примечание : При установке устройства на крепежный кронштейн, используйте только винты длиной 8 мм. При использовании более длинных болтов можно повредить устройство.

*1 When you stand the unit, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
*2 Avoid touching the connectors.
*3 Not supplied for this unit.

*1 *Beim Aufstellen des Geräts darauf achten, daß die Sicherung auf der Rückseite nicht beschädigt wird.*
*2 *Berühren Sie nicht die Steckerkontakte.*
*3 *Wird nicht mit Gerät mitgeliefert.*

*1 Устанавливайте устройство таким образом, чтобы не повредить предохранитель, расположенный сзади.
*2 Не прикасайтесь к разъемам.
*3 Не входит в комплект поставки.

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
* Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **This unit becomes hot.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This unit does not work at all.**
* Have you reset your unit?

FEHLERSUCHE

- **Die Sicherung brennt durch.**
* *Sind die roten und schwarzen Leitungen richtig angeschlossen?*
- **Stromversorgung kann nicht eingeschaltet werden.**
* *Ist die gelbe Leitung angeschlossen?*
- **Kein Ton aus den Lautsprechern.**
* *Ist die Lautsprecherausgangsleitung kurzgeschlossen?*
- **Ton verzerrt.**
* *Ist die Lautsprecherausgangsleitung geerdet?*
* *Sind die „–" Anschlußklemmen der linken und rechten Lautsprecher zusammen geerdet?*
- **Störgeräusche im Klang.**
* *Ist die hintere Erdungsklemme mit kürzeren und dickeren Kabeln an das Fahrzeugchassis angeschlossen?*
- **Gerät wird heiß.**
* *Ist die Lautsprecherausgangsleitung geerdet?*
* *Sind die „–" Anschlußklemmen der linken und rechten Lautsprecher zusammen geerdet?*
- **Dieser Receiver funktioniert überhaupt nicht.**
* *Haben Sie einen Reset am Receiver vorgenommen?*

ВЫЯВЛЕНИЕ НЕИСПРАВНОСТЕЙ

- **Сработал предохранитель.**
* Правильно ли подключены черный и красный провода?
- **Питание не включается.**
* Подключен ли желтый провод?
- **Звук не выводится через громкоговорители.**
* Нет ли короткого замыкания на кабеле выхода громкоговорителей?
- **Звук искажен.**
* Заземлен ли провод выхода громкоговорителей?
* Заземлены ли разъемы "–" правого (R) и левого (L) громкоговорителей?
- **Шум мешает звучанию.**
* Соединен ли находящийся сзади зажим заземления с шасси автомобиля с помощью более короткого и тонкого шнуров?
- **Устройство нагревается.**
* Заземлен ли провод выхода громкоговорителей?
* Заземлены ли разъемы "–" правого (R) и левого (L) громкоговорителей?
- **Приемник не работает.**
* Выполнена ли перенастройка приемника?

ENGLISH

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

DEUTSCH

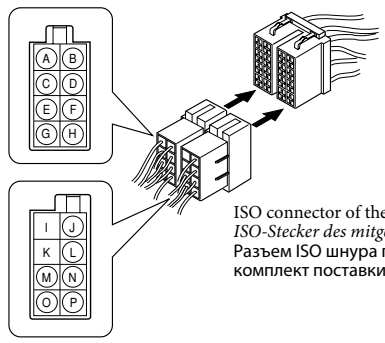
ELEKTRISCHE ANSCHLÜSSE

РУССКИЙ

ЭЛЕКТРИЧЕСКИЕ ПОДКЛЮЧЕНИЯ

A If your car is equipped with the ISO connector / Wenn Ihr Fahrzeug mit dem ISO-Steckverbinder ausgestattet ist / Если автомобиль оснащен разъемом ISO

- Connect the ISO connectors as illustrated.
- *Schließen Sie die ISO-Steckverbinder an, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt.*
- Подключите разъемы ISO, как показано на рисунке.



From the car body
Von der Fahrzeugkarosserie
От корпуса автомобиля

ISO connector of the supplied power cord
ISO-Stecker des mitgelieferten Stromkabels
Разъем ISO шнура питания, входящего в комплект поставки

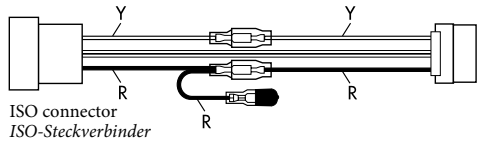
View from the lead side
Von der Kabelseite aus gesehen
Вид со стороны выводов

For some VW/Audi or Opel (Vauxhall) automobiles / Bei bestimmten VW-/Audi- oder Opel-(Vauxhall-) Fahrzeugen / Для некоторых автомобилей VW/Audi или Opel (Vauxhall)

You may need to modify the wiring of the supplied power cord as illustrated.
- Contact your authorized car dealer before installing this unit.

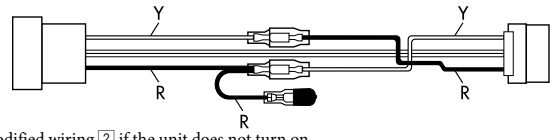
Es kann erforderlich sein, die Verdrahtung des mitgelieferten Stromkabels zu modifizieren, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt.
- *Wenden Sie sich vor dem Einbau dieses Receivers an Ihre Auto-Fachwerkstatt.*

Возможно, потребуется изменить схему соединений для прилагаемого шнура питания, как показано на рисунке.
- Перед установкой приемника обратитесь к авторизованному агенту по продажам автомобильных систем.



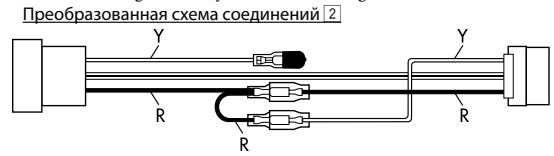
Original wiring / *Original verdrahtung* / Исходная схема соединений

ISO connector
ISO-Steckverbinder
Разъем ISO



Modified wiring 1 / *Modifizierte Verdrahtung* 1 / Преобразованная схема соединений 1

Use modified wiring 2 if the unit does not turn on.
Verwenden Sie die modifizierte Verdrahtung 2 *wenn der Receiver nicht einschaltet.*
Если приемник не включается, используйте преобразованную схему соединений 2.



Modified wiring 2 / *Modifizierte Verdrahtung* 2 / Преобразованная схема соединений 2

Y: Yellow / *Gelb* / Желтый

R: Red / *Rot* / Красный

B Connections without using the ISO connector / Anschlüsse ohne Verwendung der ISO-Steckverbinder / Подключение без использования разъемов ISO

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

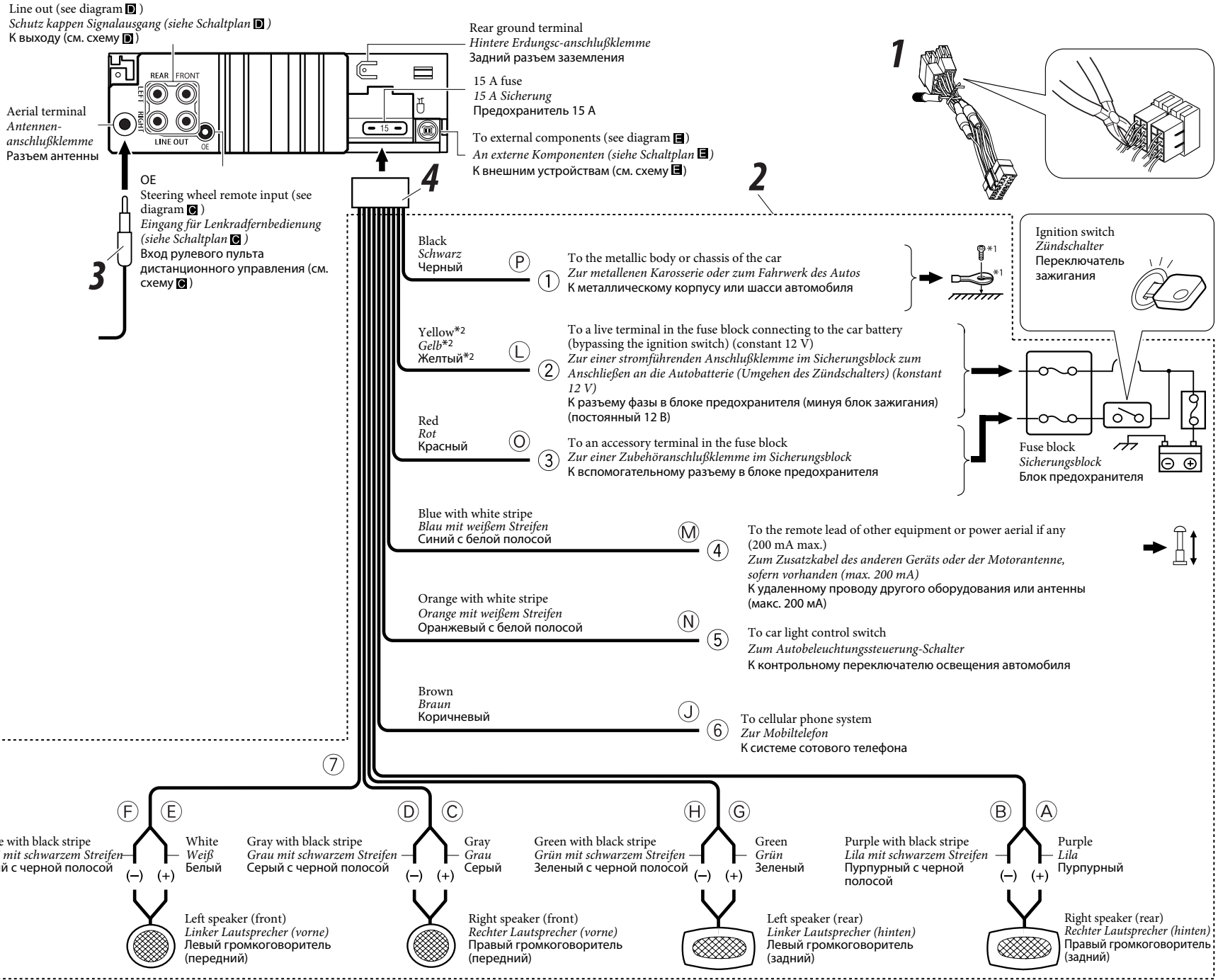
1. Cut the ISO connector.
2. Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
3. Connect the aerial cord.
4. Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

Vor dem Anschließen: *Die Verdrahtung im Fahrzeug sorgfältig überprüfen. Falsche Anschlüsse können ernsthafte Schäden am Gerät hervorrufen.*
Die Leiter des Stromkabels und die Leiter des Anschlusses im Fahrzeug können sich farblich unterscheiden.

1. *Schneiden Sie den ISO-Steckverbinder auf.*
2. *Die farbigen Adern des Stromkabels in der Reihenfolge anschließen, wie in der Abbildung unten gezeigt.*
3. *Das Antennenkabel anschließen.*
4. *Die Kabelbäume am Gerät anschließen.*

Перед началом подключений: Тщательно проверьте проводку в автомобиле. Неправильное подключение может привести к серьезному повреждению устройства.
Жилы силового кабеля и жилы соединителя от кузова автомобиля могут быть разного цвета.

1. Обрежьте разъем ISO.
2. Подсоедините цветные провода шнура питания в указанном ниже порядке.
3. Подключите кабель антенны.
4. В последнюю очередь подключите электропроводку к устройству.



*1 Not supplied for this unit.
*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise the power cannot be turned on.

*1 Wird nicht mit Gerät mitgeliefert.
*2 Vor der Überprüfung der Funktionsfähigkeit des Geräts vor dem Einbau, muß diese Leitung angeschlossen werden, da sonst die Stromversorgung nicht eingeschaltet werden kann.

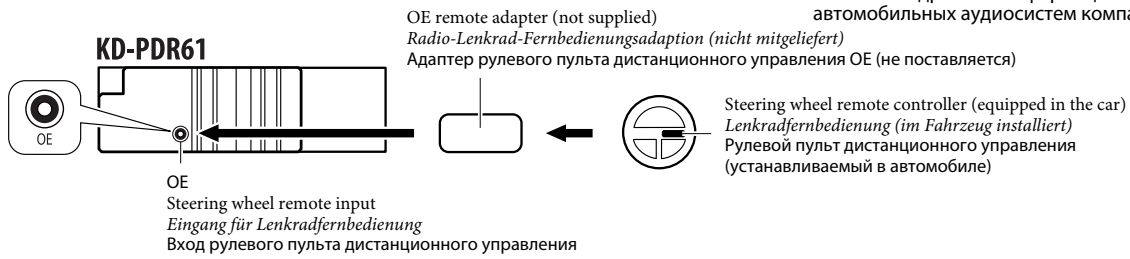
*1 Не входит в комплект поставки.
*2 Перед проверкой работы устройства подключите этот провод, иначе питание не включится.

C Connecting to the steering wheel remote controller / Anschluß an die Lenkradfernbedienung / Подключение к рулевому пульту дистанционного управления

If your car is equipped with the steering wheel remote controller, you can operate this unit using the controller. To do it, a JVC's OE remote adapter (not supplied) which matches with your car is required. Consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer for details.

Wenn Ihr Fahrzeug mit einer Lenkradferndienung ausgestattet ist, können Sie damit diesen Receiver steuern. Hierfür ist ein für Ihr Fahrzeug passender Radio-Lenkrad-Fernbedienungsadaption von JVC (nicht mitgeliefert) erforderlich. Für weitere Einzelheiten wenden Sie sich an Ihren JVC Autoradiohändler.

Если автомобиль оборудован рулевым пультом дистанционного управления, его можно использовать для управления данным устройством. Для этого необходим адаптер рулевого пульта дистанционного управления JVC OE (не поставляется), подходящий для Вашего автомобиля. За более подробной информацией обратитесь к поставщику автомобильных аудиосистем компании JVC.

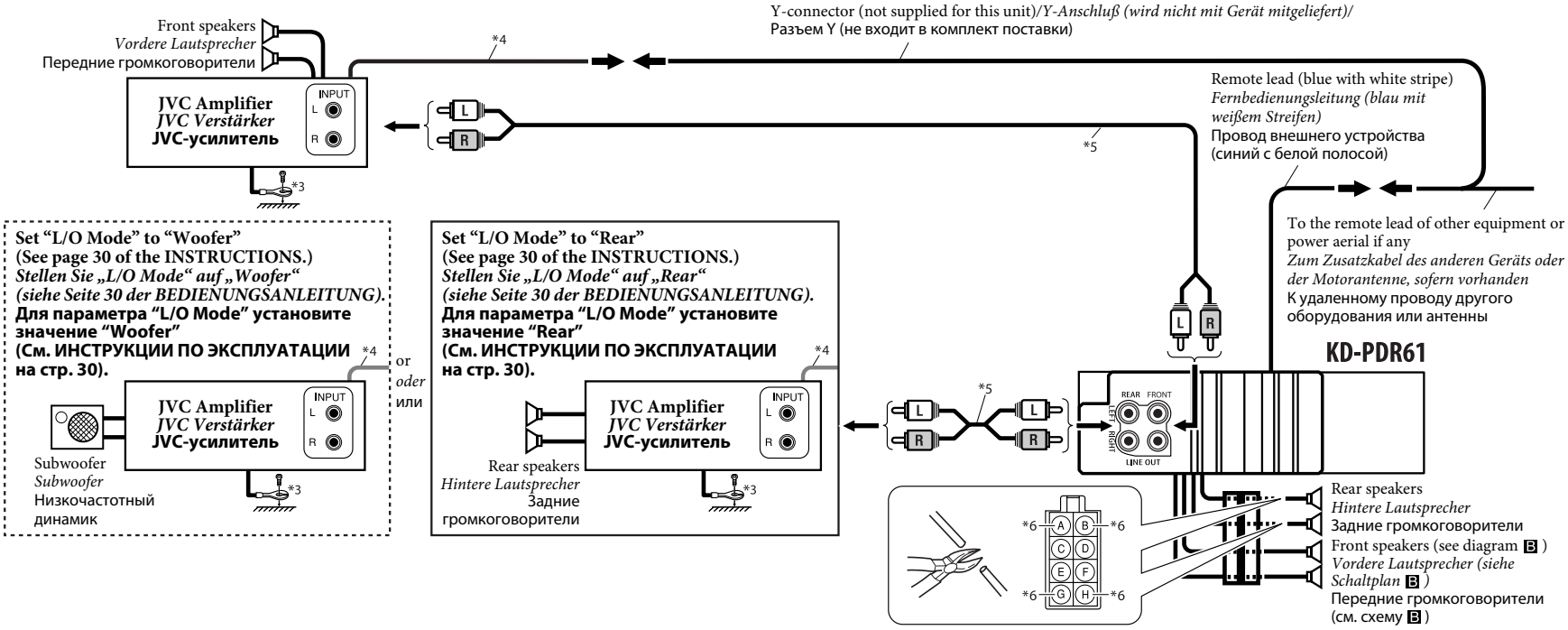

KD-PDR61
OE
OE remote adapter (not supplied)
Radio-Lenkrad-Fernbedienungsadaption (nicht mitgeliefert)
Адаптер рулевого пульта дистанционного управления OE (не поставляется)
Steering wheel remote controller (equipped in the car)
Lenkradfernbedienung (im Fahrzeug installiert)
Рулевой пульт дистанционного управления (устанавливаемый в автомобиле)
OE
Steering wheel remote input
Eingang für Lenkradfernbedienung
Вход рулевого пульта дистанционного управления

D Connecting the external amplifiers and/or subwoofer / Anschließen der externen Verstärker und/oder Subwoofer / Подключение внешних усилителей и/или низкочастотного динамика

You can connect amplifiers to upgrade your car stereo system.
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**

Sie können Verstärker anschließen, um Ihre Autostereoanlage zu erweitern.
- *Schließen Sie das Fernbedienungskabel (blau mit weißem Streifen) an das Fernbedienungskabel des anderen Geräts an, so daß es über dieses Gerät gesteuert werden kann.*
- **Die Lautsprecher von diesem Gerät abtrennen und am Verstärker anschließen. Die Lautsprecherleitungen dieses Geräts unbenutzt lassen.**

Можно подключить усилители для обновления автомобильной стереосистемы.
- Подсоедините провод внешнего устройства (синий с белой полосой) к проводу внешнего устройства другого оборудования так, чтобы им можно было управлять с этого устройства.
- **Отсоедините громкоговорители от данного устройства, подключите их к усилителю. Оставьте провода громкоговорителей данного устройства неиспользованными.**



E Connecting the external components / Anschließen der externen Komponenten / Подключение внешних устройств

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION :
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.
JVC DAB tuner	KT-DB1000

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.
- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

When connecting more than one component (maximum: two), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

Beim Anschließen der externen Komponenten siehe auch für die Komponenten und den Adapter mitgelieferte Anleitungen.

ACHTUNG :
Vor dem Anschließen der externen Komponenten sicherstellen, dass das Gerät ausgeschaltet ist.

Sie können die folgenden JVC-Komponenten an die CD-Wechslerbuchse anschließen.

JVC-Komponente	Modellname
CD-Wechsler (CD-CH)	*CH-X1500 usw.*
DAB-Tuner von JVC	*KT-DB1000*

Sie können auch die folgenden externen Komponenten über die verschiedenen JVC-Adapter anschließen.
- *Es kann erforderlich sein, Verbindungskabel getrennt zu kaufen.*

Komponente	Adapter	Modellname
Bluetooth-Gerät	*Bluetooth-Adapter*	*KS-BTA200*
iPod	*Schnittstellenadapter für iPod*	*KS-PD100*
Tragbarer Audio-Player mit Line-Ausgangsbuchsen	*Line-Eingangsadapter*	*KS-U57*
Tragbarer Audio-Player mit 3,5-mm-Stereo-Minibuchse	*AUX-Eingangsadapter*	*KS-U58*

Beim Anschließen von mehr als einer Komponente (Maximum: zwei) wird empfohlen, dass Sie die Komponenten in Serie anschließen, wie unten beschrieben.

При подключении внешних устройств см. также руководства, поставляемые для устройств и адаптера.

ПРЕДОСТЕРЕЖЕНИЕ :
Перед подключением внешних компонентов убедитесь в том, что устройство выключено.

К разъему устройства автоматической смены компакт-дисков можно подключать указанные ниже устройства JVC.

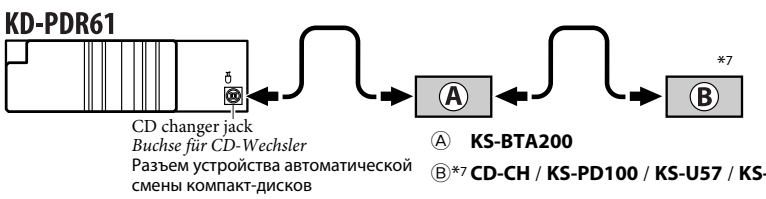
Устройство JVC	Название модели
Устройство автоматической смены компакт-дисков (CD-CH)	CH-X1500 и т. д.
Тюнер DAB JVC	KT-DB1000

Указанные ниже устройства можно также подключать с помощью различных адаптеров JVC.
- Кабели подключения могут быть приобретены отдельно.

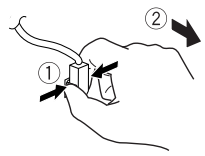
Компонентный	Адаптер	Название модели
Устройство Bluetooth	Адаптер Bluetooth	KS-BTA200
iPod	Интерфейсный адаптер для проигрывателя iPod	KS-PD100
Портативный аудиопроигрыватель с разъемами линейного выхода	Адаптер линейного входа	KS-U57
Портативный аудиопроигрыватель со стерео мини-разъемом 3,5 мм	Адаптер входа AUX	KS-U58

Несколько устройств (максимум два) рекомендуется подключать последовательно, как показано ниже.

When connecting two components in series / Beim Anschließen von zwei Komponenten in Serie / Последовательное подключение двух устройств



To disconnect the connector / *Zum Abtrennen des Steckers* / Отключение разъема



Hold the connector tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
Halten Sie den Steckverbinder fest (①) und ziehen Sie ihn heraus (②).
Крепко удерживая разъем (①), извлеките его (②).

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
iPod ist ein Warenzeichen von Apple Inc., eingetragen in den USA und anderen Ländern.
iPod является торговой маркой Apple Inc., зарегистрированной в США и других странах.

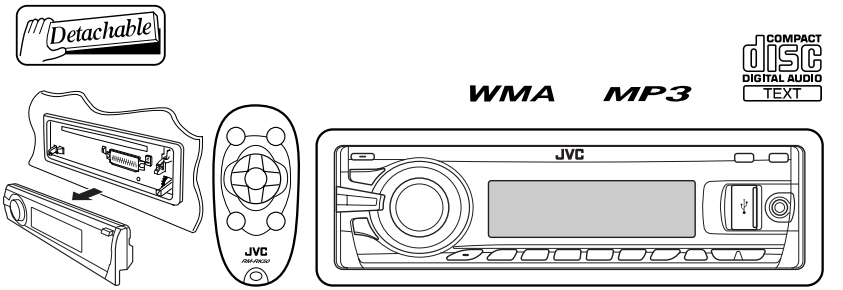
*3 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.
*4 Remote lead
*5 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)
*6 Cut the rear speaker leads of the car's ISO connector and connect them to the amplifier.
*7 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 30 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

*3 *Verbinden Sie den Erdungsleiter mit der Karosserie oder dem Rahmen des Fahrzeugs. Die Kontaktstelle darf nicht lackiert sein (sollte die Kontaktstelle lackiert sein, entfernen Sie den Lack der Kontaktstelle, bevor Sie den Leiter befestigen). Wenn der Erdungsleiter nicht ordnungsgemäß angeschlossen wird, kann dieses Gerät beschädigt werden.*
*4 *Fernbedienungsleitung*
*5 Einzelleitung (wird nicht mit Gerät mitgeliefert)
*6 *Schneiden Sie die hinteren Lautsprecherkabel des ISO-Steckverbinders des Fahrzeugs ab, und schließen diese an den Verstärker an.*
*7 Zur Verwendung dieser Komponenten stellen Sie die externe Eingangseinstellung richtig ein (siehe Seite 30 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG).

*3 Плотно прикрепите заземляющий провод к металлическому кузову или шасси автомобиля—в месте, не покрытом краской (если оно покрыто краской, удалите краску перед тем, как прикреплять провод). Невыполнение этого требования может привести к повреждению данного устройства.
*4 Провод внешнего устройства
*5 Кабель сигнала (не входит в комплект поставки)
*6 Отрежьте провода задних громкоговорителей разъема ISO и подсоедините их к усилителю.
*7 Чтобы использовать данные устройства, необходима правильная настройка внешнего входа (см. ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ на стр. 30).

JVC

CD RECEIVER KD-G844



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 4.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.

INSTRUCTIONS

GET0523-001A
[UI]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス1Mレーザー放射が出ます。光学装置で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1 LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG)

[European Union only]

Warning:

If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.

Caution:

If the temperature inside the car is below 0°C, the movement of animation and text scroll will be halted on the display to prevent the display from being blurred. L.TEMP appears on the display.
When the temperature increases, and the operating temperature is resumed, these functions will start working again.

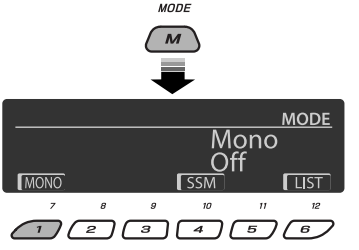
Caution on volume setting:

Digital devices (CD/USB) produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing these digital sources to avoid damaging the speakers by sudden increase of the output level.

How to use the M MODE and SEL buttons

If you use M MODE or SEL (select), the display and some controls (such as the number buttons, ⏮/⏭ buttons, ▲/▼ buttons, and the control dial) enter the corresponding control mode.

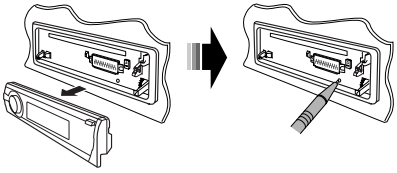
Ex.: When you press number button 1 after pressing M MODE, to operate the FM tuner.



To use these controls for original functions, press M MODE again.

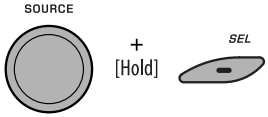
- However, pressing SEL makes the unit enters a different mode.
- Waiting for about 15 seconds (or 30 seconds for Bluetooth sources) without pressing any of these buttons will automatically cancels the control.

How to reset your unit

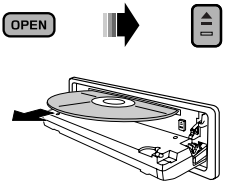


- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased (except the registered Bluetooth device, see pages 12 and 13).*

How to forcibly eject a disc



"Please Eject" appears on the display.



- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*
- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTIONS

Preparation 4

OPERATIONS

Basic operations 5
- Using the control panel 5
- Using the remote controller (RM-RK50) 6

Listening to the radio 7
Disc operations 9
Listening to the USB device 11

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Using the Bluetooth® devices 12
- Using the Bluetooth cellular phone 14
- Using the Bluetooth audio player 16

Listening to the CD changer 17
Listening to the iPod 18
Listening to the other external components 20

SETTINGS

Selecting a preset sound mode 21
General settings—PSM 23
Bluetooth settings 27
Title assignment 28

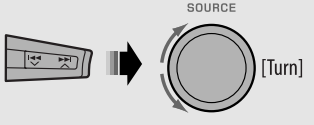
REFERENCES

More about this unit 29
Troubleshooting 33
Maintenance 38
Specifications 39

Preparation

Cancel the display demonstration and set the clock

- See also pages 23 and 24.

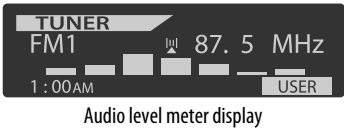
1		**Turn on the power.**
2		**Enter the PSM settings.**
3		**Cancel the display demonstrations** Select "Demo," then "Off." **Set the clock** Select "Clock Hr" (hour), then adjust the hour. Select "Clock Min" (minute), then adjust the minute. Select "24H/12H," then "24Hours" or "12Hours."
4		**Finish the procedure.**

Changing the display information and pattern

When the power is turned off: Check the current clock time

Ex.: When tuner is selected as the source

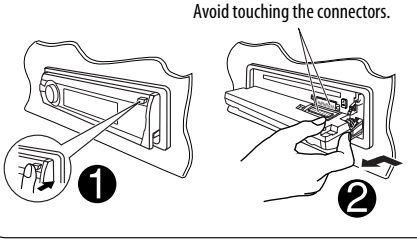
Source operation display



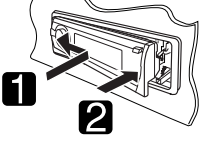
Audio level meter display
(see "LevelMeter" on page 23)

- If a station has been assigned a title, station title appears after about 5 seconds.
- To assign a title to a station, see page 28.

Detaching the control panel

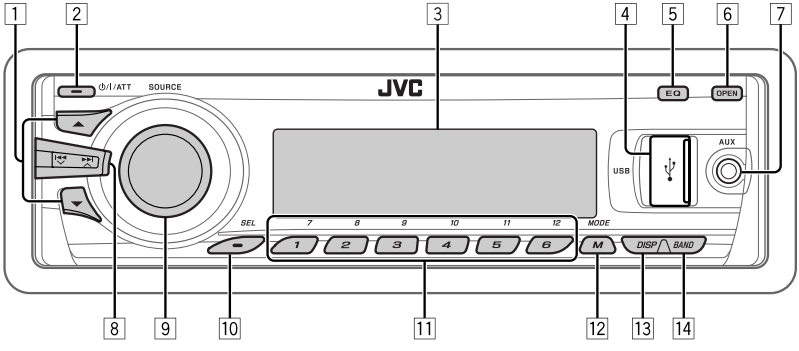


Attaching the control panel



Basic operations

Using the control panel



1 • **TUNER:** Select preset station.
• **CD/USB/CD-CH:** Select folder.
• **USB-iPod:** Enter the main menu [Hold].
• **iPod:** Enter the main menu/Pause playback/Confirm selection.
• **BT-PHONE/BT-AUDIO:** Select a registered device.

2 • Turn on the power.
• Turn off the power [Hold].
• Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).

3 Display window

4 USB (Universal Serial Bus) input jack

5 Select the sound mode.

6 Flip down the control panel.
• To eject the disc, flip down the control panel then press ⏏ on the unit.

7 AUX (auxiliary) input jack

8 • **TUNER:** Search for station.
• **CD/USB/CD-CH/USB-iPod/iPod:** Select track.
• **BT-AUDIO:** Reverse skip/forward skip.

9 • Volume control [Turn].
• Select the source [Press]*1.
TUNER*2 → **CD***2 → **USB***2 (or **USB-iPod**)*2 → **CD-CH***2/**iPod***2 (or **EXT IN**) → **BT-PHONE***2 → **BT-AUDIO***2 → **AUX IN** → (back to the beginning)

10 • Select/adjust the sound mode.
• Enter the PSM settings [Hold].

11 • **TUNER:** Select preset station.
• **CD/USB/CD-CH:** Select folder/track/disc (for CD changer).
• **USB-iPod:** Select preset top menu items.
• **BT-PHONE:** Dial preset phone number*3.

12 • Enter functions mode.
• **BT-PHONE:** Activate Voice Dialing [Hold].

13 Change the display information and pattern.

14 • **TUNER:** Select the bands.
• **USB-iPod:** Start/pause playback.
• **BT-AUDIO:** Start/pause playback.

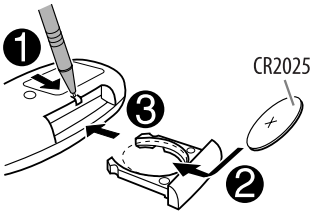
*1 *Holding SOURCE will enter the Bluetooth menu.*

*2 *You cannot select these sources if they are not ready or not connected.*

*3 *For storing preset phone number, see page 16.*

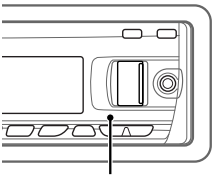
Using the remote controller (RM-RK50)

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



Before using the remote controller:

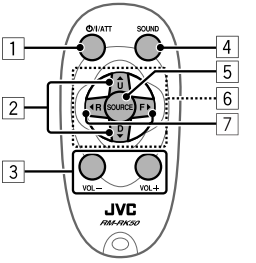
- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).



Remote sensor

Warning (to prevent accidents and damage):

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent.
- Do not leave the remote controller in a place (such as dashboards) exposed to direct sunlight for a long time.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
- Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.



1 • Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
• Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 • Changes the FM/AM bands with ▲ U.
• Changes the preset stations with D ▼.
• Changes the folder of the MP3/WMA/WAV.
• While playing an MP3 disc on an MP3-compatible CD changer:
– Changes the disc if pressed briefly.
– Changes the folder if pressed and held.
• While listening to an Apple iPod:
Connected to KS-PD100:
– Pauses or resumes playback with D ▼.
– Enters the main menu with ▲ U. (Now ▲ U/D ▼/◄ R/F ► work as the menu selecting buttons.)*
* ▲ U : *Returns to the previous menu.*
D ▼ : *Confirms the selection.*
Connected to the USB input jack:
– Enter the main menu if pressed and held.
– Select the desired menu if pressed briefly.
– Fast skip in every layer of the main menu if pressed and held.

3 Adjusts the volume level.

4 Selects the sound mode (iEQ: intelligent equalizer).

5 Selects the source.

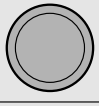
6 For Bluetooth cellular phone:
– Answers calls if pressed briefly.
– Rejects calls if pressed and held.

7 • Searches for stations if pressed briefly.
• Fast-forwards or reverses the track if pressed and held.
• Changes the tracks if pressed briefly.

- While listening to an iPod (in menu selecting mode):
  Connected to KS-PD100:
  – Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press D ▼ to confirm the selection.)
  – Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.

  Connected to the USB input jack:
  – Start play back the selected folder directly if pressed and held.
- Reverse skip/forward skip for Bluetooth audio.

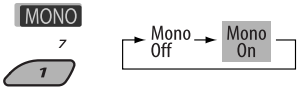
Listening to the radio

1		**Select "TUNER."**
2		**Select the bands.** FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM
3		**Search for a station to listen—Auto Search.** Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" lights up on the display, then press it repeatedly. • When receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength, ST lights up on the display.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1

2



Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.
- MO lights up on the display.

3 **Exit from the setting.**

FM station automatic presetting —SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

You can preset up to six stations for each band.

1 **While listening to a station...**

2

Continued on the next page

3 SSM (10, 4)

Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the selected FM band.

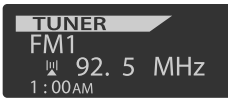
Manual presetting

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

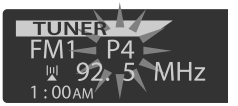
Using the number buttons

1 BAND → FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM

2



3 10, 4 [Hold]



Preset number flashes for a while.

Using the Preset Station list

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Follow steps 1 and 2 of "Using the number buttons" above.

- By holding ▲ / ▼, the Preset Station List will also appear (go to step **4**).

2 MODE, M

3 Display the Preset Station List.

LIST (12, 6) → ENTER (7, 1)

4 Select the preset number you want to store into.

- You can move to the lists of the other FM bands by pressing number button 5 ( ) or 6 ( ) repeatedly.

5 Store the station.

MEMO (8, 2)

Listening to the preset station on the Preset Station List

1 Display the Preset Station List, then select the preset station you want to listen to.

2 Change to the selected station.

CHANGE (7, 1)

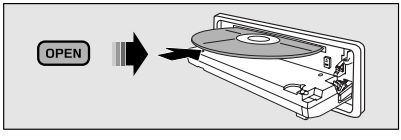
Disc operations

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

Caution:

Make sure to detach the USB device before opening the control panel, as it might block the opening mechanism.

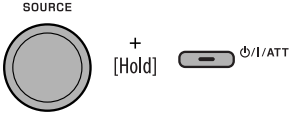
- To detach the USB device, see page 11.



To stop play and eject the disc

- Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.

Prohibiting disc ejection



To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure.

Pressing (or holding) the following buttons allows you to...

	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track
*1	MP3/WMA: Select folder
(Number buttons) *2	Locate particular folder*3 (for MP3/WMA disc) or track directly

*1 *By holding either one of the buttons, you can display the Folder List (see page 10).*

*2 *Press to select number 1 to 6; hold to select number 7 to 12.*

*3 *It is required that folders be assigned with 2-digit numbers at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.*

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks MP3/WMA: Within the same folder
	Repeat Track: Repeat current track **Repeat Folder:** MP3/WMA: Repeat current folder
	Random Folder: MP3/WMA: Randomly play all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Random Disc:** Randomly play all tracks

- You can also cancel the playback mode by selecting "**Off**" or press number button 4 (OFF).

Continued on the next page

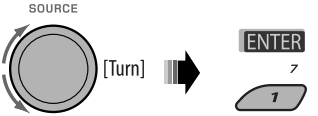
Selecting a folder/track on the list (only for MP3/WMA file)

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 MODE

2 **Select "LIST."**

3 **Select the list type.**



Folder ↔ File

4 **Select an item.**

Ex.: When "File" is selected in step **3**

- You can move to the other lists by pressing number button 5 ( ) or 6 ( ) repeatedly.

5 **Change to the selected item.**

Ⓐ If File List is selected

The list disappears and playback starts.

Ⓑ If Folder List is selected

- If the current folder is selected, File List appears, then repeat steps **4** and **5** Ⓐ to start playback.
- If another folder is selected, playback starts from the 1st file of the selected folder.

Listening to the USB device

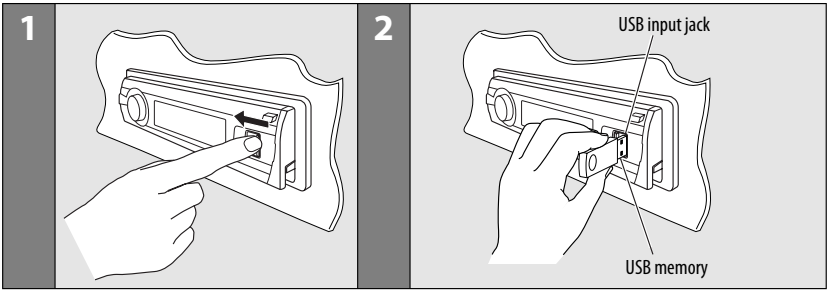
You can connect a USB mass storage class device such as a USB memory, Digital Audio Player*, portable HDD, etc. to the unit.

- You can also connect an Apple iPod to the USB input jack. For details of the operations, see pages 18 and 19.

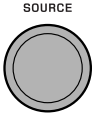
This unit can play MP3/WMA/WMA-DRM10*/WAV tracks stored in a USB device.

* *You can connect both MTP (Media Transfer Protocol) devices and USB mass storage class devices. See also page 31.*

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or detach the USB device.



If a USB device has been attached...



Playback starts from where it has been stopped previously.

- If a different USB device is currently attached, playback starts from the beginning.

To stop play and detach the USB device

Straightly pull it out from the unit.

- Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.

You can operate the USB device in the same way you operate the files on a disc. (See pages 9 and 10.)

- You can listen to WAV files by following the MP3/WMA files operations listed on pages 9 and 10.

Cautions:

- Avoid using the USB device if it might hinder your safety driving.
- Do not pull out and attach the USB device repeatedly while "Reading" is shown on the display.
- Do not start the car engine if a USB device is connected.
- This unit may not be able to play the files depending on the type of USB device.
- Operation and power supply may not work as intended for some USB devices.
- You cannot connect a computer to the USB input terminal of the unit.
- Make sure all important data has been backed up to avoid losing the data.
- Do not leave a USB device in the car, expose to direct sunlight, or high temperature to avoid deformation or cause damages to the device.
- Some USB devices may not work immediately after you turn on the power.
- For more details about USB operations, see pages 30 and 31.

Using the Bluetooth® devices

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the **Bluetooth Adapter** (KS-BTA200) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to check the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.

- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO").

Registering a Bluetooth device

Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in the Bluetooth menu to register and establish the connection with a device.

- Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO" as the source to operate the Bluetooth menu.

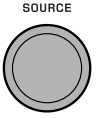
Open	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
Search	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the unit.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

Registering using "Open"

Preparation: Operate the device to turn on its Bluetooth function.

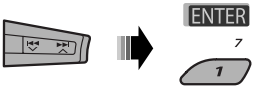
1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Select "NEW."

3 Enter setting menu.

4 Select "Open."



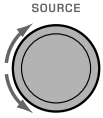
5 Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number) code to the unit.

- You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number). [Initial: 0000]
- To enter a PIN code less than 4-digit, firstly delete the initial PIN code (0000) by pressing number button 5 (CLEAR).

* *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*

1 Move to the next (or previous) number position.

2 Select a number or blank space.



3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you finish entering a PIN code.

4 Confirm the entry.

"Open..." flashes on the display.

6 Use the Bluetooth device to search and connect.

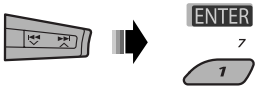
On the device to be connected, enter the same PIN code you have just entered for this unit.
"Connected (and device name)" appears on the display.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use "**Connect**" (or activate "**Auto Connect**") to connect the same device from next time on. (See the following and pages 27 and 28.)

Connecting a device

Perform steps **1** – **3** on page 12, then...

1
- **Select "Search" to search for available devices.**
  The unit searches and displays the list of the available devices.
  If no available device is detected, "Device Not Found" appears.
- **Select "Special" to connect a special device.**
  The unit displays the list of the preset devices.

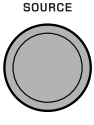


2 Select a device you want to connect.

3
- **For available devices...**
  1 Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit.
  Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code.
  2 Use the Bluetooth device to connect.
  Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.
- **For special device...**
  Use "Open" or "Search" to connect.

Connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device

1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Select a registered device you want to connect/disconnect/delete.

3 Enter setting menu.

4
- **Select "Connect" or "Disconnect" to connect/disconnect the selected device.**

Continued on the next page

- **Select "Delete," then confirm the selection.**

Press number button 3 to select "No" or return to the previous screen.

You can set the unit to connect the Bluetooth device automatically when the unit is turned on. (See "**Auto Connect**" on pages 27 and 28.)

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone

1	SOURCE	**Select "BT-PHONE."**
2	MODE M	**Enter Bluetooth menu.**
3	—	**Establish the connection with a device, then make a call (or settings using the Bluetooth menu).**

When a call comes in....

The source is automatically changed to "BT-PHONE."

When "Auto Answer" is activated....

The unit answers the incoming calls automatically, see pages 27 and 28.

- When "Auto Answer" is deactivated, press any button (except ⏻/I/ATT/control dial) to answer the incoming call.

To end the call

Hold any button (except ⏻/I/ATT/control dial).

- You can adjust the microphone volume level (see pages 27 and 28).

When a text message comes in....

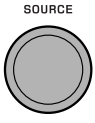
If the cellular phone is compatible with Text Message and "Message Info" is set to "Auto" (see pages 27 and 28), the unit rings and "Received Message" appears on the display to inform you of the message arrival.

Making a call

You can make a call using one of the Dial Menu items.

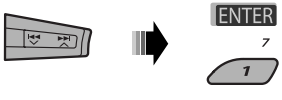
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Select "BT-PHONE."

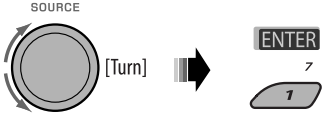


2 Enter setting menu.

3 Select "Dial Menu."



4 Select the method to make a call.



- **Redial***: Shows the list of the phone numbers you have dialed. Go to the following step.
- **Received***: Shows the list of the received calls. Go to the following step.
- **Phonebook***: Shows the phone book of the connected cellular phone. Go to the following step.
- **Missed***: Shows the list of the missed calls. Go to the following step.
- **Number**: Shows the phone number entry screen. See "How to enter phone number" on the right column.
- **Voice Dial** (Only accessible when the connected cellular phone has the voice recognition system): Speak the name (registered words) you want to call.

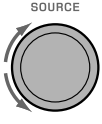
*** Displayed only when your cellular phone is equipped with these functions.**

– If not displayed, try to transfer the phone book memory of the cellular phone to this unit. (Refer to the instruction manual supplied with your cellular phone.)

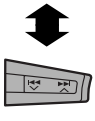
– With some cellular phones, the phone book memory is transferred automatically.

5 Select the name/phone number you want to call.

How to enter phone number



Select a number.



Move the entry position.

Confirm the entry.

Continued on the next page

Using voice command

1 MODE / M "Say..." appears on the display.

2 Speak the name (registered words) you want to call.
- You can also use voice command from the Dial Menu. Select "Voice Dial" from the Dial Menu.
- If your cellular phone does not support the voice recognition system, "Error" appears on the display.

Presetting the phone number

You can preset up to six phone numbers.
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Display the phone number you want to preset by using one of the "Dial Menu" items.

2 Select a phone number.

You can also enter a new phone number (see also "How to enter phone number" on page 15) to store.

3 Select a preset number to store.

[Hold]

To call a preset number

While in Bluetooth phone....

Using the Bluetooth audio player

- Operations and display indications differ depending on their availability on the connected audio player.

SOURCE	**Select "BT-AUDIO."** If playback does not start automatically, operate the Bluetooth audio player to start playback.

	Reverse skip/forward skip
BAND	Start/pause playback
MODE / M	Enter setting menu (Device list)

- Refer also to pages 13 and 14 for connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device.

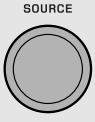
Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>.

Listening to the CD changer

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit. You can connect a CD changer to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

- You can only play conventional CDs (including CD Text) and MP3 discs.

Preparation: Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 25.

1		**Select "CD-CH."**
2		**Select a disc to start playing.** [Press] For selecting disc number 1 – 6. [Hold] For selecting disc number 7 – 12.

	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track
*	MP3: Select folders

* *By holding either one of the buttons, you can display the Disc List (see page 10).*

To select a disc/folder/track on the list

See "Selecting a folder/track on the list (only for MP3/WMA file)" on page 10.

Select "Disc" in step **3** to display the Disc List of the CD changer.

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks MP3: Within the same folder
	Repeat Track: Repeat current track **Repeat Folder:** MP3: Repeat all tracks of current folder **Repeat Disc:** Repeat all tracks of the current disc
	Random Folder: MP3: Randomly play all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder **Random Disc:** Randomly play all tracks of current disc **Random All:** Randomly play all tracks of the discs in the magazine

- You can also cancel the playback mode by selecting "**Off**" or press number button 4 (OFF).

Listening to the iPod

You can play songs in an Apple iPod by:
– Connecting it with the USB cable supplied with your iPod to the USB input jack on the control panel.
– Connecting the Interface adapter for iPod, KS-PD100 (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.
Preparation: Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 25.

- You can control playback from the unit.
- Disconnecting the iPod will stop playback. Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.
- For details, refer also to the manual supplied for your iPod.

Caution:

- Avoid using the iPod if it might hinder your safety while driving.
- Make sure all important data has been backed up to avoid losing the data.

1	—	**Connect an iPod to the USB input jack or through KS-PD100.** Playback starts automatically from where it had been paused previously. • If an iPod has been connected, press SOURCE to select "USB-iPod" or "iPod" as the playback source.
2		**Select a track.**
3	—	**Adjust the volume and sound as you want. (See pages 21 and 22.)**

Playback control from the unit

Button	For iPod connected through KS-PD100	For iPod connected to the USB input jack
	[Press] Go to the next or previous track [Hold] Fast-forward or reverse the track during playback	[Press] Go to the next or previous track [Hold] Fast-forward or reverse the track during playback
	[Press] Enter main menu when you press ▲. Pause/resume playback when ▼ is pressed.	[Hold] Enter main menu [Press] Go to the top menu of "Playlists," "Artists," "Albums," "Songs," "Podcasts," "Genres," "Composers," or "Audiobooks" in the main menu. • Pressing the number buttons (1 – 6) or holding 1 (7) and 2 (8) can also select the preset top menus.
	—	[Press] Pause/resume playback.

Selecting a track from the menu

No.	Operation	For iPod connected through KS-PD100	For iPod connected to the USB input jack
1	Enter the main menu.		[Hold]
2	Select the desired menu.	Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Genres ↔ Composers	Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Podcasts ↔ Genres ↔ Composers ↔ Audiobooks
3	Confirm the selection.	• By holding ⏮ ∨/⏭ ∧, you can fast skip during song search in the main menu.	• By holding ⏭ ∧, you can start play back the selected item directly. • By holding ⏮ ∨, you can go back to the previous menu. • By holding ▲/▼, you can fast skip in every layer of the main menu.
		• If a track is selected, playback starts automatically. • If the selected item has another layer, you will enter the layer. Repeat steps **2** and **3** until the desired track is played.	

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

	Repeat One: Same as "Repeat One." **Repeat All:** Same as "Repeat All." **Repeat Off:** Cancels.
	Random Album*: Same as "Shuffle Albums." **Random Song:** Same as "Shuffle Songs." **Random Off:** Cancels.

* *Functions only if you select "All Albums" or "All" in "Albums" of the main "MENU."*

The menu selecting mode will be canceled:

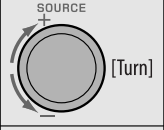
- If no operations are performed for about:
  - 5 seconds for iPod connected through KS-PD100.
  - 15 seconds for iPod connected to the USB input jack.
- When you confirm the selection of a track.

Listening to the other external components

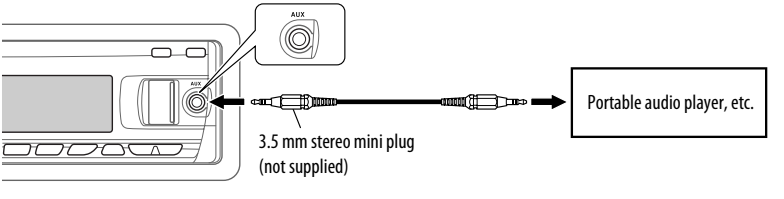
You can connect an external component to:

- CD changer jack on the rear of this unit using the following adapters:
  - – **Line Input Adapter,** KS-U57
  - – **AUX Input Adapter,** KS-U58

  Preparation: Make sure "Ext In" is selected for the external input setting, see page 25.
- AUX (auxiliary) input jack on the control panel.

1		**Select "EXT IN" or "AUX IN."**
2	—	**Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**
3		**Adjust the volume.**
4	—	**Adjust the sound as you want (see pages 21 and 22).**

Connecting an external component to the AUX input jack



Selecting a preset sound mode

You can select a preset sound mode suitable to the music genre (iEQ: intelligent equalizer).

EQ → USER → ROCK → CLASSIC → POPS → HIP HOP → JAZZ

Preset value setting for each sound mode

Sound mode	Preset value								
	Bass			Mid (mid-range)			Treble		
	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q
USER	60 Hz	00	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	00	–
ROCK	100 Hz	+03	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	–
CLASSIC	80 Hz	+01	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	–
POPS	100 Hz	+02	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	+01	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	–
HIP HOP	60 Hz	+04	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	–02	Q1.0	10.0 kHz	+01	–
JAZZ	80 Hz	+03	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	–

Freq.: Frequency Q: Q-slope

Adjusting the sound

You can adjust the sound characteristics to your preference.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3 or 6.

1

2

EQ ↔ Fad/Bal ↔ Subwoofer* ↔ VolAdjust ↔ Loudness

- For "EQ" setting, see page 22.
- * *Displayed only when "L/O Mode" is set to "Woofer" (see page 25).*

3 Adjust the selected setting item.

Ⓐ **Fad/Bal (Fader/Balance)**

1 Press number button 1 (SELECT) to move to the "Fad/Bal" adjustment display.

2 Adjust the speaker output balance by pressing:
▲ / ▼: between the front and rear speakers. [F6 to R6]
|◄◄ ∨/►►| ∧: between the left and right speakers. [L6 to R6]

Ⓑ **Subwoofer**

1 Press number button 1 (SELECT) to move to the "Subwoofer" adjustment display.

2 Use |◄◄ ∨/►►| ∧ to select a cutoff frequency to the subwoofer.

- OFF: All signals are sent to the subwoofer.
- 80Hz: Frequencies higher than 80 Hz are cut off.
- 120Hz: Frequencies higher than 120 Hz are cut off.
- 160Hz: Frequencies higher than 160 Hz are cut off.

Continued on the next page

3 Turn the control dial to adjust the subwoofer output level. [0 to 8]

4 Press number button 1 (MORE) to select the subwoofer phase. [0deg (normal) or 180deg (reverse)]

Ⓒ **VolAdjust,** [–5 to +5]
Turn the control dial to adjust the input level of each source (except FM).
Adjust to match the input level of the FM sound level.
- Before making an adjustment, select the source you want to adjust.

Ⓓ **Loudness,** [Off or On]
Turn the control dial to select "Off" or "On." When "On" is selected, low and high frequencies sound are boosted to produce a well-balanced sound at low volume level.

4 Exit from the setting.

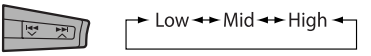
Storing your own sound modes

You can adjust the sound modes and store your own adjustments in memory.
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 6.

1

2 Select a sound mode.

3 Select a frequency range.



4 Adjust the sound elements of the selected frequency range.

1 Use ▲ / ▼ to adjust the level.

2 Press number button 5 (FREQ), then turn the control dial to select the frequency.

3 Press number button 5 (Q), then turn the control dial to select the quality slope (Q).

Sound elements	Range/selectable items		
	Low	Mid	High
Frequency	60 Hz 80 Hz 100 Hz 200 Hz	500 Hz 1 kHz 1.5 kHz 2.5 kHz	10 kHz 12.5 kHz 15 kHz 17.5 kHz
Level	–6 to +6	–6 to +6	–6 to +6
Q	Q1.0 Q1.25 Q1.5 Q2.0	Q0.5 Q0.75 Q1.0 Q1.25	Fix

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to adjust the other frequency bands.

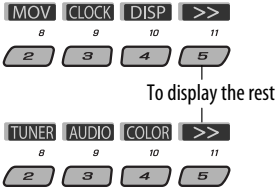
6 Store the adjustments.

General settings — PSM

You can change PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) items listed in the table below and on pages 24 and 25.

1 Enter the PSM settings.

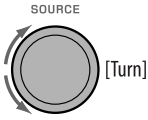
2 Select a PSM category.



3 Select a PSM item.

By pressing either one of the buttons repeatedly, you can also move to the item of the other categories.

4 Adjust the selected PSM item.



5 Repeat steps 2 – 4 to adjust other PSM items if necessary.

6 Finish the procedure.

Category	Indication	Item (__ : Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
MOV (movie)	**Demo** Display demonstration	• **On**	: Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [4].
		• **Off**	: Cancels.
	LevelMeter Audio level meter	• **Meter 1**	: Select the different level meter patterns.
		• **Meter 2**	• Press DISP to show the selected level meter.
CLOCK	**Clock Disp***1 Clock display	• **On**	: Clock time is shown on the display when the power is turned off.
		• **Off**	: Cancels; pressing DISP will show the clock time for about 5 seconds when the power is turned off, [4].

*1 *If the power supply is not interrupted by turning off the ignition key of your car, it is recommended to select "Off" to save the car's battery.*

Continued on the next page

Category	Indication	Item (__ : Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
CLOCK	**Clock Hr** Hour adjustment	**1 – 12AM/** **1 – 12PM** **(0 – 23)**	: Initial: 1 (1:00AM), [4].
	Clock Min Minute adjustment	**00 – 59**	: Initial: 00 (1:00AM), [4].
	24H/12H Time display mode	• **12Hours** • **24Hours**	: See also page 4 for setting.
DISP (display)	**Scroll***2 Scroll	• **Once** • **Auto** • **Off**	: Scrolls the track information once. : Repeats scrolling (at 5-second intervals). : Cancels. (Holding DISP can scroll the display regardless of the setting.)
	Dimmer Dimmer	• **Auto** • **Off** • **On** • **Time Set**	: Dims the display when you turn on the headlights. : Cancels. : Dims the display and button illumination. : Set the timer for dimmer, [26].
	From – To*3	—	Any hour – Any hour : Initial: 6PM – 7AM.
	Contrast Contrast	**1 – 8** Initial: 5	: Adjust the display contrast to make the display indications clear and legible.
	LCD Type Display type	• **Auto** • **Positive** • **Negative**	: Positive pattern will be selected during the day time*4; while negative pattern will be used during the night time*4. : Positive pattern of the display. : Negative pattern of the display.
	Tag Tag display	• **On** • **Off**	: Shows the tag while playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks. : Cancels.
TUNER	**IF Band** Intermediate frequency band	• **Auto** • **Wide**	: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) : Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.

*2 *Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.*

*3 *Adjustable only when "Dimmer" is set to "Time Set."*

*4 *Depends on the "Dimmer" setting.*

Category	Indication	Item (__ : Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
AUDIO	**Ext Input***5 External input	• **Changer** • **Ext In**	: To use a JVC CD changer, [17], or an Apple iPod, [18]. : To use any other external component, [20].
	AudioBooks*6 Speed control of "Audiobook"	• **Normal** • **Faster** • **Slower**	: You can select the playback speed of the "Audiobook" sound file in your iPod. • Initial selected item depends on your iPod setting.
	L/O Mode Line output mode	• **Rear** • **Woofer**	: Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting the rear speakers (through an external amplifier). : Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting a subwoofer (through an external amplifier).
	Amp Gain Amplifier gain control	• **High PWR** • **Low PWR**	: Volume 00 – Volume 50 : Volume 00 – Volume 30 (Select if the maximum power of each speaker is less than 50 W to prevent damaging the speaker.)
COLOR	**Color Sel** Color selection	Initial: All Source; Color: Pale	: Select your favorite display color for each source (or for all sources), [26].
	Color Set Color setting	— **Day Color** **NightColor** **00 — 11** **00 — 11** **00 — 11**	: Create your own colors, and select them for the display color, [27]. : User color during the day time*7. : User color during the night time*7. : Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05 : Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05 : Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05
	Key Illum Illumination switch	• **Red** • **Green**	: You can select the button illumination according to your preference.

*5 *Displayed only when an iPod is connected to the USB input jack and playback is controlled from the unit.*

*6 *Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—TUNER, CD, USB, or Bluetooth.*

*7 *Depends on the "Dimmer" setting.*

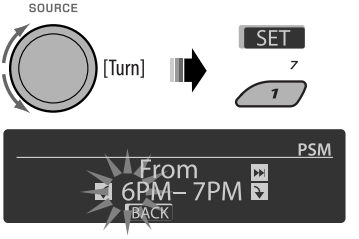
Setting the time for dimmer

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 23.

- In step **2**, select "DISP."
- In step **3**, select "Dimmer."

2 Select "Time Set."



3 Adjust the dimmer start time.

1 Turn the control dial to set the dimmer start time.

2 Press ►►I ^ to select "To." Then, turn the control dial to set the dimmer end time.

4 Exit from the setting.

Changing the display color

You can select your favorite display color for each source (or all sources).

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3 or 6.

Setting the display color

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 23.

- In step **2**, select "COLOR."
- In step **3**, select "Color Sel."

2

3 Select a source.

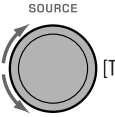
All Source*1 ↔ **CD** ↔ **Changer***3 (or **Ext In***2) ↔ **USB***3 ↔ **FM** ↔ **AM** ↔ **iPod***3 ↔ **Aux In** ↔ **BT Phone***3 ↔ **BT Audio***3 ↔ (back to the beginning)

*1 *When you select "All Source," you can use the same color for all the sources.*

*2 *Depends on the "Ext Input" setting, see page 25.*

*3 *Displayed only when the target component is connected.*

4 Select a color.



Pale ↔ **Aqua** ↔ **Sky** ↔ **Sea** ↔ **Leaves** ↔ **Grass** ↔ **Apple** ↔ **Rose** ↔ **Amber** ↔ **Honey** ↔ **Violet** ↔ **Grape** ↔ **Every***4 ↔ **User***5 ↔ (back to the beginning)

*4 *The color changes every 2 seconds.*

*5 *The user-edited colors—"Day Color" and "NightColor" will be applied (see page 27 for details).*

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to select the color for each source (except when selecting "All Source" in step 3).

6 Exit from the setting.

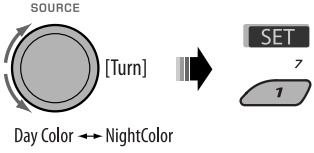
Creating your own color—User Color

You can create your own colors—"Day Color" or "NightColor."

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 23.

- In step **2**, select "COLOR."
- In step **3**, select "Color Set."

2 Select "Day Color" or "NightColor."



3 Select a primary color.

4 Adjust the level (00 to 11) of the selected primary color.

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to adjust other primary colors.

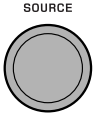
6 Exit from the setting.

Bluetooth settings

You can change the settings listed on page 28 according to your preference.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

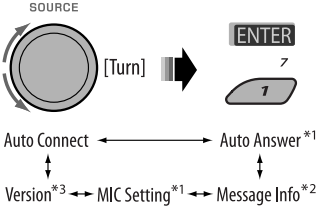
1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Enter the Bluetooth menu.

3 Select "Setting."

4 Select a setting item.

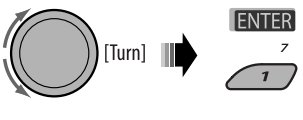


*1 *Displayed only when a Bluetooth phone is connected.*

*2 *Displayed only when a Bluetooth phone is connected and it is compatible with text message.*

*3 *Bluetooth Audio: Shows only "Version."*

5 Change the setting accordingly.



Continued on the next page

Setting menu (__ : Initial)

Auto Connect

When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with...

Off: No Bluetooth device.
Last: The last connected Bluetooth device.
Order: The available registered Bluetooth device found at first.

Auto Answer

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

On: The unit answers the incoming calls automatically.
Off: The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually.
Reject: The unit rejects all incoming calls.

Message Info

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

Auto: The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "Received Message."
Manual: The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.

MIC setting (microphone setting)

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."
Adjust the built-in microphone volume, [LEVEL 01/02/03].

Version

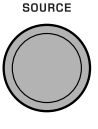
The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

Title assignment

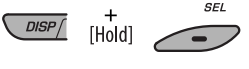
You can assign titles to 30 station frequencies (FM and AM) using 10 characters (maximum) for each title.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Select "TUNER."

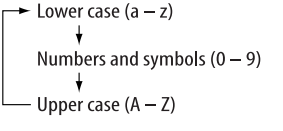


2 Show the title entry screen.



3 Assign a title.

1 Press number button 4 (A→a) repeatedly to select a character set.



2 Turn the control dial to select a character. (For available characters, see page 33.)
3 Use ⏮/⏭ to move to the next (or previous) character position.
4 Repeat steps 1 to 3 until you finish entering the title.

4 Store the title.

To erase the entire title

In step **3** above...

More about this unit

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback also starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a track, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously next time you turn on the power.

General

- If you change the source while listening to a disc, playback stops.
  Next time you select "CD" as the playback source, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously.
- After ejecting a disc or removing a USB device, "No Disc" or "No USB" appears and you cannot operate some of the buttons. Insert another disc, reattach a USB device, or press SOURCE to select another playback source.

Tuner operations

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
  - – All previously stored stations are erased and the stations are stored anew.
  - – Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
  - – When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, the previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

Disc/USB operations

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

General

- This unit has been designed to reproduce CDs/CD Texts, and CD-Rs (Recordable)/CD-RWs (Rewritable) in audio CD (CD-DA), MP3 and WMA formats.
- When a disc is inserted upside down, "Please Eject" appears on the display. Press OPEN, then ⏏ to eject the disc.
- In this manual, words "track" and "file" are interchangeably used.
- While fast-forwarding or reversing on MP3/WMA/WAV files, you can only hear intermittent sounds.
- File/folder list may not appear correctly if too many hierarchies and folders are used.
- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot again to protect it from dust. Playback starts automatically.

Playing a CD-R or CD-RW

- Use only "finalized" CD-Rs or CD-RWs.
- This unit can only play back files of the same type as those which are detected first if a disc includes both audio CD (CD-DA) files and MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some CD-Rs or CD-RWs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, or for the following reasons:
  - – Discs are dirty or scratched.
  - – Moisture condensation has occurred on the lens inside the unit.

Continued on the next page

– The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
– The files on the CD-R/CD-RW are written using the "Packet Write" method.
– There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stained, scratched, warped, etc.).

- CD-RWs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of CD-RWs is lower than that of regular CDs.
- Do not use the following CD-Rs or CD-RWs:
  – Discs with stickers, labels, or a protective seal stuck to the surface.
  – Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

  Using these discs under high temperature or high humidity may cause malfunctions or damage to the unit.

Playing an MP3/WMA disc

- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3 files and for WMA files.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files meeting the conditions below:

  MP3:
  – Bit rate: 8 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz, 12 kHz, 11.025 kHz, 8 kHz

  WMA:
  – Bit rate: 32 kbps — 192 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz
  – Disc format: ISO 9660 Level 1/Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names vary depending on the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3> or <.wma>).
  – ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
  – ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
  – Romeo*: up to 128 characters
  – Joliet*: up to 64 characters
  – Windows long file name*: up to 128 characters

* *The parenthetic figure is the maximum number of characters for file/folder names in case the total number of files and folders is 271 or more.*

- This unit can recognize a total of 512 files, 200 folders, and 8 hierarchical levels.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).

  Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in the elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. In particular, this difference becomes noticeable after performing the search function.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded in MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriate format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded in lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks from a USB device

- Connecting a USB device automatically changes the source to "USB."
- While playing from a USB device, the playback order may differ from the one from other players.
- This unit may be unable to play back some USB devices or some files due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- Depending on the shape of the USB devices and connection ports, some USB devices may not be attached properly or the connection might be loose.
- When connecting a USB mass storage class device, refer also to its instructions.

- Connect one USB mass storage class device to the unit at a time. Do not use a USB hub.
- You can connect two types of USB device to this unit—MTP device and Mass storage class device. If you connect an MTP device featuring "USB digital media streaming" to this unit, you can play back the WMA-DRM10 (Digital Right Management) files purchased through the music distributing web sites, through this unit.
- This unit is compatible with the USB Full-Speed.
- If the connected USB device does not have the correct files, "No File" appears.
- This unit can show ID3 Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3 and WMA/WAV Tag.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA/WAV files meeting the conditions below:
  MP3:
  – Bit rate: 32 kbps — 320 kbps (MPEG-1)
    8 kbps — 160 kbps (MPEG-2)
  – Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
  WMA:
  – Bit rate: 5 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 8 kHz — 48 kHz
  – Channel: 1 ch/2 ch
  WAV:
  – Bit rate: Linear PCM at 705 kbps and 1 411 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 44.1 kHz
  – Channel: 1 ch/2 ch
- This unit can play back MP3 files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- The maximum number of characters for folder and file names is 25 characters; 128 characters for MP3/WMA/WAV Tag.
- This unit can recognize a total of 20 000 files and 2 000 folders (999 files per folder). However, the display can shows until 9 999 folders/files.
- The unit cannot recognize a USB mass storage class device whose rating is other than 5 V and exceeds 500 mA.
- USB devices equipped with special functions such as data security functions cannot be used with the unit.
- Do not use a USB device with 2 or more partitions.
- This unit may not recognized a USB device connected through a USB card reader.
- This unit may not play back files in a USB device properly when using a USB extension cord.
- This unit cannot assure proper functions or supply power to all types of USB devices.

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on the circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

appears when the connection is established.

	Appears when the Bluetooth phone is connected.
	Appears when the Bluetooth audio player is connected.
	Appears when the Bluetooth phone and Bluetooth audio player are connected.

Icons for phone types

These icons indicate the phone type set on the device:

: Cellular phone	: General
: Household phone	: Other than above
: Office	: Unknown

Continued on the next page

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **Connection Error:**
  The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use "Connect" to connect the device again. (See page 13.)
- **Error**
  Try the operation again. If "Error" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **Device Not Found**
  No available Bluetooth device is detected by "Search...".
- **Loading...**
  The unit is updating the phone book and/or text messages.
- **Please Wait...**
  The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **Reset 08**
  Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

iPod

- Controllable iPod (connected through....):
  (A) KS-PD100:
  – iPod with dock connector (3rd Generation)
  – iPod with click wheel (4th Generation)
  – iPod nano (1st & 2nd*1 Generation)
  – iPod mini (1st Generation)
  – iPod video (5th Generation)*2
  – iPod photo
  (B) USB input jack:
  – iPod nano (1st & 2nd Generation)
  – iPod video (5th Generation)

*1 *When you connect the iPod nano to the interface adapter, be sure to disconnect the headphones; otherwise, no sound is heard.*

*2 *It is not possible to browse video files on the "Videos" menu while the iPod is connected to the interface adapter.*

- Update your iPod to the latest software version before using it with this unit.
  – You can check the software version of your iPod under "About" in the "Setting" menu of the iPod.
  – For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- While the unit is being turned on, the iPod is charged through this unit.
- While connecting an iPod with Video:
  – No video shows on the iPod's display or the external monitor (only the audio part is available).
  – It is not possible to browse video files on the "Video" menu. (If you connect the iPod during the playback or pausing of a video file, resuming playback will not work.)
- iPod shuffle and iPhone cannot be used with this unit.
- You can control the iPod from this unit when "JVC" or "√" appears on the iPod display after connection.
- The song order displayed on the selection menu of this unit may differ from that of the iPod.
- If playback is stopped, select a track from the selection menu or press BAND to play back the same track again.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly:
  – Some characters such as accented letters cannot be shown correctly on the display.
  – Communication between the iPod and the unit is not stable.
- If the text information includes more than 16 characters, it scrolls on the display. This unit can display up to 128 characters.

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>

Title assignment

- If you try to assign titles to more than 30 station frequencies, "Name Full" appears. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.

Available characters

Upper case

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N
O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	space	

Lower case

a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n
o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	space	

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	space							

General settings—PSM

- "Auto" setting for "Dimmer" may not work correctly on some vehicles, particularly on those having a control dial for dimming.
  In this case, change the "Dimmer" setting to any other than "Auto."
- If "LCD Type" is set to "Auto," the display pattern will change to the "Positive" or "Negative" pattern depending on the "Dimmer" setting.
- If you change the "Amp Gain" setting from "High PWR" to "Low PWR" while the volume level is set higher than "Volume 30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "Volume 30."

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).
	• "Connect Error" appears on the display.	Remove the control panel, wipe the connector, then attach it again (see page 4).
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the antenna firmly.

Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played back. • Tracks on the CD-R/CD-RW cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized CD-R/CD-RW. • Finalize the CD-R/CD-RW with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc can neither be played back nor ejected.	• Unlock the disc (see page 9). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 3).
	• Disc sound is sometimes interrupted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
	• Disc cannot be recognized (“No Disc,” “CD Loading Error,” or “Eject Error” flashes).	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 3).
	• “Please Eject“ appears on the display.	This occurs sometimes due to over-heating. Eject the disc or change to another playback source.
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Use a disc with MP3/WMA tracks recorded in a format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet. • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• A longer readout time is required (“Reading” keeps flashing on the display).	Do not use too many hierarchical levels and folders.
	• Tracks do not play back in the order you have intended them to play.	The playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	• The elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc (eg. variable bit rate).
	• “Please Eject” appears on the display.	Insert a disc that contains MP3/WMA tracks.
	• “Not Support” appears on the display and track skips.	Skip to the next track encoded in an appropriate format or to the next non-copy-protected WMA track.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (capital: A – Z, small: a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols (see page 33).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
USB device	• Noise is generated.	• The track played back is not a playable file format (MP3/WMA/WAV). Skip to another file. • Do not add the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav> to non-MP3/WMA/WAV tracks.
	• Tracks cannot play back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differs from the one played back using other players.
	• "Reading" keeps flashing on the display.	• Readout time varies depending on the USB device. • Do not use too many hierarchy, folders and empty folders.* • Turn off the power then on again. • Do not pull out or connect the USB device repeatedly while "Reading" is displayed on the display. * *Folder that is phisically empty or folder that contains data but does not contain valid MP3/WMA/WAV track.*
	• "No File" flashes on the display. • "No USB" appears on the display.	Connect a USB device that contains tracks encoded in an appropriate format.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	The track is unplayable.
	• "Read failed" appears on the display.	The connected USB device may be malfunctioning, or may not have been formatted correctly. The files included in the USB device are corrupted.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	For available characters, see page 33.
	• While playing a track, sound is sometimes interrupted.	The tracks have not been properly copied into the USB device. Copy tracks again into the USB device, and try again.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a USB device.	• Turn off, then turn on the unit. • Connect the device again, when the sound is not yet restored.

Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Bluetooth®	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	The unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio device at a time. While connecting a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device. After the device detects the unit, select "Open..." on the unit to connect the device. (See page 12.)
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. • Select the device name from "Special," then try to connect again. (See page 13.)
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to a place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a Bluetooth audio player.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio player. • Disconnect the device connected for "BT-PHONE." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • Connect the player again, when the sound is not yet restored.
	• The connected audio player cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio player supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile). (Operations depend on the connected audio player.)
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).

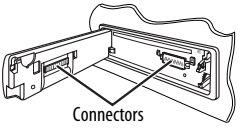
	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
iPod	• The iPod does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version. • Charge the battery.
	• The sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the display.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Charge the battery.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation (see page 18).
	• No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano.	• Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano. • Update the firmware version of the iPod nano.
	• "No File" appears on the display.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the display.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect it again.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the display.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.

- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors. To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture has evaporated.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc in its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs in cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

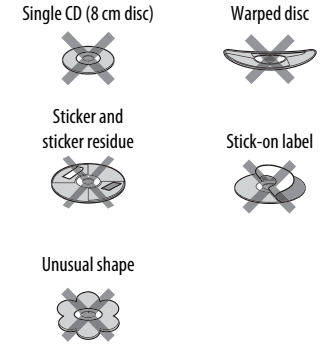
- Do not use any solvents (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:



Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION	
Maximum Power Output:	
Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
Continuous Power Output (RMS):	
Front/Rear:	19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.
Load Impedance:	4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
Tone Control Range:	
Bass:	±12 dB (60 Hz, 80 Hz, 100 Hz, 200 Hz)
Mid-range:	±12 dB (500 Hz, 1.0 kHz, 1.5 kHz, 2.5 kHz)
Treble:	±12 dB (10.0 kHz, 12.5 kHz, 15.0 kHz, 17.5 kHz)
Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	70 dB
Line-Out and Subwoofer-Out Level/ Impedance:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
Other Terminal:	CD changer jack, AUX (auxiliary) input jack, USB input jack, Antenna input

TUNER SECTION	
Frequency Range:	
FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
AM:	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
FM Tuner	
Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 µV/75 Ω)
50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
Stereo Separation:	30 dB
AM Tuner	
Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 µV/35 dB

CD PLAYER SECTION	
Type:	Compact disc player
Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)
Number of Channels:	2 channels (stereo)
Frequency Response:	5 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Dynamic Range:	96 dB
Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	98 dB
Wow and Flutter:	Less than measurable limit
MP3 Decoding Format:	(MPEG1/2 Audio Layer 3)
Max. Bit Rate:	320 kbps
WMA (Windows Media® Audio) Decoding Format:	
Max. Bit Rate:	192 kbps

USB SECTION	
USB Standard:	USB 1.1, USB 2.0
Data Transfer Rate:	Full Speed: Max. 12 Mbps
	Low Speed: Max. 1.5 Mbps
Compatible Device:	Mass storage class
Compatible File System:	FAT 32/16/12
Playable Audio Format:	MP3/WMA/WAV
Max. Current:	500 mA/5 V

GENERAL	
Power Requirement:	
Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
Grounding System:	Negative ground
Allowable Operating Temperature:	0°C to +40°C
Dimensions (W × H × D): (approx.)	
Installation Size:	182 mm × 52 mm × 160 mm
Panel Size:	188 mm × 58 mm × 6 mm
Mass:	1.4 kg (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

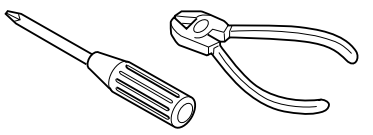
JVC

EN

© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0108DTSMDTJEIN

KD-G844
Installation/Connection Manual



GET0523-002A
[UI]

0108DTSMDTJEIN
EN
© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

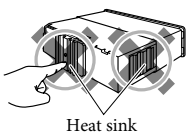
WARNINGS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

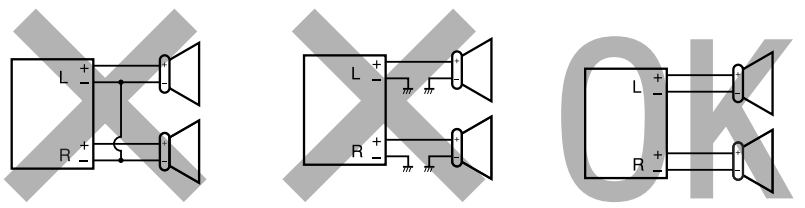
- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with a maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amp Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 25 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



Heat sink

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

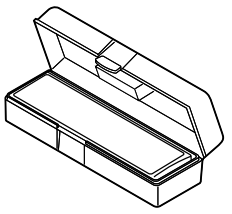
- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.



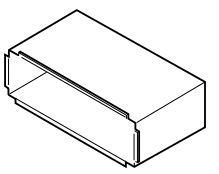
Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC car audio dealer immediately.

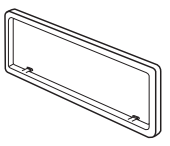
Ⓐ / Ⓑ Hard case/Control panel



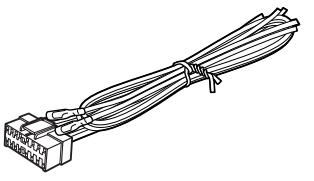
Ⓒ Sleeve



Ⓓ Trim plate



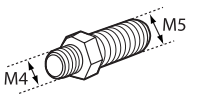
Ⓔ Power cord



Ⓕ Washer (ø5)

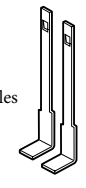
Ⓖ Lock nut (M5)

Ⓗ Mounting bolt (M4 × 5 mm; M5 × 12.5 mm)



Ⓘ Rubber cushion

Ⓙ Handles



Ⓚ Remote controller

Ⓛ Battery

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**

* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?

- **Power cannot be turned on.**

* Is the yellow lead connected?

- **No sound from the speakers.**

* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?

- **Sound is distorted.**

* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **Noise interfere with sounds.**

* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?

- **This unit becomes hot.**

* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

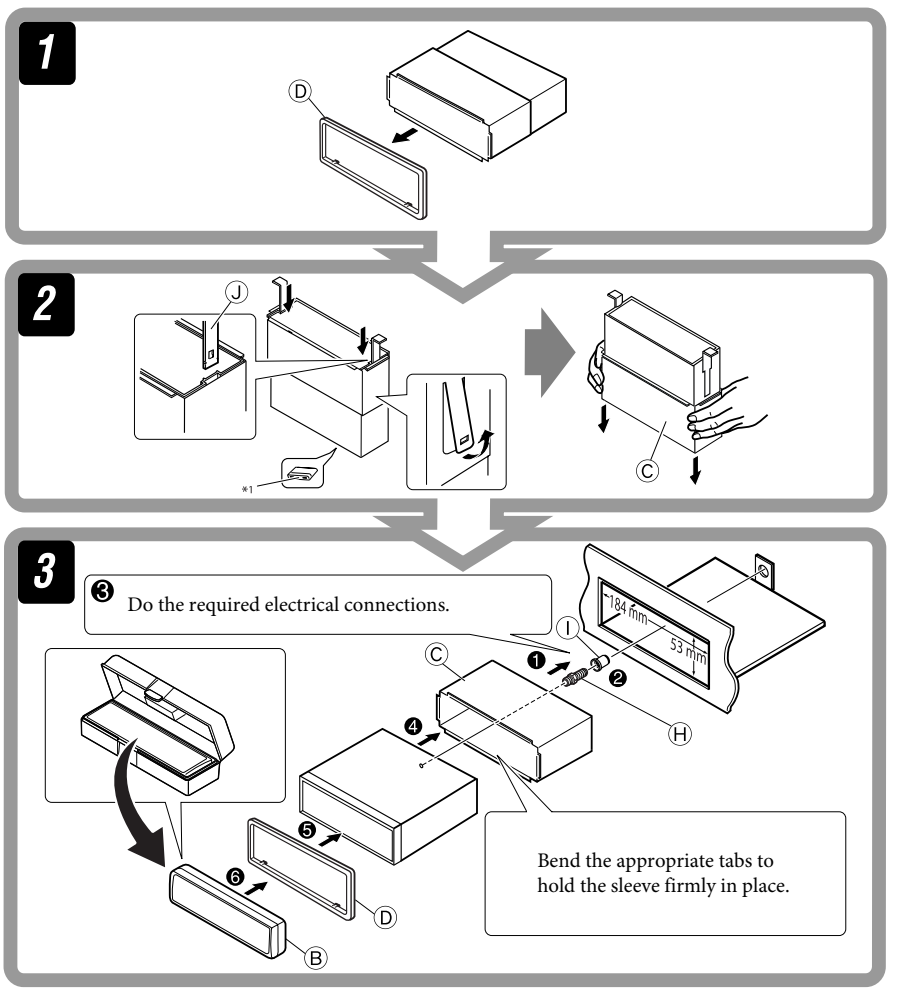
- **This unit does not work at all.**

* Have you reset your unit?

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

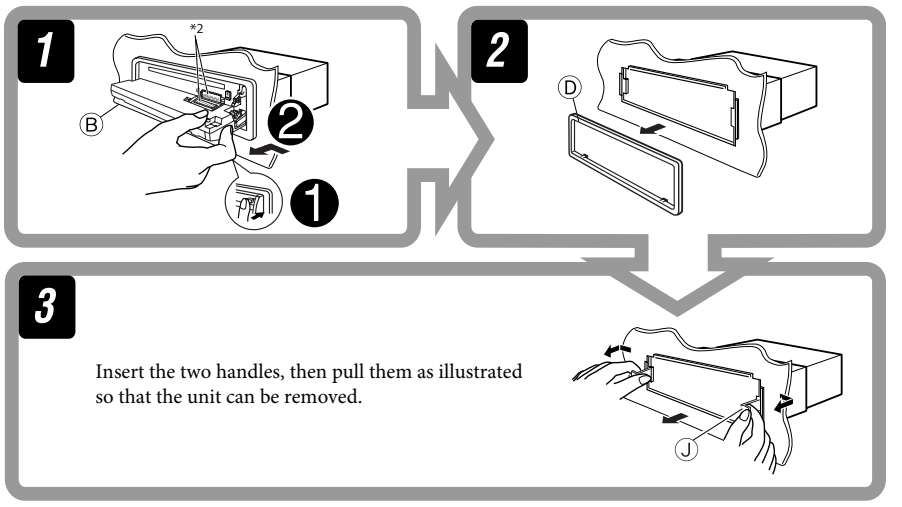
The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

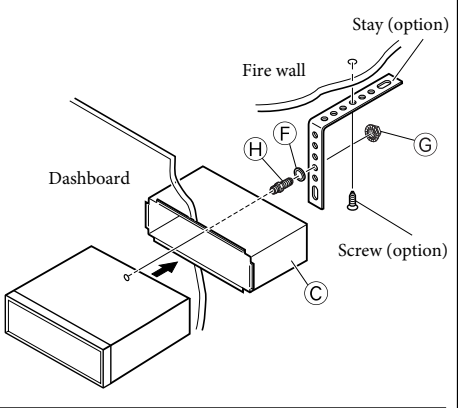


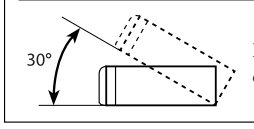
Removing the unit

Before removing the unit, release the rear section.



When using the optional stay

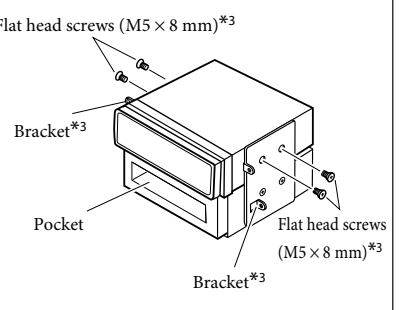




Install the unit at an angle of less than 30°.

When installing the unit without using the sleeve

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.



Note :

When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

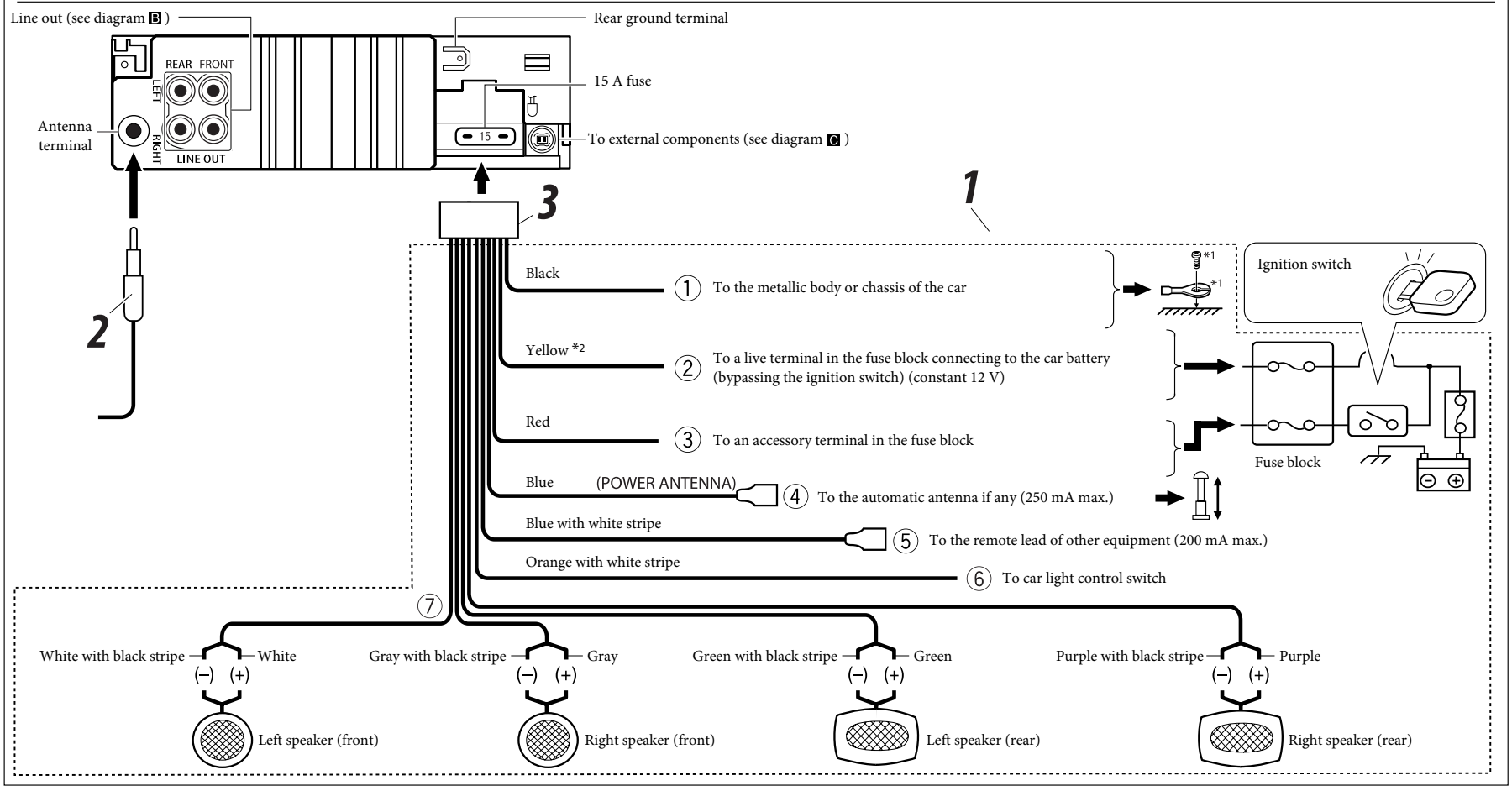
*1 When you stand the unit, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
*2 Avoid touching the connectors.
*3 Not supplied for this unit.

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A Typical connections

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

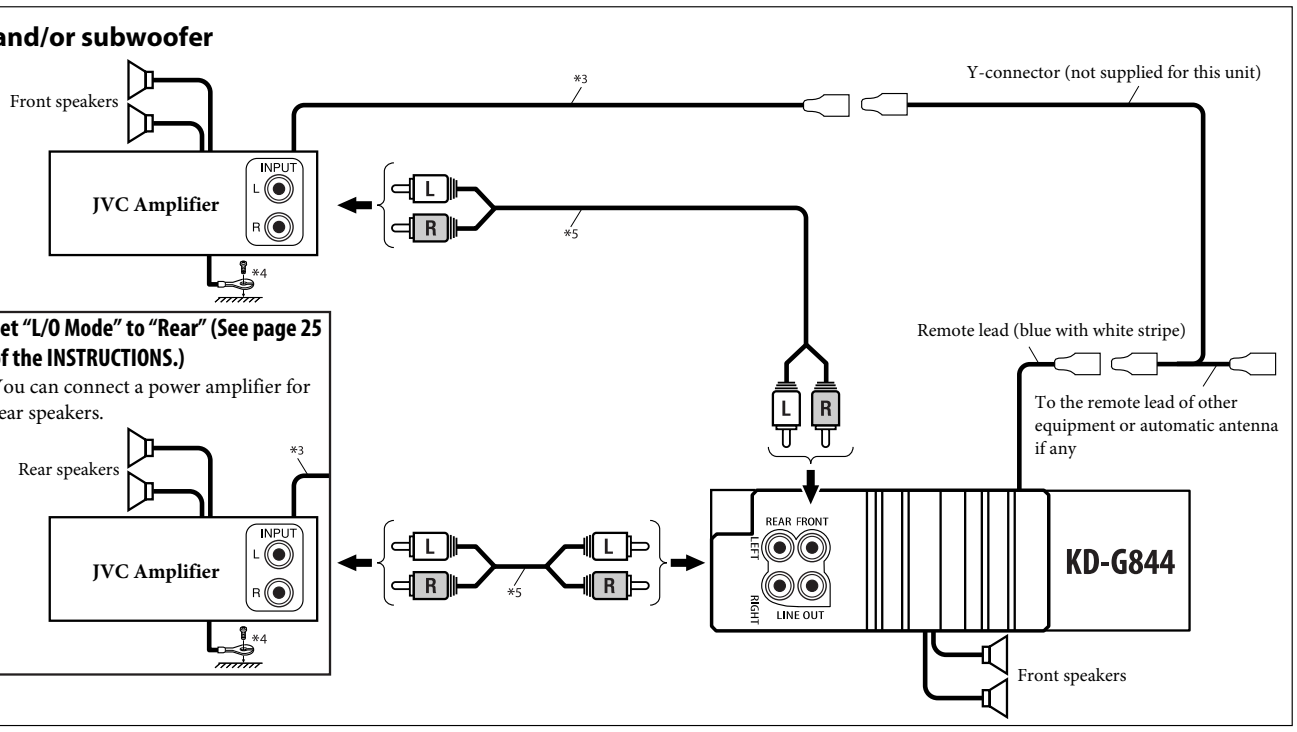
1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
2 Connect the antenna cord.
3 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.



B Connecting the external amplifiers and/or subwoofer

You can connect amplifiers to upgrade your car stereo system.

- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**



C Connecting the external components

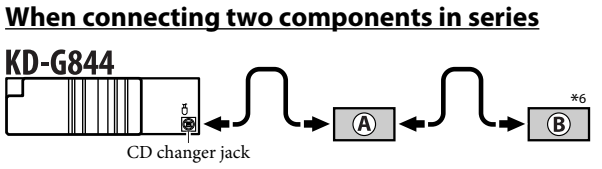
When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapters.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.

When connecting two components in series



Ⓐ **KS-BTA200**
Ⓑ*6 **CD-CH / KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58**

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

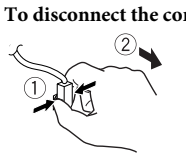
You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.

- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

When connecting more than one component (maximum: two), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained on the left.

To disconnect the connector



Hold the connector tightly (①), then pull it out (②).

*1 Not supplied for this unit.
*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise the power cannot be turned on.
*3 Remote lead
*4 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.
*5 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)
*6 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 25 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

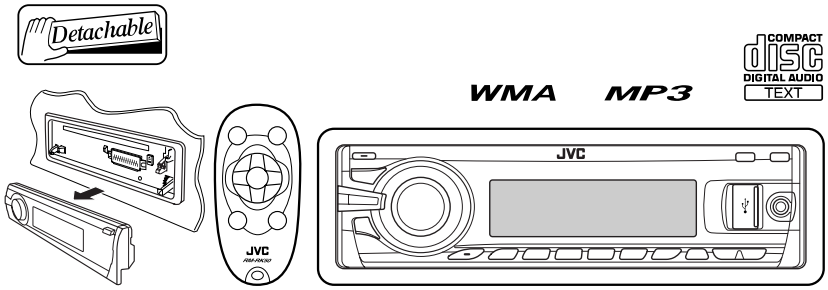
JVC

ENGLISH

ไทย

CD RECEIVER KD-G845

เครื่องเล่น CD KD-G845



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 4.
ดูที่หน้า 4 เพื่อยกเลิกการสาธิตภาพประกอบ

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
กรุณาดูคู่มือที่แยกต่างหาก ในการติดตั้งและการเชื่อมต่อ

INSTRUCTIONS
คำแนะนำ

GET0498-001A
[U/UH]

ENGLISH

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス1Mレーザー放射が出ます。光学装置で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1 LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG)

[European Union only]

Warning:

If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.

Caution:

If the temperature inside the car is below 0°C, the movement of animation and text scroll will be halted on the display to prevent the display from being blurred. L.TEMP appears on the display.
When the temperature increases, and the operating temperature is resumed, these functions will start working again.

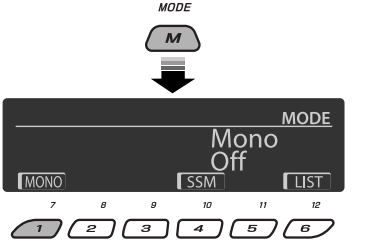
Caution on volume setting:

Digital devices (CD/USB) produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing these digital sources to avoid damaging the speakers by sudden increase of the output level.

How to use the M MODE and SEL buttons

If you use M MODE or SEL (select), the display and some controls (such as the number buttons, ⏮/⏭ buttons, ▲/▼ buttons, and the control dial) enter the corresponding control mode.

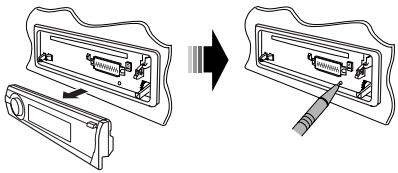
Ex.: When you press number button 1 after pressing M MODE, to operate the FM tuner.



To use these controls for original functions, press M MODE again.

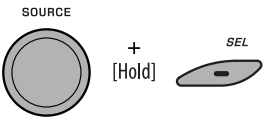
- However, pressing SEL makes the unit enters a different mode.
- Waiting for about 15 seconds (or 30 seconds for Bluetooth sources) without pressing any of these buttons will automatically cancels the control.

How to reset your unit

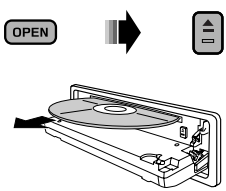


- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased (except the registered Bluetooth device, see pages 12 and 13).*

How to forcibly eject a disc



"Please Eject" appears on the display.



- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*
- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTIONS

Preparation 4

OPERATIONS

Basic operations 5
- Using the control panel 5
- Using the remote controller (RM-RK50) 6

Listening to the radio 7
Disc operations 9
Listening to the USB device 11

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Using the Bluetooth® devices 12
- Using the Bluetooth cellular phone 14
- Using the Bluetooth audio player 16

Listening to the CD changer 17
Listening to the iPod 18
Listening to the other external components 20

SETTINGS

Selecting a preset sound mode 21
General settings—PSM 23
Bluetooth settings 27
Title assignment 28

REFERENCES

More about this unit 29
Troubleshooting 33
Maintenance 38
Specifications 39

ENGLISH

Preparation

Cancel the display demonstration and set the clock

• See also pages 23 and 24.

1	⏻/I/ATT	**Turn on the power.**
2	SEL [Hold]	**Enter the PSM settings.**
3	SOURCE [Turn]	**Cancel the display demonstrations** Select "Demo," then "Off." **Set the clock** Select "Clock Hr" (hour), then adjust the hour. Select "Clock Min" (minute), then adjust the minute. Select "24H/12H," then "24Hours" or "12Hours."
4	SEL	**Finish the procedure.**

Changing the display information and pattern

When the power is turned off: Check the current clock time

DISP

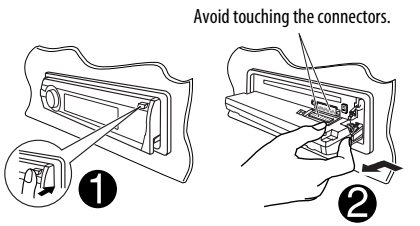
Ex.: When tuner is selected as the source

Source operation display

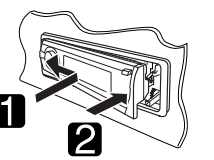
- If a station has been assigned a title, station title appears after about 5 seconds.
- To assign a title to a station, see page 28.

Audio level meter display
(see "LevelMeter" on page 23)

Detaching the control panel

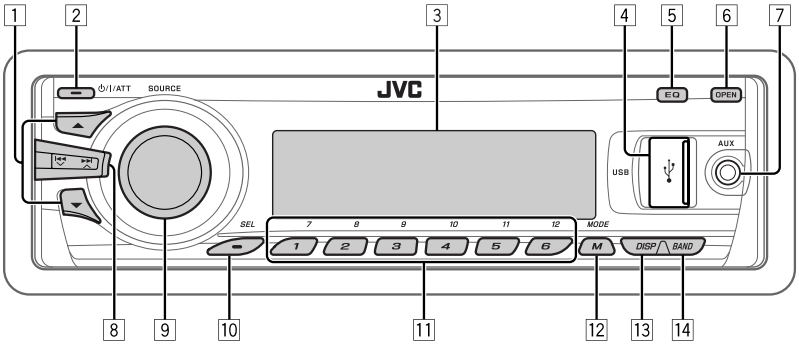


Attaching the control panel



Basic operations

Using the control panel



1 • **TUNER:** Select preset station.
• **CD/USB/CD-CH:** Select folder.
• **USB-iPod:** Enter the main menu [Hold].
• **iPod:** Enter the main menu/Pause playback/Confirm selection.
• **BT-PHONE/BT-AUDIO:** Select a registered device.

2 • Turn on the power.
• Turn off the power [Hold].
• Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).

3 Display window

4 USB (Universal Serial Bus) input jack

5 Select the sound mode.

6 Flip down the control panel.
• To eject the disc, flip down the control panel then press ⏏ on the unit.

7 AUX (auxiliary) input jack

8 • **TUNER:** Search for station.
• **CD/USB/CD-CH/USB-iPod/iPod:** Select track.
• **BT-AUDIO:** Reverse skip/forward skip.

9 • Volume control [Turn].
• Select the source [Press]*1.
TUNER*2 → **CD***2 → **USB***2 (or **USB-iPod**)*2 → **CD-CH***2/**iPod***2 (or **EXT IN**) → **BT-PHONE***2 → **BT-AUDIO***2 → **AUX IN** → (back to the beginning)

10 • Select/adjust the sound mode.
• Enter the PSM settings [Hold].

11 • **TUNER:** Select preset station.
• **CD/USB/CD-CH:** Select folder/track/disc (for CD changer).
• **USB-iPod:** Select preset top menu items.
• **BT-PHONE:** Dial preset phone number*3.

12 • Enter functions mode.
• **BT-PHONE:** Activate Voice Dialing [Hold].

13 Change the display information and pattern.

14 • **TUNER:** Select the bands.
• **USB-iPod:** Start/pause playback.

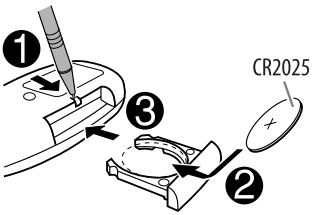
*1 *Holding SOURCE will enter the Bluetooth menu.*

*2 *You cannot select these sources if they are not ready or not connected.*

*3 *For storing preset phone number, see page 16.*

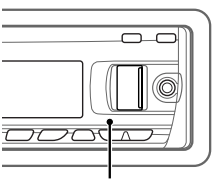
Using the remote controller (RM-RK50)

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



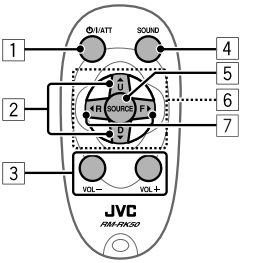
Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).



Warning (to prevent accidents and damage):

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent.
- Do not leave the remote controller in a place (such as dashboards) exposed to direct sunlight for a long time.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
- Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.



1 • Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
  • Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 • Changes the FM/AM bands with ▲ U.
  • Changes the preset stations with D ▼.
  • Changes the folder of the MP3/WMA/WAV.
  • While playing an MP3 disc on an MP3-compatible CD changer:
    – Changes the disc if pressed briefly.
    – Changes the folder if pressed and held.
  • While listening to an Apple iPod:
    Connected to KS-PD100:
    – Pauses or resumes playback with D ▼.
    – Enters the main menu with ▲ U. (Now ▲ U/D ▼/◄ R/F ► work as the menu selecting buttons.)*
    * ▲ U : *Returns to the previous menu.*
    D ▼ : *Confirms the selection.*
    Connected to the USB input jack:
    – Enter the main menu if pressed and held.
    – Select the desired menu if pressed briefly.
    – Fast skip in every layer of the main menu if pressed and held.

3 Adjusts the volume level.

4 Selects the sound mode (iEQ: intelligent equalizer).

5 Selects the source.

6 For Bluetooth cellular phone:
  – Answers calls if pressed briefly.
  – Rejects calls if pressed and held.

7 • Searches for stations if pressed briefly.
  • Fast-forwards or reverses the track if pressed and held.
  • Changes the tracks if pressed briefly.

- While listening to an iPod (in menu selecting mode):
  Connected to KS-PD100:
  – Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press D ▼ to confirm the selection.)
  – Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.

  Connected to the USB input jack:
  – Start play back the selected folder directly if pressed and held.
- Reverse skip/forward skip for Bluetooth audio.

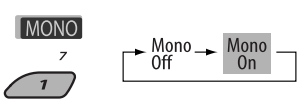
Listening to the radio

1		**Select "TUNER."**
2		**Select the bands.** FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM
3		**Search for a station to listen—Auto Search.** Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" lights up on the display, then press it repeatedly. • When receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength, ST lights up on the display.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1

2



Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.
- MO lights up on the display.

3 **Exit from the setting.**

FM station automatic presetting —SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

You can preset up to six stations for each band.

1 **While listening to a station...**

2

Continued on the next page

3 SSM (10) / 4

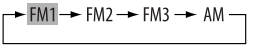
Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the selected FM band.

Manual presetting

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

Using the number buttons

1 BAND



2

3 4 (10) [Hold]

Preset number flashes for a while.

Using the Preset Station list

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

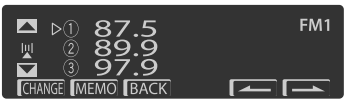
1 Follow steps 1 and 2 of "Using the number buttons" above.

- By holding ▲ / ▼, the Preset Station List will also appear (go to step **4**).

2 MODE / M

3 Display the Preset Station List.

LIST (12) / 6 → ENTER (7) / 1



4 Select the preset number you want to store into.

- You can move to the lists of the other FM bands by pressing number button 5 ( ) or 6 ( ) repeatedly.

5 Store the station.

MEMO (8) / 2

Listening to the preset station on the Preset Station List

1 Display the Preset Station List, then select the preset station you want to listen to.

2 Change to the selected station.

CHANGE (7) / 1

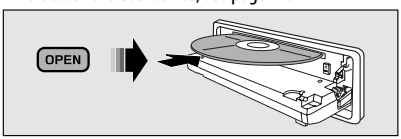
Disc operations

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

Caution:

Make sure to detach the USB device before opening the control panel, as it might block the opening mechanism.

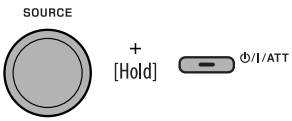
- To detach the USB device, see page 11.



To stop play and eject the disc

- Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.

Prohibiting disc ejection



To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure.

Pressing (or holding) the following buttons allows you to...

	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track
*1	MP3/WMA: Select folder
(Number buttons)*2	Locate particular folder*3 (for MP3/WMA disc) or track directly

*1 *By holding either one of the buttons, you can display the Folder List (see page 10).*

*2 *Press to select number 1 to 6; hold to select number 7 to 12.*

*3 *It is required that folders be assigned with 2-digit numbers at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.*

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks MP3/WMA: Within the same folder
	Repeat Track: Repeat current track **Repeat Folder:** MP3/WMA: Repeat current folder
	Random Folder: MP3/WMA: Randomly play all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Random Disc:** Randomly play all tracks

- You can also cancel the playback mode by selecting "**Off**" or press number button 4 (OFF).

Continued on the next page

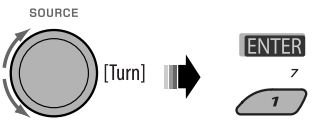
Selecting a folder/track on the list (only for MP3/WMA file)

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1

2 Select "LIST."

3 Select the list type.



Folder ↔ File

4 Select an item.

Ex.: When "File" is selected in step **3**

- You can move to the other lists by pressing number button 5 ( ) or 6 ( ) repeatedly.

5 Change to the selected item.

Ⓐ If File List is selected

The list disappears and playback starts.

Ⓑ If Folder List is selected

- If the current folder is selected, File List appears, then repeat steps **4** and **5** Ⓐ to start playback.
- If another folder is selected, playback starts from the 1st file of the selected folder.

Listening to the USB device

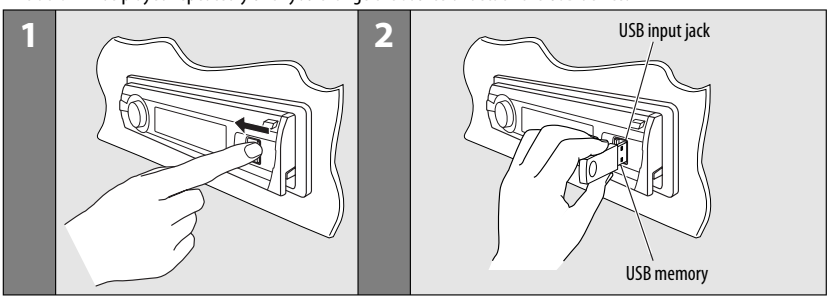
You can connect a USB mass storage class device such as a USB memory, Digital Audio Player*, portable HDD, etc. to the unit.

- You can also connect an Apple iPod to the USB input jack. For details of the operations, see pages 18 and 19.

This unit can play MP3/WMA/WMA-DRM10*/WAV tracks stored in a USB device.

** You can connect both MTP (Media Transfer Protocol) devices and USB mass storage class devices. See also page 31.*

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or detach the USB device.



If a USB device has been attached...

SOURCE

Playback starts from where it has been stopped previously.

- If a different USB device is currently attached, playback starts from the beginning.

To stop play and detach the USB device

Straightly pull it out from the unit.

- Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.

You can operate the USB device in the same way you operate the files on a disc. (See pages 9 and 10.)

- You can listen to WAV files by following the MP3/WMA files operations listed on pages 9 and 10.

Cautions:

- Avoid using the USB device if it might hinder your safety driving.
- Do not pull out and attach the USB device repeatedly while "Reading" is shown on the display.
- Do not start the car engine if a USB device is connected.
- This unit may not be able to play the files depending on the type of USB device.
- Operation and power supply may not work as intended for some USB devices.
- You cannot connect a computer to the USB input terminal of the unit.
- Make sure all important data has been backed up to avoid losing the data.
- Do not leave a USB device in the car, expose to direct sunlight, or high temperature to avoid deformation or cause damages to the device.
- Some USB devices may not work immediately after you turn on the power.
- For more details about USB operations, see pages 30 and 31.

Using the Bluetooth® devices

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the **Bluetooth Adapter** (KS-BTA200) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to check the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.

- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO").

Registering a Bluetooth device

Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in the Bluetooth menu to register and establish the connection with a device.

- Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO" as the source to operate the Bluetooth menu.

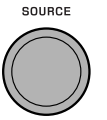
Open	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
Search	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the unit.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

Registering using "Open"

Preparation: Operate the device to turn on its Bluetooth function.

1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Select "NEW."

3 Enter setting menu.

4 Select "Open."

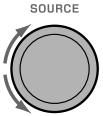
5 Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number) code to the unit.

- You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number). [Initial: 0000]
- To enter a PIN code less than 4-digit, firstly delete the initial PIN code (0000) by pressing number button 5 (CLEAR).

* *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*

1 Move to the next (or previous) number position.

2 Select a number or blank space.



3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you finish entering a PIN code.

4 Confirm the entry.

"Open..." flashes on the display.

6 Use the Bluetooth device to search and connect.

On the device to be connected, enter the same PIN code you have just entered for this unit.
"Connected (and device name)" appears on the display.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

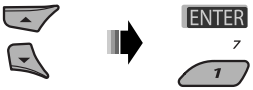
The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use "**Connect**" (or activate "**Auto Connect**") to connect the same device from next time on. (See the following and pages 27 and 28.)

Connecting a device

Perform steps **1** – **3** on page 12, then...

1
- **Select "Search" to search for available devices.**
  The unit searches and displays the list of the available devices.
  If no available device is detected, "Device Not Found" appears.
- **Select "Special" to connect a special device.**
  The unit displays the list of the preset devices.

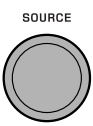
2 Select a device you want to connect.



3
- **For available devices...**
  1 Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit.
  Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code.
  2 Use the Bluetooth device to connect.
  Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.
- **For special device...**
  Use "Open" or "Search" to connect.

Connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device

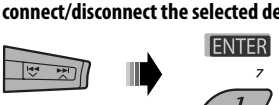
1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Select a registered device you want to connect/disconnect/delete.

3 Enter setting menu.

4
- **Select "Connect" or "Disconnect" to connect/disconnect the selected device.**



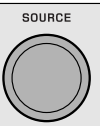
Continued on the next page

- **Select "Delete," then confirm the selection.**

Press number button 3 to select "No" or return to the previous screen.

You can set the unit to connect the Bluetooth device automatically when the unit is turned on. (See "**Auto Connect**" on pages 27 and 28.)

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone

1		**Select "BT-PHONE."**
2		**Enter Bluetooth menu.**
3	—	**Establish the connection with a device, then make a call (or settings using the Bluetooth menu).**

When a call comes in....

The source is automatically changed to "BT-PHONE."

When "Auto Answer" is activated....

The unit answers the incoming calls automatically, see pages 27 and 28.

- When "Auto Answer" is deactivated, press any button (except ⏻/I/ATT/control dial) to answer the incoming call.

To end the call

Hold any button (except ⏻/I/ATT/control dial).

- You can adjust the microphone volume level (see pages 27 and 28).

When a text message comes in....

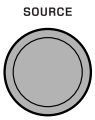
If the cellular phone is compatible with Text Message and "Message Info" is set to "Auto" (see pages 27 and 28), the unit rings and "Received Message" appears on the display to inform you of the message arrival.

Making a call

You can make a call using one of the Dial Menu items.

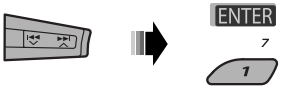
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Select "BT-PHONE."

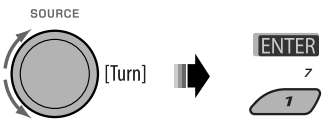


2 Enter setting menu.

3 Select "Dial Menu."



4 Select the method to make a call.



- **Redial***: Shows the list of the phone numbers you have dialed. Go to the following step.
- **Received***: Shows the list of the received calls. Go to the following step.
- **Phonebook***: Shows the phone book of the connected cellular phone. Go to the following step.
- **Missed***: Shows the list of the missed calls. Go to the following step.
- **Number**: Shows the phone number entry screen. See "How to enter phone number" on the right column.
- **Voice Dial** (Only accessible when the connected cellular phone has the voice recognition system): Speak the name (registered words) you want to call.

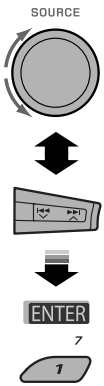
*** Displayed only when your cellular phone is equipped with these functions.**

– If not displayed, try to transfer the phone book memory of the cellular phone to this unit. (Refer to the instruction manual supplied with your cellular phone.)

– With some cellular phones, the phone book memory is transferred automatically.

5 Select the name/phone number you want to call.

How to enter phone number



Continued on the next page

Using voice command

1 MODE M "Say..." appears on the display.

2 **Speak the name (registered words) you want to call.**
- You can also use voice command from the Dial Menu. Select "Voice Dial" from the Dial Menu.
- If your cellular phone does not support the voice recognition system, "Error" appears on the display.

Presetting the phone number

You can preset up to six phone numbers.
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 **Display the phone number you want to preset by using one of the "Dial Menu" items.**

2 **Select a phone number.**

You can also enter a new phone number (see also "How to enter phone number" on page 15) to store.

3 **Select a preset number to store.**

[Hold]

To call a preset number

While in Bluetooth phone....

Using the Bluetooth audio player

- Operations and display indications differ depending on their availability on the connected audio player.

SOURCE	**Select "BT-AUDIO."** If playback does not start automatically, operate the Bluetooth audio player to start playback.

	Reverse skip/forward skip
BAND	Start/pause playback
MODE M	Enter setting menu (Device list)

- Refer also to pages 13 and 14 for connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device.

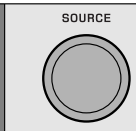
Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>.

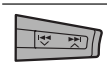
Listening to the CD changer

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit. You can connect a CD changer to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

- You can only play conventional CDs (including CD Text) and MP3 discs.

Preparation: Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 25.

1		**Select "CD-CH."**
2		**Select a disc to start playing.** [Press] For selecting disc number 1 – 6. [Hold] For selecting disc number 7 – 12.

	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track
*	MP3: Select folders

* *By holding either one of the buttons, you can display the Disc List (see page 10).*

To select a disc/folder/track on the list

See "Selecting a folder/track on the list (only for MP3/WMA file)" on page 10.

Select "Disc" in step **3** to display the Disc List of the CD changer.

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks MP3: Within the same folder
	Repeat Track: Repeat current track **Repeat Folder:** MP3: Repeat all tracks of current folder **Repeat Disc:** Repeat all tracks of the current disc
	Random Folder: MP3: Randomly play all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder **Random Disc:** Randomly play all tracks of current disc **Random All:** Randomly play all tracks of the discs in the magazine

- You can also cancel the playback mode by selecting "**Off**" or press number button 4 (OFF).

Listening to the iPod

You can play songs in an Apple iPod by:

– Connecting it with the USB cable supplied with your iPod to the USB input jack on the control panel.

– Connecting the Interface adapter for iPod, KS-PD100 (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

Preparation: Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 25.

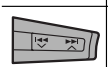
- You can control playback from the unit.
- Disconnecting the iPod will stop playback. Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.
- For details, refer also to the manual supplied for your iPod.

Caution:

- Avoid using the iPod if it might hinder your safety while driving.
- Make sure all important data has been backed up to avoid losing the data.

1	—	**Connect an iPod to the USB input jack or through KS-PD100.** Playback starts automatically from where it had been paused previously. • If an iPod has been connected, press SOURCE to select "USB-iPod" or "iPod" as the playback source.
2		**Select a track.**
3	—	**Adjust the volume and sound as you want. (See pages 21 and 22.)**

Playback control from the unit

Button	For iPod connected through KS-PD100	For iPod connected to the USB input jack
	[Press] Go to the next or previous track [Hold] Fast-forward or reverse the track during playback	[Press] Go to the next or previous track [Hold] Fast-forward or reverse the track during playback
	[Press] Enter main menu when you press ▲. Pause/resume playback when ▼ is pressed.	[Hold] Enter main menu [Press] Go to the top menu of "Playlists," "Artists," "Albums," "Songs," "Podcasts," "Genres," "Composers," or "Audiobooks" in the main menu. • Pressing the number buttons (1 – 6) or holding 1 (7) and 2 (8) can also select the preset top menus.
	—	[Press] Pause/resume playback.

Selecting a track from the menu

No.	Operation	For iPod connected through KS-PD100	For iPod connected to the USB input jack
1	**Enter the main menu.**		[Hold]
2	**Select the desired menu.**	Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Genres ↔ Composers	Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Podcasts ↔ Genres ↔ Composers ↔ Audiobooks
3	**Confirm the selection.**	• By holding I◄◄ ∨/►►I ∧, you can fast skip during song search in the main menu.	• By holding ►►I ∧, you can start play back the selected item directly. • By holding I◄◄ ∨, you can go back to the previous menu. • By holding ▲/▼, you can fast skip in every layer of the main menu.
		• If a track is selected, playback starts automatically. • If the selected item has another layer, you will enter the layer. Repeat steps **2** and **3** until the desired track is played.	

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

	Repeat One: Same as "Repeat One." **Repeat All:** Same as "Repeat All." **Repeat Off:** Cancels.
	Random Album*: Same as "Shuffle Albums." **Random Song:** Same as "Shuffle Songs." **Random Off:** Cancels.

* *Functions only if you select "All Albums" or "All" in "Albums" of the main "MENU."*

The menu selecting mode will be canceled:

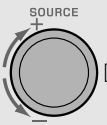
- If no operations are performed for about:
  - 5 seconds for iPod connected through KS-PD100.
  - 15 seconds for iPod connected to the USB input jack.
- When you confirm the selection of a track.

Listening to the other external components

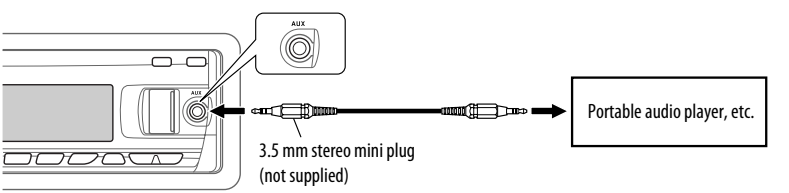
You can connect an external component to:

- CD changer jack on the rear of this unit using the following adapters:
  - **Line Input Adapter,** KS-U57
  - **AUX Input Adapter,** KS-U58

  Preparation: Make sure "Ext In" is selected for the external input setting, see page 25.
- AUX (auxiliary) input jack on the control panel.

1		**Select "EXT IN" or "AUX IN."**
2	—	**Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**
3		**Adjust the volume.**
4	—	**Adjust the sound as you want (see pages 21 and 22).**

Connecting an external component to the AUX input jack



Selecting a preset sound mode

ENGLISH

You can select a preset sound mode suitable to the music genre (iEQ: intelligent equalizer).

EQ → USER → ROCK → CLASSIC → POPS → HIP HOP → JAZZ

Preset value setting for each sound mode

Sound mode	Preset value								
	Bass			Mid (mid-range)			Treble		
	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q
USER	60 Hz	00	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	00	–
ROCK	100 Hz	+03	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	–
CLASSIC	80 Hz	+01	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	–
POPS	100 Hz	+02	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	+01	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	–
HIP HOP	60 Hz	+04	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	–02	Q1.0	10.0 kHz	+01	–
JAZZ	80 Hz	+03	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	–

Freq.: Frequency Q: Q-slope

Adjusting the sound

You can adjust the sound characteristics to your preference.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3 or 6.

1

2

EQ ↔ Fad/Bal ↔ Subwoofer* ↔ VolAdjust ↔ Loudness

- For "EQ" setting, see page 22.

* *Displayed only when "L/O Mode" is set to "Woofer" (see page 25).*

3 Adjust the selected setting item.

Ⓐ **Fad/Bal (Fader/Balance)**

1 Press number button 1 (SELECT) to move to the "Fad/Bal" adjustment display.

2 Adjust the speaker output balance by pressing:

▲ / ▼: between the front and rear speakers. [F6 to R6]

⏮ / ⏭: between the left and right speakers. [L6 to R6]

Ⓑ **Subwoofer**

1 Press number button 1 (SELECT) to move to the "Subwoofer" adjustment display.

2 Use ⏮ / ⏭ to select a cutoff frequency to the subwoofer.

- OFF: All signals are sent to the subwoofer.
- 80Hz: Frequencies higher than 80 Hz are cut off.
- 120Hz: Frequencies higher than 120 Hz are cut off.
- 160Hz: Frequencies higher than 160 Hz are cut off.

Continued on the next page

3 Turn the control dial to adjust the subwoofer output level. [0 to 8]
4 Press number button 1 (MORE) to select the subwoofer phase. [0deg (normal) or 180deg (reverse)]

Ⓒ **VolAdjust,** [–5 to +5]
Turn the control dial to adjust the input level of each source (except FM).
Adjust to match the input level of the FM sound level.
- Before making an adjustment, select the source you want to adjust.

Ⓓ **Loudness,** [Off or On]
Turn the control dial to select "Off" or "On." When "On" is selected, low and high frequencies sound are boosted to produce a well-balanced sound at low volume level.

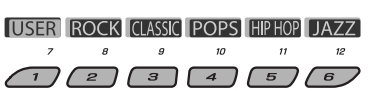
4 Exit from the setting.

Storing your own sound modes

You can adjust the sound modes and store your own adjustments in memory.
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 6.

1

2 Select a sound mode.



3 Select a frequency range.

4 Adjust the sound elements of the selected frequency range.

1 Use ▲ / ▼ to adjust the level.
2 Press number button 5 (FREQ), then turn the control dial to select the frequency.
3 Press number button 5 (Q), then turn the control dial to select the quality slope (Q).

Sound elements	Range/selectable items		
	Low	Mid	High
Frequency	60 Hz 80 Hz 100 Hz 200 Hz	500 Hz 1 kHz 1.5 kHz 2.5 kHz	10 kHz 12.5 kHz 15 kHz 17.5 kHz
Level	–6 to +6	–6 to +6	–6 to +6
Q	Q1.0 Q1.25 Q1.5 Q2.0	Q0.5 Q0.75 Q1.0 Q1.25	Fix

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to adjust the other frequency bands.

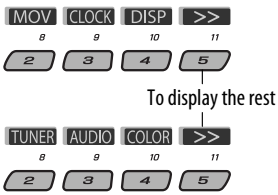
6 Store the adjustments.

General settings—PSM

You can change PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) items listed in the table below and on pages 24 and 25.

1 Enter the PSM settings.

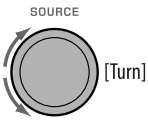
2 Select a PSM category.



3 Select a PSM item.

By pressing either one of the buttons repeatedly, you can also move to the item of the other categories.

4 Adjust the selected PSM item.



5 Repeat steps 2 – 4 to adjust other PSM items if necessary.

6 Finish the procedure.

Category	Indication	Item (__ : Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
MOV (movie)	**Demo** Display demonstration	• **On**	: Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [4].
		• **Off**	: Cancels.
	LevelMeter Audio level meter	• **Meter 1**	: Select the different level meter patterns.
		• **Meter 2**	• Press DISP to show the selected level meter.
CLOCK	**Clock Disp***1 Clock display	• **On**	: Clock time is shown on the display when the power is turned off.
		• **Off**	: Cancels; pressing DISP will show the clock time for about 5 seconds when the power is turned off, [4].

*1 *If the power supply is not interrupted by turning off the ignition key of your car, it is recommended to select "Off" to save the car's battery.*

Continued on the next page

Category	Indication	Item (__ : Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
CLOCK	**Clock Hr** Hour adjustment	**1 – 12AM/** **1 – 12PM** **(0 – 23)**	: Initial: 1 (1:00AM), [4].
	Clock Min Minute adjustment	**00 – 59**	: Initial: 00 (1:00AM), [4].
	24H/12H Time display mode	• **12Hours** • **24Hours**	: See also page 4 for setting.
DISP (display)	**Scroll***2 Scroll	• **Once** • **Auto** • **Off**	: Scrolls the track information once. : Repeats scrolling (at 5-second intervals). : Cancels. (Holding DISP can scroll the display regardless of the setting.)
	Dimmer Dimmer	• **Auto** • **Off** • **On** • **Time Set**	: Dims the display when you turn on the headlights. : Cancels. : Dims the display and button illumination. : Set the timer for dimmer, [26].
	From – To*3	—	Any hour – Any hour : Initial: 6PM – 7AM.
	Contrast Contrast	**1 – 8** Initial: 5	: Adjust the display contrast to make the display indications clear and legible.
	LCD Type Display type	• **Auto** • **Positive** • **Negative**	: Positive pattern will be selected during the day time*4; while negative pattern will be used during the night time*4. : Positive pattern of the display. : Negative pattern of the display.
	Tag Tag display	• **On** • **Off**	: Shows the tag while playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks. : Cancels.
TUNER	**IF Band** Intermediate frequency band	• **Auto** • **Wide**	: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) : Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.

*2 *Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.*

*3 *Adjustable only when "Dimmer" is set to "Time Set."*

*4 *Depends on the "Dimmer" setting.*

Category	Indication	Item (__ : Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
AUDIO	**Ext Input***5 External input	• **Changer** • **Ext In**	: To use a JVC CD changer, [17], or an Apple iPod, [18]. : To use any other external component, [20].
	AudioBooks*6 Speed control of "Audiobook"	• **Normal** • **Faster** • **Slower**	: You can select the playback speed of the "Audiobook" sound file in your iPod. • Initial selected item depends on your iPod setting.
	L/O Mode Line output mode	• **Rear** • **Woofer**	: Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting the rear speakers (through an external amplifier). : Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting a subwoofer (through an external amplifier).
	Amp Gain Amplifier gain control	• **High PWR** • **Low PWR**	: Volume 00 – Volume 50 : Volume 00 – Volume 30 (Select if the maximum power of each speaker is less than 50 W to prevent damaging the speaker.)
COLOR	**Color Sel** Color selection	Initial: All Source; Color: Pale	: Select your favorite display color for each source (or for all sources), [26].
	Color Set Color setting	— **Day Color** **NightColor** **00 — 11** **00 — 11** **00 — 11**	: Create your own colors, and select them for the display color, [27]. : User color during the day time*7. : User color during the night time*7. : Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05 : Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05 : Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05
	Key Illum Illumination switch	• **Red** • **Green**	: You can select the button illumination according to your preference.

*5 *Displayed only when an iPod is connected to the USB input jack and playback is controlled from the unit.*

*6 *Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—TUNER, CD, USB, or Bluetooth.*

*7 *Depends on the "Dimmer" setting.*

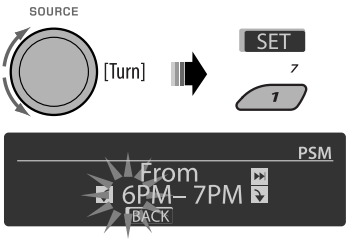
Setting the time for dimmer

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 23.

- In step **2**, select "DISP."
- In step **3**, select "Dimmer."

2 Select "Time Set."



3 Adjust the dimmer start time.

1 Turn the control dial to set the dimmer start time.

2 Press ►►I ∧ to select "To." Then, turn the control dial to set the dimmer end time.

4 Exit from the setting.

Changing the display color

You can select your favorite display color for each source (or all sources).

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3 or 6.

Setting the display color

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 23.

- In step **2**, select "COLOR."
- In step **3**, select "Color Sel."

2

3 Select a source.

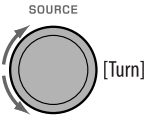
All Source*1 ↔ **CD** ↔ **Changer***3 (or **Ext In***2) ↔ **USB***3 ↔ **FM** ↔ **AM** ↔ **iPod***3 ↔ **Aux In** ↔ **BT Phone***3 ↔ **BT Audio***3 ↔ (back to the beginning)

*1 *When you select "All Source," you can use the same color for all the sources.*

*2 *Depends on the "Ext Input" setting, see page 25.*

*3 *Displayed only when the target component is connected.*

4 Select a color.



Pale ↔ **Aqua** ↔ **Sky** ↔ **Sea** ↔ **Leaves** ↔ **Grass** ↔ **Apple** ↔ **Rose** ↔ **Amber** ↔ **Honey** ↔ **Violet** ↔ **Grape** ↔ **Every***4 ↔ **User***5 ↔ (back to the beginning)

*4 *The color changes every 2 seconds.*

*5 *The user-edited colors—"Day Color" and "NightColor" will be applied (see page 27 for details).*

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to select the color for each source (except when selecting "All Source" in step 3).

6 Exit from the setting.

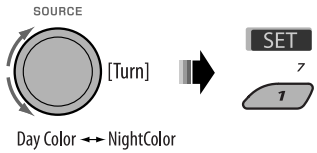
Creating your own color—User Color

You can create your own colors—"Day Color" or "NightColor."

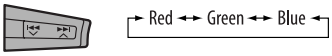
1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 23.

- In step **2**, select "COLOR."
- In step **3**, select "Color Set."

2 Select "Day Color" or "NightColor."



3 Select a primary color.



4 Adjust the level (00 to 11) of the selected primary color.

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to adjust other primary colors.

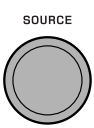
6 Exit from the setting.

Bluetooth settings

You can change the settings listed on page 28 according to your preference.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

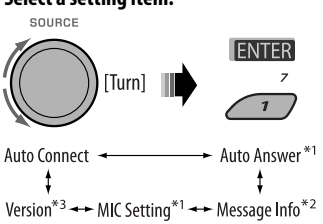
1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Enter the Bluetooth menu.

3 Select "Setting."

4 Select a setting item.

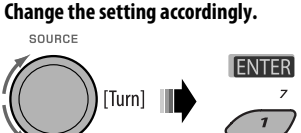


*1 *Displayed only when a Bluetooth phone is connected.*

*2 *Displayed only when a Bluetooth phone is connected and it is compatible with text message.*

*3 *Bluetooth Audio: Shows only "Version."*

5 Change the setting accordingly.



Continued on the next page

Setting menu (__ : Initial)

Auto Connect

When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with...

Off: No Bluetooth device.
Last: The last connected Bluetooth device.
Order: The available registered Bluetooth device found at first.

Auto Answer

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

On: The unit answers the incoming calls automatically.
Off: The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually.
Reject: The unit rejects all incoming calls.

Message Info

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

Auto: The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "Received Message."
Manual: The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.

MIC setting (microphone setting)

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."
Adjust the built-in microphone volume, [LEVEL 01/02/03].

Version

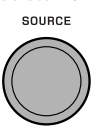
The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

Title assignment

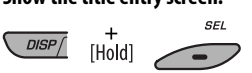
You can assign titles to 30 station frequencies (FM and AM) using 10 characters (maximum) for each title.

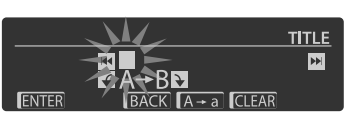
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Select "TUNER."



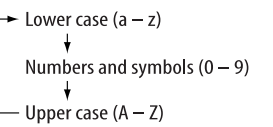
2 Show the title entry screen.





3 Assign a title.

1 Press number button 4 (A→a) repeatedly to select a character set.



2 Turn the control dial to select a character. (For available characters, see page 33.)
3 Use ◀◀ ∨/▶▶ ∧ to move to the next (or previous) character position.
4 Repeat steps 1 to 3 until you finish entering the title.

4 Store the title.

To erase the entire title

In step **3** above...

More about this unit

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback also starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a track, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously next time you turn on the power.

General

- If you change the source while listening to a disc, playback stops.
  Next time you select "CD" as the playback source, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously.
- After ejecting a disc or removing a USB device, "No Disc" or "No USB" appears and you cannot operate some of the buttons. Insert another disc, reattach a USB device, or press SOURCE to select another playback source.

Tuner operations

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
  – All previously stored stations are erased and the stations are stored anew.
  – Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
  – When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, the previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

Disc/USB operations

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

General

- This unit has been designed to reproduce CDs/CD Texts, and CD-Rs (Recordable)/CD-RWs (Rewritable) in audio CD (CD-DA), MP3 and WMA formats.
- When a disc is inserted upside down, "Please Eject" appears on the display. Press OPEN, then ⏏ to eject the disc.
- In this manual, words "track" and "file" are interchangeably used.
- While fast-forwarding or reversing on MP3/WMA/WAV files, you can only hear intermittent sounds.
- File/folder list may not appear correctly if too many hierarchies and folders are used.
- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot again to protect it from dust. Playback starts automatically.

Playing a CD-R or CD-RW

- Use only "finalized" CD-Rs or CD-RWs.
- This unit can only play back files of the same type as those which are detected first if a disc includes both audio CD (CD-DA) files and MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some CD-Rs or CD-RWs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, or for the following reasons:
  – Discs are dirty or scratched.
  – Moisture condensation has occurred on the lens inside the unit.

Continued on the next page

– The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
– The files on the CD-R/CD-RW are written using the "Packet Write" method.
– There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stained, scratched, warped, etc.).

- CD-RWs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of CD-RWs is lower than that of regular CDs.
- Do not use the following CD-Rs or CD-RWs:
  – Discs with stickers, labels, or a protective seal stuck to the surface.
  – Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

  Using these discs under high temperature or high humidity may cause malfunctions or damage to the unit.

Playing an MP3/WMA disc

- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3 files and for WMA files.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files meeting the conditions below:

  MP3:
  – Bit rate: 8 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz, 12 kHz, 11.025 kHz, 8 kHz

  WMA:
  – Bit rate: 32 kbps — 192 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz
  – Disc format: ISO 9660 Level 1/Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names vary depending on the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3> or <.wma>).
  – ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
  – ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
  – Romeo*: up to 128 characters
  – Joliet*: up to 64 characters
  – Windows long file name*: up to 128 characters

* *The parenthetic figure is the maximum number of characters for file/folder names in case the total number of files and folders is 271 or more.*

- This unit can recognize a total of 512 files, 200 folders, and 8 hierarchical levels.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).

  Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in the elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. In particular, this difference becomes noticeable after performing the search function.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded in MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriate format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded in lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks from a USB device

- Connecting a USB device automatically changes the source to "USB."
- While playing from a USB device, the playback order may differ from the one from other players.
- This unit may be unable to play back some USB devices or some files due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- Depending on the shape of the USB devices and connection ports, some USB devices may not be attached properly or the connection might be loose.
- When connecting a USB mass storage class device, refer also to its instructions.

- Connect one USB mass storage class device to the unit at a time. Do not use a USB hub.
- You can connect two types of USB device to this unit—MTP device and Mass storage class device. If you connect an MTP device featuring "USB digital media streaming" to this unit, you can play back the WMA-DRM10 (Digital Right Management) files purchased through the music distributing web sites, through this unit.
- This unit is compatible with the USB Full-Speed.
- If the connected USB device does not have the correct files, "No File" appears.
- This unit can show ID3 Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3 and WMA/WAV Tag.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA/WAV files meeting the conditions below:

  MP3:
  – Bit rate: 32 kbps — 320 kbps (MPEG-1)
    8 kbps — 160 kbps (MPEG-2)
  – Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)

  WMA:
  – Bit rate: 5 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 8 kHz — 48 kHz
  – Channel: 1 ch/2 ch

  WAV:
  – Bit rate: Linear PCM at 705 kbps and 1 411 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 44.1 kHz
  – Channel: 1 ch/2 ch
- This unit can play back MP3 files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- The maximum number of characters for folder and file names is 25 characters; 128 characters for MP3/WMA/WAV Tag.
- This unit can recognize a total of 20 000 files and 2 000 folders (999 files per folder). However, the display can shows until 9 999 folders/files.
- The unit cannot recognize a USB mass storage class device whose rating is other than 5 V and exceeds 500 mA.
- USB devices equipped with special functions such as data security functions cannot be used with the unit.
- Do not use a USB device with 2 or more partitions.
- This unit may not recognized a USB device connected through a USB card reader.
- This unit may not play back files in a USB device properly when using a USB extension cord.
- This unit cannot assure proper functions or supply power to all types of USB devices.

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on the circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

appears when the connection is established.

	Appears when the Bluetooth phone is connected.
	Appears when the Bluetooth audio player is connected.
	Appears when the Bluetooth phone and Bluetooth audio player are connected.

Icons for phone types

These icons indicate the phone type set on the device:

: Cellular phone	: General
: Household phone	: Other than above
: Office	: Unknown

Continued on the next page

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **Connection Error:**
  The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use "Connect" to connect the device again. (See page 13.)
- **Error**
  Try the operation again. If "Error" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **Device Not Found**
  No available Bluetooth device is detected by "Search...".
- **Loading...**
  The unit is updating the phone book and/or text messages.
- **Please Wait...**
  The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **Reset 08**
  Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

iPod

- Controllable iPod (connected through....):
  (A) KS-PD100:
  – iPod with dock connector (3rd Generation)
  – iPod with click wheel (4th Generation)
  – iPod nano (1st & 2nd*1 Generation)
  – iPod mini (1st Generation)
  – iPod video (5th Generation)*2
  – iPod photo
  (B) USB input jack:
  – iPod nano (1st & 2nd Generation)
  – iPod video (5th Generation)

*1 *When you connect the iPod nano to the interface adapter, be sure to disconnect the headphones; otherwise, no sound is heard.*

*2 *It is not possible to browse video files on the "Videos" menu while the iPod is connected to the interface adapter.*

- Update your iPod to the latest software version before using it with this unit.
  – You can check the software version of your iPod under "About" in the "Setting" menu of the iPod.
  – For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- While the unit is being turned on, the iPod is charged through this unit.
- While connecting an iPod with Video:
  – No video shows on the iPod's display or the external monitor (only the audio part is available).
  – It is not possible to browse video files on the "Video" menu. (If you connect the iPod during the playback or pausing of a video file, resuming playback will not work.)
- iPod shuffle and iPhone cannot be used with this unit.
- You can control the iPod from this unit when "JVC" or "√" appears on the iPod display after connection.
- The song order displayed on the selection menu of this unit may differ from that of the iPod.
- If playback is stopped, select a track from the selection menu or press BAND to play back the same track again.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly:
  – Some characters such as accented letters cannot be shown correctly on the display.
  – Communication between the iPod and the unit is not stable.
- If the text information includes more than 16 characters, it scrolls on the display. This unit can display up to 128 characters.

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>

Title assignment

- If you try to assign titles to more than 30 station frequencies, "Name Full" appears. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.

Available characters

Upper case

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N
O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	space	

Lower case

a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n
o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	space	

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	−	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	space							

General settings—PSM

- "Auto" setting for "Dimmer" may not work correctly on some vehicles, particularly on those having a control dial for dimming.
  In this case, change the "Dimmer" setting to any other than "Auto."
- If "LCD Type" is set to "Auto," the display pattern will change to the "Positive" or "Negative" pattern depending on the "Dimmer" setting.
- If you change the "Amp Gain" setting from "High PWR" to "Low PWR" while the volume level is set higher than "Volume 30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "Volume 30."

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).
	• "Connect Error" appears on the display.	Remove the control panel, wipe the connector, then attach it again (see page 4).
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the antenna firmly.

Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played back. • Tracks on the CD-R/CD-RW cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized CD-R/CD-RW. • Finalize the CD-R/CD-RW with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc can neither be played back nor ejected.	• Unlock the disc (see page 9). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 3).
	• Disc sound is sometimes interrupted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
	• Disc cannot be recognized ("No Disc," "CD Loading Error," or "Eject Error" flashes).	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 3).
	• "Please Eject" appears on the display.	This occurs sometimes due to over-heating. Eject the disc or change to another playback source.
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Use a disc with MP3/WMA tracks recorded in a format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet. • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• A longer readout time is required ("Reading" keeps flashing on the display).	Do not use too many hierarchical levels and folders.
	• Tracks do not play back in the order you have intended them to play.	The playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	• The elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc (eg. variable bit rate).
	• "Please Eject" appears on the display.	Insert a disc that contains MP3/WMA tracks.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	Skip to the next track encoded in an appropriate format or to the next non-copy-protected WMA track.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (capital: A – Z, small: a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols (see page 33).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
USB device	• Noise is generated.	• The track played back is not a playable file format (MP3/WMA/WAV). Skip to another file. • Do not add the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav> to non-MP3/WMA/WAV tracks.
	• Tracks cannot play back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differs from the one played back using other players.
	• "Reading" keeps flashing on the display.	• Readout time varies depending on the USB device. • Do not use too many hierarchy, folders and empty folders.* • Turn off the power then on again. • Do not pull out or connect the USB device repeatedly while "Reading" is displayed on the display. * *Folder that is phisically empty or folder that contains data but does not contain valid MP3/WMA/WAV track.*
	• "No File" flashes on the display. • "No USB" appears on the display.	Connect a USB device that contains tracks encoded in an appropriate format.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	The track is unplayable.
	• "Read Failed" or "Cannot Play" appears on the display, then returns to the previous source.	The connected USB device may be malfunctioning, or may not have been formatted correctly. The files included in the USB device are corrupted.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	For available characters, see page 33.
	• While playing a track, sound is sometimes interrupted.	The tracks have not been properly copied into the USB device. Copy tracks again into the USB device, and try again.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a USB device.	• Turn off, then turn on the unit. • Connect the device again, when the sound is not yet restored.

Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Bluetooth®	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	The unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio device at a time. While connecting a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device. After the device detects the unit, select "Open..." on the unit to connect the device. (See page 12.)
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. • Select the device name from "Special," then try to connect again. (See page 13.)
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to a place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a Bluetooth audio player.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio player. • Disconnect the device connected for "BT-PHONE." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • Connect the player again, when the sound is not yet restored.
	• The connected audio player cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio player supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile). (Operations depend on the connected audio player.)
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).

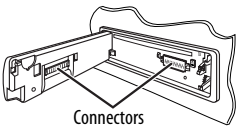
	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
iPod	• The iPod does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version. • Charge the battery.
	• The sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the display.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Charge the battery.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation (see page 18).
	• No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano.	• Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano. • Update the firmware version of the iPod nano.
	• "No File" appears on the display.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the display.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect it again.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the display.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.

- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors. To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture has evaporated.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc in its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs in cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

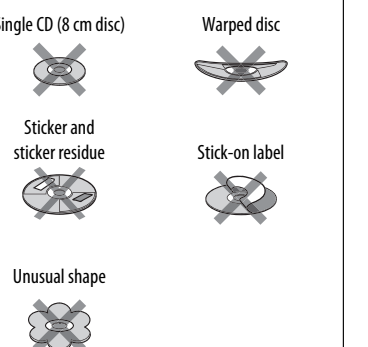
- Do not use any solvents (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:



Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION	
Maximum Power Output:	
Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
Continuous Power Output (RMS):	
Front/Rear:	19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.
Load Impedance:	4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
Tone Control Range:	
Bass:	±12 dB (60 Hz, 80 Hz, 100 Hz, 200 Hz)
Mid-range:	±12 dB (500 Hz, 1.0 kHz, 1.5 kHz, 2.5 kHz)
Treble:	±12 dB (10.0 kHz, 12.5 kHz, 15.0 kHz, 17.5 kHz)
Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	70 dB
Line-Out and Subwoofer-Out Level/ Impedance:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
Other Terminal:	CD changer jack, AUX (auxiliary) input jack, USB input jack, Antenna input

TUNER SECTION	
Frequency Range:	
FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
AM:	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
FM Tuner	
Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 μV/75 Ω)
50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 μV/75 Ω)
Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
Stereo Separation:	30 dB
AM Tuner	
Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 μV/35 dB

CD PLAYER SECTION	
Type:	Compact disc player
Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)
Number of Channels:	2 channels (stereo)
Frequency Response:	5 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Dynamic Range:	96 dB
Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	98 dB
Wow and Flutter:	Less than measurable limit
MP3 Decoding Format:	(MPEG1/2 Audio Layer 3)
Max. Bit Rate:	320 kbps
WMA (Windows Media® Audio) Decoding Format:	
Max. Bit Rate:	192 kbps

USB SECTION	
USB Standard:	USB 1.1, USB 2.0
Data Transfer Rate:	Full Speed: Max. 12 Mbps
	Low Speed: Max. 1.5 Mbps
Compatible Device:	Mass storage class
Compatible File System:	FAT 32/16/12
Playable Audio Format:	MP3/WMA/WAV
Max. Current:	500 mA/5 V

GENERAL	
Power Requirement:	
Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
Grounding System:	Negative ground
Allowable Operating Temperature:	0°C to +40°C
Dimensions (W × H × D): (approx.)	
Installation Size:	182 mm × 52 mm × 160 mm
Panel Size:	188 mm × 58 mm × 6 mm
Mass:	1.4 kg (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

หากมีปัญหาในการใช้งาน

กรุณากดปุ่มตั้งค่าเริ่มต้นใหม่

กรุณาดูหน้าวิธีตั้งค่าเครื่องใหม่

JVC

EN, TH

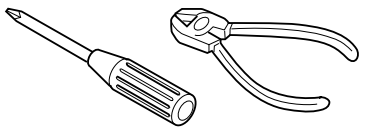
© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0108DTSMDTJEIN

KD-G845

Installation/Connection Manual

การติดตั้ง/คู่มือการติดตั้ง



GET0498-006A
[U_UH]

0108DTSMDTJEIN
EN, TH

© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

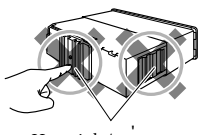
WARNINGS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with a maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amp Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 25 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



Heat sink / แผ่นระบายความร้อน

ไทย

ชุดประกอบนี้ได้รับการออกแบบมาเพื่อใช้งานกับระบบ กระแสไฟฟ้าสายดินขั้วลบกระแสตรง **12 โวลท์ หากรถยนต์ของคุณไม่ได้ใช้ระบบนี้ ต้องใช้เครื่องแปลงกระแสไฟช่วย** ซึ่งสามารถหาซื้อได้จากร้านขายเครื่องเสียงรถยนต์ JVC

คำเตือน

เพื่อป้องกันการเกิดไฟฟ้าลัดวงจรขอแนะนำให้ปลดขั้วแบตเตอรี่ลบออกแล้วจึงต่อสายไฟก่อนติดตั้งเครื่อง

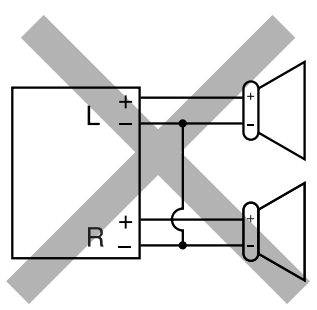
- **ตรวจสอบให้แน่ใจว่าได้เดินสายดินต่อระหว่างเครื่องกับตัวถัง รถยนต์ใหม่แล้วหลังจากติดตั้ง**

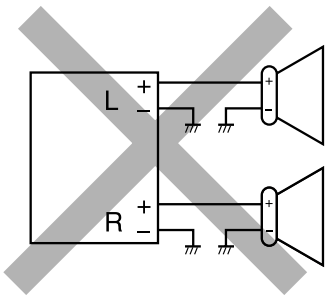
หมายเหตุ:

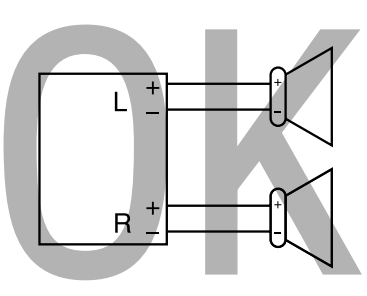
- ใช้พิกัดจำเพาะแทนฟิวส์ หากฟิวส์ขาดบ่อย ให้ปรึกษาร้า นขายเครื่องเสียงรถยนต์ JVC
- ขอแนะนำว่าให้ต่อลำโพงที่มีกำลังขับสูงสุดมากกว่า 50 W (ทั้งด้านหน้าและด้านหลัง มีค่าความต้านทาน **4 Ω ถึง 8 Ω**) ถ้ากำลังขับต่ำกว่า 50 W ให้เปลี่ยนค่า "Amp Gain" เพื่อป้องกันไม่ให้ลำโพงชำรุด (ดูหน้า 25 คำแนะนำ)
- การป้องกันการลัดวงจร จะต้องพันขั้วสายตะกั่ว **ที่ไม่ใช้แล้วด้วยเท** ปพันสายไฟ
- แผ่นระบายความร้อนจะร้อนมากหลังจากใช้ ระมัดระวังอย่าไป สัมผัสเมื่อถอดชุดประกอบนี้

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.







ข้อควรระวังสำหรับการต่อแหล่งจ่ายกำลังและลำโพง:

- **อย่าต่อสายตะกั่วเคเบิลกำลังของลำโพงเข้ากับแบตเตอรี่รถยนต์ มิฉะนั้น ชุดประกอบจะได้รับความเสียหายมาก**
- ก่อนที่จะต่อสายตะกั่วเคเบิลกำลังของลำโพงเข้ากับลำโพง ให้ตรวจสอบการเดินสายไฟลำโพงในรถของคุณให้เรียบร้อยเสียก่อน

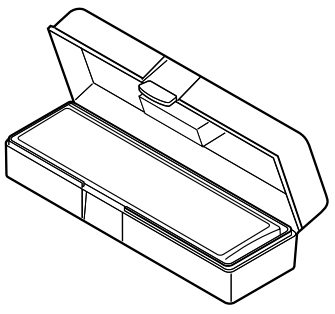
Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC car audio dealer immediately.

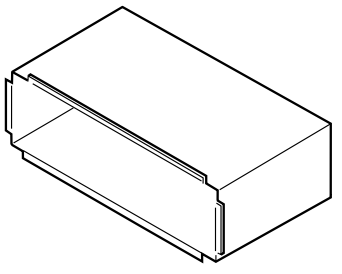
รายการส่วนประกอบสำหรับติดตั้งและเชื่อมต่อกัน

ส่วนประกอบต่อไปนี้ให้มากับชุดประกอบนี้ หากมีสิ่งใดไม่ครบ กรุณาปรึกษาตัวแทนจำหน่ายเครื่องเสียงติดรถยนต์ JVC โดยทันที

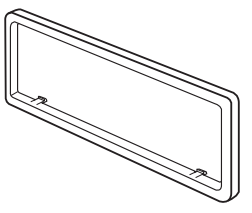
Ⓐ / Ⓑ
Hard case/Control panel
ลังบรรจุ/หน้าปัด



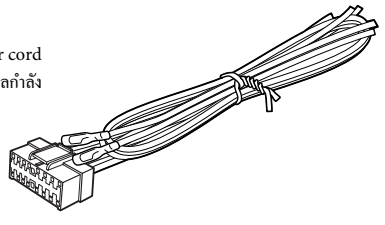
Ⓒ
Sleeve
ปลอกหุ้ม



Ⓓ
Trim plate
แผ่นโลหะขอบแต่ง



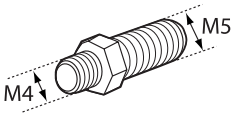
Ⓔ
Power cord
ายเคเบิลกำลัง



Ⓕ
Washer (ø5)
ประเก็นวงแหวน (ø5)

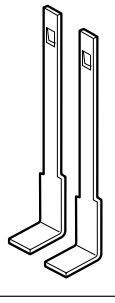
Ⓖ
Lock nut (M5)
นอตล็อค (M5)

Ⓗ
Mounting bolt (M4 × 5 mm; M5 × 12.5 mm)
สลักติด (M4 × 5 มม.; M5 × 12.5 มม.)

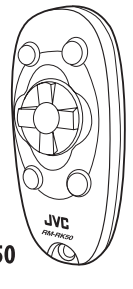


Ⓘ
Rubber cushion
ยางกันกระแทก

Ⓙ
Handles
คันบังคับ



Ⓚ
Remote controller
รีโมตคอนโทรล



RM-RK50

Ⓛ
Battery
แบตเตอร

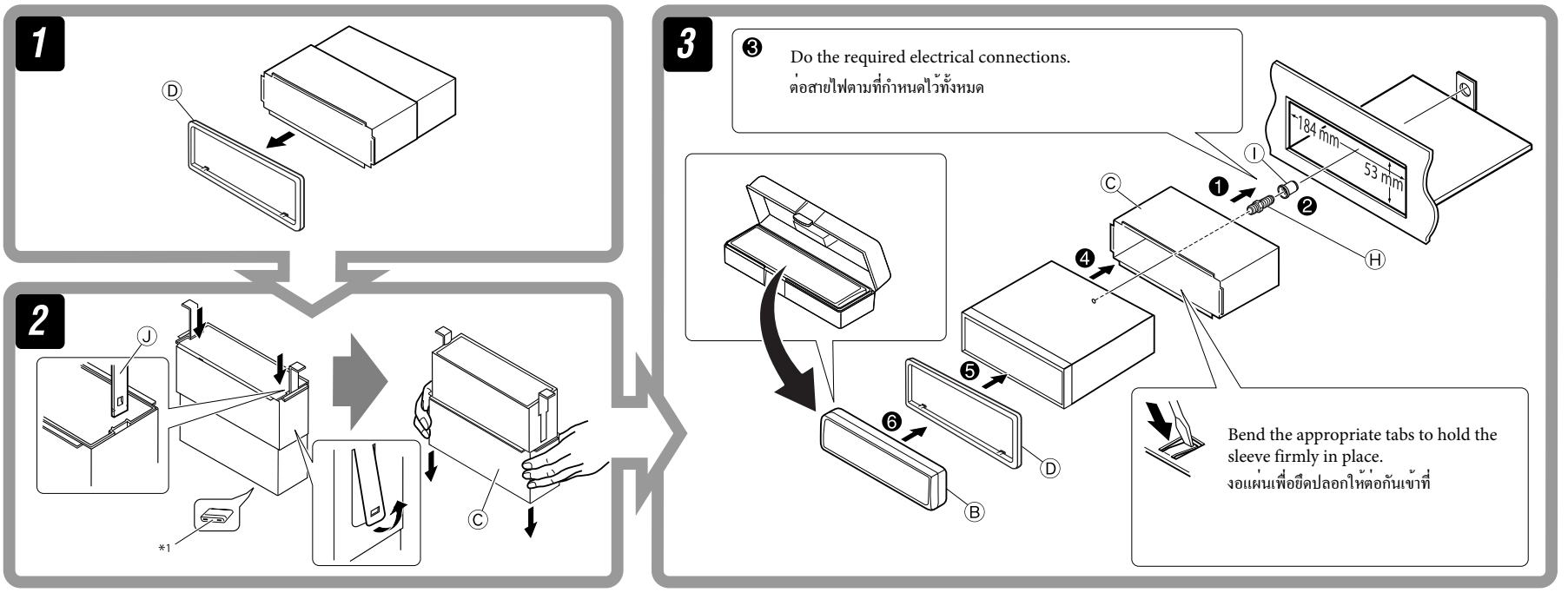
CR2025

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.
• If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

การติดตั้ง (การประกอบแผงหน้าปัทม์เข้า)

ภาพตัวอย่างต่อไปนี้แสดงถึงการติดตั้งแบบทั่วไป หากคุณมีปัญหาหรือต้องการข้อมูลเกี่ยวกับชุดติดตั้ง กรุณาปรึกษากับผู้ขายเครื่องเสียงรถยนต์ JVC ของท่านหรือบริษัท
• ชุดประกอบ ถ้าคุณไม่แน่ใจว่าติดตั้งชุดประกอบนี้ถูกต้องหรือไม่ ให้หาช่างผู้เชี่ยวชาญเป็นผู้ติดตั้ง

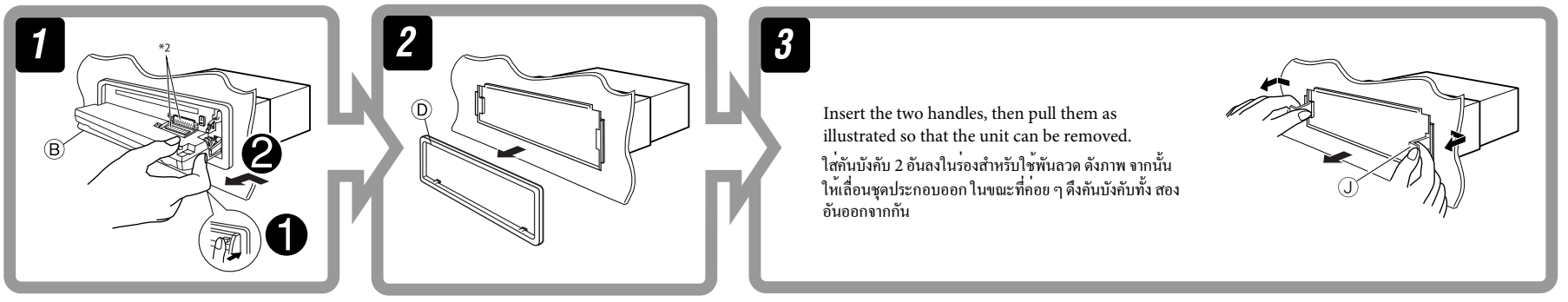


Removing the unit

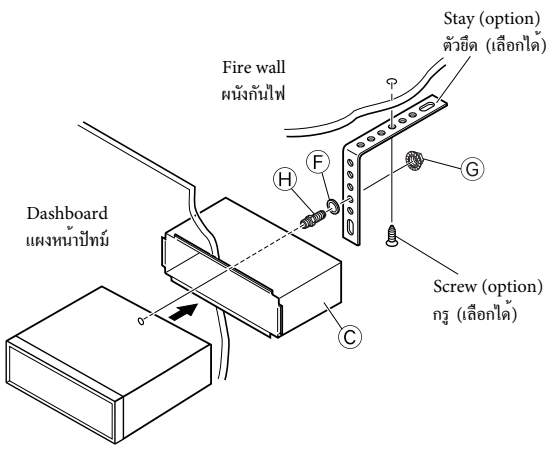
Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

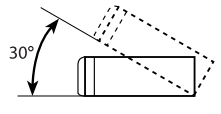
การถอดชุดประกอบ

ก่อนจะถอดชุดประกอบ ให้ปลดหน้าตัดส่วนท้ายก่อน



When using the optional stay / เมื่อใช้ตัวยึดแบบเลือกได้

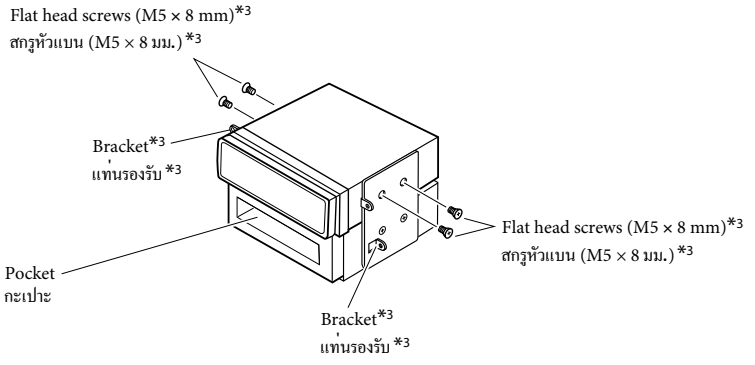




Install the unit at an angle of less than 30°.
ติดตั้งชุดประกอบที่มุมต่ำกว่า 30° องศา

When installing the unit without using the sleeve / เมื่อติดตั้งชุดประกอบโดยไม่ใช้ปลอกหุ้ม

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.
ตัวอย่างเช่น ในรถยนต์โตโยต้า ให้ถอดวิทยุติดรถยนต์ออกก่อน แล้วจึงติดตั้งเครื่องนี้เข้าแทนที่



Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

หมายเหตุ : เมื่อติดตั้งชุดประกอบลงในแท่นรองรับไว้ ให้ใช้สกรูยาวขนาด 8 มม. ถ้าใช้สกรูยาวกว่านี้อาจทำให้ชุดประกอบเสียหายได้

*1 When you stand the unit, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
*2 Avoid touching the connectors.
*3 Not supplied for this unit.

*1 เมื่อคุณตั้งชุดประกอบขึ้น ระวังอย่าทำให้ฟิวส์บริเวณส่วนท้ายเสียหาย
*2 หลีกเลี่ยงการสัมผัสกับตัวเชื่อมต่อ
*3 ไม่ได้ให้มากับชุดประกอบนี้

TROUBLESHOOTING

• **The fuse blows.**
* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
• **Power cannot be turned on.**
* Is the yellow lead connected?
• **No sound from the speakers.**
* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
• **Sound is distorted.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
• **Noise interfere with sounds.**
* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
• **This unit becomes hot.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
• **This unit does not work at all.**
* Have you reset your unit?

การตรวจสอบปัญหาขัดข้อง

• **ฟิวส์ขาด**
* มีการเชื่อม ายตะกั่วสีดำและสีแดงอย่างถูกต้องหรือไม่
• **ไม่สามารถเปิดเครื่องได้**
* มีการเชื่อมสายตะกั่วสีเหลืองหรือไม่
• **ไม่มีเสียงออกจากลำโพง**
* สายตะกั่วส่วนที่ออกทางลำโพงเกิดไฟฟ้าลัดวงจรหรือไม่
• **เสียงเพี้ยน**
* สายตะกั่วส่วนที่ออกทางลำโพงต่อลงดินหรือไม่
* สายขั้วลบ "–" ของลำโพงด้านซ้ายและขวาต่อลงดินตามปกติหรือไม่
• **เสียงรบกวน**
* มีการใช้สายสั้นๆ หรือหนาๆ ต่อจากเครื่องสวนที่ติดตั้ง ไว้บนพื้นด้านหลังกับตัวถังรถยนต์หรือไม่
• **ชุดประกอบร้อนขึ้น**
* สายตะกั่วส่วนที่ออกทางลำโพงต่อลงดินหรือไม่
* สายขั้วลบ "–" ของลำโพงด้านซ้ายและขวาต่อลงดินตามปกติหรือไม่
• **เครื่องรับนี้ทำงานไม่**
* ท่านได้ตั้งเครื่องใหม่แล้วหรือยัง

ENGLISH

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A Typical connections / การเชื่อมต่อแบบปกต

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

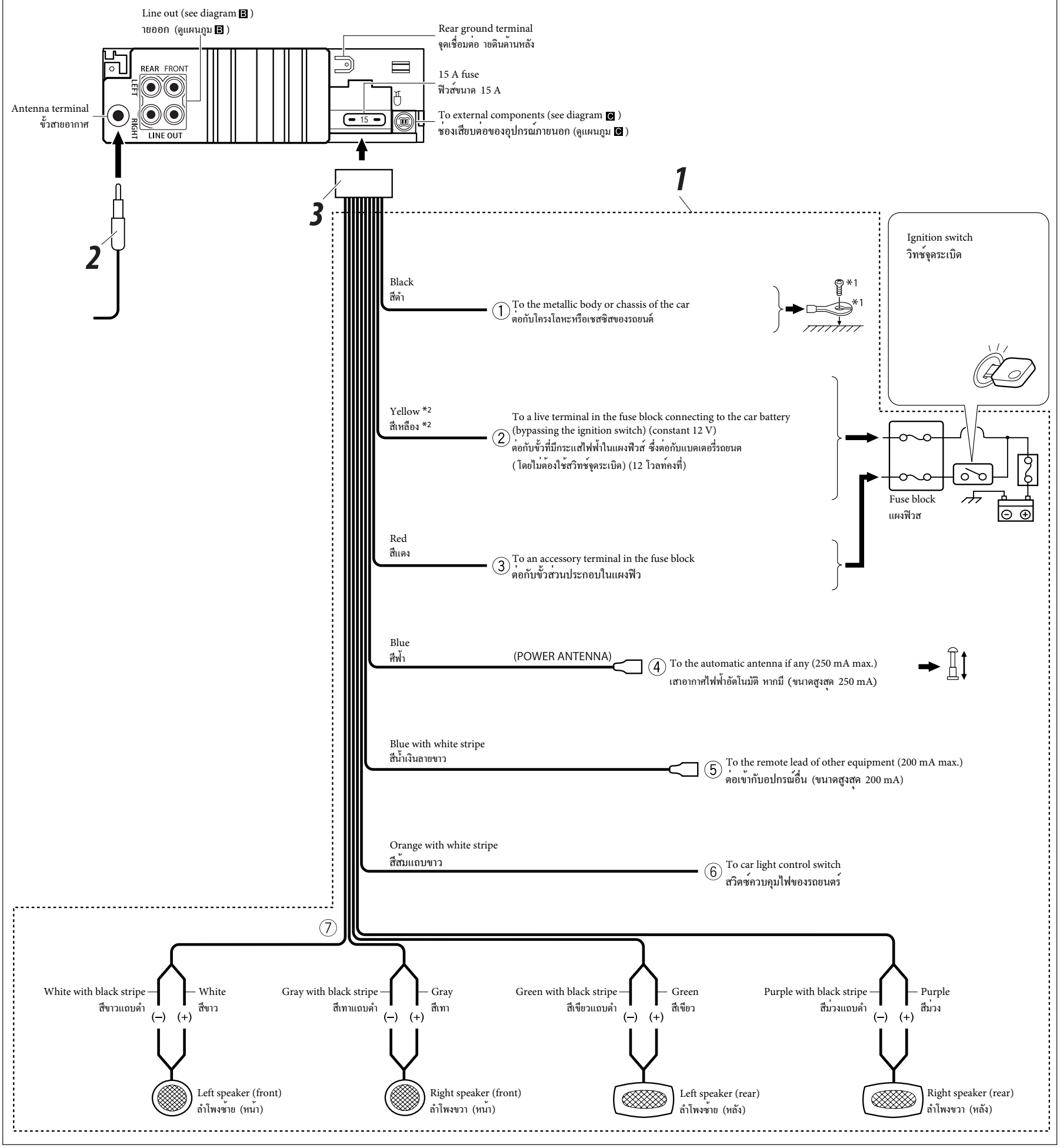
1. Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
2. Connect the antenna cord.
3. Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

ไทย

การเชื่อมโดยใช้ไฟฟ้า

ก่อตทำกาตเชต่อมต่อ: ตตวจ อตกาตเดิต ายไฟไตตตยตต่อย่างตะมัดตะวัอย่าให้ผิดพตาดไตกาตเชต่อมต่อชุดปตะกอตชุดตี กาตเชต่อมต่อผิดพตาดอาจทำให้เกิดตวามเีียหายต้ายแตงกัดชุดปตะ
กอตตี้ได้ตตะกั่วของ ายไฟ แตะของอุปกตต์ต่อเชต่อมจากตัวต งตตอาจมี ที่ไม่เหมตอตกั

1. ต่อสายไฟสีตามลำดับที่ระบุในรูปด้านล่าง
2. เชื่อมต่อกับายอากาศ
3. สุดท้าย ต่อส่วนควบคุมการเดินสายไฟเข้ากับชุดประกอบชุดนี้



*1 Not supplied for this unit.
*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise the power cannot be turned on.

*1 ไม่ได้ให้มากับชุดประกอบนี้
*2 ก่อนการตรวจสอบการทำงานของชุดประกอบนี้ก่อนที่จะติดตั้ง ต้องต่อสายตะกั่วนี้ก่อน มิฉะนั้นจะไม่สามารถเปิดเครื่องได

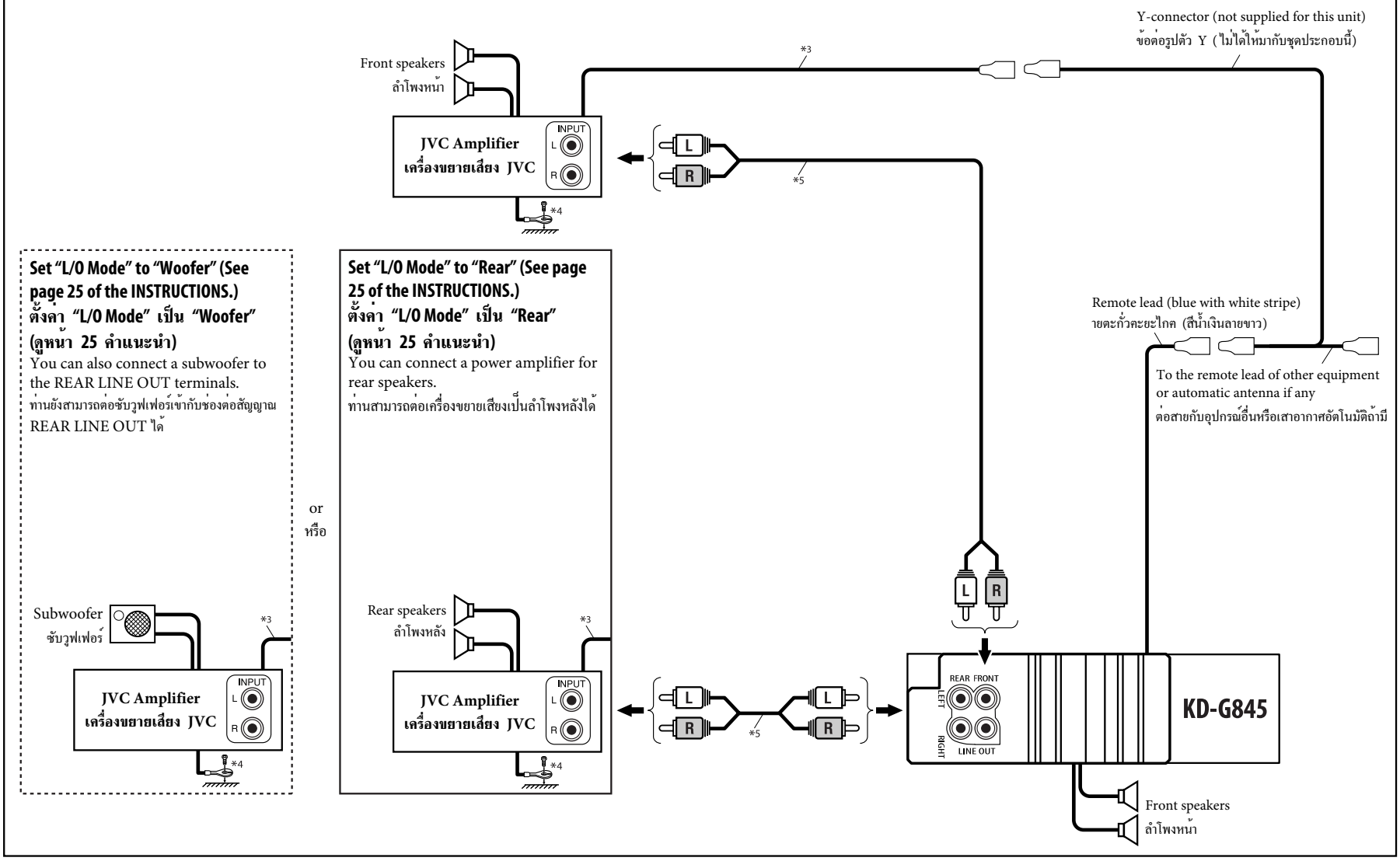
B Connecting the external amplifiers and/or subwoofer / ต่อแอมปลิฟายเออร์และ/หรือซับวูฟเฟอร์ด้านอก

You can connect amplifiers to upgrade your car stereo system.

- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**

คุณสามารถต่อกับแอมพลิฟายเออร์ เพื่อเพิ่มคุณ ภาพเสียงให้กับระบบสเตอริโอของรถยนต์

- ต่อสายตะกั่วระยะไกล (สีน้ำเงินลายขาว) เข้ากับสายตะกั่วระยะไกลของอุปกรณ์อื่น ๆ เพื่อจะสามารถควบคุมโดยชุดประกอบนี้ได้
- **ถอดลำโพงออกจากชุดประกอบนี้ แล้วต่อเข้ากับเครื่องขยาย ทิ้งสายตะกั่วลำโพงของชุดประกอบนี้ไว้**



C Connecting the external components / การต่อเพิ่มเติมเข้ากับอุปกรณ์อื่นๆ

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapters.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.

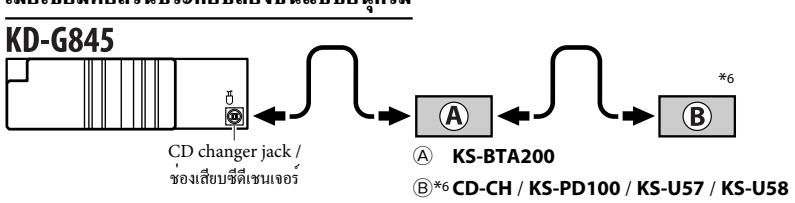
You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.

- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

When connecting more than one component (maximum: two), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

When connecting two components in series / เมื่อเชื่อมต่อส่วนประกอบสองชิ้นแบบอนุกรม



iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

เมื่อเชื่อมต่ออุปกรณ์ภายนอก ให้ดูข้อมูลเกี่ยวกับอุปกรณ์ภายนอกและอะแดปเตอร์จากคู่มือที่ให้มาด้วย

ข้อควรระวัง:
ก่อนจะเชื่อมต่อกับอุปกรณ์ภายนอก กรุณาตรวจสอบให้แน่ใจว่าปิดเครื่องอยู่

ท่านสามารถเชื่อมต่อส่วนประกอบ JVC ต่อไปนี้เข้ากับช่องเสียบซีดีเชนเจอร์

ส่วนประกอบ JVC	ชื่อรุ่น
ซีดีเชนเจอร์ (CD-CH)	CH-X1500 ฯลฯ

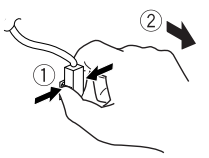
เชื่อมต่อส่วนประกอบต่อไปนี้ผ่านอะแดปเตอร์แบบต่างๆ ของ JVC ได้เช่นกัน

- อาจต้องซื้อสายเชื่อมต่อต่างหาก

ส่วนประกอบ	อะแดปเตอร์	ชื่อรุ่น
อุปกรณ์บลูทูธ	อะแดปเตอร์บลูทูธ	KS-BTA200
iPod	อินเทอร์เฟสอะแดปเตอร์สำหรับรุ่น iPod	KS-PD100
เครื่องเล่นเพลงแบบพกพา พร้อมขั้วต่อ Line Output	อะแดปเตอร์ Line Input	KS-U57
เครื่องเล่นเพลงแบบพกพา พร้อมช่องเสียบแบบ 3.5 มม. Stereo Mini	อะแดปเตอร์ AUX Input	KS-U58

เมื่อเชื่อมต่อส่วนประกอบมากกว่าหนึ่งชิ้น (สูงสุดสองชิ้น) ขอแนะนำให้ท่านเชื่อมต่อส่วนประกอบแบบอนุกรมตามคำอธิบายข้างล่าง

To disconnect the connector / การถอดตัวเชื่อมต่อ



Hold the connector tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
จับตัวเชื่อมต่อให้แน่น (①) แล้วดึงออก (②)

iPod เป็นเครื่องหมายการค้าของ Apple Inc. ซึ่งจดทะเบียนการค้าในประเทศสหรัฐอเมริกาและประเทศอื่นๆ

*3 Remote lead
*4 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.
*5 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)
*6 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 25 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

*3 ายตะกั่วระยะไกล
*4 ต่อลวดสายดินให้แน่นเข้ากับตัวถังเหล็ก หรือตัวถังรถ—ตรงส่วน ที่ไม่มีสีเคลือบ (หากมีสีเคลือบอยู่ ให้ขูดสีออกก่อน ก่อนต่อลวดสายดิน) หากไม่ปฏิบัติตามคำแนะนำนี้ เครื่องอาจชำรุดหรือเสียหายได
*5 ายเคเบิลสัญญาณ (ไม่ได้ให้มากับชุดประกอบนี้)
*6 ในการใช้ส่วนประกอบเหล่านี้ ให้ตั้งค่าการรับสัญญาณอุปกรณ์ภายนอกให้ถูกต้อง (ดูหน้า 25 คำแนะนำ)

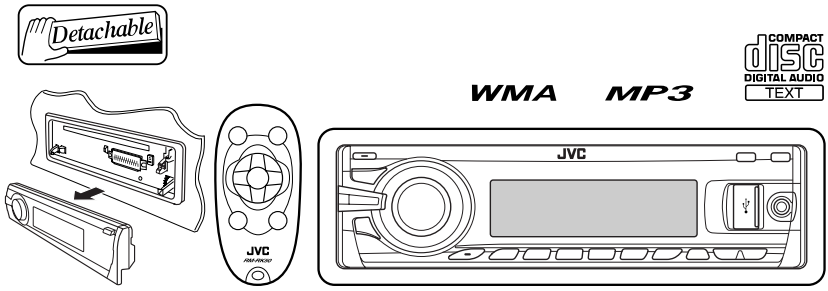
JVC

ENGLISH

INDONESIA

CD RECEIVER KD-G845

ALAT PENERIMA CD KD-G845



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 4.
Untuk membatalkan tampilan demonstrasi, lihat halaman 4.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Untuk instalasi dan penyambungan, lihat buku pedoman terpisah.

INSTRUCTIONS
BUKU PETUNJUK

GET0498-004A
[UN]

ENGLISH

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/またはお不可視のクラス1M レーザー放射が出ます。光学機器で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS II LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG)

[European Union only]

Warning:

If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.

Caution:

If the temperature inside the car is below 0°C, the movement of animation and text scroll will be halted on the display to prevent the display from being blurred. L.TEMP appears on the display.
When the temperature increases, and the operating temperature is resumed, these functions will start working again.

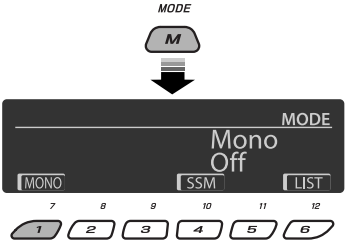
Caution on volume setting:

Digital devices (CD/USB) produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing these digital sources to avoid damaging the speakers by sudden increase of the output level.

How to use the M MODE and SEL buttons

If you use M MODE or SEL (select), the display and some controls (such as the number buttons, ⏮/⏭, ∧, ▲/▼ buttons, and the control dial) enter the corresponding control mode.

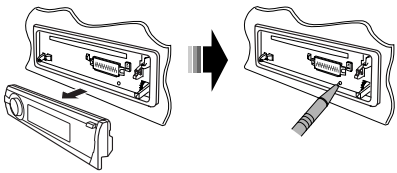
Ex.: When you press number button 1 after pressing M MODE, to operate the FM tuner.



To use these controls for original functions, press M MODE again.

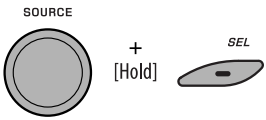
- However, pressing SEL makes the unit enters a different mode.
- Waiting for about 15 seconds (or 30 seconds for Bluetooth sources) without pressing any of these buttons will automatically cancels the control.

How to reset your unit

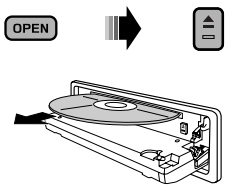


- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased (except the registered Bluetooth device, see pages 12 and 13).*

How to forcibly eject a disc



"Please Eject" appears on the display.



- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*
- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTIONS

Preparation 4

OPERATIONS

Basic operations 5
- Using the control panel 5
- Using the remote controller (RM-RK50) 6

Listening to the radio 7
Disc operations 9
Listening to the USB device 11

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Using the Bluetooth® devices 12
- Using the Bluetooth cellular phone 14
- Using the Bluetooth audio player 16

Listening to the CD changer 17
Listening to the iPod 18
Listening to the other external components 20

SETTINGS

Selecting a preset sound mode 21
General settings—PSM 23
Bluetooth settings 27
Title assignment 28

REFERENCES

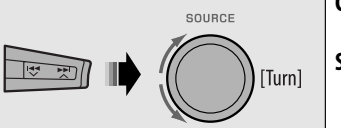
More about this unit 29
Troubleshooting 33
Maintenance 38
Specifications 39

ENGLISH

Preparation

Cancel the display demonstration and set the clock

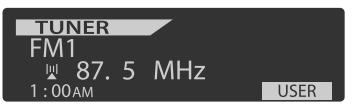
- See also pages 23 and 24.

1		**Turn on the power.**
2		**Enter the PSM settings.**
3		**Cancel the display demonstrations** Select "Demo," then "Off." **Set the clock** Select "Clock Hr" (hour), then adjust the hour. Select "Clock Min" (minute), then adjust the minute. Select "24H/12H," then "24Hours" or "12Hours."
4		**Finish the procedure.**

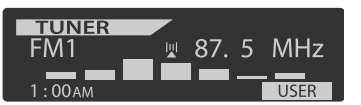
Changing the display information and pattern

When the power is turned off: Check the current clock time

Ex.: When tuner is selected as the source



Source operation display

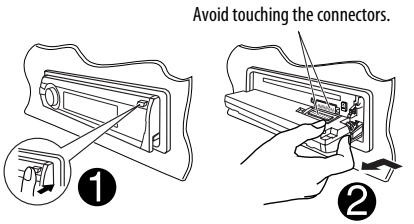


Audio level meter display
(see "LevelMeter" on page 23)

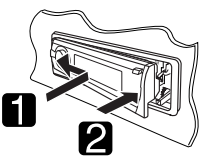
- If a station has been assigned a title, station title appears after about 5 seconds.
- To assign a title to a station, see page 28.

Detaching the control panel

Avoid touching the connectors.

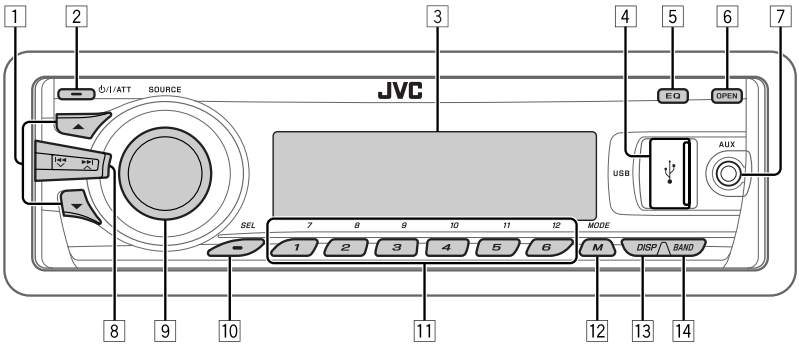


Attaching the control panel



Basic operations

Using the control panel



1 • **TUNER:** Select preset station.
• **CD/USB/CD-CH:** Select folder.
• **USB-iPod:** Enter the main menu [Hold].
• **iPod:** Enter the main menu/Pause playback/Confirm selection.
• **BT-PHONE/BT-AUDIO:** Select a registered device.

2 • Turn on the power.
• Turn off the power [Hold].
• Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).

3 Display window

4 USB (Universal Serial Bus) input jack

5 Select the sound mode.

6 Flip down the control panel.
• To eject the disc, flip down the control panel then press ⏏ on the unit.

7 AUX (auxiliary) input jack

8 • **TUNER:** Search for station.
• **CD/USB/CD-CH/USB-iPod/iPod:** Select track.
• **BT-AUDIO:** Reverse skip/forward skip.

9 • Volume control [Turn].
• Select the source [Press]*1.
TUNER*2 → **CD***2 → **USB***2 (or **USB-iPod**)*2 → **CD-CH***2/**iPod***2 (or **EXT IN**) → **BT-PHONE***2 → **BT-AUDIO***2 → **AUX IN** → (back to the beginning)

10 • Select/adjust the sound mode.
• Enter the PSM settings [Hold].

11 • **TUNER:** Select preset station.
• **CD/USB/CD-CH:** Select folder/track/disc (for CD changer).
• **USB-iPod:** Select preset top menu items.
• **BT-PHONE:** Dial preset phone number*3.

12 • Enter functions mode.
• **BT-PHONE:** Activate Voice Dialing [Hold].

13 Change the display information and pattern.

14 • **TUNER:** Select the bands.
• **USB-iPod:** Start/pause playback.

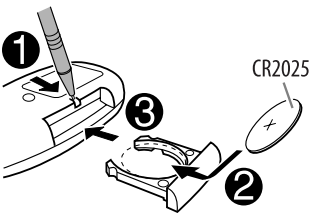
*1 *Holding SOURCE will enter the Bluetooth menu.*

*2 *You cannot select these sources if they are not ready or not connected.*

*3 *For storing preset phone number, see page 16.*

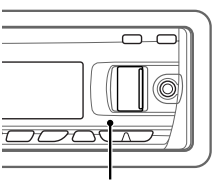
Using the remote controller (RM-RK50)

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



Before using the remote controller:

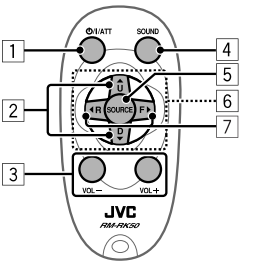
- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).



Remote sensor

Warning (to prevent accidents and damage):

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent.
- Do not leave the remote controller in a place (such as dashboards) exposed to direct sunlight for a long time.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
- Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.



1 • Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
  • Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 • Changes the FM/AM bands with ▲ U.
  • Changes the preset stations with D ▼.
  • Changes the folder of the MP3/WMA/WAV.
  • While playing an MP3 disc on an MP3-compatible CD changer:
    – Changes the disc if pressed briefly.
    – Changes the folder if pressed and held.
  • While listening to an Apple iPod:
    Connected to KS-PD100:
    – Pauses or resumes playback with D ▼.
    – Enters the main menu with ▲ U. (Now ▲ U/D ▼/◄ R/F ► work as the menu selecting buttons.)*
    * ▲ U : *Returns to the previous menu.*
    D ▼ : *Confirms the selection.*
    Connected to the USB input jack:
    – Enter the main menu if pressed and held.
    – Select the desired menu if pressed briefly.
    – Fast skip in every layer of the main menu if pressed and held.

3 Adjusts the volume level.

4 Selects the sound mode (iEQ: intelligent equalizer).

5 Selects the source.

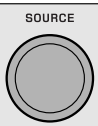
6 For Bluetooth cellular phone:
  – Answers calls if pressed briefly.
  – Rejects calls if pressed and held.

7 • Searches for stations if pressed briefly.
  • Fast-forwards or reverses the track if pressed and held.
  • Changes the tracks if pressed briefly.

- While listening to an iPod (in menu selecting mode):
  Connected to KS-PD100:
  – Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press D ▼ to confirm the selection.)
  – Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.

  Connected to the USB input jack:
  – Start play back the selected folder directly if pressed and held.
- Reverse skip/forward skip for Bluetooth audio.

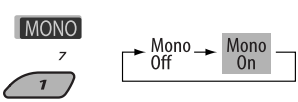
Listening to the radio

1		**Select "TUNER."**
2		**Select the bands.** FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM
3		**Search for a station to listen—Auto Search.** Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" lights up on the display, then press it repeatedly. • When receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength, ST lights up on the display.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1

2



Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.
- MO lights up on the display.

3 **Exit from the setting.**

FM station automatic presetting —SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

You can preset up to six stations for each band.

1 **While listening to a station...**

2

Continued on the next page

3 SSM (10) / 4

Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the selected FM band.

Manual presetting

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

Using the number buttons

1 BAND → FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM

2

3 10 / 4 [Hold]

Preset number flashes for a while.

Using the Preset Station list

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Follow steps 1 and 2 of "Using the number buttons" above.

- By holding ▲ / ▼, the Preset Station List will also appear (go to step **4**).

2 MODE / M

3 Display the Preset Station List.

LIST (12) / 6 → ENTER (7) / 1

4 Select the preset number you want to store into.

- You can move to the lists of the other FM bands by pressing number button 5 ( ) or 6 ( ) repeatedly.

5 Store the station.

MEMO (8) / 2

Listening to the preset station on the Preset Station List

1 Display the Preset Station List, then select the preset station you want to listen to.

2 Change to the selected station.

CHANGE (7) / 1

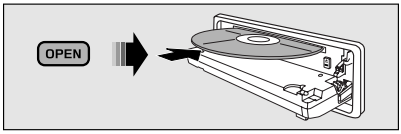
Disc operations

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

Caution:

Make sure to detach the USB device before opening the control panel, as it might block the opening mechanism.

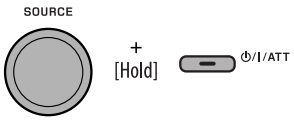
- To detach the USB device, see page 11.



To stop play and eject the disc

- Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.

Prohibiting disc ejection



To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure.

Pressing (or holding) the following buttons allows you to...

	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track
*1	MP3/WMA: Select folder
(Number buttons)*2	Locate particular folder*3 (for MP3/WMA disc) or track directly

*1 *By holding either one of the buttons, you can display the Folder List (see page 10).*

*2 *Press to select number 1 to 6; hold to select number 7 to 12.*

*3 *It is required that folders be assigned with 2-digit numbers at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.*

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks MP3/WMA: Within the same folder
	Repeat Track: Repeat current track **Repeat Folder:** MP3/WMA: Repeat current folder
	Random Folder: MP3/WMA: Randomly play all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Random Disc:** Randomly play all tracks

- You can also cancel the playback mode by selecting "**Off**" or press number button 4 (OFF).

Continued on the next page

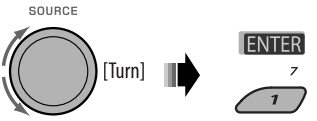
Selecting a folder/track on the list (only for MP3/WMA file)

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1

2 **Select "LIST."**

3 **Select the list type.**



Folder ↔ File

4 **Select an item.**

Ex.: When "File" is selected in step **3**

- You can move to the other lists by pressing number button 5 ( ) or 6 ( ) repeatedly.

5 **Change to the selected item.**

Ⓐ If File List is selected

The list disappears and playback starts.

Ⓑ If Folder List is selected

- If the current folder is selected, File List appears, then repeat steps **4** and **5** Ⓐ to start playback.
- If another folder is selected, playback starts from the 1st file of the selected folder.

Listening to the USB device

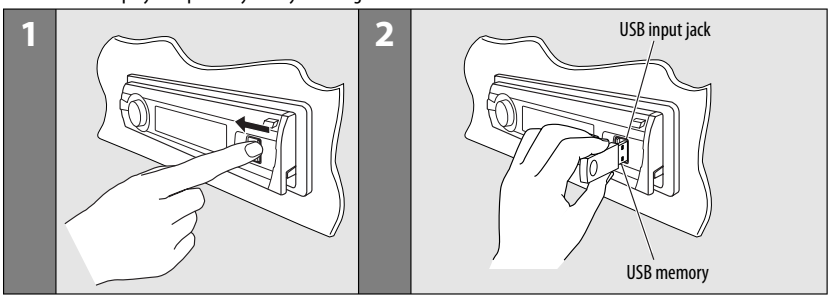
You can connect a USB mass storage class device such as a USB memory, Digital Audio Player*, portable HDD, etc. to the unit.

- You can also connect an Apple iPod to the USB input jack. For details of the operations, see pages 18 and 19.

This unit can play MP3/WMA/WMA-DRM10*/WAV tracks stored in a USB device.

* *You can connect both MTP (Media Transfer Protocol) devices and USB mass storage class devices. See also page 31.*

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or detach the USB device.



If a USB device has been attached...

SOURCE

Playback starts from where it has been stopped previously.

- If a different USB device is currently attached, playback starts from the beginning.

To stop play and detach the USB device

Straightly pull it out from the unit.

- Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.

You can operate the USB device in the same way you operate the files on a disc. (See pages 9 and 10.)

- You can listen to WAV files by following the MP3/WMA files operations listed on pages 9 and 10.

Cautions:

- Avoid using the USB device if it might hinder your safety driving.
- Do not pull out and attach the USB device repeatedly while "Reading" is shown on the display.
- Do not start the car engine if a USB device is connected.
- This unit may not be able to play the files depending on the type of USB device.
- Operation and power supply may not work as intended for some USB devices.
- You cannot connect a computer to the USB input terminal of the unit.
- Make sure all important data has been backed up to avoid losing the data.
- Do not leave a USB device in the car, expose to direct sunlight, or high temperature to avoid deformation or cause damages to the device.
- Some USB devices may not work immediately after you turn on the power.
- For more details about USB operations, see pages 30 and 31.

Using the Bluetooth® devices

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the **Bluetooth Adapter** (KS-BTA200) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to check the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.

- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO").

Registering a Bluetooth device

Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in the Bluetooth menu to register and establish the connection with a device.

- Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO" as the source to operate the Bluetooth menu.

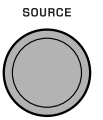
Open	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
Search	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the unit.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

Registering using "Open"

Preparation: Operate the device to turn on its Bluetooth function.

1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Select "NEW."

3 Enter setting menu.

4 Select "Open."

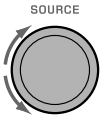
5 Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number) code to the unit.

- You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number). [Initial: 0000]
- To enter a PIN code less than 4-digit, firstly delete the initial PIN code (0000) by pressing number button 5 (CLEAR).

* *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*

1 Move to the next (or previous) number position.

2 Select a number or blank space.



3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you finish entering a PIN code.

4 Confirm the entry.

"Open..." flashes on the display.

6 Use the Bluetooth device to search and connect.

On the device to be connected, enter the same PIN code you have just entered for this unit.
"Connected (and device name)" appears on the display.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

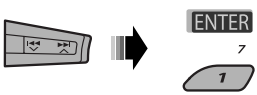
The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use "**Connect**" (or activate "**Auto Connect**") to connect the same device from next time on. (See the following and pages 27 and 28.)

Connecting a device

Perform steps **1** – **3** on page 12, then...

1 • **Select "Search" to search for available devices.**
The unit searches and displays the list of the available devices.
If no available device is detected, "Device Not Found" appears.

• **Select "Special" to connect a special device.**
The unit displays the list of the preset devices.



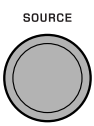
2 Select a device you want to connect.

3 • **For available devices...**
1 Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit.
Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code.
2 Use the Bluetooth device to connect.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

• **For special device...**
Use "Open" or "Search" to connect.

Connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device

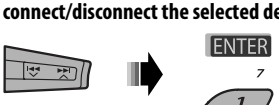
1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Select a registered device you want to connect/disconnect/delete.

3 Enter setting menu.

4 • **Select "Connect" or "Disconnect" to connect/disconnect the selected device.**



Continued on the next page

ENGLISH

- **Select "Delete," then confirm the selection.**

Press number button 3 to select "No" or return to the previous screen.

You can set the unit to connect the Bluetooth device automatically when the unit is turned on. (See "**Auto Connect**" on pages 27 and 28.)

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone

1		**Select "BT-PHONE."**
2		**Enter Bluetooth menu.**
3	—	**Establish the connection with a device, then make a call (or settings using the Bluetooth menu).**

When a call comes in....

The source is automatically changed to "BT-PHONE."

When "Auto Answer" is activated....

The unit answers the incoming calls automatically, see pages 27 and 28.

- When "Auto Answer" is deactivated, press any button (except ⏻/I/ATT/control dial) to answer the incoming call.

To end the call

Hold any button (except ⏻/I/ATT/control dial).

- You can adjust the microphone volume level (see pages 27 and 28).

When a text message comes in....

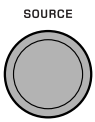
If the cellular phone is compatible with Text Message and "Message Info" is set to "Auto" (see pages 27 and 28), the unit rings and "Received Message" appears on the display to inform you of the message arrival.

Making a call

You can make a call using one of the Dial Menu items.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

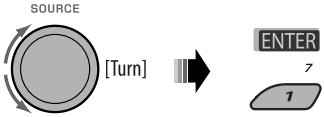
1 Select "BT-PHONE."



2 Enter setting menu.

3 Select "Dial Menu."

4 Select the method to make a call.



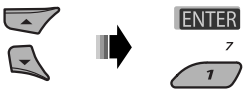
- **Redial***: Shows the list of the phone numbers you have dialed. Go to the following step.
- **Received***: Shows the list of the received calls. Go to the following step.
- **Phonebook***: Shows the phone book of the connected cellular phone. Go to the following step.
- **Missed***: Shows the list of the missed calls. Go to the following step.
- **Number**: Shows the phone number entry screen. See "How to enter phone number" on the right column.
- **Voice Dial** (Only accessible when the connected cellular phone has the voice recognition system): Speak the name (registered words) you want to call.

*** Displayed only when your cellular phone is equipped with these functions.**

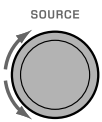
– If not displayed, try to transfer the phone book memory of the cellular phone to this unit. (Refer to the instruction manual supplied with your cellular phone.)

– With some cellular phones, the phone book memory is transferred automatically.

5 Select the name/phone number you want to call.



How to enter phone number



Select a number.

Move the entry position.

Confirm the entry.

Continued on the next page

Using voice command

1 MODE / M — "Say..." appears on the display.

2 Speak the name (registered words) you want to call.

- You can also use voice command from the Dial Menu. Select "Voice Dial" from the Dial Menu.
- If your cellular phone does not support the voice recognition system, "Error" appears on the display.

Presetting the phone number

You can preset up to six phone numbers.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Display the phone number you want to preset by using one of the "Dial Menu" items.

2 Select a phone number.

You can also enter a new phone number (see also "How to enter phone number" on page 15) to store.

3 Select a preset number to store.

[Hold]

To call a preset number

While in Bluetooth phone....

Using the Bluetooth audio player

- Operations and display indications differ depending on their availability on the connected audio player.

SOURCE	**Select "BT-AUDIO."** If playback does not start automatically, operate the Bluetooth audio player to start playback.

	Reverse skip/forward skip
BAND	Start/pause playback
MODE / M	Enter setting menu (Device list)

- Refer also to pages 13 and 14 for connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device.

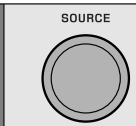
Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>.

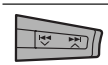
Listening to the CD changer

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit. You can connect a CD changer to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

- You can only play conventional CDs (including CD Text) and MP3 discs.

Preparation: Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 25.

1		**Select "CD-CH."**
2		**Select a disc to start playing.** [Press] For selecting disc number 1 – 6. [Hold] For selecting disc number 7 – 12.

	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track
*	MP3: Select folders

* *By holding either one of the buttons, you can display the Disc List (see page 10).*

To select a disc/folder/track on the list

See "Selecting a folder/track on the list (only for MP3/WMA file)" on page 10.

Select "Disc" in step **3** to display the Disc List of the CD changer.

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks MP3: Within the same folder
	Repeat Track: Repeat current track **Repeat Folder:** MP3: Repeat all tracks of current folder **Repeat Disc:** Repeat all tracks of the current disc
	Random Folder: MP3: Randomly play all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder **Random Disc:** Randomly play all tracks of current disc **Random All:** Randomly play all tracks of the discs in the magazine

- You can also cancel the playback mode by selecting "**Off**" or press number button 4 (OFF).

ENGLISH

Listening to the iPod

You can play songs in an Apple iPod by:

– Connecting it with the USB cable supplied with your iPod to the USB input jack on the control panel.

– Connecting the Interface adapter for iPod, KS-PD100 (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

Preparation: Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 25.

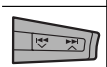
- You can control playback from the unit.
- Disconnecting the iPod will stop playback. Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.
- For details, refer also to the manual supplied for your iPod.

Caution:

- Avoid using the iPod if it might hinder your safety while driving.
- Make sure all important data has been backed up to avoid losing the data.

1	—	**Connect an iPod to the USB input jack or through KS-PD100.** Playback starts automatically from where it had been paused previously. • If an iPod has been connected, press SOURCE to select "USB-iPod" or "iPod" as the playback source.
2		**Select a track.**
3	—	**Adjust the volume and sound as you want. (See pages 21 and 22.)**

Playback control from the unit

Button	For iPod connected through KS-PD100	For iPod connected to the USB input jack
	[Press] Go to the next or previous track [Hold] Fast-forward or reverse the track during playback	[Press] Go to the next or previous track [Hold] Fast-forward or reverse the track during playback
	[Press] Enter main menu when you press ▲. Pause/resume playback when ▼ is pressed.	[Hold] Enter main menu [Press] Go to the top menu of "Playlists," "Artists," "Albums," "Songs," "Podcasts," "Genres," "Composers," or "Audiobooks" in the main menu. • Pressing the number buttons (1 – 6) or holding 1 (7) and 2 (8) can also select the preset top menus.
	—	[Press] Pause/resume playback.

Selecting a track from the menu

No.	Operation	For iPod connected through KS-PD100	For iPod connected to the USB input jack
1	Enter the main menu.		[Hold]
2	Select the desired menu.	Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Genres ↔ Composers	Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Podcasts ↔ Genres ↔ Composers ↔ Audiobooks
3	Confirm the selection.	• By holding ⏮ ∨/⏭ ∧, you can fast skip during song search in the main menu.	• By holding ⏭ ∧, you can start play back the selected item directly. • By holding ⏮ ∨, you can go back to the previous menu. • By holding ▲/▼, you can fast skip in every layer of the main menu.
		• If a track is selected, playback starts automatically. • If the selected item has another layer, you will enter the layer. Repeat steps **2** and **3** until the desired track is played.	

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

RPT 8 2	**Repeat One:** Same as "Repeat One." **Repeat All:** Same as "Repeat All." **Repeat Off:** Cancels.
RND 9 3	**Random Album*:** Same as "Shuffle Albums." **Random Song:** Same as "Shuffle Songs." **Random Off:** Cancels.

* *Functions only if you select "All Albums" or "All" in "Albums" of the main "MENU."*

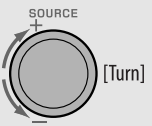
The menu selecting mode will be canceled:

- If no operations are performed for about:
  - 5 seconds for iPod connected through KS-PD100.
  - 15 seconds for iPod connected to the USB input jack.
- When you confirm the selection of a track.

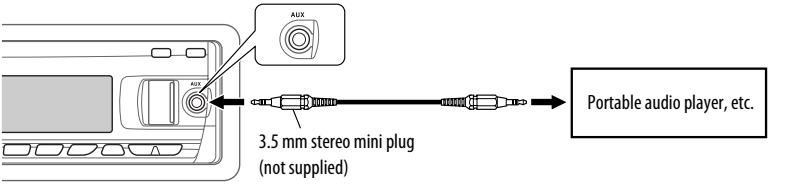
Listening to the other external components

You can connect an external component to:

- CD changer jack on the rear of this unit using the following adapters:
  – **Line Input Adapter,** KS-U57
  – **AUX Input Adapter,** KS-U58
  Preparation: Make sure "Ext In" is selected for the external input setting, see page 25.
- AUX (auxiliary) input jack on the control panel.

1		**Select "EXT IN" or "AUX IN."**
2	—	**Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**
3		**Adjust the volume.**
4	—	**Adjust the sound as you want (see pages 21 and 22).**

Connecting an external component to the AUX input jack



Selecting a preset sound mode

You can select a preset sound mode suitable to the music genre (iEQ: intelligent equalizer).

EQ → USER → ROCK → CLASSIC → POPS → HIP HOP → JAZZ

Preset value setting for each sound mode

Sound mode	Preset value								
	Bass			Mid (mid-range)			Treble		
	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q
USER	60 Hz	00	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	00	–
ROCK	100 Hz	+03	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	–
CLASSIC	80 Hz	+01	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	–
POPS	100 Hz	+02	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	+01	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	–
HIP HOP	60 Hz	+04	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	–02	Q1.0	10.0 kHz	+01	–
JAZZ	80 Hz	+03	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	–

Freq.: Frequency Q: Q-slope

Adjusting the sound

You can adjust the sound characteristics to your preference.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3 or 6.

1

2

EQ → Fad/Bal → Subwoofer* → Loudness → VolAdjust

- For "EQ" setting, see page 22.

* *Displayed only when "L/O Mode" is set to "Woofer" (see page 25).*

3 Adjust the selected setting item.

Ⓐ **Fad/Bal (Fader/Balance)**

1 Press number button 1 (SELECT) to move to the "Fad/Bal" adjustment display.

2 Adjust the speaker output balance by pressing:
▲ / ▼: between the front and rear speakers. [F6 to R6]
|◄◄ ∨/►►| ∧: between the left and right speakers. [L6 to R6]

Ⓑ **Subwoofer**

1 Press number button 1 (SELECT) to move to the "Subwoofer" adjustment display.

2 Use |◄◄ ∨/►►| ∧ to select a cutoff frequency to the subwoofer.

- OFF: All signals are sent to the subwoofer.
- 80Hz: Frequencies higher than 80 Hz are cut off.
- 120Hz: Frequencies higher than 120 Hz are cut off.
- 160Hz: Frequencies higher than 160 Hz are cut off.

Continued on the next page

3 Turn the control dial to adjust the subwoofer output level. [0 to 8]
4 Press number button 1 (MORE) to select the subwoofer phase. [0deg (normal) or 180deg (reverse)]

Ⓒ **VolAdjust,** [–5 to +5]
Turn the control dial to adjust the input level of each source (except FM).
Adjust to match the input level of the FM sound level.
- Before making an adjustment, select the source you want to adjust.

Ⓓ **Loudness,** [Off or On]
Turn the control dial to select "Off" or "On." When "On" is selected, low and high frequencies sound are boosted to produce a well-balanced sound at low volume level.

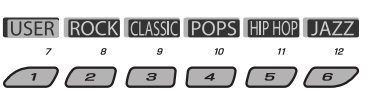
4 Exit from the setting.

Storing your own sound modes

You can adjust the sound modes and store your own adjustments in memory.
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 6.

1

2 Select a sound mode.



3 Select a frequency range.

4 Adjust the sound elements of the selected frequency range.
1 Use ▲ / ▼ to adjust the level.
2 Press number button 5 (FREQ), then turn the control dial to select the frequency.
3 Press number button 5 (Q), then turn the control dial to select the quality slope (Q).

Sound elements	Range/selectable items		
	Low	Mid	High
Frequency	60 Hz 80 Hz 100 Hz 200 Hz	500 Hz 1 kHz 1.5 kHz 2.5 kHz	10 kHz 12.5 kHz 15 kHz 17.5 kHz
Level	–6 to +6	–6 to +6	–6 to +6
Q	Q1.0 Q1.25 Q1.5 Q2.0	Q0.5 Q0.75 Q1.0 Q1.25	Fix

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to adjust the other frequency bands.

6 Store the adjustments.

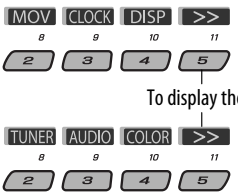
General settings—PSM

You can change PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) items listed in the table below and on pages 24 and 25.

1 Enter the PSM settings.

[Hold]

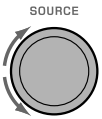
2 Select a PSM category.



3 Select a PSM item.

By pressing either one of the buttons repeatedly, you can also move to the item of the other categories.

4 Adjust the selected PSM item.



[Turn]

5 Repeat steps 2 – 4 to adjust other PSM items if necessary.

6 Finish the procedure.

Category	Indication	Item (__ : Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
MOV (movie)	**Demo** Display demonstration	• **On**	: Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [4].
		• **Off**	: Cancels.
	LevelMeter Audio level meter	• **Meter 1**	: Select the different level meter patterns.
		• **Meter 2**	• Press DISP to show the selected level meter.
CLOCK	**Clock Disp***1 Clock display	• **On**	: Clock time is shown on the display when the power is turned off.
		• **Off**	: Cancels; pressing DISP will show the clock time for about 5 seconds when the power is turned off, [4].

*1 *If the power supply is not interrupted by turning off the ignition key of your car, it is recommended to select "Off" to save the car's battery.*

Continued on the next page

Category	Indication	Item (__ : Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
CLOCK	**Clock Hr** Hour adjustment	**1 – 12AM/** **1 – 12PM** **(0 – 23)**	: Initial: 1 (1:00AM), [4].
	Clock Min Minute adjustment	**00 – 59**	: Initial: 00 (1:00AM), [4].
	24H/12H Time display mode	• **12Hours** • **24Hours**	: See also page 4 for setting.
DISP (display)	**Scroll***2 Scroll	• **Once** • **Auto** • **Off**	: Scrolls the track information once. : Repeats scrolling (at 5-second intervals). : Cancels. (Holding DISP can scroll the display regardless of the setting.)
	Dimmer Dimmer	• **Auto** • **Off** • **On** • **Time Set**	: Dims the display when you turn on the headlights. : Cancels. : Dims the display and button illumination. : Set the timer for dimmer, [26].
	From – To*3	—	Any hour – Any hour : Initial: 6PM – 7AM.
	Contrast Contrast	**1 – 8** Initial: 5	: Adjust the display contrast to make the display indications clear and legible.
	LCD Type Display type	• **Auto** • **Positive** • **Negative**	: Positive pattern will be selected during the day time*4; while negative pattern will be used during the night time*4. : Positive pattern of the display. : Negative pattern of the display.
	Tag Tag display	• **On** • **Off**	: Shows the tag while playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks. : Cancels.
TUNER	**IF Band** Intermediate frequency band	• **Auto** • **Wide**	: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) : Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.

*2 *Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.*

*3 *Adjustable only when "Dimmer" is set to "Time Set."*

*4 *Depends on the "Dimmer" setting.*

Category	Indication	Item (__ : Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
AUDIO	**Ext Input***5 External input	• **Changer** • **Ext In**	: To use a JVC CD changer, [17], or an Apple iPod, [18]. : To use any other external component, [20].
	AudioBooks*6 Speed control of "Audiobook"	• **Normal** • **Faster** • **Slower**	: You can select the playback speed of the "Audiobook" sound file in your iPod. • Initial selected item depends on your iPod setting.
	L/O Mode Line output mode	• **Rear** • **Woofer**	: Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting the rear speakers (through an external amplifier). : Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting a subwoofer (through an external amplifier).
	Amp Gain Amplifier gain control	• **High PWR** • **Low PWR**	: Volume 00 – Volume 50 : Volume 00 – Volume 30 (Select if the maximum power of each speaker is less than 50 W to prevent damaging the speaker.)
COLOR	**Color Sel** Color selection	Initial: All Source; Color: Pale	: Select your favorite display color for each source (or for all sources), [26].
	Color Set Color setting	— **Day Color** **NightColor** **00 — 11** **00 — 11** **00 — 11**	: Create your own colors, and select them for the display color, [27]. : User color during the day time*7. : User color during the night time*7. : Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05 : Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05 : Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05
	Key Illum Illumination switch	• **Red** • **Green**	: You can select the button illumination according to your preference.

*5 *Displayed only when an iPod is connected to the USB input jack and playback is controlled from the unit.*

*6 *Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—TUNER, CD, USB, or Bluetooth.*

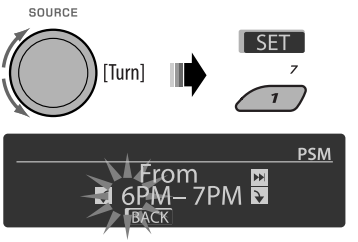
*7 *Depends on the "Dimmer" setting.*

Setting the time for dimmer

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 23.
- In step **2**, select "DISP."
- In step **3**, select "Dimmer."

2 Select "Time Set."



3 Adjust the dimmer start time.

1 Turn the control dial to set the dimmer start time.

2 Press ►►I ∧ to select "To." Then, turn the control dial to set the dimmer end time.

4 Exit from the setting.

Changing the display color

You can select your favorite display color for each source (or all sources).

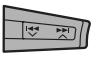
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3 or 6.

Setting the display color

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 23.
- In step **2**, select "COLOR."
- In step **3**, select "Color Sel."

2

3 Select a source.



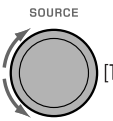
All Source*1 ↔ **CD** ↔ **Changer***3 (or **Ext In***2) ↔ **USB***3 ↔ **FM** ↔ **AM** ↔ **iPod***3 ↔ **Aux In** ↔ **BT Phone***3 ↔ **BT Audio***3 ↔ (back to the beginning)

*1 *When you select "All Source," you can use the same color for all the sources.*

*2 *Depends on the "Ext Input" setting, see page 25.*

*3 *Displayed only when the target component is connected.*

4 Select a color.



Pale ↔ **Aqua** ↔ **Sky** ↔ **Sea** ↔ **Leaves** ↔ **Grass** ↔ **Apple** ↔ **Rose** ↔ **Amber** ↔ **Honey** ↔ **Violet** ↔ **Grape** ↔ **Every***4 ↔ **User***5 ↔ (back to the beginning)

*4 *The color changes every 2 seconds.*

*5 *The user-edited colors—"Day Color" and "NightColor" will be applied (see page 27 for details).*

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to select the color for each source (except when selecting "All Source" in step 3).

6 Exit from the setting.

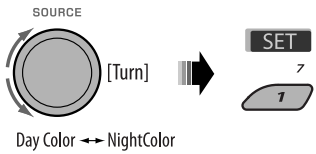
Creating your own color—User Color

You can create your own colors—"Day Color" or "NightColor."

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 23.

- In step **2**, select "COLOR."
- In step **3**, select "Color Set."

2 Select "Day Color" or "NightColor."



3 Select a primary color.

4 Adjust the level (00 to 11) of the selected primary color.

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to adjust other primary colors.

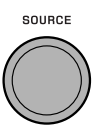
6 Exit from the setting.

Bluetooth settings

You can change the settings listed on page 28 according to your preference.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

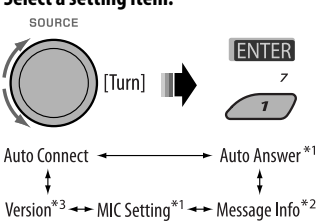
1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Enter the Bluetooth menu.

3 Select "Setting."

4 Select a setting item.

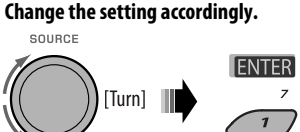


*1 *Displayed only when a Bluetooth phone is connected.*

*2 *Displayed only when a Bluetooth phone is connected and it is compatible with text message.*

*3 *Bluetooth Audio: Shows only "Version."*

5 Change the setting accordingly.



Continued on the next page

Setting menu (__ : Initial)

Auto Connect

When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with...

Off: No Bluetooth device.
Last: The last connected Bluetooth device.
Order: The available registered Bluetooth device found at first.

Auto Answer

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

On: The unit answers the incoming calls automatically.
Off: The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually.
Reject: The unit rejects all incoming calls.

Message Info

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

Auto: The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "Received Message."
Manual: The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.

MIC setting (microphone setting)

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."
Adjust the built-in microphone volume, [LEVEL 01/02/03].

Version

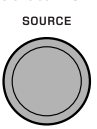
The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

Title assignment

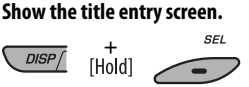
You can assign titles to 30 station frequencies (FM and AM) using 10 characters (maximum) for each title.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Select "TUNER."

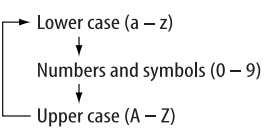


2 Show the title entry screen.



3 Assign a title.

1 Press number button 4 (A → a) repeatedly to select a character set.



2 Turn the control dial to select a character. (For available characters, see page 33.)
3 Use |◄◄ ∨/►►| ∧ to move to the next (or previous) character position.
4 Repeat steps 1 to 3 until you finish entering the title.

4 Store the title.

To erase the entire title

In step **3** above...

More about this unit

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback also starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a track, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously next time you turn on the power.

General

- If you change the source while listening to a disc, playback stops.
  Next time you select "CD" as the playback source, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously.
- After ejecting a disc or removing a USB device, "No Disc" or "No USB" appears and you cannot operate some of the buttons. Insert another disc, reattach a USB device, or press SOURCE to select another playback source.

Tuner operations

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
  – All previously stored stations are erased and the stations are stored anew.
  – Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
  – When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, the previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

Disc/USB operations

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

General

- This unit has been designed to reproduce CDs/CD Texts, and CD-Rs (Recordable)/CD-RWs (Rewritable) in audio CD (CD-DA), MP3 and WMA formats.
- When a disc is inserted upside down, "Please Eject" appears on the display. Press OPEN, then ⏏ to eject the disc.
- In this manual, words "track" and "file" are interchangeably used.
- While fast-forwarding or reversing on MP3/WMA/WAV files, you can only hear intermittent sounds.
- File/folder list may not appear correctly if too many hierarchies and folders are used.
- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot again to protect it from dust. Playback starts automatically.

Playing a CD-R or CD-RW

- Use only "finalized" CD-Rs or CD-RWs.
- This unit can only play back files of the same type as those which are detected first if a disc includes both audio CD (CD-DA) files and MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some CD-Rs or CD-RWs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, or for the following reasons:
  – Discs are dirty or scratched.
  – Moisture condensation has occurred on the lens inside the unit.

Continued on the next page

– The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
– The files on the CD-R/CD-RW are written using the "Packet Write" method.
– There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stained, scratched, warped, etc.).

- CD-RWs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of CD-RWs is lower than that of regular CDs.
- Do not use the following CD-Rs or CD-RWs:
  – Discs with stickers, labels, or a protective seal stuck to the surface.
  – Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

  Using these discs under high temperature or high humidity may cause malfunctions or damage to the unit.

Playing an MP3/WMA disc

- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3 files and for WMA files.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files meeting the conditions below:

  MP3:
  – Bit rate: 8 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz, 12 kHz, 11.025 kHz, 8 kHz

  WMA:
  – Bit rate: 32 kbps — 192 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz
  – Disc format: ISO 9660 Level 1/Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names vary depending on the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3> or <.wma>).
  – ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
  – ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
  – Romeo*: up to 128 characters
  – Joliet*: up to 64 characters
  – Windows long file name*: up to 128 characters

* *The parenthetic figure is the maximum number of characters for file/folder names in case the total number of files and folders is 271 or more.*

- This unit can recognize a total of 512 files, 200 folders, and 8 hierarchical levels.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).

  Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in the elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. In particular, this difference becomes noticeable after performing the search function.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded in MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriate format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded in lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks from a USB device

- Connecting a USB device automatically changes the source to "USB."
- While playing from a USB device, the playback order may differ from the one from other players.
- This unit may be unable to play back some USB devices or some files due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- Depending on the shape of the USB devices and connection ports, some USB devices may not be attached properly or the connection might be loose.
- When connecting a USB mass storage class device, refer also to its instructions.

- Connect one USB mass storage class device to the unit at a time. Do not use a USB hub.
- You can connect two types of USB device to this unit—MTP device and Mass storage class device. If you connect an MTP device featuring "USB digital media streaming" to this unit, you can play back the WMA-DRM10 (Digital Right Management) files purchased through the music distributing web sites, through this unit.
- This unit is compatible with the USB Full-Speed.
- If the connected USB device does not have the correct files, "No File" appears.
- This unit can show ID3 Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3 and WMA/WAV Tag.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA/WAV files meeting the conditions below:
  MP3:
  – Bit rate: 32 kbps — 320 kbps (MPEG-1)
    8 kbps — 160 kbps (MPEG-2)
  – Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
  WMA:
  – Bit rate: 5 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 8 kHz — 48 kHz
  – Channel: 1 ch/2 ch
  WAV:
  – Bit rate: Linear PCM at 705 kbps and 1 411 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 44.1 kHz
  – Channel: 1 ch/2 ch
- This unit can play back MP3 files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- The maximum number of characters for folder and file names is 25 characters; 128 characters for MP3/WMA/WAV Tag.
- This unit can recognize a total of 20 000 files and 2 000 folders (999 files per folder). However, the display can shows until 9 999 folders/files.
- The unit cannot recognize a USB mass storage class device whose rating is other than 5 V and exceeds 500 mA.
- USB devices equipped with special functions such as data security functions cannot be used with the unit.
- Do not use a USB device with 2 or more partitions.
- This unit may not recognized a USB device connected through a USB card reader.
- This unit may not play back files in a USB device properly when using a USB extension cord.
- This unit cannot assure proper functions or supply power to all types of USB devices.

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on the circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

appears when the connection is established.

	Appears when the Bluetooth phone is connected.
	Appears when the Bluetooth audio player is connected.
	Appears when the Bluetooth phone and Bluetooth audio player are connected.

Icons for phone types

These icons indicate the phone type set on the device:

: Cellular phone	: General
: Household phone	: Other than above
: Office	: Unknown

Continued on the next page

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **Connection Error:**
  The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use "Connect" to connect the device again. (See page 13.)
- **Error**
  Try the operation again. If "Error" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **Device Not Found**
  No available Bluetooth device is detected by "Search...".
- **Loading...**
  The unit is updating the phone book and/or text messages.
- **Please Wait...**
  The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **Reset 08**
  Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

iPod

- Controllable iPod (connected through....):
  (A) KS-PD100:
  – iPod with dock connector (3rd Generation)
  – iPod with click wheel (4th Generation)
  – iPod nano (1st & 2nd*1 Generation)
  – iPod mini (1st Generation)
  – iPod video (5th Generation)*2
  – iPod photo
  (B) USB input jack:
  – iPod nano (1st & 2nd Generation)
  – iPod video (5th Generation)

*1 *When you connect the iPod nano to the interface adapter, be sure to disconnect the headphones; otherwise, no sound is heard.*

*2 *It is not possible to browse video files on the "Videos" menu while the iPod is connected to the interface adapter.*

- Update your iPod to the latest software version before using it with this unit.
  – You can check the software version of your iPod under "About" in the "Setting" menu of the iPod.
  – For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- While the unit is being turned on, the iPod is charged through this unit.
- While connecting an iPod with Video:
  – No video shows on the iPod's display or the external monitor (only the audio part is available).
  – It is not possible to browse video files on the "Video" menu. (If you connect the iPod during the playback or pausing of a video file, resuming playback will not work.)
- iPod shuffle and iPhone cannot be used with this unit.
- You can control the iPod from this unit when "JVC" or "√" appears on the iPod display after connection.
- The song order displayed on the selection menu of this unit may differ from that of the iPod.
- If playback is stopped, select a track from the selection menu or press BAND to play back the same track again.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly:
  – Some characters such as accented letters cannot be shown correctly on the display.
  – Communication between the iPod and the unit is not stable.
- If the text information includes more than 16 characters, it scrolls on the display. This unit can display up to 128 characters.

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>

Title assignment

- If you try to assign titles to more than 30 station frequencies, "Name Full" appears. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.

Available characters

Upper case

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N
O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	space	

Lower case

a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n
o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	space	

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	−	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	space							

General settings—PSM

- "Auto" setting for "Dimmer" may not work correctly on some vehicles, particularly on those having a control dial for dimming.
  In this case, change the "Dimmer" setting to any other than "Auto."
- If "LCD Type" is set to "Auto," the display pattern will change to the "Positive" or "Negative" pattern depending on the "Dimmer" setting.
- If you change the "Amp Gain" setting from "High PWR" to "Low PWR" while the volume level is set higher than "Volume 30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "Volume 30."

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).
	• "Connect Error" appears on the display.	Remove the control panel, wipe the connector, then attach it again (see page 4).
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the antenna firmly.

Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played back. • Tracks on the CD-R/CD-RW cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized CD-R/CD-RW. • Finalize the CD-R/CD-RW with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc can neither be played back nor ejected.	• Unlock the disc (see page 9). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 3).
	• Disc sound is sometimes interrupted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
	• Disc cannot be recognized ("No Disc," "CD Loading Error," or "Eject Error" flashes).	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 3).
	• "Please Eject" appears on the display.	This occurs sometimes due to over-heating. Eject the disc or change to another playback source.
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Use a disc with MP3/WMA tracks recorded in a format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet. • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• A longer readout time is required ("Reading" keeps flashing on the display).	Do not use too many hierarchical levels and folders.
	• Tracks do not play back in the order you have intended them to play.	The playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	• The elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc (eg. variable bit rate).
	• "Please Eject" appears on the display.	Insert a disc that contains MP3/WMA tracks.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	Skip to the next track encoded in an appropriate format or to the next non-copy-protected WMA track.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (capital: A – Z, small: a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols (see page 33).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
USB device	• Noise is generated.	• The track played back is not a playable file format (MP3/WMA/WAV). Skip to another file. • Do not add the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav> to non-MP3/WMA/WAV tracks.
	• Tracks cannot play back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differs from the one played back using other players.
	• "Reading" keeps flashing on the display.	• Readout time varies depending on the USB device. • Do not use too many hierarchy, folders and empty folders.* • Turn off the power then on again. • Do not pull out or connect the USB device repeatedly while "Reading" is displayed on the display. * *Folder that is phisically empty or folder that contains data but does not contain valid MP3/WMA/WAV track.*
	• "No File" flashes on the display. • "No USB" appears on the display.	Connect a USB device that contains tracks encoded in an appropriate format.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	The track is unplayable.
	• "Read Failed" or "Cannot Play" appears on the display, then returns to the previous source.	The connected USB device may be malfunctioning, or may not have been formatted correctly. The files included in the USB device are corrupted.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	For available characters, see page 33.
	• While playing a track, sound is sometimes interrupted.	The tracks have not been properly copied into the USB device. Copy tracks again into the USB device, and try again.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a USB device.	• Turn off, then turn on the unit. • Connect the device again, when the sound is not yet restored.

Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Bluetooth®	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	The unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio device at a time. While connecting a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device. After the device detects the unit, select "Open..." on the unit to connect the device. (See page 12.)
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. • Select the device name from "Special," then try to connect again. (See page 13.)
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to a place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a Bluetooth audio player.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio player. • Disconnect the device connected for "BT-PHONE." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • Connect the player again, when the sound is not yet restored.
	• The connected audio player cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio player supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile). (Operations depend on the connected audio player.)
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).

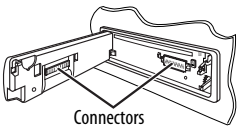
	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
iPod	• The iPod does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version. • Charge the battery.
	• The sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the display.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Charge the battery.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation (see page 18).
	• No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano.	• Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano. • Update the firmware version of the iPod nano.
	• "No File" appears on the display.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the display.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect it again.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the display.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.

- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors. To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture has evaporated.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc in its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs in cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

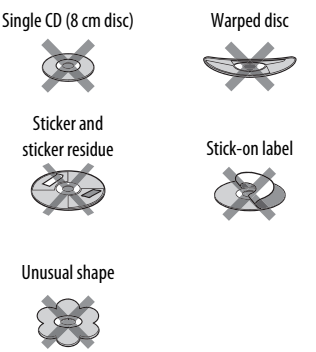
- Do not use any solvents (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:



Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION	
Maximum Power Output:	
Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
Continuous Power Output (RMS):	
Front/Rear:	19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.
Load Impedance:	4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
Tone Control Range:	
Bass:	±12 dB (60 Hz, 80 Hz, 100 Hz, 200 Hz)
Mid-range:	±12 dB (500 Hz, 1.0 kHz, 1.5 kHz, 2.5 kHz)
Treble:	±12 dB (10.0 kHz, 12.5 kHz, 15.0 kHz, 17.5 kHz)
Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	70 dB
Line-Out and Subwoofer-Out Level/ Impedance:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
Other Terminal:	CD changer jack, AUX (auxiliary) input jack, USB input jack, Antenna input

TUNER SECTION	
Frequency Range:	
FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
AM:	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
FM Tuner	
Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 µV/75 Ω)
50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
Stereo Separation:	30 dB
AM Tuner	
Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 µV/35 dB

CD PLAYER SECTION	
Type:	Compact disc player
Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)
Number of Channels:	2 channels (stereo)
Frequency Response:	5 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Dynamic Range:	96 dB
Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	98 dB
Wow and Flutter:	Less than measurable limit
MP3 Decoding Format:	(MPEG1/2 Audio Layer 3)
Max. Bit Rate:	320 kbps
WMA (Windows Media® Audio) Decoding Format:	
Max. Bit Rate:	192 kbps

USB SECTION	
USB Standard:	USB 1.1, USB 2.0
Data Transfer Rate:	Full Speed: Max. 12 Mbps
	Low Speed: Max. 1.5 Mbps
Compatible Device:	Mass storage class
Compatible File System:	FAT 32/16/12
Playable Audio Format:	MP3/WMA/WAV
Max. Current:	500 mA/5 V

GENERAL	
Power Requirement:	
Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
Grounding System:	Negative ground
Allowable Operating Temperature:	0°C to +40°C
Dimensions (W × H × D): (approx.)	
Installation Size:	182 mm × 52 mm × 160 mm
Panel Size:	188 mm × 58 mm × 6 mm
Mass:	1.4 kg (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

Ada MASALAH dengan cara pengoperasian?

Setel kembali unit Anda

Lihat halaman mengenai Bagaimana mereset unit anda

JVC

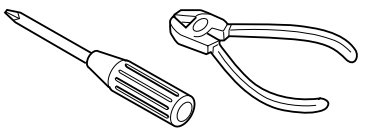
EN, IN

© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0108DTSMDTJEIN

KD-G845

Installation/Connection Manual
Manual Pemasangan/Penyambungan



GET0498-009A
[UN]

0108DTSMDTJEIN
EN, IN
© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

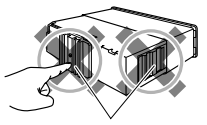
WARNINGS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with a maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amp Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 25 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



Heat sink / *Pendingin*

INDONESIA

Unit ini didisain untuk beroperasi hanya pada ***12 V DC, sistem listrik tanah NEGATIVE****. Jika kendaraan anda tidak memiliki sistem ini, sebuah pembalik tegangan diperlukan, yang mana dapat dibeli di penyalur-penyalur audio mobil JVC.*

PERINGATAN

Untuk mencegah hubungan pendek, kami menyarankan anda memutuskan sambungan terminal negatif baterai dan membuat semua sambungan-sambungan listrik sebelum memasang unit.

- **Pastikan untuk mentanahkan unit ini ke casis mobil kembali setelah pemasangan.**

Catatan:

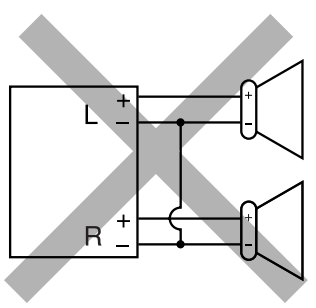
- *Ganti sekring dengan voltase yang sudah ditetapkan. Jika sekring sering meledak, konsultasikan pada penyalur audio mobil JVC anda.*
- *Disarankan untuk menghubungkan speaker-speaker dengan maksimum power lebih dari 50 W (keduanya di belakang dan di depan, dengan sebuah impedansi* **4 Ω sampai 8 Ω***). Jika maksimum power kurang dari 50 W, ganti pengaturan "Amp Gain" ("Penambah Penguat") untuk mencegah speaker-speaker dari kerusakan (lihat halaman 25 dari BUKU PETUNJUK).*
- *Untuk mencegah hubungan pendek, tutup ujung-ujung terminal-terminal TIDAK DIGUNAKAN dengan pita isolasi.*
- *Pendingin menjadi sangat panas setelah digunakan. Hati-hati untuk tidak menyentuhnya ketika memindahkan unit ini.*

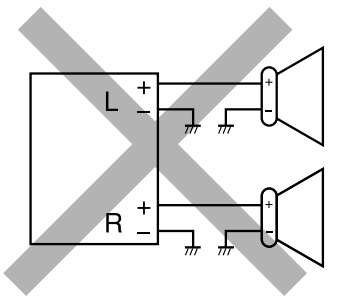
PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

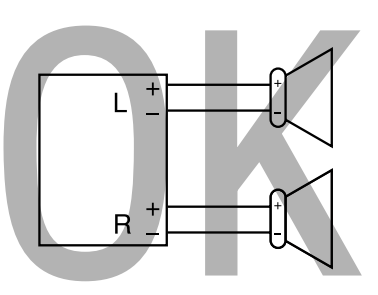
- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

TINDAKAN-TINDAKAN PENCEGAHAN pada suplai power dan sambungan-sambungan speaker:

- **JANGAN sambungkan ujung-ujung speaker dari kabel power ke baterai mobil; sebaliknya, unit tersebut akan secara serius rusak.**
- *SEBELUM menyambung ujung-ujung speaker dari kabel power ke speaker-speaker, cek perkabelan speaker dalam mobil anda.*







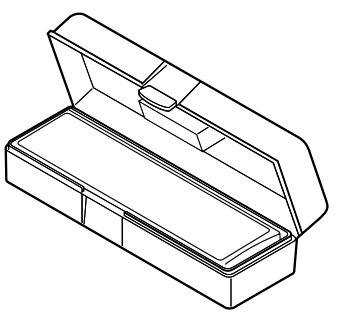
Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC car audio dealer immediately.

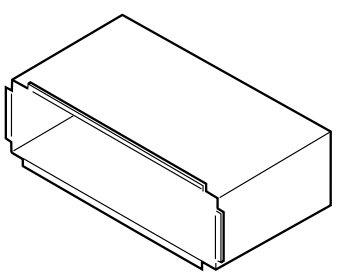
Daftar bagian-bagian untuk pemasangan dan penyambungan

Bagian-bagian berikut disediakan untuk unit ini. Jika ada bagian yang hilang, segera hubungi dealer audio mobil JVC anda.

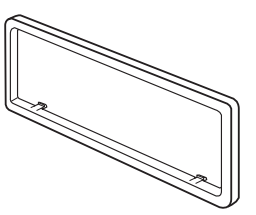
Ⓐ / Ⓑ
Hard case/Control panel
Kotak keras/Panel kontrol



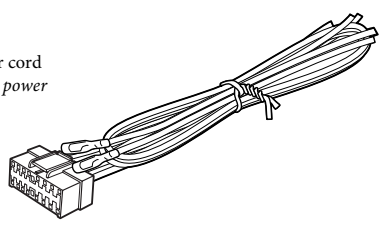
Ⓒ
Sleeve
Selongsong



Ⓓ
Trim plate
Plat rapi



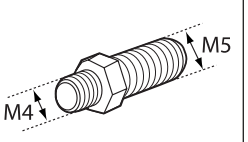
Ⓔ
Power cord
Kabel power



Ⓕ
Washer (ø5)
Perapat sambungan (ø5)

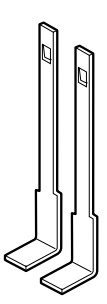
Ⓖ
Lock nut (M5)
Mur kunci (M5)

Ⓗ
Mounting bolt (M4 × 5 mm; M5 × 12.5 mm)
Baut bingkai (M4 × 5 mm; M5 × 12.5 mm)

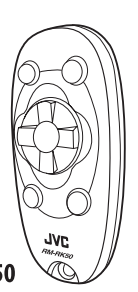


Ⓘ
Rubber cushion
Bantalan karet

Ⓙ
Handles
Pegangan-pegangan

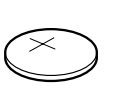


Ⓚ
Remote controller
Pengontrol jauh



RM-RK50

Ⓛ
Battery
Baterai



CR2025

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

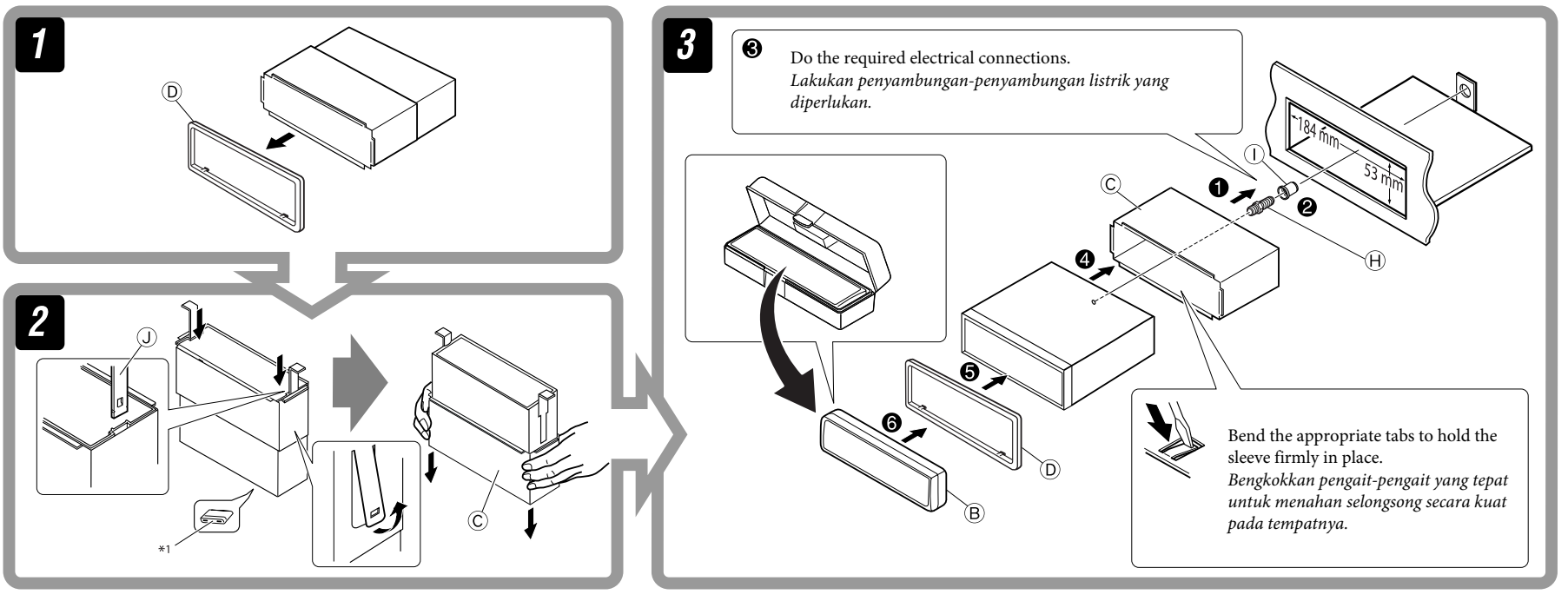
The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

• If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

PEMASANGAN (BINGKAI-DALAM DASH)

Ilustrasi berikut menunjukkan sebuah tipe pemasangan. Jika anda mempunyai suatu pertanyaan atau informasi yang diperlukan mengenai alat-alat pemasangan, konsultasikan pada penyalur audio mobil JVC atau sebuah perusahaan yang mensuplai alat-alat.

• *Jika anda tidak yakin bagaimana memasang unit ini dengan benar, biarkan dipasang dengan teknisi yang berkualitas.*

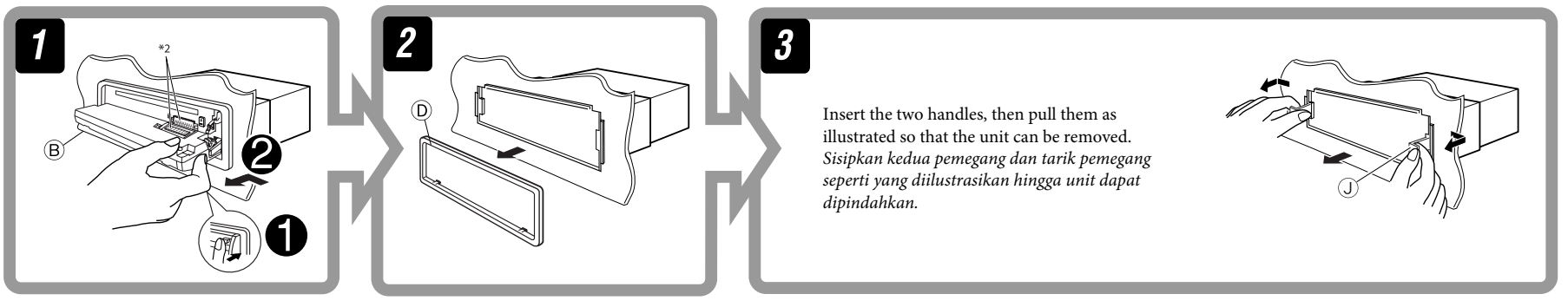


Removing the unit

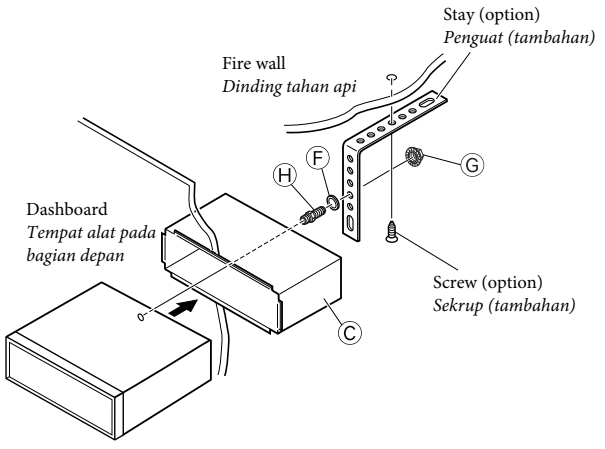
Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

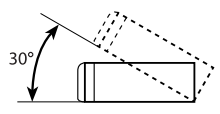
Memindahkan unit

Sebelum memindahkan unit, lepaskan seksi belakang.



When using the optional stay / Ketika menggunakan penguat tambahan

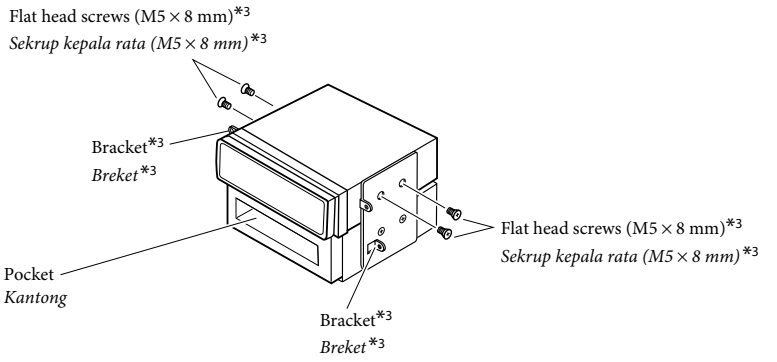




Install the unit at an angle of less than 30˚.
Pasang penerima pada suatu sudut kurang dari 30˚.

When installing the unit without using the sleeve / Ketika memasang unit tanpa menggunakan selongsong

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.
Dalam sebuah kereta Toyota misalnya, pertama pindahkan radio mobil dan pasang unit tersebut ke dalam tempatnya.



Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

Catatan : *Ketika memasang alat penerima pada breket bingkai, pastikan untuk menggunakan sekrup-sekrup panjang–8 mm. Jika sekrup yang lebih panjang digunakan, maka dapat merusak unit.*

*1 When you stand the unit, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
*2 Avoid touching the connectors.
*3 Not supplied for this unit.

*1 *Ketika anda memberdirikan unit, hati-hati untuk tidak merusak sekring di belakang.*
*2 *Jangan sentuh konektor.*
*3 *Tidak disediakan untuk unit ini.*

TROUBLESHOOTING

• **The fuse blows.**
* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
• **Power cannot be turned on.**
* Is the yellow lead connected?
• **No sound from the speakers.**
* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
• **Sound is distorted.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
• **Noise interfere with sounds.**
* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
• **This unit becomes hot.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
• **This unit does not work at all.**
* Have you reset your unit?

PEMECAHAN MASALAH

• **Sekring meledak.**
* *Apakah ujung-ujung merah dan hitam tersambung dengan benar?*
• **Power tidak dapat dihidupkan.**
* *Apakah ujung kuning sudah tersambung?*
• **Tidak ada suara dari speaker.**
* *Apakah ujung keluaran speaker terhubung pendek?*
• **Suara terdistorsi.**
* *Apakah ujung keluaran speaker sudah ditanahkan?*
* *Apakah terminal-terminal "–" dari speaker-speaker L dan R sudah ditanahkan secara umum?*
• **Berisik yang mengganggu suara-suara.**
* *Apakah terminal tanahan belakang tersambung ke casis mobil menggunakan kabel-kabel terpendek dan tertebal?*
• **Unit menjadi panas.**
* *Apakah ujung keluaran speaker sudah ditanahkan?*
* *Apakah terminal-terminal "–" dari speaker-speaker L dan R sudah ditanahkan secara umum?*
• **Unit ini tidak bekerja secara keseluruhan.**
* *Apakah anda sudah reset (memasang kembali) unit anda?*

ENGLISH

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A Typical connections / Ciri khas sambungan-sambungan

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.

2 Connect the antenna cord.

3 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

INDONESIA

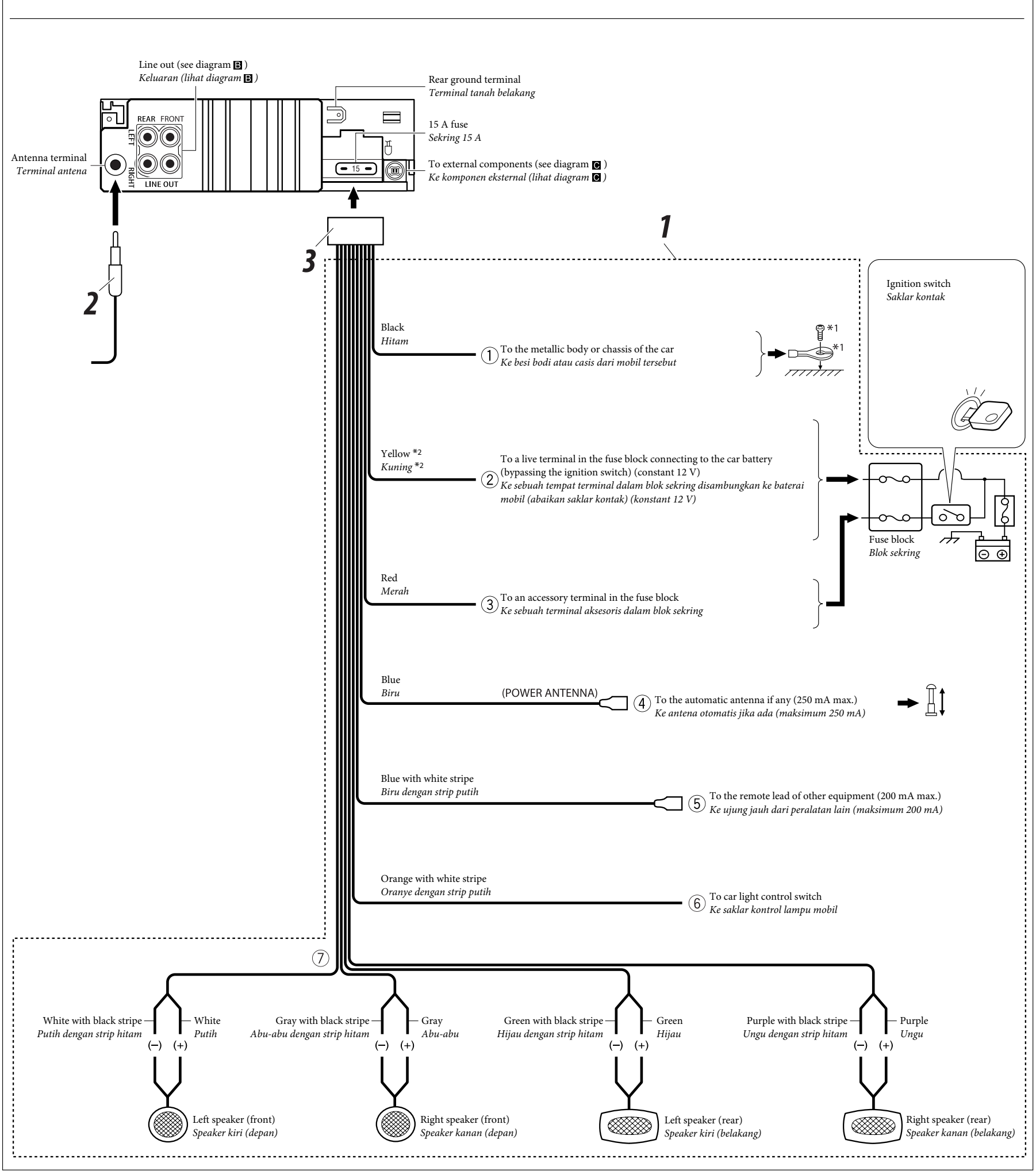
SAMBUNGAN-SAMBUNGAN LISTRIK

Sebelum penyambungan: *Cek perkabelan dalam mobil dengan hati-hati. Penyambungan yang tidak benar mungkin menyebabkan kerusakan serius pada unit.*
Ujung dari kabel power dan beberapa konektor dari bodi mobil mungkin berbeda dalam warna.

1 *Sambungkan ujung berwarna dari kabel power dalam urutan spesifikasi pada ilustrasi di bawah.*

2 *Sambungkan kabel antena.*

3 *Akhirnya sambungkan dudukan kabel ke unit.*



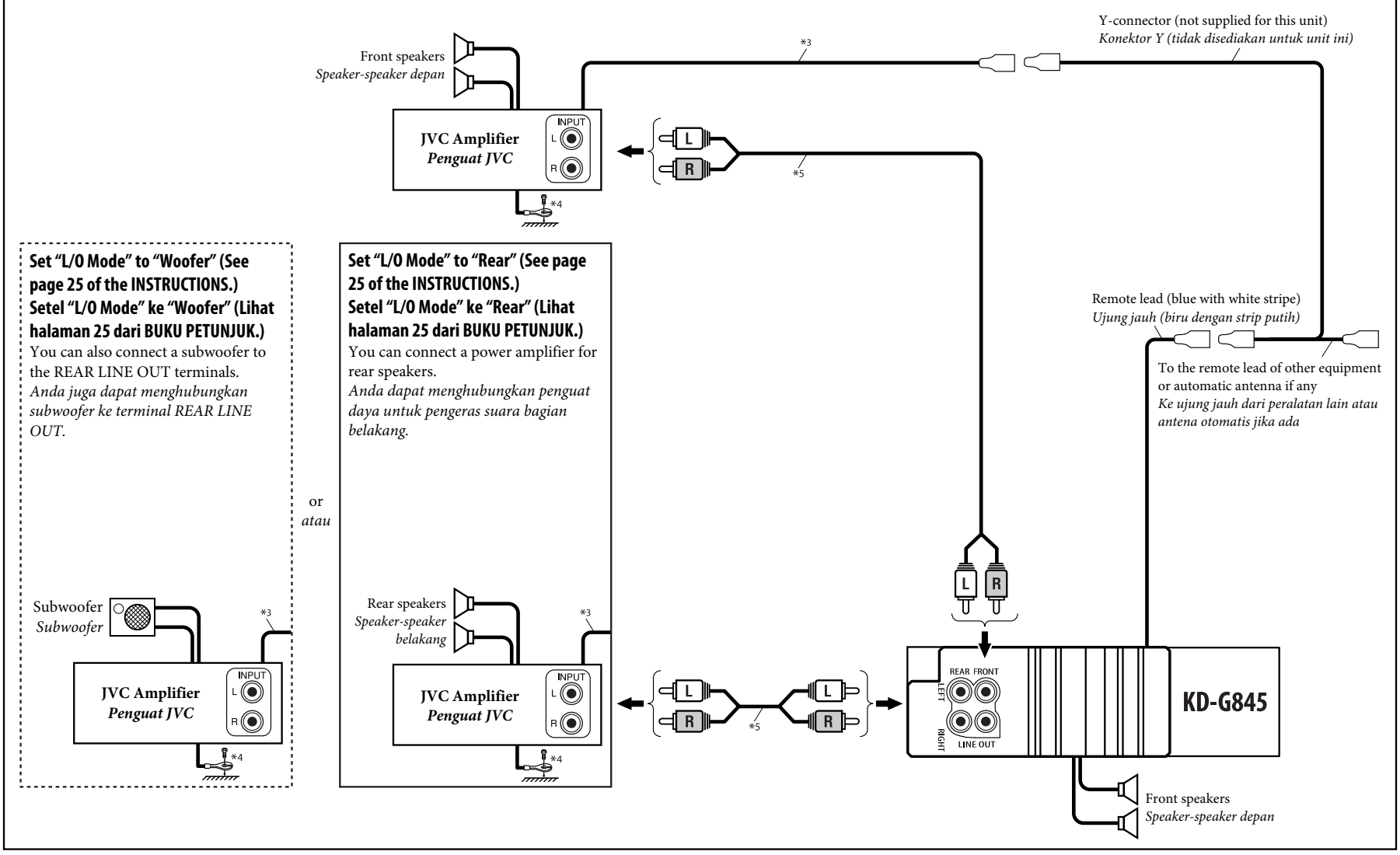
*1 Not supplied for this unit.
*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise the power cannot be turned on.

*1 *Tidak disediakan untuk unit ini.*
*2 *Sebelum pengecekan pengoperasian dari unit ini sebelum pemasangan, ujung ini harus sudah dihubungkan, selain itu power tidak dapat dihidupkan.*

B Connecting the external amplifiers and/or subwoofer / Penyambungan penguat-penguat eksternal dan/atau subwoofer

You can connect amplifiers to upgrade your car stereo system.
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**

Anda dapat menyambungkan penguat-penguat untuk meningkatkan sistem stereo mobil anda.
- *Sambungkan ujung jauh (biru dengan strip putih) ke ujung jauh dari peralatan lain sehingga dapat dikontrol melalui unit ini.*
- **Putuskan sambungan speaker-speaker dari unit ini, sambungkan ini ke penguat. Biarkan ujung speaker dari unit ini tidak digunakan.**


Front speakers
Speaker-speaker depan
JVC Amplifier
Penguat JVC
INPUT
L
R
*3
*4
*5
Y-connector (not supplied for this unit)
Konektor Y (tidak disediakan untuk unit ini)
Remote lead (blue with white stripe)
Ujung jauh (biru dengan strip putih)
To the remote lead of other equipment or automatic antenna if any
Ke ujung jauh dari peralatan lain atau antena otomatis jika ada
Set "L/O Mode" to "Woofer" (See page 25 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)
Setel "L/O Mode" ke "Woofer" (Lihat halaman 25 dari BUKU PETUNJUK.)
You can also connect a subwoofer to the REAR LINE OUT terminals.
Anda juga dapat menghubungkan subwoofer ke terminal REAR LINE OUT.
Subwoofer
Subwoofer
or
atau
Set "L/O Mode" to "Rear" (See page 25 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)
Setel "L/O Mode" ke "Rear" (Lihat halaman 25 dari BUKU PETUNJUK.)
You can connect a power amplifier for rear speakers.
Anda dapat menghubungkan penguat daya untuk pengeras suara bagian belakang.
Rear speakers
Speaker-speaker belakang
REAR FRONT
LEFT
RIGHT
LINE OUT
KD-G845
Front speakers
Speaker-speaker depan

C Connecting the external components / Menyambung komponen eksternal

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapters.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

Bila menghubungkan komponen eksternal, rujuk juga buku petunjuk yang dibekalkan untuk komponen dan adaptor.

PERINGATAN:
Sebelum menyambungkan komponen eksternal, pastikan bahwa unit sudah dimatikan.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.

Anda dapat menghubungkan komponen JVC berikut ini ke jack CD changer.

Komponen JVC	Nama Model
CD changer (CD-CH)	*CH-X1500, etc.*

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.
- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

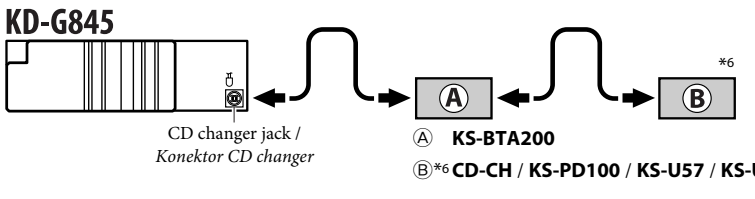
Anda juga dapat menghubungkan komponen berikut ini melalui berbagai adaptor JVC.
- *Kabel koneksi mungkin harus dibeli secara terpisah.*

Komponen	Adaptor	Nama Model
Perangkat Bluetooth	*Adaptor Bluetooth*	*KS-BTA200*
iPod	*Adaptor interface untuk iPod*	*KS-PD100*
Audio player portabel dengan jack line output	*Adaptor line input*	*KS-U57*
Audio player portabel dengan jack stereo mini 3,5 mm	*Adaptor AUX input*	*KS-U58*

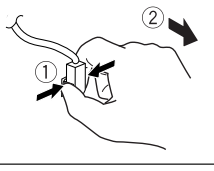
When connecting more than one component (maximum: two), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

Bila menghubungkan beberapa komponen (maksimum: dua), dianjurkan agar anda menghubungkan komponen dalam rangkaian seperti dijelaskan di bawah.

When connecting two components in series /
Bila menghubungkan dua komponen dalam rangkaian



To disconnect the connector / *Untuk memutuskan konektor*



Hold the connector tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
Pegang erat konektor (①) lalu tarik keluar (②).

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

iPod adalah merek dagang dari Apple Inc., terdaftar di Amerika Serikat dan di negara-negara lain.

*3 Remote lead
*4 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.
*5 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)
*6 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 25 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

*3 *Ujung jauh*
*4 *Pasangkan dengan kuat kabel tanah ke bodi besi atau ke casis dari mobil—pada tempat yang tidak dilapisi cat (jika dilapisi cat, hilangkan cat sebelum memasang kabel). Kegagalan melakukan ini mungkin menyebabkan kerusakan pada unit tersebut.*
*5 *Kabel sinyal (tidak disediakan untuk unit ini)*
*6 *Untuk menggunakan komponen ini, lakukan pengaturan masukan eksternal yang benar (lihat BUKU PETUNJUK di hal. 25).*

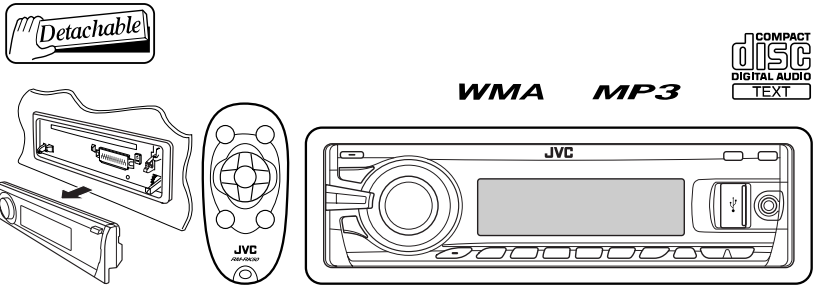
JVC

ENGLISH

中文

CD RECEIVER KD-G845

CD 收音組合機 KD-G845



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 4.
取消屏幕演示功能，參閱第 4 頁。

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
有關安裝和連接方法，分別參閱操作手冊。

INSTRUCTIONS
使用說明書

GET0498-005A
[UT]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACION LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス1Mレーザー放射が出ます。光学装置で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG)

[European Union only]

Warning:

If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.

Caution:

If the temperature inside the car is below 0°C, the movement of animation and text scroll will be halted on the display to prevent the display from being blurred. L.TEMP appears on the display.
When the temperature increases, and the operating temperature is resumed, these functions will start working again.

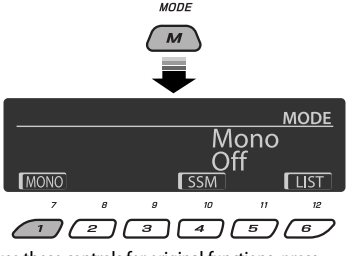
Caution on volume setting:

Digital devices (CD/USB) produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing these digital sources to avoid damaging the speakers by sudden increase of the output level.

How to use the M MODE and SEL buttons

If you use M MODE or SEL (select), the display and some controls (such as the number buttons, ⏮/⏭ buttons, ▲/▼ buttons, and the control dial) enter the corresponding control mode.

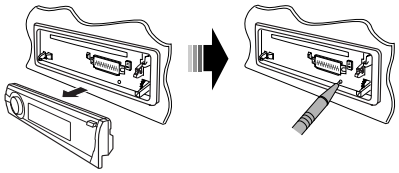
Ex.: When you press number button 1 after pressing M MODE, to operate the FM tuner.



To use these controls for original functions, press M MODE again.

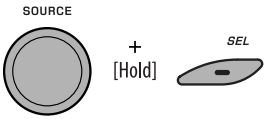
- However, pressing SEL makes the unit enters a different mode.
- Waiting for about 15 seconds (or 30 seconds for Bluetooth sources) without pressing any of these buttons will automatically cancels the control.

How to reset your unit

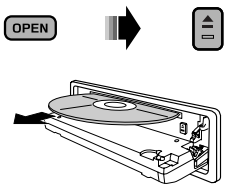


- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased (except the registered Bluetooth device, see pages 12 and 13).*

How to forcibly eject a disc



"Please Eject" appears on the display.



- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*
- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTIONS

Preparation 4

OPERATIONS

Basic operations 5
- Using the control panel 5
- Using the remote controller (RM-RK50) 6

Listening to the radio 7
Disc operations 9
Listening to the USB device 11

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Using the Bluetooth® devices 12
- Using the Bluetooth cellular phone 14
- Using the Bluetooth audio player 16

Listening to the CD changer 17
Listening to the iPod 18
Listening to the other external components 20

SETTINGS

Selecting a preset sound mode 21
General settings—PSM 23
Bluetooth settings 27
Title assignment 28

REFERENCES

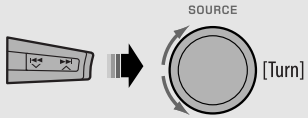
More about this unit 29
Troubleshooting 33
Maintenance 38
Specifications 39

ENGLISH

Preparation

Cancel the display demonstration and set the clock

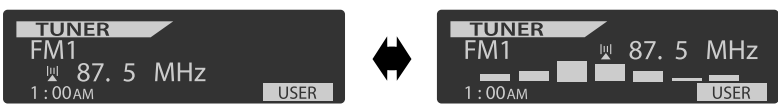
- See also pages 23 and 24.

1		**Turn on the power.**
2	[Hold]	**Enter the PSM settings.**
3	 [Turn]	**Cancel the display demonstrations** Select "Demo," then "Off." **Set the clock** Select "Clock Hr" (hour), then adjust the hour. Select "Clock Min" (minute), then adjust the minute. Select "24H/12H," then "24Hours" or "12Hours."
4		**Finish the procedure.**

Changing the display information and pattern

When the power is turned off: Check the current clock time

Ex.: When tuner is selected as the source



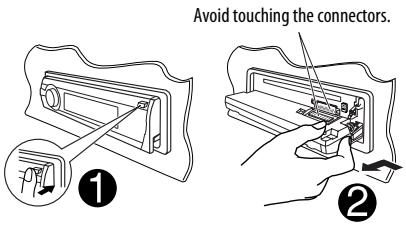
Source operation display

- If a station has been assigned a title, station title appears after about 5 seconds.
- To assign a title to a station, see page 28.

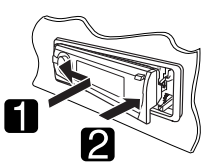
Audio level meter display
(see "LevelMeter" on page 23)

Detaching the control panel

Avoid touching the connectors.

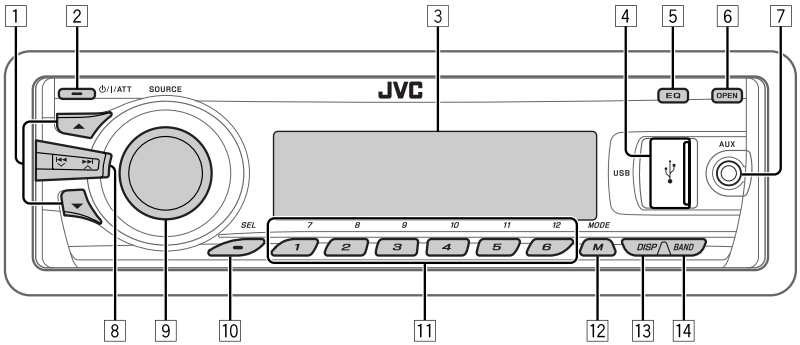


Attaching the control panel



Basic operations

Using the control panel



1 • **TUNER:** Select preset station.
- **CD/USB/CD-CH:** Select folder.
- **USB-iPod:** Enter the main menu [Hold].
- **iPod:** Enter the main menu/Pause playback/ Confirm selection.
- **BT-PHONE/BT-AUDIO:** Select a registered device.

2 • Turn on the power.
- Turn off the power [Hold].
- Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).

3 Display window

4 USB (Universal Serial Bus) input jack

5 Select the sound mode.

6 Flip down the control panel.
- To eject the disc, flip down the control panel then press ⏏ on the unit.

7 AUX (auxiliary) input jack

8 • **TUNER:** Search for station.
- **CD/USB/CD-CH/USB-iPod/iPod:** Select track.
- **BT-AUDIO:** Reverse skip/forward skip.

9 • Volume control [Turn].
- Select the source [Press]*1.
  TUNER*2 → **CD***2 → **USB***2 (or **USB-iPod**)*2 → **CD-CH***2/**iPod***2 (or **EXT IN**) → **BT-PHONE***2 → **BT-AUDIO***2 → **AUX IN** → (back to the beginning)

10 • Select/adjust the sound mode.
- Enter the PSM settings [Hold].

11 • **TUNER:** Select preset station.
- **CD/USB/CD-CH:** Select folder/track/disc (for CD changer).
- **USB-iPod:** Select preset top menu items.
- **BT-PHONE:** Dial preset phone number*3.

12 • Enter functions mode.
- **BT-PHONE:** Activate Voice Dialing [Hold].

13 Change the display information and pattern.

14 • **TUNER:** Select the bands.
- **USB-iPod:** Start/pause playback.

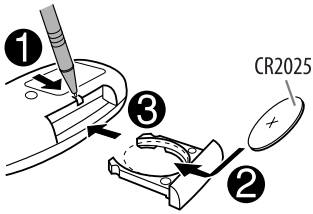
*1 *Holding SOURCE will enter the Bluetooth menu.*

*2 *You cannot select these sources if they are not ready or not connected.*

*3 *For storing preset phone number, see page 16.*

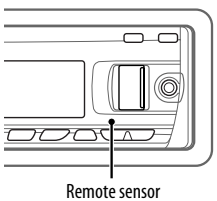
Using the remote controller (RM-RK50)

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



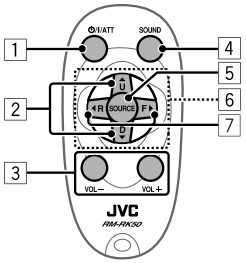
Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).



Warning (to prevent accidents and damage):

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent.
- Do not leave the remote controller in a place (such as dashboards) exposed to direct sunlight for a long time.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
- Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.



1 • Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
• Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 • Changes the FM/AM bands with ▲ U.
• Changes the preset stations with D ▼.
• Changes the folder of the MP3/WMA/WAV.
• While playing an MP3 disc on an MP3-compatible CD changer:
– Changes the disc if pressed briefly.
– Changes the folder if pressed and held.
• While listening to an Apple iPod:
Connected to KS-PD100:
– Pauses or resumes playback with D ▼.
– Enters the main menu with ▲ U.
(Now ▲ U/D ▼/◄ R/F ► work as the menu selecting buttons.)*
* ▲ U : *Returns to the previous menu.*
D ▼ : *Confirms the selection.*
Connected to the USB input jack:
– Enter the main menu if pressed and held.
– Select the desired menu if pressed briefly.
– Fast skip in every layer of the main menu if pressed and held.

3 Adjusts the volume level.

4 Selects the sound mode (iEQ: intelligent equalizer).

5 Selects the source.

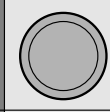
6 For Bluetooth cellular phone:
– Answers calls if pressed briefly.
– Rejects calls if pressed and held.

7 • Searches for stations if pressed briefly.
• Fast-forwards or reverses the track if pressed and held.
• Changes the tracks if pressed briefly.

- While listening to an iPod (in menu selecting mode):
  Connected to KS-PD100:
  – Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press D ▼ to confirm the selection.)
  – Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.

  Connected to the USB input jack:
  – Start play back the selected folder directly if pressed and held.
- Reverse skip/forward skip for Bluetooth audio.

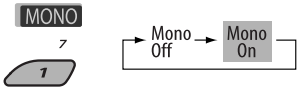
Listening to the radio

1		**Select "TUNER."**
2		**Select the bands.** → FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM →
3		**Search for a station to listen—Auto Search.** Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" lights up on the display, then press it repeatedly. • When receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength, ST lights up on the display.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1

2



Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.
- MO lights up on the display.

3 **Exit from the setting.**

FM station automatic presetting —SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

You can preset up to six stations for each band.

1 **While listening to a station...**

2

Continued on the next page

3 SSM (10) 4

Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the selected FM band.

Manual presetting

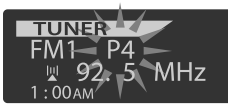
Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

Using the number buttons

1 BAND → FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM

2

3 10 4 [Hold]



Preset number flashes for a while.

Using the Preset Station list

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Follow steps 1 and 2 of "Using the number buttons" above.

- By holding ▲ / ▼, the Preset Station List will also appear (go to step **4**).

2 MODE M

3 Display the Preset Station List.

LIST (12) 6 → ENTER (7) 1

4 Select the preset number you want to store into.

- You can move to the lists of the other FM bands by pressing number button 5 ( ) or 6 ( ) repeatedly.

5 Store the station.

MEMO (8) 2

Listening to the preset station on the Preset Station List

1 Display the Preset Station List, then select the preset station you want to listen to.

2 Change to the selected station.

CHANGE (7) 1

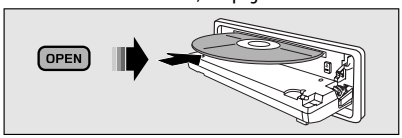
Disc operations

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

Caution:

Make sure to detach the USB device before opening the control panel, as it might block the opening mechanism.

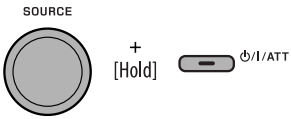
- To detach the USB device, see page 11.



To stop play and eject the disc

- Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.

Prohibiting disc ejection



To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure.

Pressing (or holding) the following buttons allows you to...

	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track
*1	MP3/WMA: Select folder
(Number buttons)*2	Locate particular folder*3 (for MP3/WMA disc) or track directly

*1 *By holding either one of the buttons, you can display the Folder List (see page 10).*

*2 *Press to select number 1 to 6; hold to select number 7 to 12.*

*3 *It is required that folders be assigned with 2-digit numbers at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.*

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks MP3/WMA: Within the same folder
	Repeat Track: Repeat current track **Repeat Folder:** MP3/WMA: Repeat current folder
	Random Folder: MP3/WMA: Randomly play all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Random Disc:** Randomly play all tracks

- You can also cancel the playback mode by selecting "**Off**" or press number button 4 (OFF).

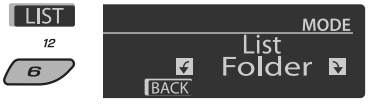
Continued on the next page

Selecting a folder/track on the list (only for MP3/WMA file)

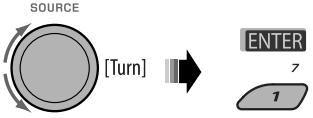
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1

2 **Select "LIST."**



3 **Select the list type.**



Folder ↔ File

4 **Select an item.**

Ex.: When "File" is selected in step **3**

- You can move to the other lists by pressing number button 5 ( ) or 6 ( ) repeatedly.

5 **Change to the selected item.**

Ⓐ If File List is selected

The list disappears and playback starts.

Ⓑ If Folder List is selected

- If the current folder is selected, File List appears, then repeat steps **4** and **5** Ⓐ to start playback.
- If another folder is selected, playback starts from the 1st file of the selected folder.

Listening to the USB device

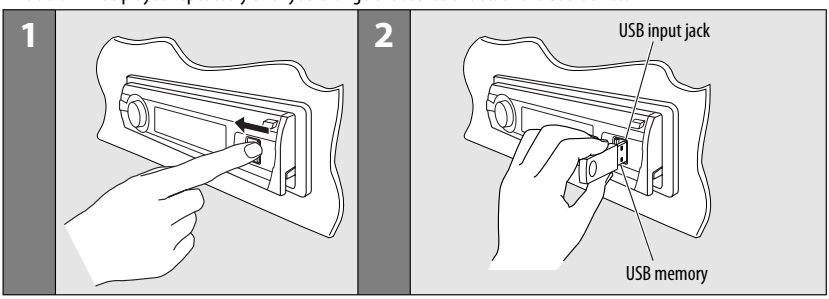
You can connect a USB mass storage class device such as a USB memory, Digital Audio Player*, portable HDD, etc. to the unit.

- You can also connect an Apple iPod to the USB input jack. For details of the operations, see pages 18 and 19.

This unit can play MP3/WMA/WMA-DRM10*/WAV tracks stored in a USB device.

* *You can connect both MTP (Media Transfer Protocol) devices and USB mass storage class devices. See also page 31.*

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or detach the USB device.



If a USB device has been attached...

SOURCE

Playback starts from where it has been stopped previously.

- If a different USB device is currently attached, playback starts from the beginning.

To stop play and detach the USB device

Straightly pull it out from the unit.

- Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.

You can operate the USB device in the same way you operate the files on a disc. (See pages 9 and 10.)

- You can listen to WAV files by following the MP3/WMA files operations listed on pages 9 and 10.

Cautions:

- Avoid using the USB device if it might hinder your safety driving.
- Do not pull out and attach the USB device repeatedly while "Reading" is shown on the display.
- Do not start the car engine if a USB device is connected.
- This unit may not be able to play the files depending on the type of USB device.
- Operation and power supply may not work as intended for some USB devices.
- You cannot connect a computer to the USB input terminal of the unit.
- Make sure all important data has been backed up to avoid losing the data.
- Do not leave a USB device in the car, expose to direct sunlight, or high temperature to avoid deformation or cause damages to the device.
- Some USB devices may not work immediately after you turn on the power.
- For more details about USB operations, see pages 30 and 31.

Using the Bluetooth® devices

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the **Bluetooth Adapter** (KS-BTA200) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to check the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.

- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO").

Registering a Bluetooth device

Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in the Bluetooth menu to register and establish the connection with a device.

- Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO" as the source to operate the Bluetooth menu.

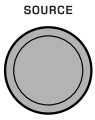
Open	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
Search	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the unit.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

Registering using "Open"

Preparation: Operate the device to turn on its Bluetooth function.

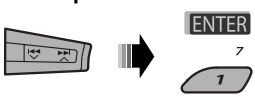
1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Select "NEW."

3 Enter setting menu.

4 Select "Open."



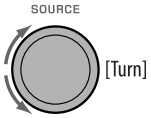
5 Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number) code to the unit.

- You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number). [Initial: 0000]
- To enter a PIN code less than 4-digit, firstly delete the initial PIN code (0000) by pressing number button 5 (CLEAR).

* *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*

1 Move to the next (or previous) number position.

2 Select a number or blank space.



3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you finish entering a PIN code.

4 Confirm the entry.

"Open..." flashes on the display.

6 Use the Bluetooth device to search and connect.

On the device to be connected, enter the same PIN code you have just entered for this unit.
"Connected (and device name)" appears on the display.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

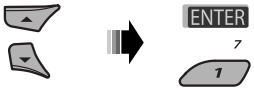
The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use "**Connect**" (or activate "**Auto Connect**") to connect the same device from next time on. (See the following and pages 27 and 28.)

Connecting a device

Perform steps **1** – **3** on page 12, then...

1
- **Select "Search" to search for available devices.**
  The unit searches and displays the list of the available devices.
  If no available device is detected, "Device Not Found" appears.
- **Select "Special" to connect a special device.**
  The unit displays the list of the preset devices.

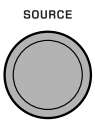
2 Select a device you want to connect.



3
- **For available devices...**
  1 Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit.
  Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code.
  2 Use the Bluetooth device to connect.
  Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.
- **For special device...**
  Use "Open" or "Search" to connect.

Connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device

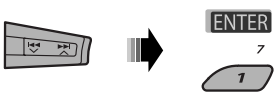
1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Select a registered device you want to connect/disconnect/delete.

3 Enter setting menu.

4
- **Select "Connect" or "Disconnect" to connect/disconnect the selected device.**



Continued on the next page

- **Select "Delete," then confirm the selection.**

Press number button 3 to select "No" or return to the previous screen.

You can set the unit to connect the Bluetooth device automatically when the unit is turned on. (See "**Auto Connect**" on pages 27 and 28.)

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone

1	SOURCE	**Select "BT-PHONE."**
2	MODE M	**Enter Bluetooth menu.**
3	—	**Establish the connection with a device, then make a call (or settings using the Bluetooth menu).**

When a call comes in....

The source is automatically changed to "BT-PHONE."

When "Auto Answer" is activated....

The unit answers the incoming calls automatically, see pages 27 and 28.

- When "Auto Answer" is deactivated, press any button (except ⏻/I/ATT/control dial) to answer the incoming call.

To end the call

Hold any button (except ⏻/I/ATT/control dial).

- You can adjust the microphone volume level (see pages 27 and 28).

When a text message comes in....

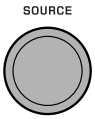
If the cellular phone is compatible with Text Message and "Message Info" is set to "Auto" (see pages 27 and 28), the unit rings and "Received Message" appears on the display to inform you of the message arrival.

Making a call

You can make a call using one of the Dial Menu items.

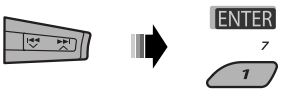
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Select "BT-PHONE."

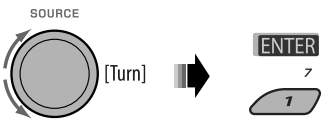


2 Enter setting menu.

3 Select "Dial Menu."



4 Select the method to make a call.



- **Redial***: Shows the list of the phone numbers you have dialed. Go to the following step.
- **Received***: Shows the list of the received calls. Go to the following step.
- **Phonebook***: Shows the phone book of the connected cellular phone. Go to the following step.
- **Missed***: Shows the list of the missed calls. Go to the following step.
- **Number**: Shows the phone number entry screen. See "How to enter phone number" on the right column.
- **Voice Dial** (Only accessible when the connected cellular phone has the voice recognition system): Speak the name (registered words) you want to call.

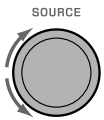
*** Displayed only when your cellular phone is equipped with these functions.**

– If not displayed, try to transfer the phone book memory of the cellular phone to this unit. (Refer to the instruction manual supplied with your cellular phone.)

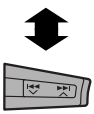
– With some cellular phones, the phone book memory is transferred automatically.

5 Select the name/phone number you want to call.

How to enter phone number



Select a number.



Move the entry position.

Confirm the entry.

Continued on the next page

Using voice command

1 MODE / M "Say..." appears on the display.

2 **Speak the name (registered words) you want to call.**
- You can also use voice command from the Dial Menu. Select "Voice Dial" from the Dial Menu.
- If your cellular phone does not support the voice recognition system, "Error" appears on the display.

Presetting the phone number

You can preset up to six phone numbers.
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 **Display the phone number you want to preset by using one of the "Dial Menu" items.**

2 **Select a phone number.**

You can also enter a new phone number (see also "How to enter phone number" on page 15) to store.

3 **Select a preset number to store.**

[Hold]

To call a preset number

While in Bluetooth phone....

Using the Bluetooth audio player

- Operations and display indications differ depending on their availability on the connected audio player.

SOURCE	**Select "BT-AUDIO."** If playback does not start automatically, operate the Bluetooth audio player to start playback.

	Reverse skip/forward skip
BAND	Start/pause playback
MODE / M	Enter setting menu (Device list)

- Refer also to pages 13 and 14 for connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device.

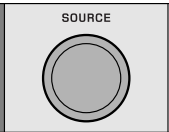
Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>.

Listening to the CD changer

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit. You can connect a CD changer to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

- You can only play conventional CDs (including CD Text) and MP3 discs.

Preparation: Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 25.

1		**Select "CD-CH."**
2		**Select a disc to start playing.** [Press] For selecting disc number 1 – 6. [Hold] For selecting disc number 7 – 12.

	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track
*	MP3: Select folders

* *By holding either one of the buttons, you can display the Disc List (see page 10).*

To select a disc/folder/track on the list

See "Selecting a folder/track on the list (only for MP3/WMA file)" on page 10.

Select "Disc" in step **3** to display the Disc List of the CD changer.

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks MP3: Within the same folder
RPT 8 	**Repeat Track:** Repeat current track **Repeat Folder:** MP3: Repeat all tracks of current folder **Repeat Disc:** Repeat all tracks of the current disc
RND 9 	**Random Folder:** MP3: Randomly play all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder **Random Disc:** Randomly play all tracks of current disc **Random All:** Randomly play all tracks of the discs in the magazine

- You can also cancel the playback mode by selecting "**Off**" or press number button 4 (OFF).

Listening to the iPod

You can play songs in an Apple iPod by:
– Connecting it with the USB cable supplied with your iPod to the USB input jack on the control panel.
– Connecting the Interface adapter for iPod, KS-PD100 (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.
Preparation: Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 25.

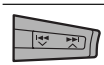
- You can control playback from the unit.
- Disconnecting the iPod will stop playback. Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.
- For details, refer also to the manual supplied for your iPod.

Caution:

- Avoid using the iPod if it might hinder your safety while driving.
- Make sure all important data has been backed up to avoid losing the data.

1	—	**Connect an iPod to the USB input jack or through KS-PD100.** Playback starts automatically from where it had been paused previously. • If an iPod has been connected, press SOURCE to select "USB-iPod" or "iPod" as the playback source.
2		**Select a track.**
3	—	**Adjust the volume and sound as you want. (See pages 21 and 22.)**

Playback control from the unit

Button	For iPod connected through KS-PD100	For iPod connected to the USB input jack
	[Press] Go to the next or previous track [Hold] Fast-forward or reverse the track during playback	[Press] Go to the next or previous track [Hold] Fast-forward or reverse the track during playback
	[Press] Enter main menu when you press ▲. Pause/resume playback when ▼ is pressed.	[Hold] Enter main menu [Press] Go to the top menu of "Playlists," "Artists," "Albums," "Songs," "Podcasts," "Genres," "Composers," or "Audiobooks" in the main menu. • Pressing the number buttons (1 – 6) or holding 1 (7) and 2 (8) can also select the preset top menus.
	—	[Press] Pause/resume playback.

Selecting a track from the menu

No.	Operation	For iPod connected through KS-PD100	For iPod connected to the USB input jack
1	**Enter the main menu.**		[Hold]
2	**Select the desired menu.**	Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Genres ↔ Composers	Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Podcasts ↔ Genres ↔ Composers ↔ Audiobooks
3	**Confirm the selection.**	• By holding ⏮ ∨/⏭ ∧, you can fast skip during song search in the main menu.	• By holding ⏭ ∧, you can start play back the selected item directly. • By holding ⏮ ∨, you can go back to the previous menu. • By holding ▲/▼, you can fast skip in every layer of the main menu.
		• If a track is selected, playback starts automatically. • If the selected item has another layer, you will enter the layer. Repeat steps **2** and **3** until the desired track is played.	

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

	Repeat One: Same as "Repeat One." **Repeat All:** Same as "Repeat All." **Repeat Off:** Cancels.
	Random Album*: Same as "Shuffle Albums." **Random Song:** Same as "Shuffle Songs." **Random Off:** Cancels.

* *Functions only if you select "All Albums" or "All" in "Albums" of the main "MENU."*

The menu selecting mode will be canceled:

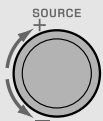
- If no operations are performed for about:
  - 5 seconds for iPod connected through KS-PD100.
  - 15 seconds for iPod connected to the USB input jack.
- When you confirm the selection of a track.

Listening to the other external components

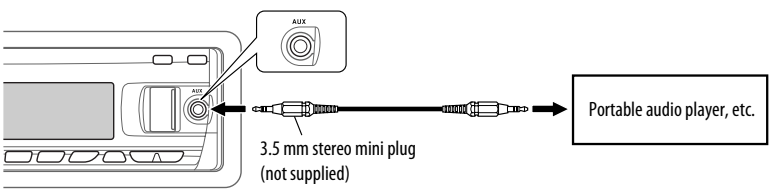
You can connect an external component to:

- CD changer jack on the rear of this unit using the following adapters:
  - **Line Input Adapter,** KS-U57
  - **AUX Input Adapter,** KS-U58

  Preparation: Make sure "Ext In" is selected for the external input setting, see page 25.
- AUX (auxiliary) input jack on the control panel.

1		**Select "EXT IN" or "AUX IN."**
2	—	**Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**
3		**Adjust the volume.**
4	—	**Adjust the sound as you want (see pages 21 and 22).**

Connecting an external component to the AUX input jack



Selecting a preset sound mode

ENGLISH

You can select a preset sound mode suitable to the music genre (iEQ: intelligent equalizer).

EQ → USER → ROCK → CLASSIC → POPS → HIP HOP → JAZZ

Preset value setting for each sound mode

Sound mode	Preset value								
	Bass			Mid (mid-range)			Treble		
	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q
USER	60 Hz	00	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	00	–
ROCK	100 Hz	+03	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	–
CLASSIC	80 Hz	+01	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	–
POPS	100 Hz	+02	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	+01	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	–
HIP HOP	60 Hz	+04	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	–02	Q1.0	10.0 kHz	+01	–
JAZZ	80 Hz	+03	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	–

Freq.: Frequency Q: Q-slope

Adjusting the sound

You can adjust the sound characteristics to your preference.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3 or 6.

1

2

EQ ↔ Fad/Bal ↔ Subwoofer* ↔ Loudness ↔ VolAdjust

- For "EQ" setting, see page 22.

* *Displayed only when "L/O Mode" is set to "Woofer" (see page 25).*

3 Adjust the selected setting item.

Ⓐ **Fad/Bal (Fader/Balance)**

1 Press number button 1 (SELECT) to move to the "Fad/Bal" adjustment display.

2 Adjust the speaker output balance by pressing:
▲ / ▼: between the front and rear speakers. [F6 to R6]
⏮ ⌄/⏭ ⌃: between the left and right speakers. [L6 to R6]

Ⓑ **Subwoofer**

1 Press number button 1 (SELECT) to move to the "Subwoofer" adjustment display.

2 Use ⏮ ⌄/⏭ ⌃ to select a cutoff frequency to the subwoofer.

- OFF: All signals are sent to the subwoofer.
- 80Hz: Frequencies higher than 80 Hz are cut off.
- 120Hz: Frequencies higher than 120 Hz are cut off.
- 160Hz: Frequencies higher than 160 Hz are cut off.

Continued on the next page

3 Turn the control dial to adjust the subwoofer output level. [0 to 8]

4 Press number button 1 (MORE) to select the subwoofer phase. [0deg (normal) or 180deg (reverse)]

Ⓒ **VolAdjust,** [–5 to +5]
Turn the control dial to adjust the input level of each source (except FM).
Adjust to match the input level of the FM sound level.
- Before making an adjustment, select the source you want to adjust.

Ⓓ **Loudness,** [Off or On]
Turn the control dial to select "Off" or "On." When "On" is selected, low and high frequencies sound are boosted to produce a well-balanced sound at low volume level.

4 Exit from the setting.

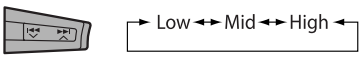
Storing your own sound modes

You can adjust the sound modes and store your own adjustments in memory.
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 6.

1

2 Select a sound mode.

3 Select a frequency range.



4 Adjust the sound elements of the selected frequency range.

1 Use ▲ / ▼ to adjust the level.

2 Press number button 5 (FREQ), then turn the control dial to select the frequency.

3 Press number button 5 (Q), then turn the control dial to select the quality slope (Q).

Sound elements	Range/selectable items		
	Low	Mid	High
Frequency	60 Hz 80 Hz 100 Hz 200 Hz	500 Hz 1 kHz 1.5 kHz 2.5 kHz	10 kHz 12.5 kHz 15 kHz 17.5 kHz
Level	–6 to +6	–6 to +6	–6 to +6
Q	Q1.0 Q1.25 Q1.5 Q2.0	Q0.5 Q0.75 Q1.0 Q1.25	Fix

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to adjust the other frequency bands.

6 Store the adjustments.

General settings — PSM

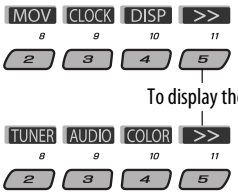
ENGLISH

You can change PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) items listed in the table below and on pages 24 and 25.

1 Enter the PSM settings.

[Hold]

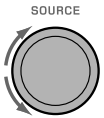
2 Select a PSM category.



3 Select a PSM item.

By pressing either one of the buttons repeatedly, you can also move to the item of the other categories.

4 Adjust the selected PSM item.



[Turn]

5 Repeat steps 2 – 4 to adjust other PSM items if necessary.

6 Finish the procedure.

Category	Indication	Item (__ : Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
MOV (movie)	**Demo** Display demonstration	• **<u>On</u>** • **Off**	: Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [4]. : Cancels.
	LevelMeter Audio level meter	• **<u>Meter 1</u>** • **Meter 2**	: Select the different level meter patterns. • Press DISP to show the selected level meter.
CLOCK	**Clock Disp***1 Clock display	• **On** • **<u>Off</u>**	: Clock time is shown on the display when the power is turned off. : Cancels; pressing DISP will show the clock time for about 5 seconds when the power is turned off, [4].

*1 *If the power supply is not interrupted by turning off the ignition key of your car, it is recommended to select "Off" to save the car's battery.*

Continued on the next page

Category	Indication	Item (__: Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
CLOCK	**Clock Hr** Hour adjustment	**1 – 12AM/** **1 – 12PM** **(0 – 23)**	: Initial: 1 (1:00AM), [4].
	Clock Min Minute adjustment	**00 – 59**	: Initial: 00 (1:00AM), [4].
	24H/12H Time display mode	• **12Hours** • **24Hours**	: See also page 4 for setting.
DISP (display)	**Scroll***2 Scroll	• **Once** • **Auto** • **Off**	: Scrolls the track information once. : Repeats scrolling (at 5-second intervals). : Cancels. (Holding DISP can scroll the display regardless of the setting.)
	Dimmer Dimmer	• **Auto** • **Off** • **On** • **Time Set**	: Dims the display when you turn on the headlights. : Cancels. : Dims the display and button illumination. : Set the timer for dimmer, [26].
	From – To*3	—	Any hour – Any hour : Initial: 6PM – 7AM.
	Contrast Contrast	**1 – 8** Initial: 5	: Adjust the display contrast to make the display indications clear and legible.
	LCD Type Display type	• **Auto** • **Positive** • **Negative**	: Positive pattern will be selected during the day time*4; while negative pattern will be used during the night time*4. : Positive pattern of the display. : Negative pattern of the display.
	Tag Tag display	• **On** • **Off**	: Shows the tag while playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks. : Cancels.
TUNER	**IF Band** Intermediate frequency band	• **Auto** • **Wide**	: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) : Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.

*2 *Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.*

*3 *Adjustable only when "Dimmer" is set to "Time Set."*

*4 *Depends on the "Dimmer" setting.*

Category	Indication	Item (__: Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
AUDIO	**Ext Input**[*5] External input	• **Changer** • **Ext In**	: To use a JVC CD changer, [17], or an Apple iPod, [18]. : To use any other external component, [20].
	AudioBooks[*6] Speed control of "Audiobook"	• **Normal** • **Faster** • **Slower**	: You can select the playback speed of the "Audiobook" sound file in your iPod. • Initial selected item depends on your iPod setting.
	L/O Mode Line output mode	• **Rear** • **Woofer**	: Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting the rear speakers (through an external amplifier). : Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting a subwoofer (through an external amplifier).
	Amp Gain Amplifier gain control	• **High PWR** • **Low PWR**	: Volume 00 – Volume 50 : Volume 00 – Volume 30 (Select if the maximum power of each speaker is less than 50 W to prevent damaging the speaker.)
COLOR	**Color Sel** Color selection	Initial: All Source; Color: Pale	: Select your favorite display color for each source (or for all sources), [26].
	Color Set Color setting	— **Day Color** **NightColor** **00 — 11** **00 — 11** **00 — 11**	: Create your own colors, and select them for the display color, [27]. : User color during the day time[*7]. : User color during the night time[*7]. : Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05 : Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05 : Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05
	Key Illum Illumination switch	• **Red** • **Green**	: You can select the button illumination according to your preference.

[*5] *Displayed only when an iPod is connected to the USB input jack and playback is controlled from the unit.*

[*6] *Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—TUNER, CD, USB, or Bluetooth.*

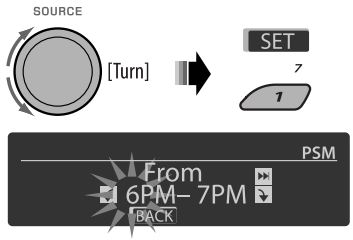
[*7] *Depends on the "Dimmer" setting.*

Setting the time for dimmer

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 23.
- In step **2**, select "DISP."
- In step **3**, select "Dimmer."

2 Select "Time Set."



3 Adjust the dimmer start time.

1 Turn the control dial to set the dimmer start time.

2 Press ►►| ^ to select "To." Then, turn the control dial to set the dimmer end time.

4 Exit from the setting.

Changing the display color

You can select your favorite display color for each source (or all sources).

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3 or 6.

Setting the display color

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 23.
- In step **2**, select "COLOR."
- In step **3**, select "Color Sel."

2

3 Select a source.

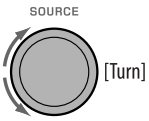
All Source*1 ↔ **CD** ↔ **Changer***3 (or **Ext In***2) ↔ **USB***3 ↔ **FM** ↔ **AM** ↔ **iPod***3 ↔ **Aux In** ↔ **BT Phone***3 ↔ **BT Audio***3 ↔ (back to the beginning)

*1 *When you select "All Source," you can use the same color for all the sources.*

*2 *Depends on the "Ext Input" setting, see page 25.*

*3 *Displayed only when the target component is connected.*

4 Select a color.



Pale ↔ **Aqua** ↔ **Sky** ↔ **Sea** ↔ **Leaves** ↔ **Grass** ↔ **Apple** ↔ **Rose** ↔ **Amber** ↔ **Honey** ↔ **Violet** ↔ **Grape** ↔ **Every***4 ↔ **User***5 ↔ (back to the beginning)

*4 *The color changes every 2 seconds.*

*5 *The user-edited colors—"Day Color" and "NightColor" will be applied (see page 27 for details).*

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to select the color for each source (except when selecting "All Source" in step 3).

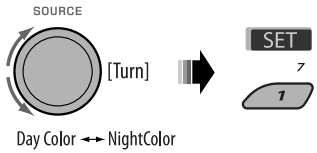
6 Exit from the setting.

Creating your own color—User Color

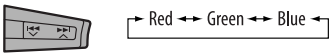
You can create your own colors—"Day Color" or "NightColor."

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 23.
- In step **2**, select "COLOR."
- In step **3**, select "Color Set."

2 Select "Day Color" or "NightColor."



3 Select a primary color.



4 Adjust the level (00 to 11) of the selected primary color.

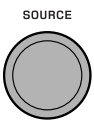
5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to adjust other primary colors.

6 Exit from the setting.

Bluetooth settings

You can change the settings listed on page 28 according to your preference.
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

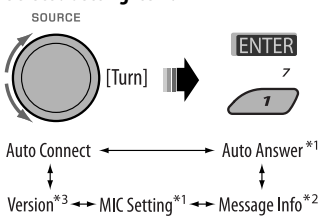
1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Enter the Bluetooth menu.

3 Select "Setting."

4 Select a setting item.

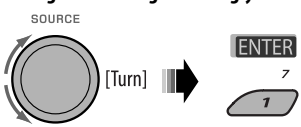


*1 *Displayed only when a Bluetooth phone is connected.*

*2 *Displayed only when a Bluetooth phone is connected and it is compatible with text message.*

*3 *Bluetooth Audio: Shows only "Version."*

5 Change the setting accordingly.



Continued on the next page

Setting menu (__ : Initial)

Auto Connect

When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with...

Off: No Bluetooth device.
Last: The last connected Bluetooth device.
Order: The available registered Bluetooth device found at first.

Auto Answer

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

On: The unit answers the incoming calls automatically.
Off: The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually.
Reject: The unit rejects all incoming calls.

Message Info

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

Auto: The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "Received Message."
Manual: The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.

MIC setting (microphone setting)

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."
Adjust the built-in microphone volume, [LEVEL 01/02/03].

Version

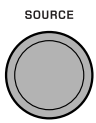
The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

Title assignment

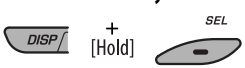
You can assign titles to 30 station frequencies (FM and AM) using 10 characters (maximum) for each title.

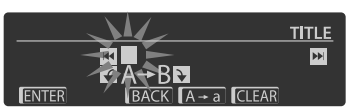
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Select "TUNER."



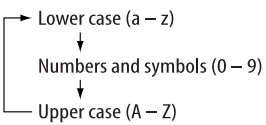
2 Show the title entry screen.





3 Assign a title.

1 Press number button 4 (A→a) repeatedly to select a character set.



2 Turn the control dial to select a character. (For available characters, see page 33.)
3 Use ◀◀ ∨/▶▶ ∧ to move to the next (or previous) character position.
4 Repeat steps 1 to 3 until you finish entering the title.

4 Store the title.

To erase the entire title

In step **3** above...

More about this unit

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback also starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a track, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously next time you turn on the power.

General

- If you change the source while listening to a disc, playback stops.
  Next time you select "CD" as the playback source, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously.
- After ejecting a disc or removing a USB device, "No Disc" or "No USB" appears and you cannot operate some of the buttons. Insert another disc, reattach a USB device, or press SOURCE to select another playback source.

Tuner operations

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
  – All previously stored stations are erased and the stations are stored anew.
  – Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
  – When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, the previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

Disc/USB operations

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

General

- This unit has been designed to reproduce CDs/CD Texts, and CD-Rs (Recordable)/CD-RWs (Rewritable) in audio CD (CD-DA), MP3 and WMA formats.
- When a disc is inserted upside down, "Please Eject" appears on the display. Press OPEN, then ⏏ to eject the disc.
- In this manual, words "track" and "file" are interchangeably used.
- While fast-forwarding or reversing on MP3/WMA/WAV files, you can only hear intermittent sounds.
- File/folder list may not appear correctly if too many hierarchies and folders are used.
- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot again to protect it from dust. Playback starts automatically.

Playing a CD-R or CD-RW

- Use only "finalized" CD-Rs or CD-RWs.
- This unit can only play back files of the same type as those which are detected first if a disc includes both audio CD (CD-DA) files and MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some CD-Rs or CD-RWs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, or for the following reasons:
  – Discs are dirty or scratched.
  – Moisture condensation has occurred on the lens inside the unit.

Continued on the next page

– The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
– The files on the CD-R/CD-RW are written using the "Packet Write" method.
– There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stained, scratched, warped, etc.).

- CD-RWs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of CD-RWs is lower than that of regular CDs.
- Do not use the following CD-Rs or CD-RWs:
  – Discs with stickers, labels, or a protective seal stuck to the surface.
  – Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

  Using these discs under high temperature or high humidity may cause malfunctions or damage to the unit.

Playing an MP3/WMA disc

- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3 files and for WMA files.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files meeting the conditions below:

  MP3:
  – Bit rate: 8 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz, 12 kHz, 11.025 kHz, 8 kHz

  WMA:
  – Bit rate: 32 kbps — 192 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz
  – Disc format: ISO 9660 Level 1/Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names vary depending on the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3> or <.wma>).
  – ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
  – ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
  – Romeo*: up to 128 characters
  – Joliet*: up to 64 characters
  – Windows long file name*: up to 128 characters

* *The parenthetic figure is the maximum number of characters for file/folder names in case the total number of files and folders is 271 or more.*

- This unit can recognize a total of 512 files, 200 folders, and 8 hierarchical levels.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).

  Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in the elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. In particular, this difference becomes noticeable after performing the search function.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded in MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriate format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded in lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks from a USB device

- Connecting a USB device automatically changes the source to "USB."
- While playing from a USB device, the playback order may differ from the one from other players.
- This unit may be unable to play back some USB devices or some files due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- Depending on the shape of the USB devices and connection ports, some USB devices may not be attached properly or the connection might be loose.
- When connecting a USB mass storage class device, refer also to its instructions.

- Connect one USB mass storage class device to the unit at a time. Do not use a USB hub.
- You can connect two types of USB device to this unit—MTP device and Mass storage class device. If you connect an MTP device featuring "USB digital media streaming" to this unit, you can play back the WMA-DRM10 (Digital Right Management) files purchased through the music distributing web sites, through this unit.
- This unit is compatible with the USB Full-Speed.
- If the connected USB device does not have the correct files, "No File" appears.
- This unit can show ID3 Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3 and WMA/WAV Tag.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA/WAV files meeting the conditions below:
  MP3:
  – Bit rate: 32 kbps — 320 kbps (MPEG-1)
    8 kbps — 160 kbps (MPEG-2)
  – Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
  WMA:
  – Bit rate: 5 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 8 kHz — 48 kHz
  – Channel: 1 ch/2 ch
  WAV:
  – Bit rate: Linear PCM at 705 kbps and 1 411 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 44.1 kHz
  – Channel: 1 ch/2 ch
- This unit can play back MP3 files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- The maximum number of characters for folder and file names is 25 characters; 128 characters for MP3/WMA/WAV Tag.
- This unit can recognize a total of 20 000 files and 2 000 folders (999 files per folder). However, the display can shows until 9 999 folders/files.
- The unit cannot recognize a USB mass storage class device whose rating is other than 5 V and exceeds 500 mA.
- USB devices equipped with special functions such as data security functions cannot be used with the unit.
- Do not use a USB device with 2 or more partitions.
- This unit may not recognized a USB device connected through a USB card reader.
- This unit may not play back files in a USB device properly when using a USB extension cord.
- This unit cannot assure proper functions or supply power to all types of USB devices.

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on the circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

appears when the connection is established.

	Appears when the Bluetooth phone is connected.
	Appears when the Bluetooth audio player is connected.
	Appears when the Bluetooth phone and Bluetooth audio player are connected.

Icons for phone types

These icons indicate the phone type set on the device:

: Cellular phone	: General
: Household phone	: Other than above
: Office	: Unknown

Continued on the next page

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **Connection Error:**
  The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use "Connect" to connect the device again. (See page 13.)
- **Error**
  Try the operation again. If "Error" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **Device Not Found**
  No available Bluetooth device is detected by "Search...".
- **Loading...**
  The unit is updating the phone book and/or text messages.
- **Please Wait...**
  The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **Reset 08**
  Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

iPod

- Controllable iPod (connected through....):
  (A) KS-PD100:
  – iPod with dock connector (3rd Generation)
  – iPod with click wheel (4th Generation)
  – iPod nano (1st & 2nd*1 Generation)
  – iPod mini (1st Generation)
  – iPod video (5th Generation)*2
  – iPod photo
  (B) USB input jack:
  – iPod nano (1st & 2nd Generation)
  – iPod video (5th Generation)

*1 *When you connect the iPod nano to the interface adapter, be sure to disconnect the headphones; otherwise, no sound is heard.*

*2 *It is not possible to browse video files on the "Videos" menu while the iPod is connected to the interface adapter.*

- Update your iPod to the latest software version before using it with this unit.
  – You can check the software version of your iPod under "About" in the "Setting" menu of the iPod.
  – For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- While the unit is being turned on, the iPod is charged through this unit.
- While connecting an iPod with Video:
  – No video shows on the iPod's display or the external monitor (only the audio part is available).
  – It is not possible to browse video files on the "Video" menu. (If you connect the iPod during the playback or pausing of a video file, resuming playback will not work.)
- iPod shuffle and iPhone cannot be used with this unit.
- You can control the iPod from this unit when "JVC" or "√" appears on the iPod display after connection.
- The song order displayed on the selection menu of this unit may differ from that of the iPod.
- If playback is stopped, select a track from the selection menu or press BAND to play back the same track again.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly:
  – Some characters such as accented letters cannot be shown correctly on the display.
  – Communication between the iPod and the unit is not stable.
- If the text information includes more than 16 characters, it scrolls on the display. This unit can display up to 128 characters.

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>

Title assignment

- If you try to assign titles to more than 30 station frequencies, "Name Full" appears. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.

Available characters

Upper case

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N
O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	space	

Lower case

a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n
o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	space	

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	space							

General settings—PSM

- "Auto" setting for "Dimmer" may not work correctly on some vehicles, particularly on those having a control dial for dimming.
  In this case, change the "Dimmer" setting to any other than "Auto."
- If "LCD Type" is set to "Auto," the display pattern will change to the "Positive" or "Negative" pattern depending on the "Dimmer" setting.
- If you change the "Amp Gain" setting from "High PWR" to "Low PWR" while the volume level is set higher than "Volume 30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "Volume 30."

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).
	• "Connect Error" appears on the display.	Remove the control panel, wipe the connector, then attach it again (see page 4).
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the antenna firmly.

Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played back. • Tracks on the CD-R/CD-RW cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized CD-R/CD-RW. • Finalize the CD-R/CD-RW with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc can neither be played back nor ejected.	• Unlock the disc (see page 9). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 3).
	• Disc sound is sometimes interrupted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
	• Disc cannot be recognized ("No Disc," "CD Loading Error," or "Eject Error" flashes).	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 3).
	• "Please Eject" appears on the display.	This occurs sometimes due to over-heating. Eject the disc or change to another playback source.
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Use a disc with MP3/WMA tracks recorded in a format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet. • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• A longer readout time is required ("Reading" keeps flashing on the display).	Do not use too many hierarchical levels and folders.
	• Tracks do not play back in the order you have intended them to play.	The playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	• The elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc (eg. variable bit rate).
	• "Please Eject" appears on the display.	Insert a disc that contains MP3/WMA tracks.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	Skip to the next track encoded in an appropriate format or to the next non-copy-protected WMA track.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (capital: A – Z, small: a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols (see page 33).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
USB device	• Noise is generated.	• The track played back is not a playable file format (MP3/WMA/WAV). Skip to another file. • Do not add the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav> to non-MP3/WMA/WAV tracks.
	• Tracks cannot play back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differs from the one played back using other players.
	• "Reading" keeps flashing on the display.	• Readout time varies depending on the USB device. • Do not use too many hierarchy, folders and empty folders.* • Turn off the power then on again. • Do not pull out or connect the USB device repeatedly while "Reading" is displayed on the display. * *Folder that is phisically empty or folder that contains data but does not contain valid MP3/WMA/WAV track.*
	• "No File" flashes on the display. • "No USB" appears on the display.	Connect a USB device that contains tracks encoded in an appropriate format.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	The track is unplayable.
	• "Read Failed" or "Cannot Play" appears on the display, then returns to the previous source.	The connected USB device may be malfunctioning, or may not have been formatted correctly. The files included in the USB device are corrupted.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	For available characters, see page 33.
	• While playing a track, sound is sometimes interrupted.	The tracks have not been properly copied into the USB device. Copy tracks again into the USB device, and try again.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a USB device.	• Turn off, then turn on the unit. • Connect the device again, when the sound is not yet restored.

Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Bluetooth®	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	The unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio device at a time. While connecting a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device. After the device detects the unit, select "Open..." on the unit to connect the device. (See page 12.)
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. • Select the device name from "Special," then try to connect again. (See page 13.)
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to a place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a Bluetooth audio player.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio player. • Disconnect the device connected for "BT-PHONE." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • Connect the player again, when the sound is not yet restored.
	• The connected audio player cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio player supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile). (Operations depend on the connected audio player.)
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).

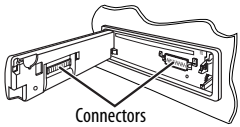
	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
iPod	• The iPod does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version. • Charge the battery.
	• The sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the display.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Charge the battery.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation (see page 18).
	• No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano.	• Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano. • Update the firmware version of the iPod nano.
	• "No File" appears on the display.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the display.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect it again.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the display.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.

- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors. To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture has evaporated.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc in its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

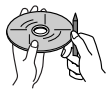
- Make sure to store discs in cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvents (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

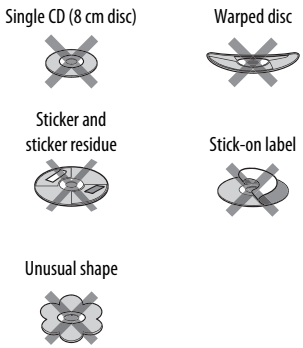
To play new discs



New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:



Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION	
Maximum Power Output:	
Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
Continuous Power Output (RMS):	
Front/Rear:	19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.
Load Impedance:	4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
Tone Control Range:	
Bass:	±12 dB (60 Hz, 80 Hz, 100 Hz, 200 Hz)
Mid-range:	±12 dB (500 Hz, 1.0 kHz, 1.5 kHz, 2.5 kHz)
Treble:	±12 dB (10.0 kHz, 12.5 kHz, 15.0 kHz, 17.5 kHz)
Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	70 dB
Line-Out and Subwoofer-Out Level/ Impedance:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
Other Terminal:	CD changer jack, AUX (auxiliary) input jack, USB input jack, Antenna input

TUNER SECTION	
Frequency Range:	
FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
AM:	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
FM Tuner	
Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 µV/75 Ω)
50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
Stereo Separation:	30 dB
AM Tuner	
Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 µV/35 dB

CD PLAYER SECTION	
Type:	Compact disc player
Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)
Number of Channels:	2 channels (stereo)
Frequency Response:	5 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Dynamic Range:	96 dB
Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	98 dB
Wow and Flutter:	Less than measurable limit
MP3 Decoding Format:	(MPEG1/2 Audio Layer 3)
Max. Bit Rate:	320 kbps
WMA (Windows Media® Audio) Decoding Format:	
Max. Bit Rate:	192 kbps

USB SECTION	
USB Standard:	USB 1.1, USB 2.0
Data Transfer Rate:	Full Speed: Max. 12 Mbps
	Low Speed: Max. 1.5 Mbps
Compatible Device:	Mass storage class
Compatible File System:	FAT 32/16/12
Playable Audio Format:	MP3/WMA/WAV
Max. Current:	500 mA/5 V

GENERAL	
Power Requirement:	
Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
Grounding System:	Negative ground
Allowable Operating Temperature:	0°C to +40°C
Dimensions (W × H × D): (approx.)	
Installation Size:	182 mm × 52 mm × 160 mm
Panel Size:	188 mm × 58 mm × 6 mm
Mass:	1.4 kg (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

在操作時遇到麻煩了？

請重置本機

參閱如何重置本機之頁

JVC

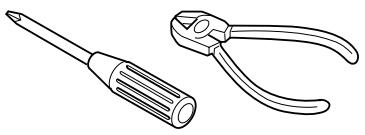
EN, CT

© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0108DTSMDTJEIN

KD-G845

Installation/Connection Manual
安裝/連接手冊



GET0498-010A
[UT]

0108DTSMDTJEIN
EN, CT
© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

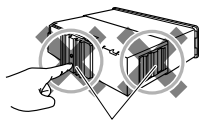
WARNINGS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with a maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8** Ω). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amp Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 25 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



Heat sink / 散熱片

中文

本機僅可使用**直流 12 V**、**負極接地的電源系統**。如果您的車輛沒有這一電源系統，則需要一個電壓變換器，可以在 JVC 汽車音響分銷商處買到。

警告

為防止短路，建議在安裝本機之前，拔開電池的負極，並把所有電路都連接好。

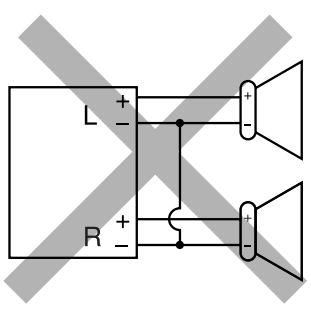
- **安裝完畢後務必將本機的地線重新接至車身。**

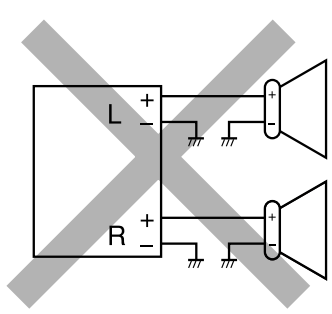
注意：

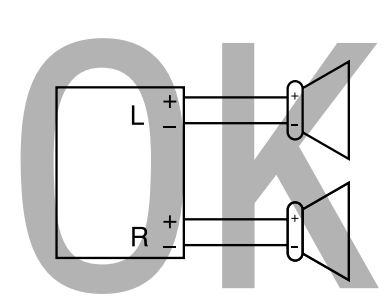
- 把保險絲更換為額定負荷值的保險絲。如果保險絲經常燒壞，請向 JVC 汽車音響分銷商詢問。
- 後置和前置揚聲器的最大輸入功率應大於 50 W，其阻抗為 **4 Ω - 8 Ω**。如果最大功率少於 50 W，請調校"AMP GAIN"設定值，以防止揚聲器損壞。（參閱使用說明書的第 25 頁。）
- 為防止電源短路，請用絕緣帶包住**未使用**電線的端子。
- 本機使用後，散熱片會很熱。因此，在移出本機時，小心不要觸摸散熱片。

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.







電源和揚聲器接線注意事項：

- **切勿把揚聲器導線接頭接至電池，否則本機將會嚴重損壞。**
- 在把揚聲器導線接頭接至揚聲器之前，檢查您汽車上的揚聲器線路。

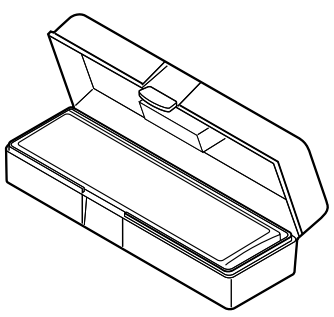
Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC car audio dealer immediately.

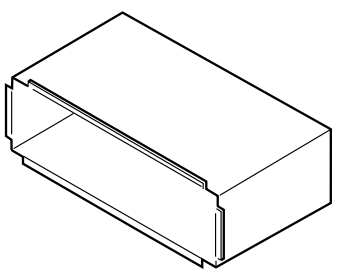
用於安裝和連接的零件清單

下列零件隨本機提供。若有任何遺漏，立刻咨詢您的 JVC 汽車音響經銷商。

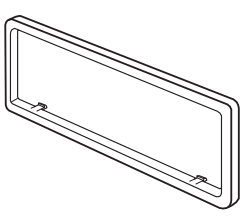
Ⓐ / Ⓑ
Hard case/Control panel
硬盒 / 控制面板



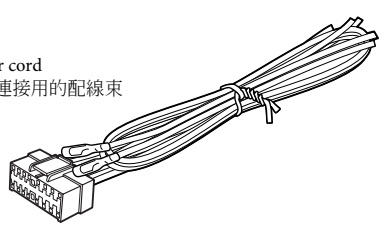
Ⓒ
Sleeve
外套機殼



Ⓓ
Trim plate
裝飾框



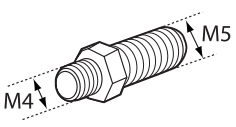
Ⓔ
Power cord
電路連接用的配線束



Ⓕ
Washer (ø5)
墊圈（ø5）

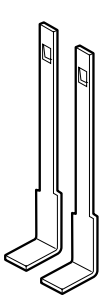
Ⓖ
Lock nut (M5)
鎖定螺母（M5）

Ⓗ
Mounting bolt (M4 × 5 mm; M5 × 12.5 mm)
緊固螺栓（M4 × 5 mm; M5 × 12.5 mm）

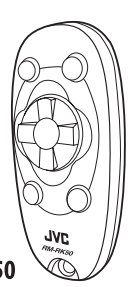


Ⓘ
Rubber cushion
橡膠防震墊

Ⓙ
Handles
板條型把手

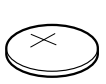


Ⓚ
Remote controller
遙控器



RM-RK50

Ⓛ
Battery
電池



CR2025

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

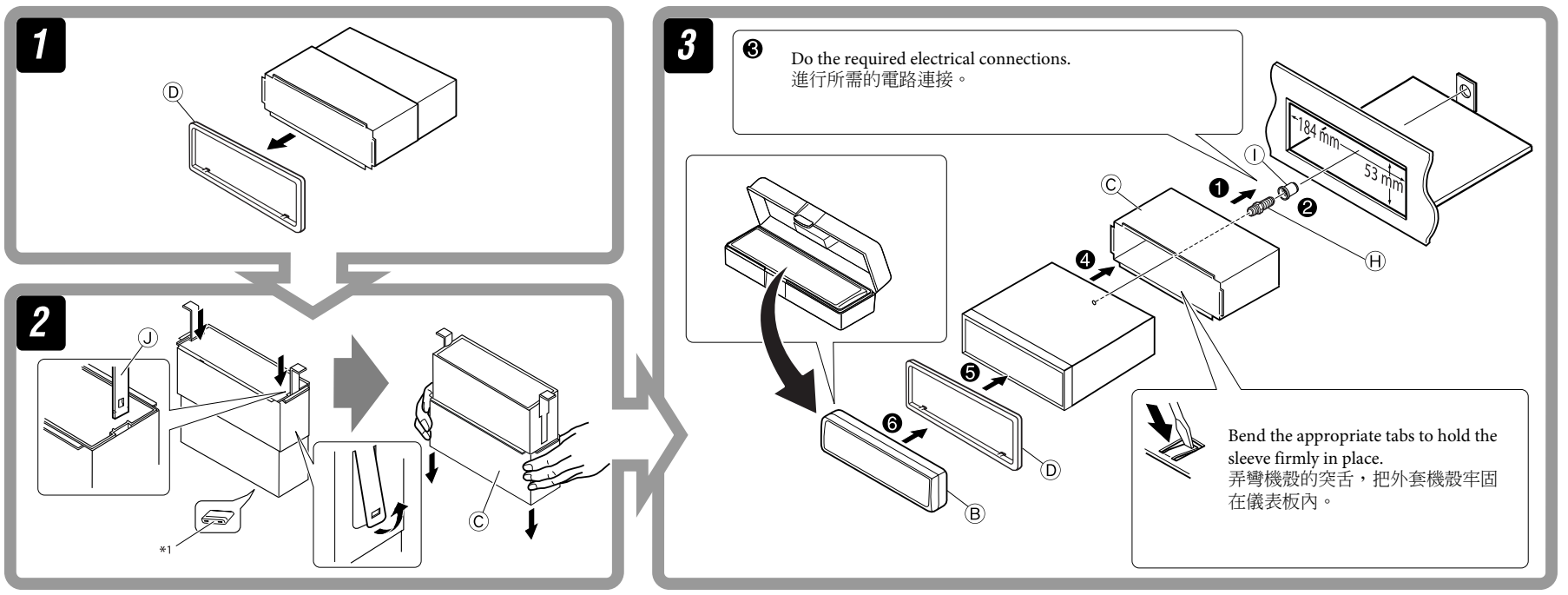
The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

安裝（裝設、固定在儀表板內）

下面的圖解表示了典型的安裝程序。如果您有問題，或需要有關配套元件的資料，請向 JVC 汽車音響分銷商或配套元件供應公司詢問。

- 如果您不能確定如何正確地安裝本機，應請合格的技術人員來安裝。

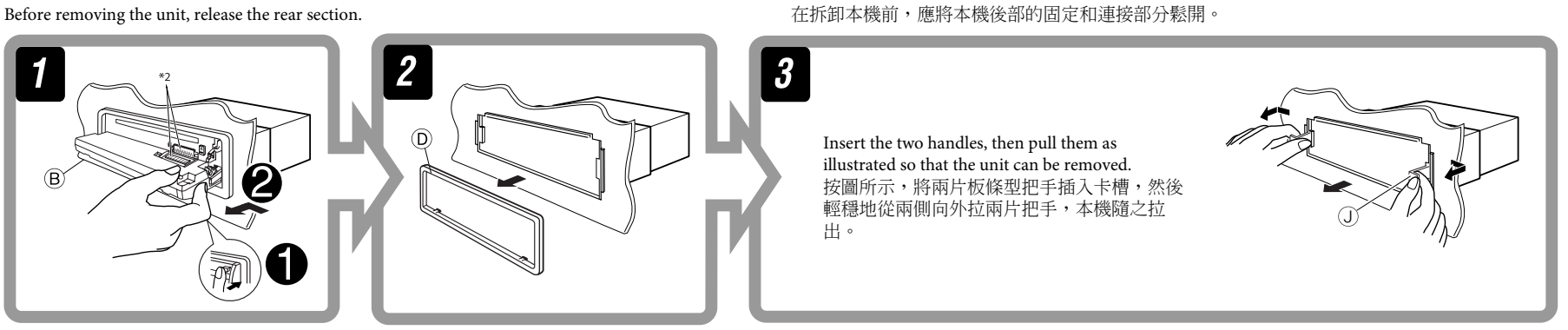


Removing the unit

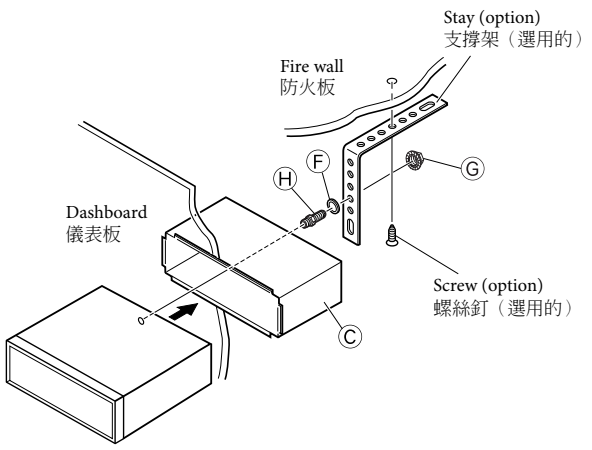
Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

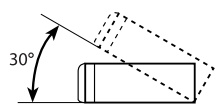
拆卸本機

在拆卸本機前，應將本機後部的固定和連接部分鬆開。



When using the optional stay / 若選用支撐架

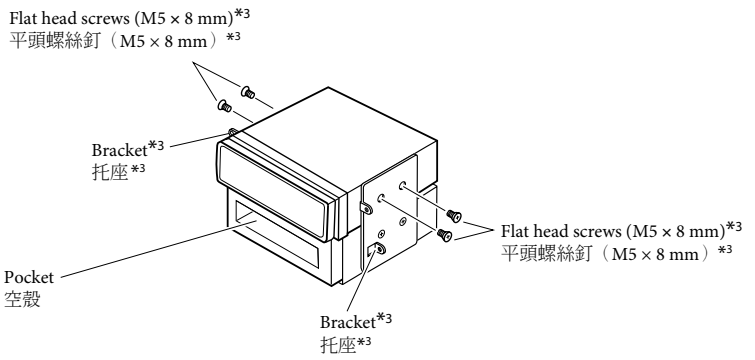




Install the unit at an angle of less than 30°.
將本機安裝在少於 30° 的角度。

When installing the unit without using the sleeve / 若不使用外套機殼安裝本機

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.
以豐田牌（TOYOTA）汽車為例：首先取出汽車收音機，然後將本機裝入其空出的位置。



Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

注意 ：把本機安裝在托座上時，務必使用 8 mm 長的螺絲釘。如使用過長的螺絲釘，會損壞本機。

*1 When you stand the unit, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
*2 Avoid touching the connectors.
*3 Not supplied for this unit.

*1 您豎起本機時，小心不要損壞底部的保險絲。
*2 避免接觸連接器。
*3 不隨本機提供。

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**

* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?

- **Power cannot be turned on.**

* Is the yellow lead connected?

- **No sound from the speakers.**

* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?

- **Sound is distorted.**

* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **Noise interfere with sounds.**

* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?

- **This unit becomes hot.**

* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **This unit does not work at all.**

* Have you reset your unit?

故障排除

- **保險絲燒斷**。

* 檢查紅色導線接頭和黑色導線接頭是否接觸正確？

- **電源不能接通**。

* 檢查黃色導線接頭是否接上？

- **揚聲器沒有聲音**。

* 檢查揚聲器輸出導線接頭是否短路？

- **聲音失真**。

* 檢查揚聲器輸出端子是否接地？
* 檢查揚聲器的左（L）、右（R）端子的負極"–"是否共同接地？

- **噪音干擾音響**。

* 後接地端子與車身是否使用較短和較厚的電線連接？

- **本機發熱**。

* 檢查揚聲器輸出端子是否接地？
* 檢查揚聲器的左（L）、右（R）端子的負極"–"是否共同接地？

- **本機完全不能操作**。

* 您是否已經重置您的機組？

ENGLISH

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A Typical connections / 典型的接線方法

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.

2 Connect the antenna cord.

3 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

中文

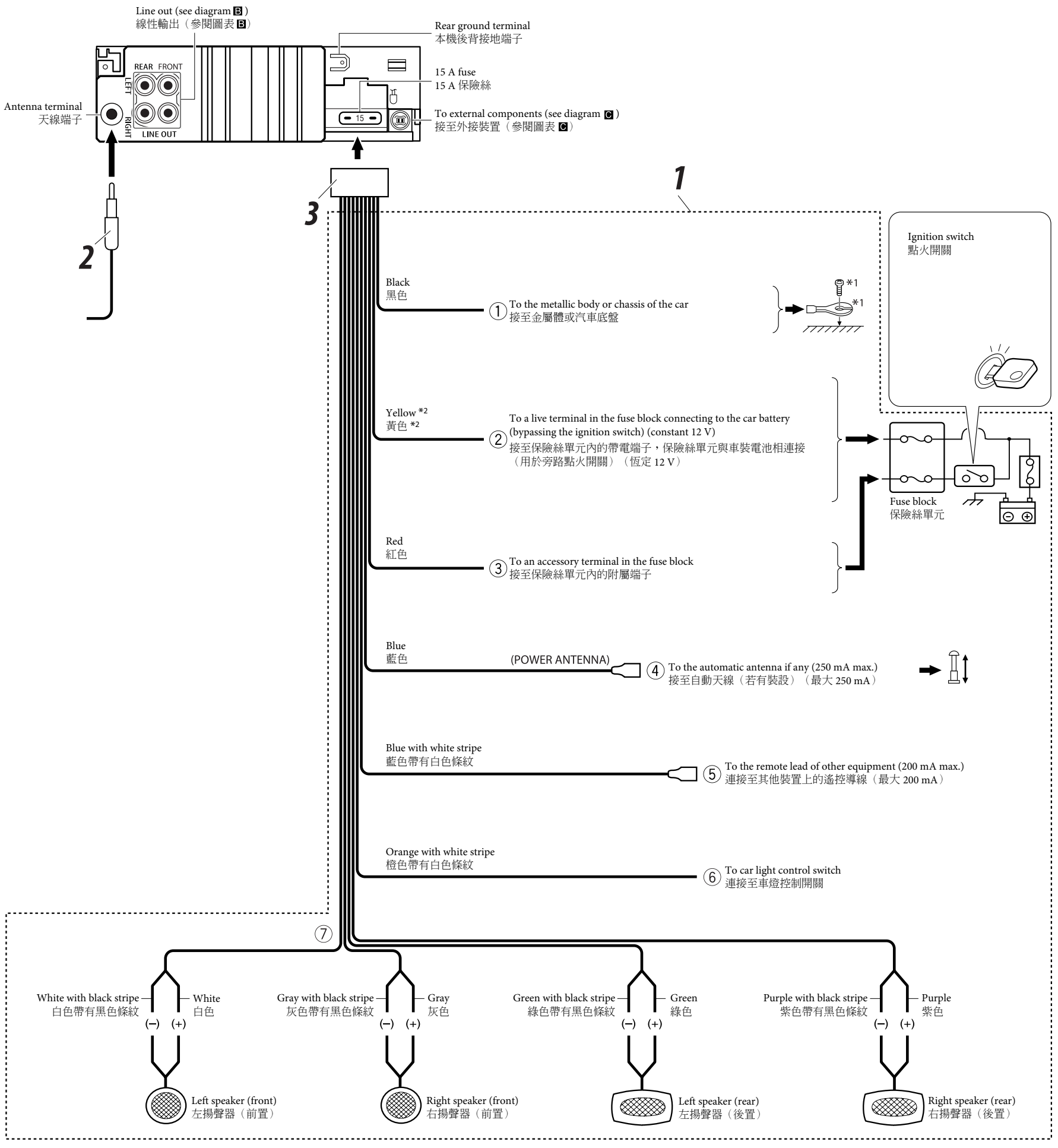
電路連接

接線前：仔細檢查汽車內的線路。不正確的接線會導致本機嚴重損壞。
電源線的引線和車身的連接器引線在顏色上可能有所不同。

1 依照下圖所示之次序連接電源線的顏色導線。

2 將天線的電線連接起來。

3 最後，把配線束的插頭插在本機上。



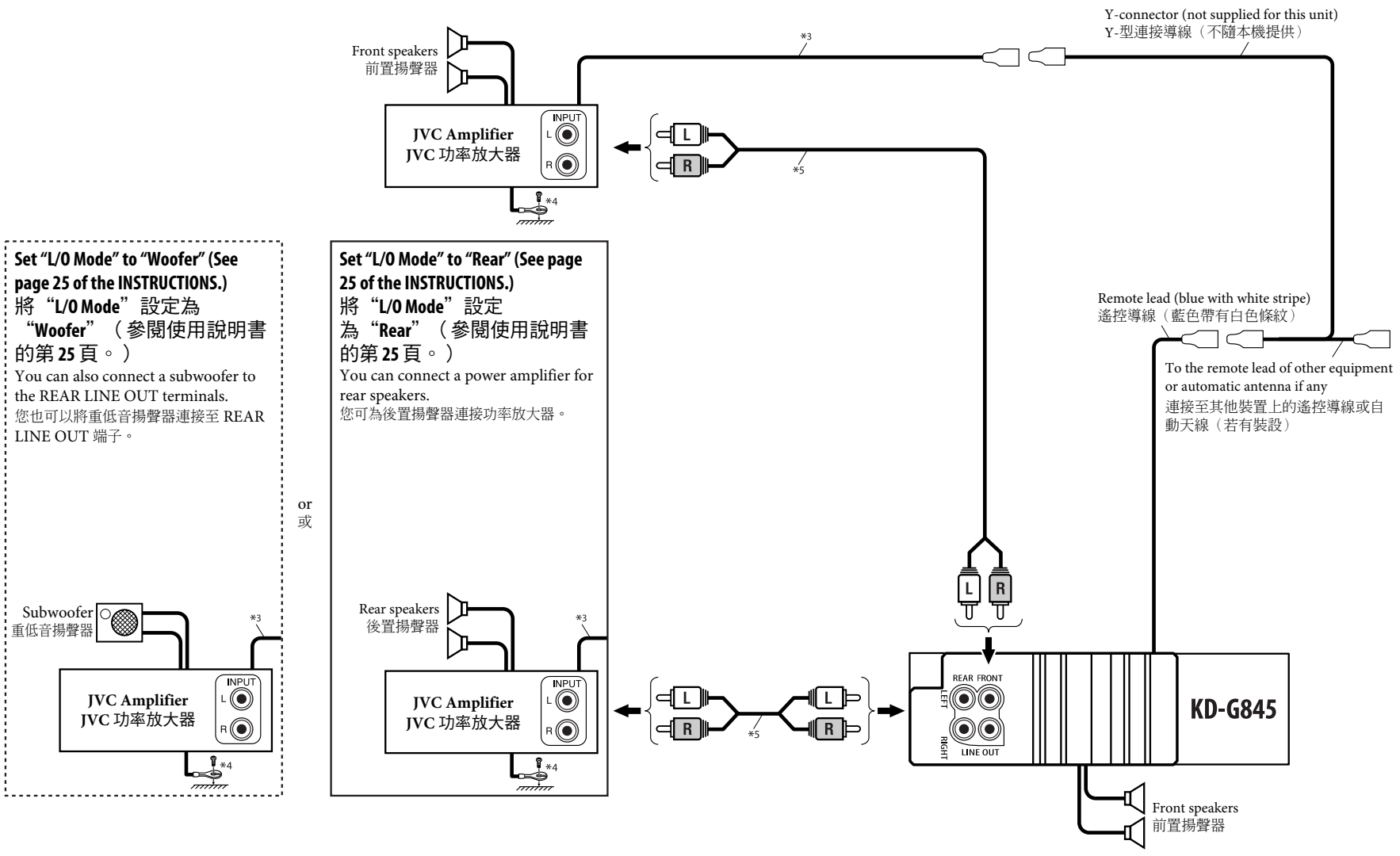
*1 Not supplied for this unit.
*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise the power cannot be turned on.

*1 不隨本機提供。
*2 本機未安裝時，進行工作狀況檢查之前，必須把這導線接上，否則不能開啟電源。

B Connecting the external amplifiers and/or subwoofer / 連接至外部功率放大器和 / 或重低音揚聲器

You can connect amplifiers to upgrade your car stereo system.
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**

您可以連接功率放大器以提昇尊車的音響系統。
- 將遙控導線（藍色帶有白色條紋）和其他裝置上的遙控導線連接起來，以便可以經由本機進行遙控。
- 將揚聲器和本機斷開，再接上功率放大器。將本機的揚聲器接線放置不用。



C Connecting the external components / 連接其他外接裝置

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapters.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

當連接外接裝置時，另參考隨裝置和轉換器附帶的使用手冊。

小心：
連接外接裝置之前，先確定本機已經關閉。

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.

您可以連接以下 JVC 裝置至 CD 換碟器插孔。

JVC 裝置	型號名稱
CD 換碟器（CD-CH）	CH-X1500 等

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.
- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

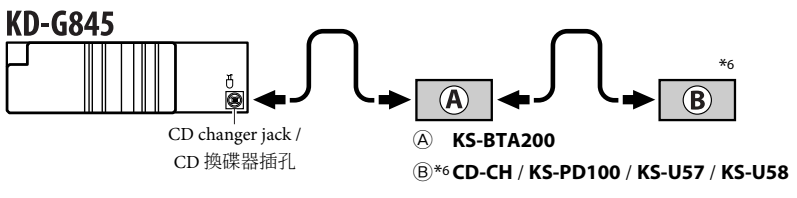
您也可以經由不同的 JVC 轉換器連接以下裝置。
- 連接導線可能需要另購。

裝置	轉換器	型號名稱
Bluetooth 裝置	Bluetooth 轉換器	KS-BTA200
iPod	iPod 端子轉換器	KS-PD100
帶有線性輸出插孔的便攜式音頻播放機	線性輸入轉換器	KS-U57
帶有 3.5 mm 立體聲迷你型插孔的便攜式音頻播放機	AUX 輸入轉換器	KS-U58

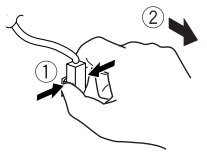
When connecting more than one component (maximum: two), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

當連接不止一件裝置（最多：兩件）時，建議您按以下方法串聯裝置。

When connecting two components in series / 當串聯兩件外接裝置時



To disconnect the connector / 想要斷開連接器



Hold the connector tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
緊按連接器（①），再將其拔出（②）。

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

iPod 是 Apple Inc.（蘋果公司）在美國及其他國家註冊的商標。

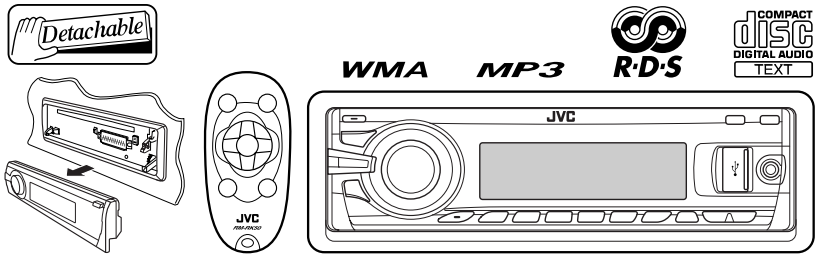
*3 Remote lead
*4 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.
*5 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)
*6 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 25 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

*3 遙控導線
*4 將地線與金屬車體或者汽車底盤緊密連接，連接處應該沒有被油漆覆蓋（如果已塗上油漆，在連接電線前，將油漆刮去）。如果不這樣做，可能會損壞本機。
*5 信號電纜（不隨本機提供）
*6 想要使用這些裝置，正確設定外部輸入設定（參閱使用說明書的第 25 頁）。

ENGLISH
РУССКИЙ
УКРАЇНА

CD RECEIVER
РЕСИВЕР С ПРОИГРЫВАТЕЛЕМ КОМПАКТ-ДИСКОВ
ПРИЙМАЧ З ПРОГРАВАЧЕМ КОМПАКТ-ДИСКІВ

KD-G847



В соответствии с Законом Российской Федерации "О защите прав потребителей" срок службы (годности) данного товара "по истечении которого он может представлять опасность для жизни, здоровья потребителя, причинять вред его имуществу или окружающей среде" составляет семь (7) лет со дня производства. Этот срок является временем, в течение которого потребитель данного товара может безопасно им пользоваться при условии соблюдения инструкции по эксплуатации данного товара, проводя необходимое обслуживание, включающее замену расходных материалов и/или соответствующее ремонтное обеспечение в специализированном сервисном центре.

Дополнительные косметические материалы к данному товару, поставляемые вместе с ним, могут храниться в течение двух (2) лет со дня его производства.

Срок службы (годности), кроме срока хранения дополнительных косметических материалов, упомянутых в предыдущих двух пунктах, не затрагивает никаких других прав потребителя, в частности, гарантийного свидетельства JVC, которое он может получить в соответствии с законом о правах потребителя или других законов, связанных с ним.

For canceling the display demonstration, see page 4.
Информацию об отмене демонстрации функций дисплея см. на стр. 4.
Інформацію щодо відміни демонстрації функцій дисплею див. на стор. 4.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Указания по установке и выполнению соединений приводятся в отдельной инструкции.
Вказівки по встановленню та виконанню підключень наведені у окремій інструкції.

INSTRUCTIONS
ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ
ІНСТРУКЦІЇ

GET0525-001A
[EE]

ENGLISH

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION**: Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION**: Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス1Mレーザー放射が出ます。光学装置で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS II LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG)

[European Union only]

Available characters on the display

This unit can display Romans alphabets (A – Z, a – z), Cyrillic alphabets, numbers, and symbols (see below).
These characters are also used to show the various information on the display.

Upper case (Cyrillic alphabets)

А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ж	З	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н
О	П	Р	С	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы
Ь	Э	Ю	Я	Ё	space								

Lower case (Cyrillic alphabets)

а	б	в	г	д	е	ж	з	и	й	к	л	м	н
о	п	р	с	т	у	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы
ь	э	ю	я	ё	space								

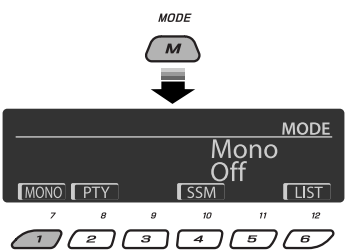
Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	¡	¿	£	€	α	space		

How to use the M MODE and SEL buttons

If you use M MODE or SEL (select), the display and some controls (such as the number buttons, ⏮/⏭ buttons, ▲/▼ buttons, and the control dial) enter the corresponding control mode.

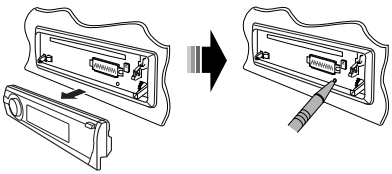
Ex.: When you press number button 1 after pressing M MODE, to operate the FM tuner.



To use these controls for original functions, press M MODE again.

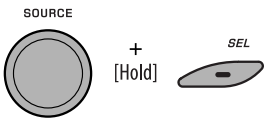
- However, pressing SEL makes the unit enters a different mode.
- Waiting for about 15 seconds (or 30 seconds for Bluetooth sources) without pressing any of these buttons will automatically cancels the control.

How to reset your unit

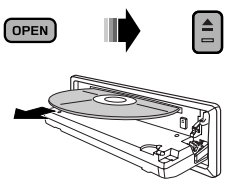


- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased (except the registered Bluetooth device, see pages 14 and 15).*

How to forcibly eject a disc



"Please Eject" appears on the display.



- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*
- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*

Warning:

If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTIONS

Preparation 4

OPERATIONS

Basic operations 5
- Using the control panel 5
- Using the remote controller (RM-RK50) 6

Listening to the radio 7
Disc operations 11
Listening to the USB device 13

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Using the Bluetooth® devices 14
- Using the Bluetooth cellular phone 16
- Using the Bluetooth audio player 18

Listening to the CD changer 19
Listening to the iPod 20
Listening to the other external components 22

SETTINGS

Selecting a preset sound mode 23
General settings—PSM 25
Bluetooth settings 30

REFERENCES

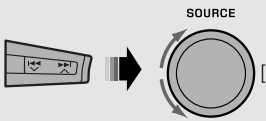
More about this unit 31
Troubleshooting 35
Maintenance 39
Specifications 40

For detaching/attaching the control panel, see page 38.

Preparation

Cancel the display demonstration and set the clock

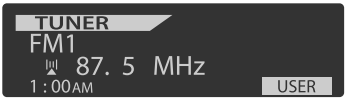
- See also pages 25 and 26.

1		**Turn on the power.**
2	[Hold]	**Enter the PSM settings.**
3	 [Turn]	**Cancel the display demonstrations** Select "Demo," then "Off." **Set the clock** Select "Clock Hr" (hour), then adjust the hour. Select "Clock Min" (minute), then adjust the minute. Select "24H/12H," then "24Hours" or "12Hours."
4		**Finish the procedure.**

Changing the display information and pattern

When the power is turned off: Check the current clock time

Ex.: When tuner is selected as the source



Source operation display

Audio level meter display
(see "LevelMeter" on page 25)

Caution:

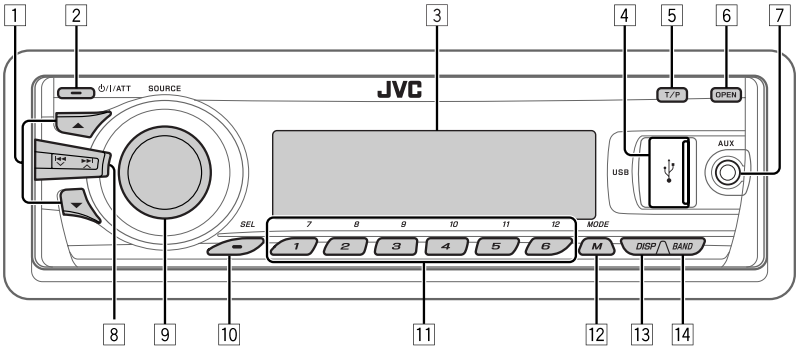
If the temperature inside the car is below 0°C, the movement of animation and text scroll will be halted on the display to prevent the display from being blurred. L.TEMP appears on the display.
When the temperature increases, and the operating temperature is resumed, these functions will start working again.

Caution on volume setting:

Digital devices (CD/USB) produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing these digital sources to avoid damaging the speakers by sudden increase of the output level.

Basic operations

Using the control panel



1 • **TUNER:** Select preset station.
• **CD/USB/CD-CH:** Select folder.
• **USB-iPod:** Enter the main menu [Hold].
• **iPod:** Enter the main menu/Pause playback/Confirm selection.
• **BT-PHONE/BT-AUDIO:** Select a registered device.

2 • Turn on the power.
• Turn off the power [Hold].
• Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).

3 Display window

4 USB (Universal Serial Bus) input jack

5 • Activate/deactivate TA Standby Reception.
• Enter programme type searching mode [Hold].

6 Flip down the control panel.
• To eject the disc, flip down the control panel then press ⏏ on the unit.

7 AUX (auxiliary) input jack

8 • **TUNER:** Search for station.
• **CD/USB/CD-CH/USB-iPod/iPod:** Select track.
• **BT-AUDIO:** Reverse skip/forward skip.

9 • Volume control [Turn].
• Select the source [Press]*1.
TUNER → **CD***2 → **USB***2 (or **USB-iPod**)*2 → **CD-CH***2/**iPod***2 (or **EXT IN**) → **BT-PHONE***2 → **BT-AUDIO***2 → **AUX IN** → (back to the beginning)

10 • Select/adjust the sound mode.
• Enter the PSM settings [Hold].

11 • **TUNER:** Select preset station.
• **CD/USB/CD-CH:** Select folder/track/disc (for CD changer).
• **USB-iPod:** Select preset top menu items.
• **BT-PHONE:** Dial preset phone number*3.

12 • Enter functions mode.
• **BT-PHONE:** Activate Voice Dialing [Hold].

13 Change the display information and pattern.

14 • **TUNER:** Select the bands.
• **USB-iPod/BT-AUDIO:** Start/pause playback.

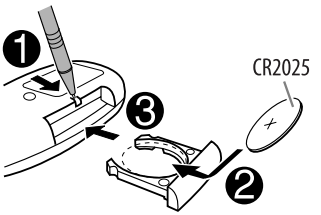
*1 *Holding SOURCE will enter the Bluetooth menu.*

*2 *You cannot select these sources if they are not ready or not connected.*

*3 *For storing preset phone number, see page 18.*

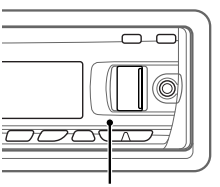
Using the remote controller (RM-RK50)

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



Before using the remote controller:

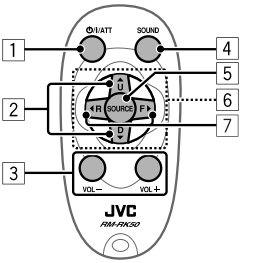
- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).



Remote sensor

Warning (to prevent accidents and damage):

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent.
- Do not leave the remote controller in a place (such as dashboards) exposed to direct sunlight for a long time.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
- Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.



1 • Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
• Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 • Changes the FM/AM bands with ▲ U.
• Changes the preset stations with D ▼.
• Changes the folder of the MP3/WMA/WAV.
• While playing an MP3 disc on an MP3-compatible CD changer:
– Changes the disc if pressed briefly.
– Changes the folder if pressed and held.
• While listening to an Apple iPod:
Connected to KS-PD100:
– Pauses or resumes playback with D ▼.
– Enters the main menu with ▲ U.
(Now ▲ U/D ▼/◄ R/F ► work as the menu selecting buttons.)*
* ▲ U : *Returns to the previous menu.*
D ▼ : *Confirms the selection.*
Connected to the USB input jack:
– Enter the main menu if pressed and held.
– Select the desired menu if pressed briefly.
– Fast skip in every layer of the main menu if pressed and held.

3 Adjusts the volume level.

4 Selects the sound mode (iEQ: intelligent equalizer).

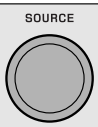
5 Selects the source.

6 For Bluetooth cellular phone:
– Answers calls if pressed briefly.
– Rejects calls if pressed and held.

7 • Searches for stations if pressed briefly.
• Fast-forwards or reverses the track if pressed and held.
• Changes the tracks if pressed briefly.

- While listening to an iPod (in menu selecting mode):
  Connected to KS-PD100:
  – Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press D ▼ to confirm the selection.)
  – Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.
  Connected to the USB input jack:
  – Start play back the selected folder directly if pressed and held.
- Reverse skip/forward skip for Bluetooth audio.

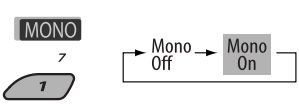
Listening to the radio

1		**Select "TUNER."**
2		**Select the bands.** FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM
3		**Search for a station to listen—Auto Search.** Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" lights up on the display, then press it repeatedly. • When receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength, ST lights up on the display. **Note:** FM1 and FM2: 87.5 MHz – 108.0 MHz FM3: 65.00 MHz – 74.00 MHz

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1

2



Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.
- MO lights up on the display.

3 **Exit from the setting.**

FM station automatic presetting —SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

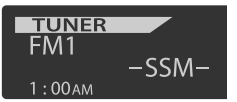
You can preset up to six stations for each band.

1 **While listening to a station...**

Continued on the next page

2 SSM, 10, 4

3 SSM, 10, 4



Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the selected FM band.

Manual presetting

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

Using the number buttons

1 BAND → FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM

2

3 10, 4 [Hold]

Preset number flashes for a while.

Using the Preset Station list

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Follow steps 1 and 2 of "Using the number buttons" above.

- By holding ▲ / ▼, the Preset Station List will also appear (go to step **4**).

2 MODE, M

3 Display the Preset Station List.

LIST, 12, 6 → ENTER, 7, 1

4 Select the preset number you want to store into.

- You can move to the lists of the other FM bands by pressing number button 5 ( ) or 6 ( ) repeatedly.

5 Store the station.

MEMO, 8, 2

Listening to the preset station on the Preset Station List

1 Display the Preset Station List, then select the preset station you want to listen to.

2 Change to the selected station.

CHANGE, 7, 1

The following features are available only for FM RDS stations.

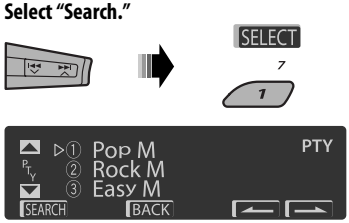
Searching for FM RDS programme —PTY Search

You can search for your favorite programmes being broadcast by selecting the PTY code for your favorite programmes.

- When BACK appears on the display, you can move back to the previous display by pressing number button 3.
- When ◄— / —► appears on the display, you can move to the other lists by pressing number button 5 or 6 repeatedly.

1 T/P [Hold]

2 Select "Search."



The three preset PTY codes appears on the display.

3 Select a PTY code.

You can select a PTY code from the 29 preset PTY codes or from the six stored PTY codes.

- To store your favorite programme types, see the following.

4 Start searching for your favorite programme.

PTY Search

If there is a station broadcasting a programme of the same PTY code as you have selected, that station is tuned in.

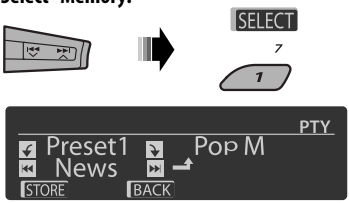
Storing your favorite programme types

You can store six favorite programme types.

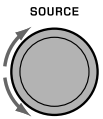
- When BACK appears on the display, you can move back to the previous display by pressing number button 3.

1 T/P [Hold]

2 Select "Memory."



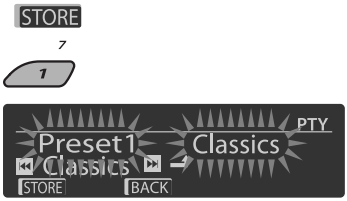
3 Select a preset number ("Preset1"– "Preset6") you want to store into.



[Turn]

4 Select one of the PTY codes.

5 Store the selected PTY code.



Ex.: When "Classics" is selected in step **5**

6 Repeat steps 3 to 5 to store other PTY codes into other preset numbers.

7 Exit from the setting.

DISP

Continued on the next page

Activating TA/PTY Standby Reception

TA Standby Reception

T/P

TP either lights up or flashes on the display.

- If TP lights up, the unit temporarily will switch to Traffic Announcement (TA), if available, from any source other than AM.
  The volume changes to the preset TA volume level if the current level is lower than the preset level (see page 27).
- If TP flashes, TA Standby reception is not yet activated. Tune in to another station providing the RDS signals.

To deactivate TA Standby Reception, press T/P again. TP goes off.

PTY Standby Reception

1

MODE

M

2

PTY

8

2

PTY Off ↔ Currently selected PTY code

3 **Select a PTY code.**

SOURCE

[Turn]

4 **Exit from the setting.**

MODE

M

PTY either lights up or flashes on the display.

- If PTY lights up, the unit temporarily will switch to your favorite PTY programme from any source other than AM.
- If PTY flashes, PTY Standby reception is not yet activated. Tune in to another station (or service) providing the RDS signals.

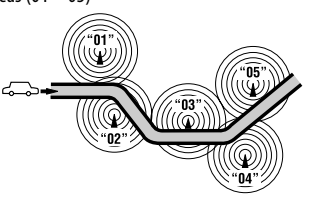
To deactivate PTY Standby Reception, select "Off" in step **2**. PTY goes off.

- The unit will not switch to Traffic Announcement or PTY programme when a call connection is established through "BT-PHONE."

Tracing the same programme—Network-Tracking Reception

When driving in an area where FM reception is not sufficient enough, this unit automatically tunes in to another FM RDS station of the same network, possibly broadcasting the same programme with stronger signals (see the illustration below).

Programme A broadcasting on different frequency areas (01 – 05)



When shipped from the factory, Network-Tracking Reception is activated.

To change the Network-Tracking Reception setting, see "AF-Regn'l" on page 27.

Automatic station selection—Programme Search

Usually when you press the number buttons, the preset station is tuned in.

If the signals from the FM RDS preset station are not sufficient for good reception, this unit, using the AF data, tunes in to another frequency broadcasting the same programme as the original preset station is broadcasting.

- The unit takes some time to tune in to another station using programme search.
- See also page 27.

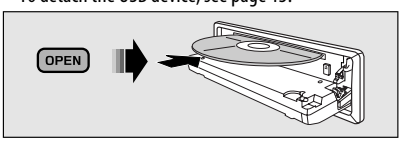
Disc operations

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

Caution:

Make sure to detach the USB device before opening the control panel, as it might block the opening mechanism.

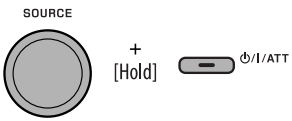
- To detach the USB device, see page 13.



To stop play and eject the disc

- Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.

Prohibiting disc ejection



To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure.

Pressing (or holding) the following buttons allows you to...

	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track
*1	MP3/WMA: Select folder
(Number buttons)*2	Locate particular folder*3 (for MP3/WMA disc) or track directly

*1 *By holding either one of the buttons, you can display the Folder List (see page 12).*

*2 *Press to select number 1 to 6; hold to select number 7 to 12.*

*3 *It is required that folders be assigned with 2-digit numbers at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.*

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks MP3/WMA: Within the same folder
	Repeat Track: Repeat current track **Repeat Folder:** MP3/WMA: Repeat current folder
	Random Folder: MP3/WMA: Randomly play all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Random Disc:** Randomly play all tracks

- You can also cancel the playback mode by selecting "**Off**" or press number button 4 (OFF).

Continued on the next page

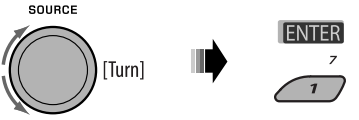
Selecting a folder/track on the list (only for MP3/WMA file)

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1

2 Select "LIST."

3 Select the list type.



Folder ↔ File

4 Select an item.

Ex.: When "File" is selected in step **3**

- You can move to the other lists by pressing number button 5 ( ) or 6 ( ) repeatedly.

5 Change to the selected item.

Ⓐ If File List is selected

The list disappears and playback starts.

Ⓑ If Folder List is selected

- If the current folder is selected, File List appears, then repeat steps **4** and **5** Ⓐ to start playback.
- If another folder is selected, playback starts from the 1st file of the selected folder.

Listening to the USB device

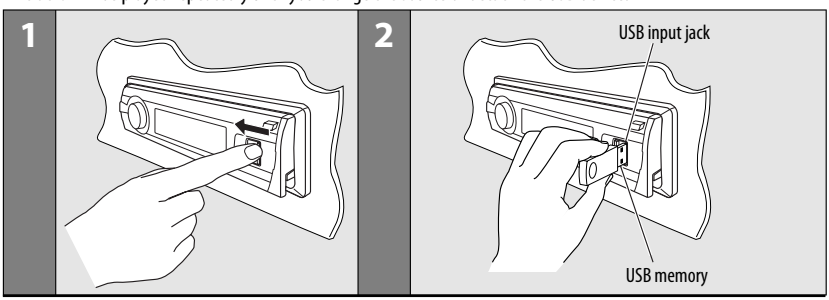
You can connect a USB mass storage class device such as a USB memory, Digital Audio Player*, portable HDD, etc. to the unit.

- You can also connect an Apple iPod to the USB input jack. For details of the operations, see pages 20 and 21.

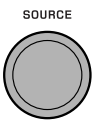
This unit can play MP3/WMA/WMA-DRM10*/WAV tracks stored in a USB device.

* *You can connect both MTP (Media Transfer Protocol) devices and USB mass storage class devices. See also page 33.*

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or detach the USB device.



If a USB device has been attached...



Playback starts from where it has been stopped previously.

- If a different USB device is currently attached, playback starts from the beginning.

To stop play and detach the USB device

Straightly pull it out from the unit.

- Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.

You can operate the USB device in the same way you operate the files on a disc. (See pages 11 and 12.)

- You can listen to WAV files by following the MP3/WMA files operations listed on pages 11 and 12.

Cautions:

- Avoid using the USB device if it might hinder your safety driving.
- Do not pull out and attach the USB device repeatedly while "Reading" is shown on the display.
- Do not start the car engine if a USB device is connected.
- This unit may not be able to play the files depending on the type of USB device.
- Operation and power supply may not work as intended for some USB devices.
- You cannot connect a computer to the USB input terminal of the unit.
- Make sure all important data has been backed up to avoid losing the data.
- Do not leave a USB device in the car, expose to direct sunlight, or high temperature to avoid deformation or cause damages to the device.
- Some USB devices may not work immediately after you turn on the power.
- For more details about USB operations, see page 33.

Using the Bluetooth® devices

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the **Bluetooth Adapter** (KS-BTA200) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to check the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.

- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO").

Registering a Bluetooth device

Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in the Bluetooth menu to register and establish the connection with a device.

- Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO" as the source to operate the Bluetooth menu.

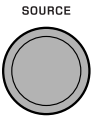
Open	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
Search	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the unit.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

Registering using "Open"

Preparation: Operate the device to turn on its Bluetooth function.

1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Select "NEW."

3 Enter setting menu.

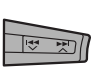
4 Select "Open."

5 Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number) code to the unit.

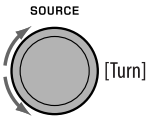
- You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number). [Initial: 0000]
- To enter a PIN code less than 4-digit, firstly delete the initial PIN code (0000) by pressing number button 5 (CLEAR).

* *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*

1 Move to the next (or previous) number position.



2 Select a number or blank space.



3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you finish entering a PIN code.

4 Confirm the entry.

"Open..." flashes on the display.

6 Use the Bluetooth device to search and connect.

On the device to be connected, enter the same PIN code you have just entered for this unit.
"Connected (and device name)" appears on the display.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use "**Connect**" (or activate "**Auto Connect**") to connect the same device from next time on. (See the following and page 30.)

Connecting a device

Perform steps **1** – **3** on page 14, then...

1 • **Select "Search" to search for available devices.**
The unit searches and displays the list of the available devices.
If no available device is detected, "Device Not Found" appears.

• **Select "Special" to connect a special device.**
The unit displays the list of the preset devices.

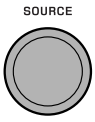
2 Select a device you want to connect.

3 • **For available devices...**
1 Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit.
Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code.
2 Use the Bluetooth device to connect.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

• **For special device...**
Use "Open" or "Search" to connect.

Connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device

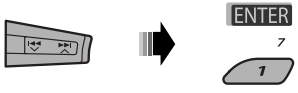
1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Select a registered device you want to connect/disconnect/delete.

3 Enter setting menu.

4 • **Select "Connect" or "Disconnect" to connect/disconnect the selected device.**



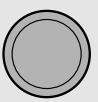
Continued on the next page

- **Select "Delete," then confirm the selection.**

Press number button 3 to select "No" or return to the previous screen.

You can set the unit to connect the Bluetooth device automatically when the unit is turned on. (See "**Auto Connect**" on page 30.)

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone

1		**Select "BT-PHONE."**
2		**Enter Bluetooth menu.**
3	—	**Establish the connection with a device, then make a call (or settings using the Bluetooth menu).**

When a call comes in....

The source is automatically changed to "BT-PHONE."

When "Auto Answer" is activated....

The unit answers the incoming calls automatically, see page 30.

- When "Auto Answer" is deactivated, press any button (except ⏻/I/ATT/control dial) to answer the incoming call.

To end the call

Hold any button (except ⏻/I/ATT/control dial).

- You can adjust the microphone volume level (see page 30).

When an SMS comes in....

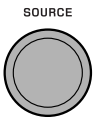
If the cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service) and "Message Info" is set to "Auto" (see page 30), the unit rings and "Received Message" appears on the display to inform you of the message arrival.

Making a call

You can make a call using one of the Dial Menu items.

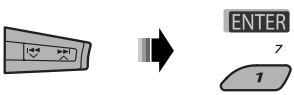
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Select "BT-PHONE."

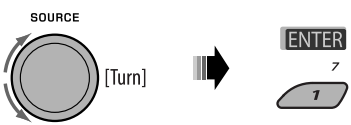


2 Enter setting menu.

3 Select "Dial Menu."



4 Select the method to make a call.



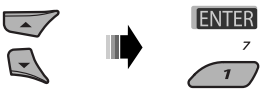
- **Redial***: Shows the list of the phone numbers you have dialed. Go to the following step.
- **Received***: Shows the list of the received calls. Go to the following step.
- **Phonebook***: Shows the phone book of the connected cellular phone. Go to the following step.
- **Missed***: Shows the list of the missed calls. Go to the following step.
- **Number**: Shows the phone number entry screen. See "How to enter phone number" on the right column.
- **Voice Dial** (Only accessible when the connected cellular phone has the voice recognition system): Speak the name (registered words) you want to call.

*** Displayed only when your cellular phone is equipped with these functions.**

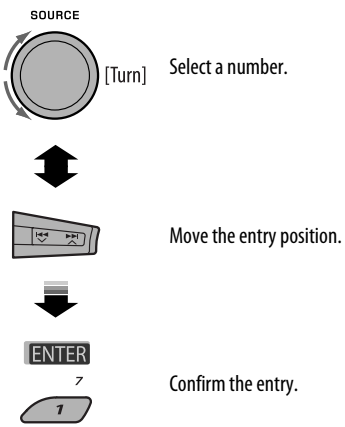
– If not displayed, try to transfer the phone book memory of the cellular phone to this unit. (Refer to the instruction manual supplied with your cellular phone.)

– With some cellular phones, the phone book memory is transferred automatically.

5 Select the name/phone number you want to call.



How to enter phone number



Continued on the next page

Using voice command

1 MODE / M — "Say..." appears on the display.

2 Speak the name (registered words) you want to call.

- You can also use voice command from the Dial Menu. Select "Voice Dial" from the Dial Menu.
- If your cellular phone does not support the voice recognition system, "Error" appears on the display.

Presetting the phone number

You can preset up to six phone numbers.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Display the phone number you want to preset by using one of the "Dial Menu" items.

2 Select a phone number.

You can also enter a new phone number (see also "How to enter phone number" on page 17) to store.

3 Select a preset number to store.

[Hold]

To call a preset number

While in Bluetooth phone....

Using the Bluetooth audio player

- Operations and display indications differ depending on their availability on the connected audio player.

SOURCE	**Select "BT-AUDIO."** If playback does not start automatically, operate the Bluetooth audio player to start playback.

	Reverse skip/forward skip
BAND	Start/pause playback
MODE / M	Enter setting menu (Device list)

- Refer also to pages 15 and 16 for connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device.

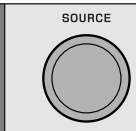
Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>.

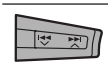
Listening to the CD changer

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit. You can connect a CD changer to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

- You can only play conventional CDs (including CD Text) and MP3 discs.

Preparation: Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 27.

1		**Select "CD-CH."**
2		**Select a disc to start playing.** [Press] For selecting disc number 1 – 6. [Hold] For selecting disc number 7 – 12.

	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track
*	MP3: Select folders

* *By holding either one of the buttons, you can display the Disc List (see page 12).*

To select a disc/folder/track on the list

See "Selecting a folder/track on the list (only for MP3/WMA file)" on page 12.

Select "Disc" in step **3** to display the Disc List of the CD changer.

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks MP3: Within the same folder
	Repeat Track: Repeat current track **Repeat Folder:** MP3: Repeat all tracks of current folder **Repeat Disc:** Repeat all tracks of the current disc
	Random Folder: MP3: Randomly play all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder **Random Disc:** Randomly play all tracks of current disc **Random All:** Randomly play all tracks of the discs in the magazine

- You can also cancel the playback mode by selecting "**Off**" or press number button 4 (OFF).

Listening to the iPod

You can play songs in an Apple iPod by:

– Connecting it with the USB cable supplied with your iPod to the USB input jack on the control panel.

– Connecting the Interface adapter for iPod, KS-PD100 (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

Preparation: Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 27.

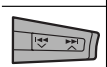
- You can control playback from the unit.
- Disconnecting the iPod will stop playback. Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.
- For details, refer also to the manual supplied for your iPod.

Caution:

- Avoid using the iPod if it might hinder your safety while driving.
- Make sure all important data has been backed up to avoid losing the data.

1	—	**Connect an iPod to the USB input jack or through KS-PD100.** Playback starts automatically from where it had been paused previously. • If an iPod has been connected, press SOURCE to select "USB-iPod" or "iPod" as the playback source.
2		**Select a track.**
3	—	**Adjust the volume and sound as you want. (See pages 23 and 24.)**

Playback control from the unit

Button	For iPod connected through KS-PD100	For iPod connected to the USB input jack
	[Press] Go to the next or previous track [Hold] Fast-forward or reverse the track during playback	[Press] Go to the next or previous track [Hold] Fast-forward or reverse the track during playback
	[Press] Enter main menu when you press ▲. Pause/resume playback when ▼ is pressed.	[Hold] Enter main menu [Press] Go to the top menu of "Playlists," "Artists," "Albums," "Songs," "Podcasts," "Genres," "Composers," or "Audiobooks" in the main menu. • Pressing the number buttons (1 – 6) or holding 1 (7) and 2 (8) can also select the preset top menus
	—	[Press] Pause/resume playback.

Selecting a track from the menu

No.	Operation	For iPod connected through KS-PD100	For iPod connected to the USB input jack
1	Enter the main menu.		[Hold]
2	Select the desired menu.	Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Genres ↔ Composers	Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Podcasts ↔ Genres ↔ Composers ↔ Audiobooks
3	Confirm the selection.	• By holding ⏮ ∨/⏭ ∧, you can fast skip during song search in the main menu.	• By holding ⏭ ∧, you can start play back the selected item directly. • By holding ⏮ ∨, you can go back to the previous menu. • By holding ▲/▼, you can fast skip in every layer of the main menu.
		• If a track is selected, playback starts automatically. • If the selected item has another layer, you will enter the layer. Repeat steps **2** and **3** until the desired track is played.	

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

RPT 8 2	**Repeat One:** Same as "Repeat One." **Repeat All:** Same as "Repeat All." **Repeat Off:** Cancels.
RND 9 3	**Random Album*:** Same as "Shuffle Albums." **Random Song:** Same as "Shuffle Songs." **Random Off:** Cancels.

* *Functions only if you select "All Albums" or "All" in "Albums" of the main "MENU."*

The menu selecting mode will be canceled:

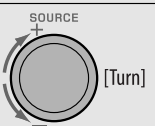
- If no operations are performed for about:
  - 5 seconds for iPod connected through KS-PD100.
  - 15 seconds for iPod connected to the USB input jack.
- When you confirm the selection of a track.

Listening to the other external components

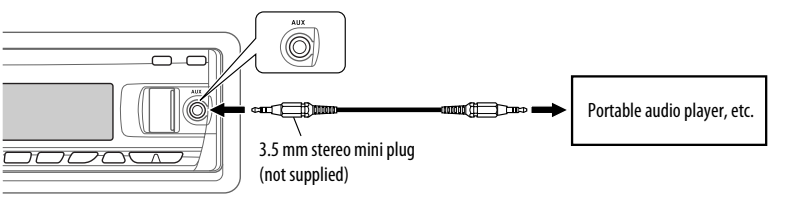
You can connect an external component to:

- CD changer jack on the rear of this unit using the following adapters:
  - **Line Input Adapter,** KS-U57
  - **AUX Input Adapter,** KS-U58

  Preparation: Make sure "Ext Input" is selected for the external input setting, see page 27.
- AUX (auxiliary) input jack on the control panel.

1		**Select "EXT IN" or "AUX IN."**
2	—	**Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**
3		**Adjust the volume.**
4	—	**Adjust the sound as you want (see pages 23 and 24).**

Connecting an external component to the AUX input jack



Selecting a preset sound mode

ENGLISH

You can select a preset sound mode suitable to the music genre (iEQ: intelligent equalizer).

1		**Enter setting menu.**
2		**Select "EQ."**
3		**Select a sound mode.** USER, ROCK, CLASSIC, POPS, HIP HOP, JAZZ

Preset value setting for each sound mode

Sound mode	Preset value								
	Bass			**Mid** (mid-range)			Treble		
	Freq.	**Level**	**Q**	**Freq.**	**Level**	**Q**	**Freq.**	**Level**	**Q**
USER	60 Hz	00	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	00	–
ROCK	100 Hz	+03	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	–
CLASSIC	80 Hz	+01	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	–
POPS	100 Hz	+02	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	+01	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	–
HIP HOP	60 Hz	+04	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	–02	Q1.0	10.0 kHz	+01	–
JAZZ	80 Hz	+03	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	–

Freq.: Frequency Q: Q-slope

Adjusting the sound

You can adjust the sound characteristics to your preference.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3 or 6.

1

2

EQ ↔ Fad/Bal ↔ Subwoofer* ↔ Loudness ↔ VolAdjust

- For "EQ" setting, see above.

* *Displayed only when "L/O Mode" is set to "Woofer" (see page 27).*

3 Adjust the selected setting item.

Ⓐ **Fad/Bal (Fader/Balance)**

1 Press number button 1 (SELECT) to move to the "Fad/Bal" adjustment display.

2 Adjust the speaker output balance by pressing:

▲ / ▼: between the front and rear speakers. [F6 to R6]

◄◄ ∨/►► ∧: between the left and right speakers. [L6 to R6]

Continued on the next page

Ⓑ **Subwoofer**

1 Press number button 1 (SELECT) to move to the "Subwoofer" adjustment display.

2 Use ⏮/⏭ to select a cutoff frequency to the subwoofer.

- OFF: All signals are sent to the subwoofer.
- 80Hz: Frequencies higher than 80 Hz are cut off.
- 120Hz: Frequencies higher than 120 Hz are cut off.
- 160Hz: Frequencies higher than 160 Hz are cut off.

3 Turn the control dial to adjust the subwoofer output level. [0 to 8]

4 Press number button 1 (MORE) to select the subwoofer phase. [0deg (normal) or 180deg (reverse)]

Ⓒ **VolAdjust,** [–5 to +5]
Turn the control dial to adjust the input level of each source (except FM).
Adjust to match the input level of the FM sound level.

- Before making an adjustment, select the source you want to adjust.

Ⓓ **Loudness,** [Off or On]
Turn the control dial to select "Off" or "On." When "On" is selected, low and high frequencies sound are boosted to produce a well-balanced sound at low volume level.

4 Exit from the setting.

Storing your own sound modes

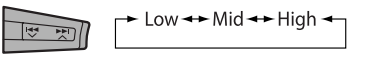
You can adjust the sound modes and store your own adjustments in memory.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 6.

1

2 Select a sound mode.

3 Select a frequency range.



4 Adjust the sound elements of the selected frequency range.

1 Use ▲ / ▼ to adjust the level.

2 Press number button 5 (FREQ), then turn the control dial to select the frequency.

3 Press number button 5 (Q), then turn the control dial to select the quality slope (Q).

Sound elements	Range/selectable items		
	Low	Mid	High
Frequency	60 Hz 80 Hz 100 Hz 200 Hz	500 Hz 1 kHz 1.5 kHz 2.5 kHz	10 kHz 12.5 kHz 15 kHz 17.5 kHz
Level	–6 to +6	–6 to +6	–6 to +6
Q (Q-slope)	Q1.0 Q1.25 Q1.5 Q2.0	Q0.5 Q0.75 Q1.0 Q1.25	Fix

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to adjust the other frequency bands.

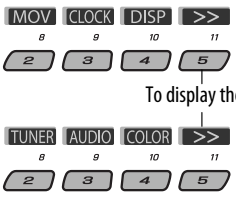
6 Store the adjustments.

General settings—PSM

You can change PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) items listed in the table below and on pages 26 – 28.

1 Enter the PSM settings.

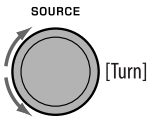
2 Select a PSM category.



3 Select a PSM item.

By pressing either one of the buttons repeatedly, you can also move to the item of the other categories.

4 Adjust the selected PSM item.



5 Repeat steps 2 – 4 to adjust other PSM items if necessary.

6 Finish the procedure.

Category	Indication	Item (__ : Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
MOV (movie)	**Demo** Display demonstration	• **On**	: Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [4].
		• **Off**	: Cancels.
	LevelMeter Audio level meter	• **Meter 1**	: Select the different level meter patterns.
		• **Meter 2**	• Press DISP to show the selected level meter.
CLOCK	**Clock Disp***1 Clock display	• **On**	: Clock time is shown on the display when the power is turned off.
		• **Off**	: Cancels; pressing DISP will show the clock time for about 5 seconds when the power is turned off, [4].

*1 *If the power supply is not interrupted by turning off the ignition key of your car, it is recommended to select "Off" to save the car's battery.*

Continued on the next page

Category	Indication	Item (__ : Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
CLOCK	**Clock Hr** Hour adjustment	**0 – 23** **(1 – 12AM/** **1 – 12PM)**	: Initial: 0 (0:00AM), [4].
	Clock Min Minute adjustment	**00 – 59**	: Initial: 00 (0:00AM), [4].
	24H/12H Time display mode	• **12Hours** • **24Hours**	: See also page 4 for setting.
	Clock Adj Clock adjustment	• **Auto** • **Off**	: The built-in clock is automatically adjusted using the CT (clock time) data in the RDS signal. : Cancels.
DISP (display)	**Scroll***2 Scroll	• **Once** • **Auto** • **Off**	: Scrolls the track information once. : Repeats scrolling (at 5-second intervals). : Cancels. (Holding DISP can scroll the display regardless of the setting.)
	Dimmer Dimmer	• **Auto** • **Off** • **On** • **Time Set**	: Dims the display when you turn on the headlights. : Cancels. : Dims the display and button illumination. : Set the timer for dimmer, [28].
	From – To*3	—	Any hour – Any hour : Initial: 18 – 7.
	Contrast Contrast	**1 – 8** Initial: 5	: Adjust the display contrast to make the display indications clear and legible.
	LCD Type Display type	• **Auto** • **Positive** • **Negative**	: Positive pattern will be selected during the day time*4; while negative pattern will be used during the night time*4. : Positive pattern of the display. : Negative pattern of the display.
	Tag Tag display	• **On** • **Off**	: Shows the tag while playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks. : Cancels.

*2 *Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.*

*3 *Adjustable only when "Dimmer" is set to "Time Set."*

*4 *Depends on the "Dimmer" setting.*

Category	Indication	Item (__: Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
TUNER	**AF-Regn'l** Alternative frequency/ regionalization reception	• **AF**	: When the currently received signals become weak, the unit switches to another station or service (the programme may differ from the one currently received), [10].
		• **AF REG**	: When the currently received signals become weak, the unit switches to another station broadcasting the same programme.
		• **Off**	: Cancels.
	TA Volume Traffic announcement volume	• **Volume 0 – Volume 30** • **Volume 0 – Volume 50***5	: Initial: Volume 15
	P-Search Programme search	• **On**	: Activates Programme Search, [10].
		• **Off**	: Cancels.
	IF Band Intermediate frequency band	• **Auto**	: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.)
		• **Wide**	: Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
AUDIO	**Ext Input***6 External input	• **Changer**	: To use a JVC CD changer, [19], or an Apple iPod, [20].
		• **Ext In**	: To use any other external component, [22].
	Telephone Telephone muting	• **Muting1/ Muting2**	: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using a cellular phone.
		• **Off**	: Cancels.
			• Playback pauses/mutes while telephone muting is working.
	AudioBooks*7 Speed control of "Audiobook"	• **Normal**	: You can select the playback speed of the "Audiobook" sound file in your iPod.
		• **Faster**	
		• **Slower**	• Initial selected item depends on your iPod setting.
	L/O Mode Line output mode	• **Rear**	: Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting the rear speakers (through an external amplifier).
		• **Woofer**	: Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting a subwoofer (through an external amplifier).
	Amp Gain Amplifier gain control	• **High PWR**	: Volume 00 – Volume 50
		• **Low PWR**	: Volume 00 – Volume 30 (Select if the maximum power of each speaker is less than 50 W to prevent damaging the speaker.)

*5 *Depends on the amplifier gain control.*

*6 *Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—TUNER, CD, USB, or Bluetooth.*

*7 *Displayed only when an iPod is connected to the USB input jack and playback is controlled from the unit.*

Continued on the next page

Category	Indication	Item (__ : Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
COLOR	**Color Sel** Color selection	Initial: All Source; Color: Pale	: Select your favorite display color for each source (or for all sources), [28, 29].
	Color Set Color setting	—	: Create your own colors, and select them for the display color, [29].
		Day Color	: User color during the day time*8.
		NightColor	: User color during the night time*8.
	Red	**00 — 11**	: Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05
	Green	**00 — 11**	: Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05
	Blue	**00 — 11**	: Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05
	Key Illum Illumination switch	• **Red** • **Green**	: You can select the button illumination according to your preference.

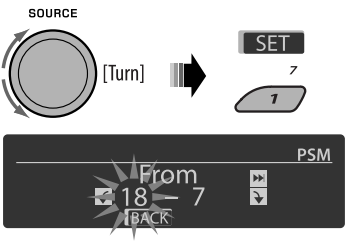
*8 *Depends on the "Dimmer" setting.*

Setting the time for dimmer

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 25.
- In step **2**, select "DISP."
- In step **3**, select "Dimmer."

2 Select "Time Set."



3 Adjust the dimmer start time.

1 Turn the control dial to set the dimmer start time.

2 Press ►►I ^ to select "To." Then, turn the control dial to set the dimmer end time.

4 Exit from the setting.

Changing the display color

You can select your favorite display color for each source (or all sources).

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3 or 6.

Setting the display color

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 25.
- In step **2**, select "COLOR."
- In step **3**, select "Color Sel."

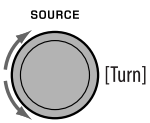
2

3 Select a source.

All Source*1 ↔ **CD** ↔ **Changer***3 (or **Ext In***2) ↔ **USB***3 ↔ **FM** ↔ **AM** ↔ **iPod***3 ↔ **Aux In** ↔ **BT Phone***3 ↔ **BT Audio***3 ↔ (back to the beginning)

*1 *When you select "All Source," you can use the same color for all the sources.*
*2 *Depends on the "Ext Input" setting, see page 27.*
*3 *Displayed only when the target component is connected.*

4 Select a color.



Pale ↔ Aqua ↔ Sky ↔ Sea ↔ Leaves ↔ Grass ↔ Apple ↔ Rose ↔ Amber ↔ Honey ↔ Violet ↔ Grape ↔ Every*4 ↔ **User***5 ↔ (back to the beginning)

*4 *The color changes every 2 seconds.*
*5 *The user-edited colors—"Day Color" and "NightColor" will be applied (see the right column for details).*

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to select the color for each source (except when selecting "All Source" in step 3).

6 Exit from the setting.

Creating your own color—User Color

You can create your own colors—"Day Color" or "NightColor."

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 25.
- In step **2**, select "COLOR."
- In step **3**, select "Color Set."

2 Select "Day Color" or "NightColor."

3 Select a primary color.

4 Adjust the level (00 to 11) of the selected primary color.

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to adjust other primary colors.

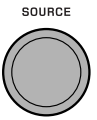
6 Exit from the setting.

Bluetooth settings

You can change the settings listed on the right column according to your preference.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

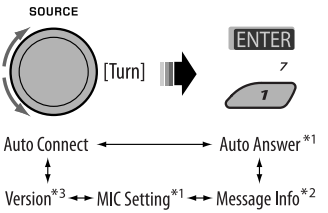
1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Enter the Bluetooth menu.

3 Select "Setting."

4 Select a setting item.

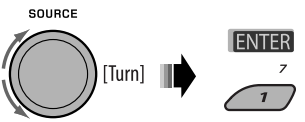


*1 *Displayed only when a Bluetooth phone is connected.*

*2 *Displayed only when a Bluetooth phone is connected and it is compatible with text message.*

*3 *Bluetooth Audio: Shows only "Version."*

5 Change the setting accordingly.



Setting menu (__ : Initial)

Auto Connect

When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with...

Off: No Bluetooth device.
Last: The last connected Bluetooth device.
Order: The available registered Bluetooth device found at first.

Auto Answer

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

On: The unit answers the incoming calls automatically.
Off: The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually.
Reject: The unit rejects all incoming calls.

Message Info

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

Auto: The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "Received Message."
Manual: The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.

MIC setting (microphone setting)

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."
Adjust the built-in microphone volume, [LEVEL 01/02/03].

Version

The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

More about this unit

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback also starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a track, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously next time you turn on the power.

General

- If you change the source while listening to a disc, playback stops.
  Next time you select "CD" as the playback source, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously.
- After ejecting a disc or removing a USB device, "No Disc" or "No USB" appears and you cannot operate some of the buttons. Insert another disc, reattach a USB device, or press SOURCE to select another playback source.

FM/AM/RDS

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
  – All previously stored stations are erased and the stations are stored anew.
  – Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
  – When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, the previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

FM RDS operations

- Network-Tracking Reception requires two types of RDS signals—PI (Programme Identification) and AF (Alternative Frequency) to work correctly. Without receiving these data correctly, Network-Tracking Reception will not operate correctly.
- If a Traffic Announcement is received by TA Standby Reception, the volume level automatically changes to the preset level (TA Volume) if the current level is lower than the preset level.
- When Alternative Frequency Reception is activated (with AF selected), Network-Tracking Reception is also activated automatically.
- If you want to know more about RDS, visit <http://www.rds.org.uk>.

Disc/USB operations

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

General

- This unit has been designed to reproduce CDs/CD Texts, and CD-Rs (Recordable)/CD-RWs (Rewritable) in audio CD (CD-DA), MP3 and WMA formats.
- When a disc is inserted upside down, "Please Eject" appears on the display. Press OPEN, then ⏏ to eject the disc.
- In this manual, words "track" and "file" are interchangeably used.
- While fast-forwarding or reversing on MP3/WMA/WAV files, you can only hear intermittent sounds.

Continued on the next page

- File/folder list may not appear correctly if too many hierarchies and folders are used.
- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot again to protect it from dust. Playback starts automatically.

Playing a CD-R or CD-RW

- Use only "finalized" CD-Rs or CD-RWs.
- This unit can only play back files of the same type as those which are detected first if a disc includes both audio CD (CD-DA) files and MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some CD-Rs or CD-RWs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, or for the following reasons:
  – Discs are dirty or scratched.
  – Moisture condensation has occurred on the lens inside the unit.
  – The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
  – The files on the CD-R/CD-RW are written using the "Packet Write" method.
  – There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stained, scratched, warped, etc.).
- CD-RWs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of CD-RWs is lower than that of regular CDs.
- Do not use the following CD-Rs or CD-RWs:
  – Discs with stickers, labels, or a protective seal stuck to the surface.
  – Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

  Using these discs under high temperature or high humidity may cause malfunctions or damage to the unit.

Playing an MP3/WMA disc

- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3 files and for WMA files.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files meeting the conditions below:

  MP3:
  – Bit rate: 8 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz, 12 kHz, 11.025 kHz, 8 kHz

  WMA:
  – Bit rate: 32 kbps — 192 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz
  – Disc format: ISO 9660 Level 1/Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names vary depending on the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3> or <.wma>).
  – ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
  – ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
  – Romeo*: up to 128 characters
  – Joliet*: up to 64 characters
  – Windows long file name*: up to 128 characters

* *The parenthetic figure is the maximum number of characters for file/folder names in case the total number of files and folders is 271 or more.*

- This unit can recognize a total of 512 files, 200 folders, and 8 hierarchical levels.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).

  Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in the elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. In particular, this difference becomes noticeable after performing the search function.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded in MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriate format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded in lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.

- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks from a USB device

- Connecting a USB device automatically changes the source to "USB."
- While playing from a USB device, the playback order may differ from the one from other players.
- This unit may be unable to play back some USB devices or some files due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- Depending on the shape of the USB devices and connection ports, some USB devices may not be attached properly or the connection might be loose.
- When connecting a USB mass storage class device, refer also to its instructions.
- Connect one USB mass storage class device to the unit at a time. Do not use a USB hub.
- You can connect two types of USB device to this unit—MTP device and Mass storage class device. If you connect an MTP device featuring "USB digital media streaming" to this unit, you can play back the WMA-DRM10 (Digital Right Management) files purchased through the music distributing web sites, through this unit.
- This unit is compatible with the USB Full-Speed.
- If the connected USB device does not have the correct files, "No File" appears.
- This unit can show ID3 Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3 and WMA/WAV Tag.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA/WAV files meeting the conditions below:
  MP3:
  – Bit rate: 32 kbps — 320 kbps (MPEG-1)
    8 kbps — 160 kbps (MPEG-2)
  – Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
  WMA:
  – Bit rate: 5 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 8 kHz — 48 kHz
  – Channel: 1 ch/2 ch
  WAV:
  – Bit rate: Linear PCM at 705 kbps and 1 411 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 44.1 kHz
  – Channel: 1 ch/2 ch
- This unit can play back MP3 files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- The maximum number of characters for folder and file names is 25 characters; 128 characters for MP3/WMA/WAV Tag.
- This unit can recognize a total of 20 000 files and 2 000 folders (999 files per folder). However, the display can shows until 9 999 folders/files.
- The unit cannot recognize a USB mass storage class device whose rating is other than 5 V and exceeds 500 mA.
- USB devices equipped with special functions such as data security functions cannot be used with the unit.
- Do not use a USB device with 2 or more partitions.
- This unit may not recognized a USB device connected through a USB card reader.
- This unit may not play back files in a USB device properly when using a USB extension cord.
- This unit cannot assure proper functions or supply power to all types of USB devices.

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on the circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

Continued on the next page

appears when the connection is established.

	Appears when the Bluetooth phone is connected.
	Appears when the Bluetooth audio player is connected.
	Appears when the Bluetooth phone and Bluetooth audio player are connected.

Icons for phone types

These icons indicate the phone type set on the device:

: Cellular phone	: General
: Household phone	: Other than above
: Office	: Unknown

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **Connection Error:**
  The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use "Connect" to connect the device again. (See page 15.)
- **Error**
  Try the operation again. If "Error" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **Device Not Found**
  No available Bluetooth device is detected by "Search...".
- **Loading...**
  The unit is updating the phone book and/or text messages.
- **Please Wait...**
  The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **Reset 08**
  Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

iPod

- Controllable iPod (connected through....):
  (A) KS-PD100:
  – iPod with dock connector (3rd Generation)
  – iPod with click wheel (4th Generation)
  – iPod nano (1st & 2nd*1 Generation)
  – iPod mini (1st Generation)
  – iPod video (5th Generation)*2
  – iPod photo
  (B) USB input jack:
  – iPod nano (1st & 2nd Generation)
  – iPod video (5th Generation)

*1 *When you connect the iPod nano to the interface adapter, be sure to disconnect the headphones; otherwise, no sound is heard.*

*2 *It is not possible to browse video files on the "Videos" menu while the iPod is connected to the interface adapter.*

- Update your iPod to the latest software version before using it with this unit.
  – You can check the software version of your iPod under "About" in the "Setting" menu of the iPod.
  – For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- While the unit is being turned on, the iPod is charged through this unit.
- While connecting an iPod with Video:
  – No video shows on the iPod's display or the external monitor (only the audio part is available).
  – It is not possible to browse video files on the "Video" menu. (If you connect the iPod during the playback or pausing of a video file, resuming playback will not work.)
- iPod shuffle and iPhone cannot be used with this unit.
- You can control the iPod from this unit when "JVC" or "√" appears on the iPod display after connection.
- The song order displayed on the selection menu of this unit may differ from that of the iPod.
- If playback is stopped, select a track from the selection menu or press BAND to play back the same track again.

- The text information may not be displayed correctly:
  – Some characters such as accented letters cannot be shown correctly on the display.
  – Communication between the iPod and the unit is not stable.
- If the text information includes more than 16 characters, it scrolls on the display. This unit can display up to 128 characters.

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>

General settings—PSM

- "Auto" setting for "Dimmer" may not work correctly on some vehicles, particularly on those having a control dial for dimming. In this case, change the "Dimmer" setting to any other than "Auto."
- If "LCD Type" is set to "Auto," the display pattern will change to the "Positive" or "Negative" pattern depending on the "Dimmer" setting.
- If you change the "Amp Gain" setting from "High PWR" to "Low PWR" while the volume level is set higher than "Volume 30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "Volume 30."

Available PTY codes
News, Affairs, Info, Sport, Educate, Drama, Culture, Science, Varied, Pop M (music), Rock M (music), Easy M (music), Light M (music), Classics, Other M (music), Weather, Finance, Children, Social, Religion, Phone In, Travel, Leisure, Jazz, Country, Nation M (music), Oldies, Folk M (music), Document

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).
	• "Connect Error" appears on the display.	Remove the control panel, wipe the connector, then attach it again (see page 38).
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the aerial firmly.
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played back. • Tracks on the CD-R/CD-RW cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized CD-R/CD-RW. • Finalize the CD-R/CD-RW with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc can neither be played back nor ejected.	• Unlock the disc (see page 11). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 3).

Continued on the next page

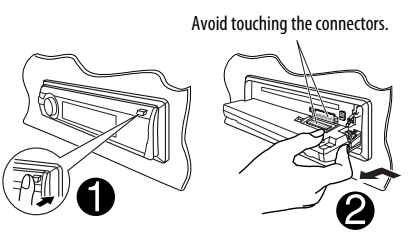
	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Disc playback	• Disc sound is sometimes interrupted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
	• Disc cannot be recognized ("No Disc," "CD Loading Error," or "Eject Error" flashes).	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 3).
	• "Please Eject" appears on the display.	This occurs sometimes due to over-heating. Eject the disc or change to another playback source.
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Use a disc with MP3/WMA tracks recorded in a format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet. • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• A longer readout time is required ("Reading" keeps flashing on the display).	Do not use too many hierarchical levels and folders.
	• Tracks do not play back in the order you have intended them to play.	The playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	• The elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc (eg. variable bit rate).
	• "Please Eject" appears on the display.	Insert a disc that contains MP3/WMA tracks.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	Skip to the next track encoded in an appropriate format or to the next non-copy-protected WMA track.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can display Roman alphabets, Cyrillic alphabets, numbers and symbols (see page 2).
USB device	• Noise is generated.	• The track played back is not a playable file format (MP3/WMA/WAV). Skip to another file. • Do not add the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav> to non-MP3/WMA/WAV tracks.
	• Tracks cannot play back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differs from the one played back using other players.
	• "Reading" keeps flashing on the display.	• Readout time varies depending on the USB device. • Do not use too many hierarchy, folders and empty folders.* • Turn off the power then on again. • Do not pull out or connect the USB device repeatedly while "Reading" is displayed on the display. * *Folder that is phisically empty or folder that contains data but does not contain valid MP3/WMA/WAV track.*

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
USB device	• "No File" flashes on the display. • "No USB" appears on the display.	Connect a USB device that contains tracks encoded in an appropriate format.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	The track is unplayable.
	• "Read failed" appears on the display.	The connected USB device may be malfunctioning, or may not have been formatted correctly. The files included in the USB device are corrupted.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	For available characters, see page 2.
	• While playing a track, sound is sometimes interrupted.	The tracks have not been properly copied into the USB device. Copy tracks again into the USB device, and try again.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a USB device.	• Turn off, then turn on the unit. • Connect the device again, when the sound is not yet restored.
Bluetooth®	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	The unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio device at a time. While connecting a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device. After the device detects the unit, select "Open..." on the unit to connect the device. (See page 14.)
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. • Select the device name from "Special," then try to connect again. (See page 15.)
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to a place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a Bluetooth audio player.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio player. • Disconnect the device connected for "BT-PHONE." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • Connect the player again, when the sound is not yet restored.
	• The connected audio player cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio player supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile). (Operations depend on the connected audio player.)

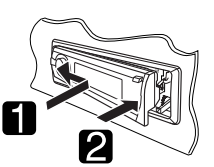
Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).
iPod	• The iPod does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version. • Charge the battery.
	• The sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the display.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Charge the battery.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation (see page 20).
	• No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano.	• Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano. • Update the firmware version of the iPod nano.
	• "No File" appears on the display.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the display.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect it again.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the display.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.

Detaching the control panel



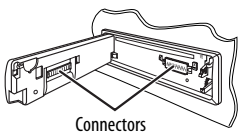
Attaching the control panel



Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors. To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connectors

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture has evaporated.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc in its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs in cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvents (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:

Single CD (8 cm disc)

Warped disc

Sticker and sticker residue

Stick-on label

Unusual shape

- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Tone Control Range:	Bass:	±12 dB (60 Hz, 80 Hz, 100 Hz, 200 Hz)
		Mid-range	±12 dB (500 Hz, 1.0 kHz, 1.5 kHz, 2.5 kHz)
		Treble:	±12 dB (10.0 kHz, 12.5 kHz, 15.0 kHz, 17.5 kHz)
	Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Signal to Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Audio Output Level:	Line-Out Level/Impedance:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
		Subwoofer-Out Level/Impedance:	2.5 V /20 kΩ load (full scale)
	Other Terminals:	CD changer jack, AUX (auxiliary) input jack, USB input jack, Aerial input	

TUNER SECTION	Frequency Range:	FM1/FM2:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		FM3:	65.00 MHz to 74.00 MHZ
		AM:	MW: 522 kHz to 1 620 kHz LW: 144 kHz to 279 kHz
	FM Tuner:	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 µV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	30 dB
	MW Tuner:	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 µV/35 dB
	LW Tuner:	Sensitivity:	50 µV

CD PLAYER SECTION	Type:		Compact disc player
	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)	
	Number of Channels:		2 channels (stereo)
	Frequency Response:		5 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Dynamic Range:		96 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		98 dB
	Wow and Flutter:		Less than measurable limit
	MP3 Decoding Format: (MPEG1/2 Audio Layer 3)	Max. Bit Rate:	320 kbps
	WMA (Windows Media® Audio) Decoding Format:	Max. Bit Rate:	320 kbps

USB SECTION	USB Standard:		USB 1.1, USB 2.0
	Data Transfer Rate (Full Speed):	Full Speed:	Max. 12 Mbps
		Low Speed:	Max. 1.5 Mbps
	Compatible Device:		Mass storage class
	Compatible File System:		FAT 32/16/12
	Playable Audio Format:		MP3/WMA/WAV
	Max. Current:		500 mA/5V

GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
	Grounding System:		Negative ground
	Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C
	Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 52 mm × 160 mm
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 58 mm × 12 mm
	Mass (approx.):		1.4 kg (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

Затруднения при эксплуатации?

Пожалуйста, перезагрузите Ваше устройство

Для получения информации о перезагрузке Вашего устройства обратитесь на соответствующую страницу

Маєте ПРОБЛЕМУ з функціонуванням?

Повторно налаштуйте систему

Див. сторінку “Як повторно налаштувати пристрій”

JVC

Віктор Компані оф Джепен Лімітед
12, 3-чоме, Морійя-чо, Канагава-ку, Йокогама, Канагава 221-8520, Японія

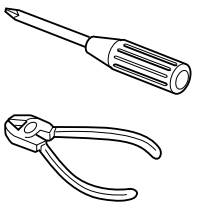
EN, RU, UK

© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0108DTSMDTJEIN

KD-G847

Installation/Connection Manual
Руководство по установке/подключению
Керівництво зі встановлення та з'єднання



GET0525-002A
[EE]

0108DTSMDTJEIN
EN, RU, UK

© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealers.

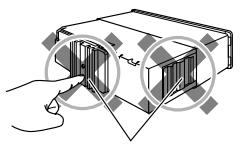
WARNINGS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with a maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4** Ω **to 8** Ω). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "AMP GAIN" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 27 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



Heat sink / Радиатор / Радіатор

РУССКИЙ

Это устройство разработано для эксплуатации на **12 В постоянного напряжения с минусом на массе**. Если Ваш автомобиль не имеет этой системы, требуется инвертор напряжения, который может быть приобретен у дилера автомобилнего специалиста JVC.

ПРЕДУПРЕЖДЕНИЯ

Для предотвращения коротких замыканий мы рекомендуем Вам отсоединить отрицательный разъем аккумулятора и осуществить все подключения перед установкой устройства.

- **После установки обязательно заземлите данное устройство на шасси автомобиля.**

Примечания:

- Заменяйте предохранитель другим предохранителем указанного класса. Если предохранитель сгорает слишком часто, обратитесь к дилеру автомобилнего специалиста JVC.
- Рекомендуется подключать динамики с максимальной мощностью более 50 Вт (к задней и передней панели устройства, с полным сопротивлением от **4** Ω **до 8** Ω). Если максимальная мощность динамиков менее 50 Вт, перейдите в режим "AMP GAIN", чтобы предотвратить их повреждение (см. ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ на стр. 27).
- Для предотвращения коротких замыканий обмотайте терминалы НЕИСПОЛЬЗУЕМЫХ проводов изоляционной лентой.
- Радиатор во время использования сильно нагревается. Старайтесь его не трогать во время удаления устройства.

УКРАЇНА

Цей пристрій призначений для роботи під напругою **12 В постійного струму; з електричними системами, що мають заземлення ВІД'ЄМНОГО полюсу**. Якщо ваше авто не оснащене такою системою, потрібно використовувати інвертор напруги, який можна придбати у дилерів устаткування JVC для автомобілів.

ПОПЕРЕДЖЕННЯ

Для запобігання коротким замиканням рекомендується перед встановленням пристрою відключити від'ємну клему акумулятора та виконати усі електричні з'єднання.

- **Переконайтеся у тому, що після закінчення встановлення пристрою, виконано його заземлення на шасі авто.**

Примітки:

- Заміняти запобіжник можна тільки запобіжником із вказаними у специфікації номінальними характеристиками. Якщо запобіжники часто виходять з ладу, проконсультуйтеся з дилером устаткування JVC для автомобілів.
- Рекомендується підключати гучномовці з максимальною потужністю, що перевищує 50 Вт (як для розташованих спереду, так і для тих, що розміщуються позаду. Рекомендований діапазон опору: від **4 до 8** Ом). У разі, якщо потужність є меншою чим 50 Вт, змініть налаштування "AMP GAIN" (коефіцієнт підсилення) задля запобігання пошкодженню гучномовців (див. стор. 27 "ІНСТРУКЦІЇ").
- Для запобігання коротким замиканням, заізолюйте клеми провідника, ЩО НЕ ВИКОРИСТОВУЄТЬСЯ, ізоляційною стрічкою.
- По закінчені роботи радіатор стає надто гарячим. Будьте обережні, не торкайтесь його при видалені цього пристрою.

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

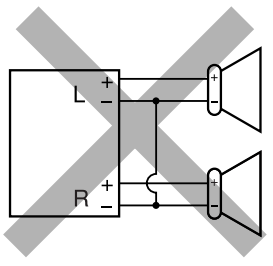
- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

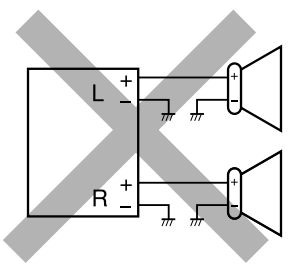
ПРЕДОСТЕРЕЖЕНИЯ по питанию и подключению громкоговорителей:

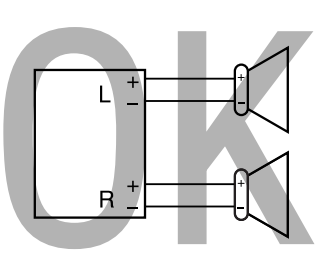
- **НЕ подключайте провода громкоговорителей к аккумулятору автомобиля, иначе устройство будет повреждено.**
- ПЕРЕД подключением проводов громкоговорителей к кабелю питания громкоговорителя проверьте схему соединений громкоговорителей в Вашем автомобиле.

ЗАСТЕРЕЖЕННЯ щодо приєднання джерела живлення та гучномовців:

- **НЕ з'єднуйте провідники живлення гучномовців з акумулятором. Невиконання такої вимоги призведе до тяжкого ушкодження пристрою.**
- ПЕРЕД тим, як з'єднати провідники живлення з гучномовцями, перевірте схему з'єднання гучномовців вашого авто.







Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit.
If any item is missing, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer immediately.

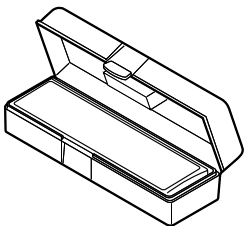
Список деталей для установки и подключения

Следующие детали поставлены в комплекте с устройством.
При отсутствии какого-либо элемента немедленно свяжитесь с дилером автомобильного специалиста JVC.

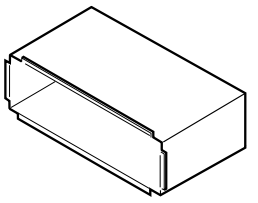
Перелік деталей для встановлення та з'єднання

У комплекті з цим пристроєм надаються такі деталі.
Якщо будь-яка з цих деталей відсутня, негайно зверніться до дилера устаткування JVC для автомобілів.

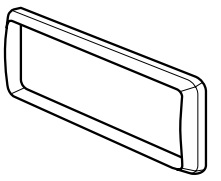
Ⓐ / Ⓑ
Hard case/Control panel
Жесткий футляр/панель управления
Жорсткий футляр/
Панель управління



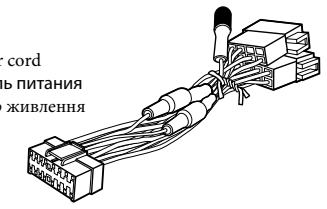
Ⓒ
Sleeve
Муфта
Екран



Ⓓ
Trim plate
Декоративную панель
Знімна пластина



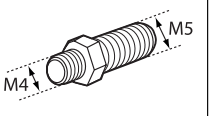
Ⓔ
Power cord
Кабель питания
Шнур живлення



Ⓕ
Washer (ø5)
Шайба (ь5)
Шайба (ø5)

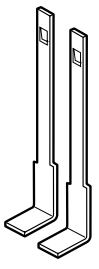
Ⓖ
Lock nut (M5)
Фиксирующая гайка (M5)
Стопорна гайка (M5)

Ⓗ
Mounting bolt
(M4 × 5 mm; M5 × 12.5 mm)
Крепежный болт
(M4 × 5 мм; M5 × 12.5 мм)
Монтажний болт
(M4 × 5 мм; M5 × 12.5 мм)

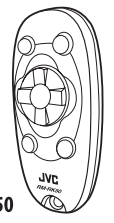


Ⓘ
Rubber cushion
Резиновый чехол
Гумова прокладка

Ⓙ
Handles
Рычаги
Ручки



Ⓚ
Remote controller
дистанционного управления
Пульт дистанційного керування



RM-RK50

Ⓛ
Battery
Батарейка
Батарея

CR2025

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

УСТАНОВКА (УСТАНОВКА В ПРИБОРНУЮ ПАНЕЛЬ)

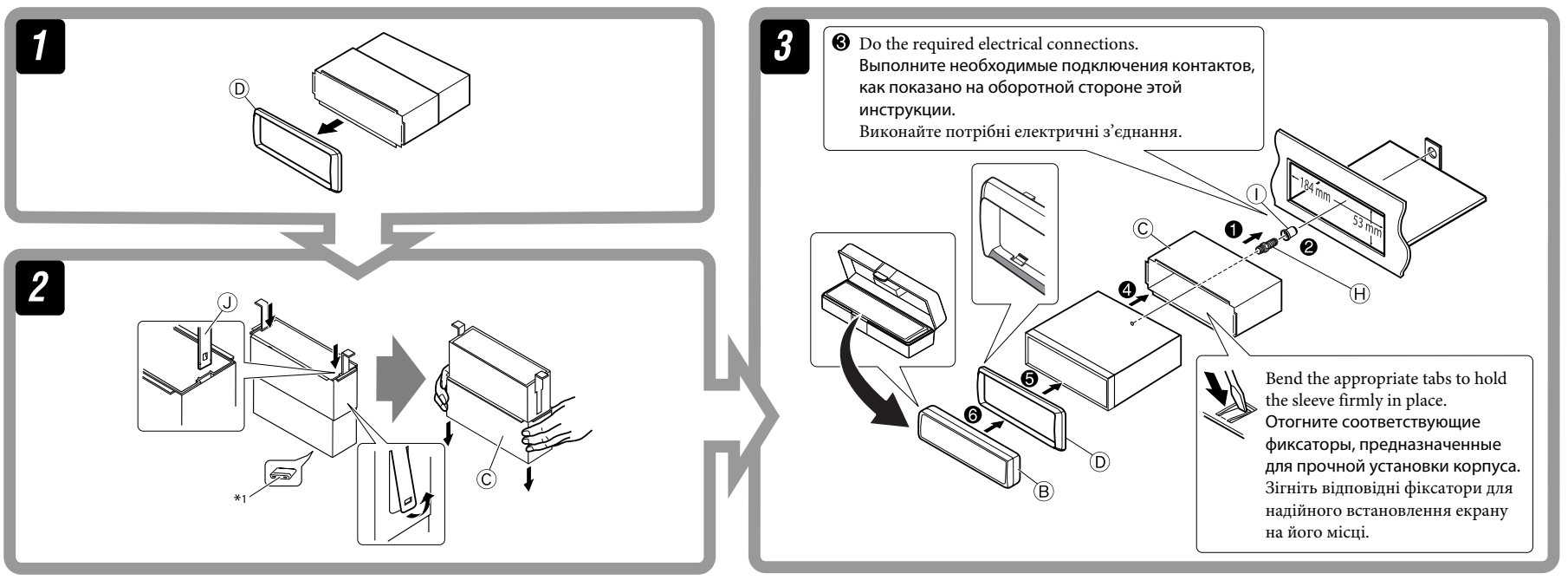
На следующих иллюстрациях показана типовая установка. Если у Вас есть какие-либо вопросы, касающиеся установки, обратитесь к Вашему дилеру автомобилнего специалиста JVC или в компанию, поставляющую соответствующие принадлежности.

- Если Вы не знаете точно, как следует устанавливать это устройство, обратитесь к квалифицированному специалисту.

ВСТАНОВЛЕННЯ (МОНТАЖ НА ПРИЛАДОВУ ПАНЕЛЬ)

Наведена нижче ілюстрація демонструє типовий процес встановлення. У разі будь яких запитань або потреби у інформації щодо набору інструментів та спорядження, проконсультуйтеся з дилером устаткування JVC для автомобілів або з компанією, що постачає набір інструментів та спорядження.

- Якщо ви не впевнені щодо правильності встановлення цього пристрою, залучіть до його встановлення кваліфікованого спеціаліста.



Removing the unit

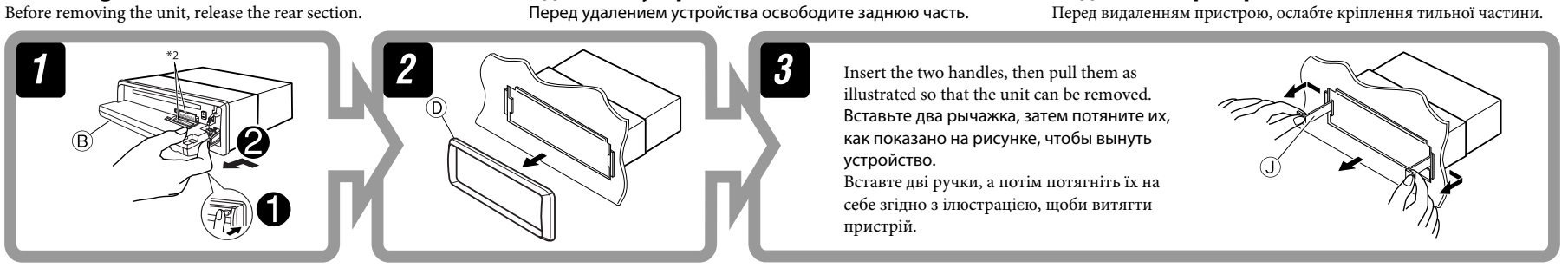
Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

Удаление устройства

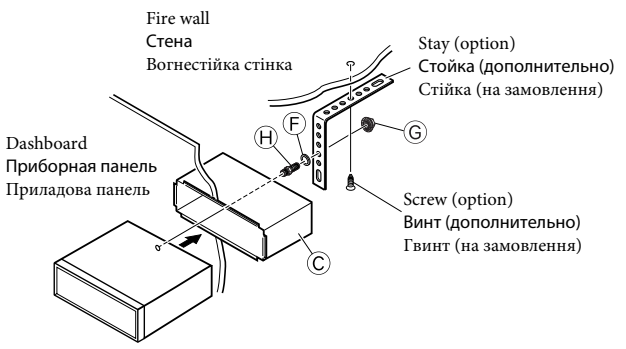
Перед удалением устройства освободите заднюю часть.

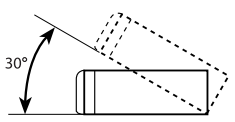
Видалення пристрою

Перед видаленням пристрою, ослабте кріплення тильної частини.


1
*2
B
2
1
2
D
3
Insert the two handles, then pull them as illustrated so that the unit can be removed.
Вставьте два рычажка, затем потяните их, как показано на рисунке, чтобы вынуть устройство.
Вставте дві ручки, а потім потягніть їх на себе згідно з ілюстрацією, щоби витягти пристрій.
J

When using the optional stay / При использовании дополнительной стойки / Використання додаткової стійки (постачається за окремим замовленням)

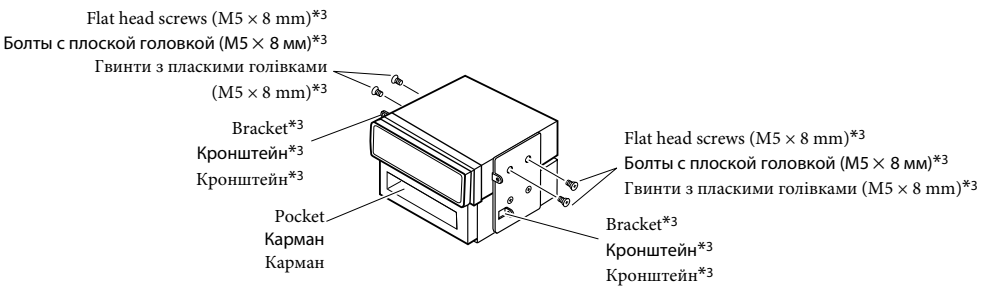




Install the unit at an angle of less than 30°.
Установите устройство под углом менее 30°.
Встановіть пристрій під кутом меншим, ніж 30°.

When installing the unit without using the sleeve / При установке устройства без использования муфты / Встановлення пристрою без екрану

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.
В автомобиле Тойота, например, сначала извлеките автомобильный радиоприемник и установите устройство на место.
У таких авто, як, наприклад, "Тойота", спершу зніміть радіоприймач, а на його місце встановіть пристрій.



Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

Примечание : При установке устройства на крепежный кронштейн, используйте только винты длиной 8 мм. При использовании более длинных винтов можно повредить устройство.

Примітка : Встановлюючи пристрій на монтажні кронштейни, переконайтеся, що застосовуються гвинти довжиною 8 мм. Якщо гвинти довші, вони можуть пошкодити пристрій.

*1 When you stand the unit, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
*2 Avoid touching the connectors.
*3 Not supplied for this unit.

*1 Устанавливайте устройство таким образом, чтобы не повредить предохранитель, расположенный сзади.
*2 Не прикасайтесь к разъемам.
*3 Не входят в комплект поставки.

*1 При встановленні пристрою, будьте обережні, не пошкодьте запобіжник, розташований у тильній частині.
*2 Не торкайтесь з'єднувачів.
*3 Не входить до комплекту постачання цього пристрою.

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
* Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **This unit becomes hot.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This unit does not work at all.**
* Have you reset your unit?

ВЫЯВЛЕНИЕ НЕИСПРАВНОСТЕЙ

- **Сработал предохранитель.**
* Правильно ли подключены черный и красный провода?
- **Питание не включается.**
* Подключен ли желтый провод?
- **Звук не выводится через громкоговорители.**
* Нет ли короткого замыкания на кабеле выхода громкоговорителей?
- **Звук искажен.**
* Заземлен ли провод выхода громкоговорителей?
* Заземлены ли разъемы "–" правого (R) и левого (L) громкоговорителей?
- **Шум мешает звучанию.**
* Соединен ли находящийся сзади зажим заземления с шасси автомобиля с помощью более короткого и тонкого шнуров?
- **Устройство нагревается.**
* Заземлен ли провод выхода громкоговорителей?
* Заземлены ли разъемы "–" правого (R) и левого (L) громкоговорителей?
- **Приемник не работает.**
* Выполнена ли перенастройка приемника?

НЕСПРАВНОСТІ

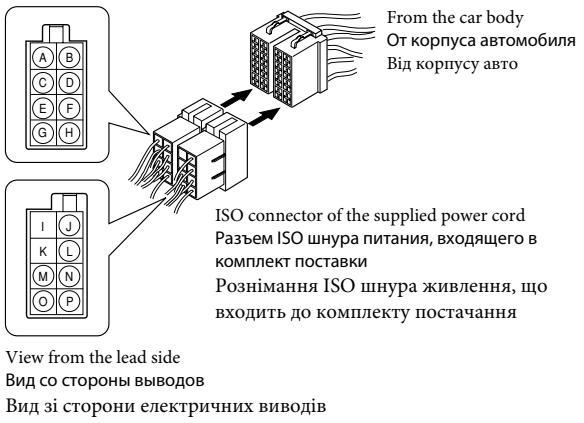
- **Вийшов з ладу запобіжник.**
* Чи правильно приєднані червоний та чорний провідники?
- **Не можна включити живлення.**
* Чи приєднаний жовтий провідник?
- **Звук з гучномовців відсутній.**
* Чи не замкнуто "на коротко" вихідні провідники гучномовця?
- **Звук спотворений.**
* Чи не заземлені вихідні провідники гучномовця?
* Чи заземлені разом провідники "–" лівого та правого гучномовця?
- **Звук чути з перешкодами.**
* Чи приєднано тильну клему заземлення до шасі авто за допомогою коротших та товстіших шнурів?
- **Пристрій нагрівається.**
* Чи не заземлені вихідні провідники гучномовця?
* Чи заземлені разом провідники "–" лівого та правого гучномовця?
- **Цей пристрій не працює взагалі.**
* Чи ви переналаштовували пристрій?

ENGLISH

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A If your car is equipped with the ISO connector / Если автомобиль оснащен разъемом ISO / Якщо ваше авто оснащене розніманням за стандартом ISO

- Connect the ISO connectors as illustrated.
- Подключите разъемы ISO, как показано на рисунке.
- Приєднайте рознімання ISO, як рекомендовано на ілюстрації.


A B C D E F G H
I J K L M N O P
From the car body
От корпуса автомобиля
Від корпусу авто
ISO connector of the supplied power cord
Разъем ISO шнура питания, входящего в комплект поставки
Рознімання ISO шнура живлення, що входить до комплекту постачання
View from the lead side
Вид со стороны выводов
Вид зі сторони електричних виводів

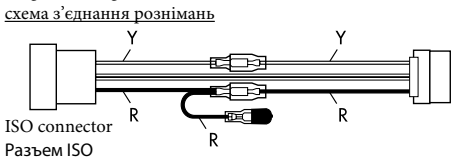
For some VW/Audi or Opel (Vauxhall) automobiles / Для некоторых автомобилей VW/Audi или Opel (Vauxhall) / Для деяких авто марки VW/Audi або Opel (Vauxhall)

You may need to modify the wiring of the supplied power cord as illustrated.
- Contact your authorized car dealer before installing this unit.

Возможно, потребуется изменить схему соединений для прилагаемого шнура питания, как показано на рисунке.
- Перед установкой приемника обратитесь к авторизованному агенту по продажам автомобильных систем.

Вам, можливо, прийдеться внести зміни до з'єднання провідників шнура живлення згідно з ілюстрацією.
- Перед тим, як встановлювати цей пристрій, зв'яжіться з уповноваженим дилером вашого авто.

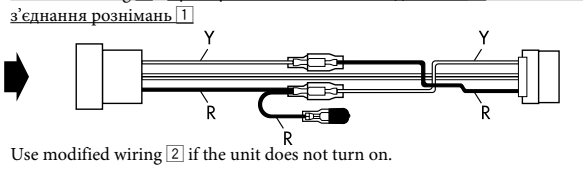
Original wiring / Исходная схема соединений / Початкова схема з'єднання рознімань



ISO connector
Разъем ISO
Рознімання ISO

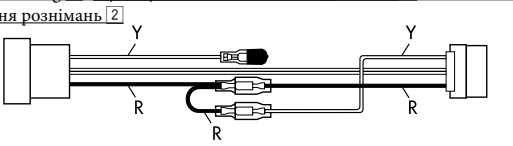
Y: Yellow / Желтый / Жовтий
R: Red / Красный / Червоний

Modified wiring 1 / Преобразованная схема соединений 1 / Змінена схема з'єднання рознімань 1



Use modified wiring 2 if the unit does not turn on.
Если приемник не включается, используйте преобразованную схему соединений 2.
Якщо пристрій не включається, скористуйтеся зміненою схемою з'єднання рознімань 2.

Modified wiring 2 / Преобразованная схема соединений 2 / Змінена схема з'єднання рознімань 2



B Connections without using the ISO connector / Подключение без использования разъема ISO / З'єднання без допомоги з'єднувача ISO

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

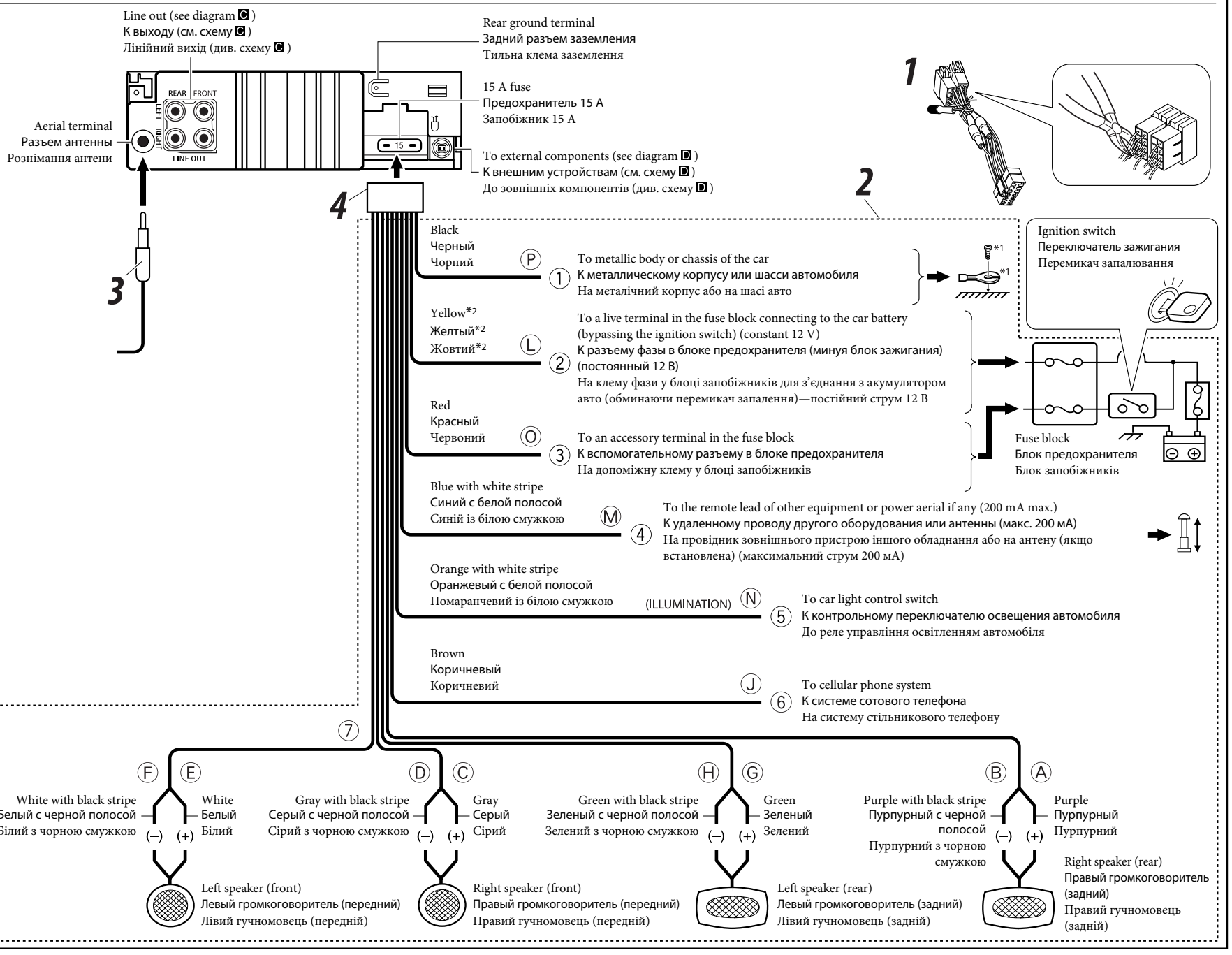
1. Cut the ISO connector.
2. Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
3. Connect the aerial cord.
4. Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

Перед началом подключений: Тщательно проверьте проводку в автомобиле. Неправильное подключение может привести к серьезному повреждению устройства.
Жилы силового кабеля и жилы соединителя от кузова автомобиля могут быть разного цвета.

1. Обрежьте разъем ISO.
2. Подсоедините цветные провода шнура питания в указанном ниже порядке.
3. Подключите кабель антенны.
4. В последнюю очередь подключите электропроводку к устройству.

Перед тим, як з'єднати: Уважно перевірте електричну схему з'єднання вашого авто Неправильне з'єднання може спричинити тяжке пошкодження вашого пристрою.
Контакти шнура живлення та рознімання, яке йде від корпуса авто можуть мати різні кольори.

1. Від'єднайте рознімання ISO.
2. З'єднайте кольорові провідники шнура живлення у порядку, що наведений нижче на ілюстрації.
3. Приєднайте провід антени.
4. Виконайте кінцеве приєднання джгута провідників до пристрою.



*1 Not supplied for this unit.
*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.

*1 Не входит в комплект.
*2 Перед проверкой работы устройства подключите этот провод, иначе питание не включится.

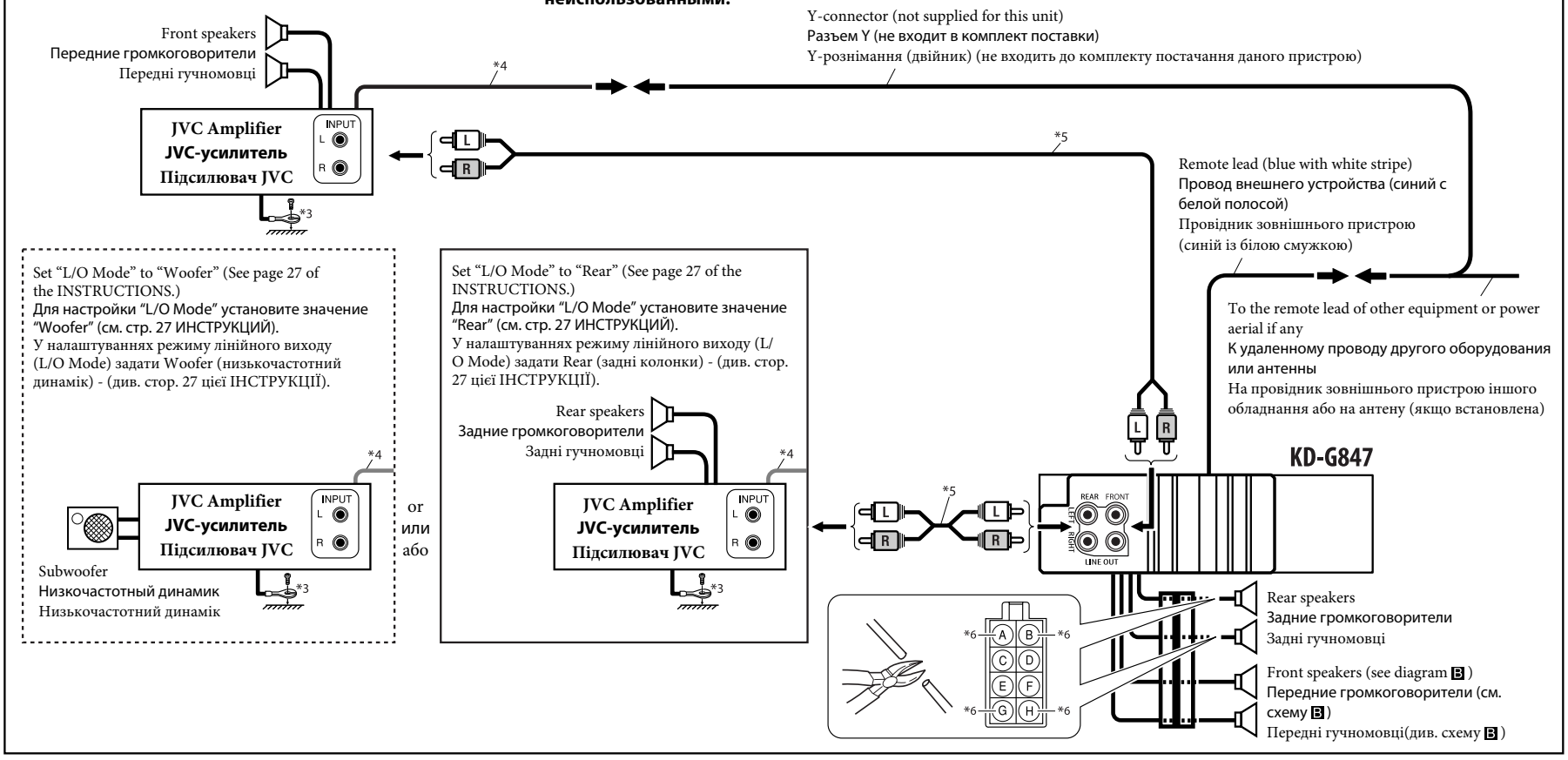
*1 Не входить до комплекту постачання цього пристрою.
*2 Перед тим, як перевірити працездатність цього виробу до його встановлення, цей контакт необхідно приєднати, інакше живлення на прилад подаватися не буде.

C Connecting the external amplifiers and/or subwoofer / Подключение внешнего усилителя и/или низкочастотного динамика / Приєднання зовнішнього підсилювача та/або низькочастотного динаміка

You can connect amplifiers to upgrade your car stereo system.
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**

Можно подключить усилители для обновления автомобильной стереосистемы.
- Подсоедините провод внешнего устройства (синий с белой полосой) к проводу внешнего устройства другого оборудования так, чтобы им можно было управлять с этого устройства.
- **Отсоедините громкоговорители от данного устройства, подключите их к усилителю. Оставьте провода громкоговорителей данного устройства неиспользованными.**

Для покращення характеристик стереосистеми, до неї можна підключити підсилювачі.
- Підключіть провідник зовнішнього пристрою (синій з білою смужкою) до провідника зовнішнього пристрою іншого обладнання. Таким чином, ним можна буде керувати з цього пристрою.
- **Відключіть гучномовці від цього пристрою, приєднайте їх до підсилювача. Залиште провідники гучномовців такими, що не використовуються.**



D Connecting the external components / Подключение внешних устройств / З'єднує зовнішні компоненти

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.
- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

When connecting more than one component (maximum: two), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

При подключении внешних устройств см. также руководства, поставляемые для устройств и адаптера.

ПРЕДОСТЕРЕЖЕНИЕ:
Перед подключением внешних компонентов убедитесь в том, что устройство выключено.

К разъему устройства автоматической смены компакт-дисков можно подключать указанные ниже устройства JVC.

Устройство JVC	Название модели
Устройство автоматической смены компакт-дисков (CD-CH)	CH-X1500 и т. д.

Указанные ниже устройства можно также подключать с помощью различных адаптеров JVC.
- Кабели подключения могут быть приобретены отдельно.

Компонентный	Адаптер	Название модели
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Интерфейсный адаптер для проигрывателя iPod	KS-PD100
Портативный аудиопроигрыватель с разъемами линейного выхода	Адаптер линейного входа	KS-U57
Портативный аудиопроигрыватель со стерео мини-разъемом 3,5 мм	Адаптер входа AUX	KS-U58

Несколько устройств (максимум два) рекомендуется подключать последовательно, как показано ниже.

У разі приєднання зовнішніх компонентів, також зверніться до посібника, що входить до комплекту постачання вказаних компонентів та адаптера.

ЗАСТЕРЕЖЕННЯ!:
Перед тим як приєднати зовнішній компонент, переконайтеся утому, що ваш пристрій вимкнений.

Наведені нижче компоненти виробництва компанії JVC можна приєднати через гніздо пристрою для зміни компакт-дисків.

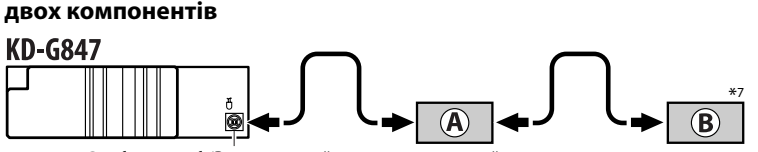
Компонент виробництва JVC	Назва моделі
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.

За допомогою різних адаптерів виробництва JVC можна також приєднувати такі компоненти.
Можливо, з'єднувальні кабелі вам доведеться придбати окремо.

Компонент	Адаптер	Назва моделі
Пристрій Bluetooth	Адаптер Bluetooth	KS-BTA200
iPod	Інтерфейсний адаптер для iPod	KS-PD100
Портативний аудіопрогравач із гніздами лінійних виходів	Адаптер лінійного входу	KS-U57
Портативний аудіопрогравач зі стереофонічним мініатюрним штекером 3,5 мм	Адаптер вхідного сигналу від зовнішнього пристрою	KS-U58

Відображається тільки, якщо приєднано більше одного пристрою (не більше двох), рекомендується підключати їх послідовно, згідно з наведеними нижче поясненнями.

When connecting two components in series / Последовательное подключение двух устройств / У разі послідовного приєднання двох компонентів

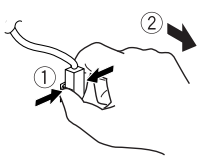


CD changer jack/Разъем устройства автоматической смены компакт-дисков/Гніздо пристрою зміни CD-дисків

Ⓐ **KS-BTA200**

Ⓑ*7 **CD-CH** / **KS-PD100** / **KS-U57** / **KS-U58**

To disconnect the connector / Отключение разъема / Відключення з'єднувача



Hold the connector tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
Крепко удерживая разъем (①), извлеките его (②).
Міцно візьміться за з'єднувач (①), потім витягніть його (②).

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
iPod является торговой маркой Apple Inc., зарегистрированной в США и других странах.
iPod є торговою маркою Apple Inc., зареєстрованою у Сполучених Штатах та інших країнах.

*3 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.
*4 Remote lead
*5 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit).
*6 Cut the rear speaker leads of the car's ISO connector and connect them to the amplifier.
*7 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 27 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

*3 Плотно прикрепите заземляющий провод к металлическому кузову или шасси автомобиля—в месте, не покрытом краской (если оно покрыто краской, удалите краску перед тем, как прикреплять провод). Невыполнение этого требования может привести к повреждению данного устройства.
*4 Провод внешнего устройства.
*5 Кабель сигнала (не входит в комплект поставки).
*6 Обрежьте выводы задних динамиков для разъема ISO автомобиля и подсоедините их к усилителю.
*7 Чтобы использовать данные устройства, необходима правильная настройка внешнего входа (см. ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ на стр. 27).

*3 Надійно прикрутіть провідник заземлення до металічного корпусу або до шасі авто у місці, яке не має фарбового покриття (якщо воно є, видаліть фарбу до підключення провідника). Невиконання цієї вимоги може призвести до пошкодження пристрою.
*4 Провідник зовнішнього пристрою.
*5 Сигнальний шнур (не входить до комплекту постачання даного пристрою).
*6 Відключіть провідники задніх гучномовців від рознімання ISO, що належить до авто, та з'єднайте їх із підсилювачем.
*7 Для використання цих компонентів в налаштуваннях зовнішнього входу встановіть "EXT IN" (зовнішній вхід) (див. стор. 27 розділу ІНСТРУКЦІЇ).

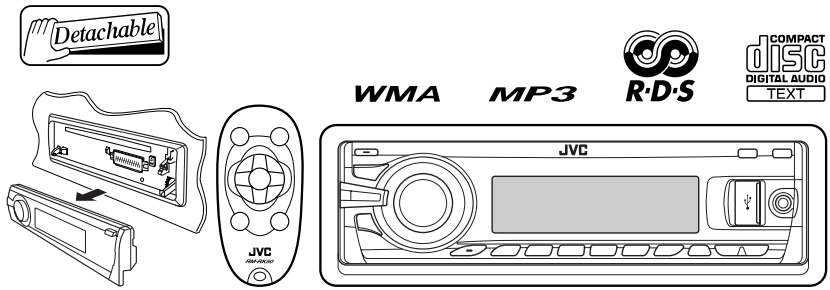
JVC

ENGLISH

FRANÇAIS

CD RECEIVER
RÉCEPTEUR CD

KD-PDR62/KD-PDR61



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 4.
Pour annuler la démonstration des affichages, référez-vous à la page 4.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Pour l'installation et les raccordements, se référer au manuel séparé.

INSTRUCTIONS
MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS

GET0524-003B
[EX]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス 1M レーザー放射が出ます。光学機器で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS II LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG)

This symbol is only valid in the European Union.

Information for Users on Disposal of Old Equipment

This symbol indicates that the product with this symbol should not be disposed as general household waste at its end-of-life. If you wish to dispose of this product, please do so in accordance with applicable national legislation or other rules in your country and municipality. By disposing of this product correctly, you will help to conserve natural resources and will help prevent potential negative effects on the environment and human health.

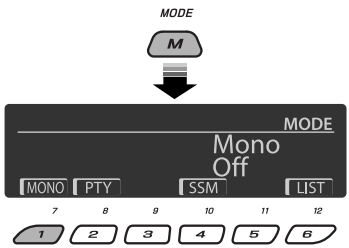
Warning:

If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.

How to use the M MODE and SEL buttons

If you use M MODE or SEL (select), the display and some controls (such as the number buttons, ⏮/⏭ buttons, ▲/▼ buttons, and the control dial) enter the corresponding control mode.

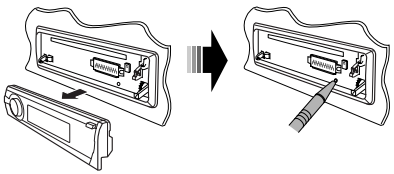
Ex.: When you press number button 1 after pressing M MODE, to operate the FM tuner.



To use these controls for original functions, press M MODE again.

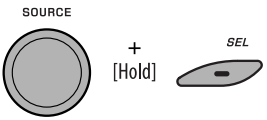
- However, pressing SEL makes the unit enters a different mode.
- Waiting for about 15 seconds (or 30 seconds for Bluetooth sources) without pressing any of these buttons will automatically cancels the control.

How to reset your unit

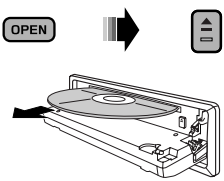


- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased (except the registered Bluetooth device, see pages 14 and 15).*

How to forcibly eject a disc



"Please Eject" appears on the display.



- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*
- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*

For security reasons, a numbered ID card is provided with this unit, and the same ID number is imprinted on the unit's chassis. Keep the card in a safe place, as it will help the authorities to identify your unit if stolen.

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTIONS

Preparation 4

OPERATIONS

Basic operations 5
- Using the control panel 5
- Using the remote controller (RM-RK50) 6

Listening to the radio 7
Disc operations 11
Listening to the USB device 13

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Using the Bluetooth® devices 14
- Using the Bluetooth cellular phone 16
- Using the Bluetooth audio player 18

Listening to the CD changer 19
Listening to the iPod 20
Listening to the DAB tuner 22
Listening to the other external components 25

SETTINGS

Selecting a preset sound mode 26
General settings—PSM 28
Bluetooth settings 33

REFERENCES

More about this unit 34
Troubleshooting 38
Maintenance 43
Specifications 44

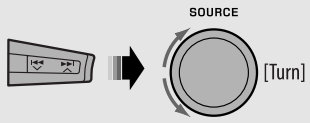
For detaching/attaching the control panel, see page 42.

ENGLISH

Preparation

Cancel the display demonstration and set the clock

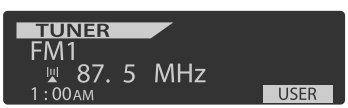
• See also pages 28 and 29.

1		**Turn on the power.**
2	[Hold]	**Enter the PSM settings.**
3	 [Turn]	**Cancel the display demonstrations** Select "Demo," then "Off." **Set the clock** Select "Clock Hr" (hour), then adjust the hour. Select "Clock Min" (minute), then adjust the minute. Select "24H/12H," then "24Hours" or "12Hours."
4		**Finish the procedure.**

Changing the display information and pattern

When the power is turned off: Check the current clock time

Ex.: When tuner is selected as the source



Source operation display

Audio level meter display
(see "LevelMeter" on page 28)

Caution:

If the temperature inside the car is below 0°C, the movement of animation and text scroll will be halted on the display to prevent the display from being blurred. L.TEMP appears on the display.
When the temperature increases, and the operating temperature is resumed, these functions will start working again.

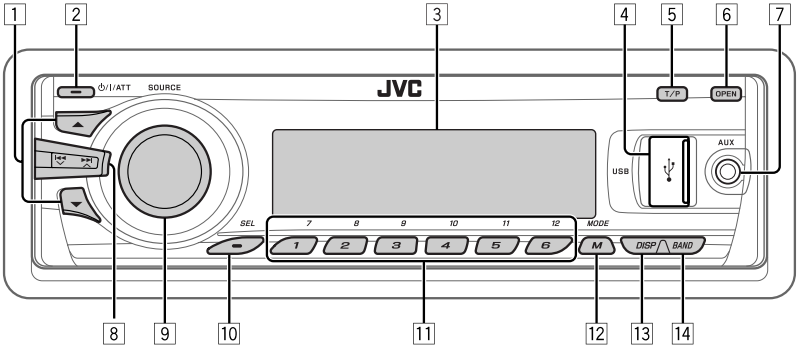
Caution on volume setting:

Digital devices (CD/USB) produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing these digital sources to avoid damaging the speakers by sudden increase of the output level.

This unit is equipped with the steering wheel remote control function.
• See the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume) for connection.

Basic operations

Using the control panel



1 • **DAB**: Select DAB service
  • **CD/USB/CD-CH:** Select folder.
  • **USB-iPod:** Enter the main menu [Hold].
  • **iPod:** Enter the main menu/Pause playback/Confirm selection.
  • **BT-PHONE/BT-AUDIO:** Select a registered device.

2 • Turn on the power.
  • Turn off the power [Hold].
  • Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).

3 Display window

4 USB (Universal Serial Bus) input jack

5 • Activate/deactivate TA Standby Reception.
  • Enter programme type searching mode [Hold].

6 Flip down the control panel.
  • To eject the disc, flip down the control panel then press ⏏ on the unit.

7 AUX (auxiliary) input jack

8 • **TUNER:** Search for station.
  • **DAB**: Search for DAB ensemble.
  • **CD/USB/CD-CH/USB-iPod/iPod:** Select track.
  • **BT-AUDIO:** Reverse skip/forward skip.

9 • Volume control [Turn].
  • Select the source [Press]*1.
  TUNER → **DAB***2 → **CD***2 → **USB***2 (or **USB-iPod**)*2 → **CD-CH***2**/iPod***2 (or **EXT IN**) → **BT-PHONE***2 → **BT-AUDIO***2 → **AUX IN** → (back to the beginning)

10 • Select/adjust the sound mode.
  • Enter the PSM settings [Hold].

11 • **TUNER:** Select preset station.
  • **DAB**: Select preset DAB service.
  • **CD/USB/CD-CH:** Select folder/track/disc (for CD changer).
  • **USB-iPod:** Select preset top menu items.
  • **BT-PHONE:** Dial preset phone number*3.

12 • Enter functions mode.
  • **BT-PHONE:** Activate Voice Dialing [Hold].

13 Change the display information and pattern.

14 • **TUNER:** Select the bands.
  • **USB-iPod/BT-AUDIO:** Start/pause playback.

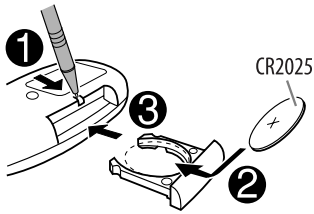
*1 *Holding SOURCE will enter the Bluetooth menu.*

*2 *You cannot select these sources if they are not ready or not connected.*

*3 *For storing preset phone number, see page 18.*

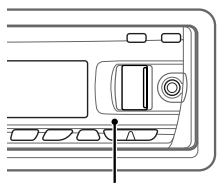
Using the remote controller (RM-RK50)

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



Before using the remote controller:

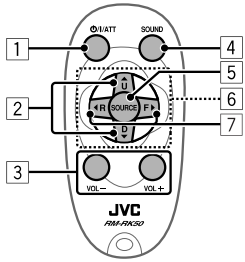
- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).



Remote sensor

Warning (to prevent accidents and damage):

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent.
- Do not leave the remote controller in a place (such as dashboards) exposed to direct sunlight for a long time.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
- Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.



1 • Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
  • Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 • Changes the FM/AM/DAB bands with ▲ U.
  • Changes the preset stations with D ▼.
  • Changes the folder of the MP3/WMA/WAV.
  • While playing an MP3 disc on an MP3-compatible CD changer:
    – Changes the disc if pressed briefly.
    – Changes the folder if pressed and held.
  • While listening to an Apple iPod:

  Connected to KS-PD100:
    – Pauses or resumes playback with D ▼.
    – Enters the main menu with ▲ U. (Now ▲ U/D ▼/◄ R/F ► work as the menu selecting buttons.)*

  * ▲ U : *Returns to the previous menu.*
    D ▼ : *Confirms the selection.*

  Connected to the USB input jack:
    – Enter the main menu if pressed and held.
    – Select the desired menu if pressed briefly.
    – Fast skip in every layer of the main menu if pressed and held.

3 Adjusts the volume level.

4 Selects the sound mode (iEQ: intelligent equalizer).

5 Selects the source.

6 For Bluetooth cellular phone:
  – Answers calls if pressed briefly.
  – Rejects calls if pressed and held.

7 • Searches for stations if pressed briefly.
  • Fast-forwards or reverses the track if pressed and held.
  • Changes the tracks if pressed briefly.

- While listening to an iPod (in menu selecting mode):
  Connected to KS-PD100:
  – Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press D ▼ to confirm the selection.)
  – Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.
  Connected to the USB input jack:
  – Start play back the selected folder directly if pressed and held.
- Reverse skip/forward skip for Bluetooth audio.

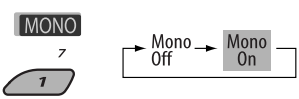
Listening to the radio

1		**Select "TUNER."**
2		**Select the bands.** → FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM →
3		**Search for a station to listen—Auto Search.** Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" lights up on the display, then press it repeatedly. • When receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength, ST lights up on the display.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1

2



Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.
- MO lights up on the display.

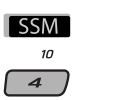
3 Exit from the setting.

FM station automatic presetting —SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

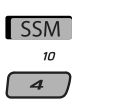
You can preset up to six stations for each band.

1 While listening to a station...

2



3



Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the selected FM band.

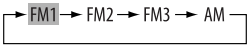
Continued on the next page

Manual presetting

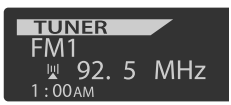
Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

Using the number buttons

1

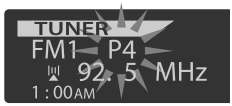


2



3

[Hold]



Preset number flashes for a while.

Using the Preset Station list

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

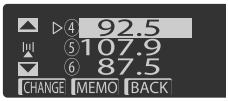
1 Follow steps 1 and 2 of "Using the number buttons" above.

- By holding ▲ / ▼, the Preset Station List will also appear (go to step **4**).

2

3 Display the Preset Station List.

4 Select the preset number you want to store into.



- You can move to the lists of the other FM bands by pressing number button 5 ( ) or 6 ( ) repeatedly.

5 Store the station.

Listening to the preset station on the Preset Station List

1 Display the Preset Station List, then select the preset station you want to listen to.

2 Change to the selected station.

The following features are available only for FM RDS stations.

Searching for FM RDS programme —PTY Search

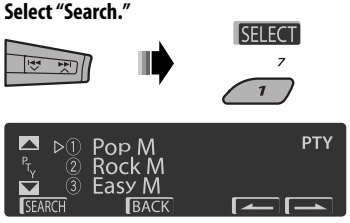
You can search for your favorite programmes being broadcast by selecting the PTY code for your favorite programmes.

- When BACK appears on the display, you can move back to the previous display by pressing number button 3.

• When ◄ / ► appears on the display, you can move to the other lists by pressing number button 5 or 6 repeatedly.

1 T/P [Hold]

2 Select "Search."



The three preset PTY codes appears on the display.

3 Select a PTY code.

You can select a PTY code from the 29 preset PTY codes or from the six stored PTY codes.

• To store your favorite programme types, see the following.

4 Start searching for your favorite programme.

If there is a station broadcasting a programme of the same PTY code as you have selected, that station is tuned in.

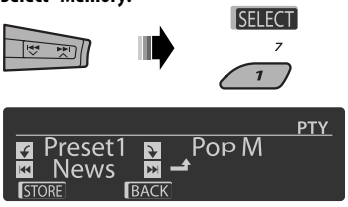
Storing your favorite programme types

You can store six favorite programme types.

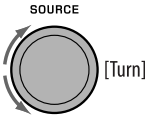
• When BACK appears on the display, you can move back to the previous display by pressing number button 3.

1 T/P [Hold]

2 Select "Memory."



3 Select a preset number ("Preset1"–"Preset6") you want to store into.



[Turn]

4 Select one of the PTY codes.

5 Store the selected PTY code.

Ex.: When "Classics" is selected in step **5**

6 Repeat steps 3 to 5 to store other PTY codes into other preset numbers.

7 Exit from the setting.

DISP

Activating TA/PTY Standby Reception

TA Standby Reception

T/P

Continued on the next page

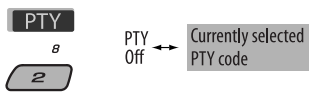
TP either lights up or flashes on the display.
- If TP lights up, the unit temporarily will switch to Traffic Announcement (TA), if available, from any source other than AM.
  The volume changes to the preset TA volume level if the current level is lower than the preset level (see page 30).
- If TP flashes, TA Standby reception is not yet activated. Tune in to another station providing the RDS signals.

To deactivate TA Standby Reception, press T/P again. TP goes off.

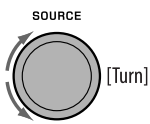
PTY Standby Reception

1

2



3 Select a PTY code.



4 Exit from the setting.

PTY either lights up or flashes on the display.
- If PTY lights up, the unit temporarily will switch to your favorite PTY programme from any source other than AM.
- If PTY flashes, PTY Standby reception is not yet activated. Tune in to another station (or service) providing the RDS signals.

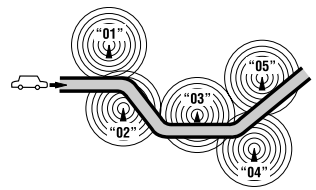
To deactivate PTY Standby Reception, select "Off" in step **2**. PTY goes off.

- When a DAB tuner is connected, TA/PTY Standby Reception also searches for services. (See also page 23.)
- The unit will not switch to Traffic Announcement or PTY programme when a call connection is established through "BT-PHONE."

Tracing the same programme— Network-Tracking Reception

When driving in an area where FM reception is not sufficient enough, this unit automatically tunes in to another FM RDS station of the same network, possibly broadcasting the same programme with stronger signals (see the illustration below).

Programme A broadcasting on different frequency areas (01 – 05)



When shipped from the factory, Network-Tracking Reception is activated.

To change the Network-Tracking Reception setting, see "AF-Regn'l" on page 30.
- When the DAB tuner is connected, refer to "Tracing the same programme—Alternative Frequency Reception (DAB AF)" on page 24.

Automatic station selection— Programme Search

Usually when you press the number buttons, the preset station is tuned in.
If the signals from the FM RDS preset station are not sufficient for good reception, this unit, using the AF data, tunes in to another frequency broadcasting the same programme as the original preset station is broadcasting.
- The unit takes some time to tune in to another station using programme search.
- See also page 30.

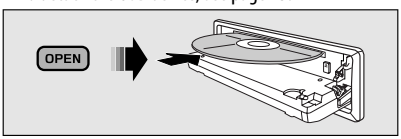
Disc operations

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

Caution:

Make sure to detach the USB device before opening the control panel, as it might block the opening mechanism.

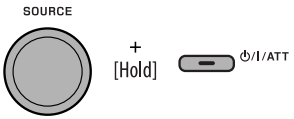
- To detach the USB device, see page 13.



To stop play and eject the disc

- Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.

Prohibiting disc ejection



To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure.

Pressing (or holding) the following buttons allows you to...

	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track
*1	MP3/WMA: Select folder
(Number buttons)*2	Locate particular folder*3 (for MP3/WMA disc) or track directly

*1 *By holding either one of the buttons, you can display the Folder List (see page 12).*

*2 *Press to select number 1 to 6; hold to select number 7 to 12.*

*3 *It is required that folders be assigned with 2-digit numbers at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.*

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks MP3/WMA: Within the same folder
	Repeat Track: Repeat current track **Repeat Folder:** MP3/WMA: Repeat current folder
	Random Folder: MP3/WMA: Randomly play all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Random Disc:** Randomly play all tracks

- You can also cancel the playback mode by selecting "**Off**" or press number button 4 (OFF).

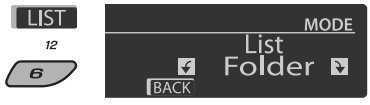
Continued on the next page

Selecting a folder/track on the list (only for MP3/WMA file)

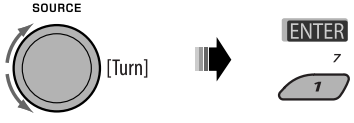
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1

2 **Select "LIST."**



3 **Select the list type.**



Folder ↔ File

4 **Select an item.**

Ex.: When "File" is selected in step **3**

- You can move to the other lists by pressing number button 5 ( ) or 6 ( ) repeatedly.

5 **Change to the selected item.**

Ⓐ If File List is selected

The list disappears and playback starts.

Ⓑ If Folder List is selected

- If the current folder is selected, File List appears, then repeat steps **4** and **5** Ⓐ to start playback.
- If another folder is selected, playback starts from the 1st file of the selected folder.

Listening to the USB device

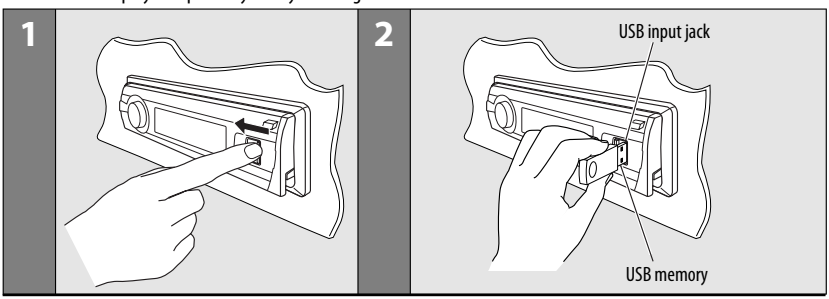
You can connect a USB mass storage class device such as a USB memory, Digital Audio Player*, portable HDD, etc. to the unit.

- You can also connect an Apple iPod to the USB input jack. For details of the operations, see pages 20 and 21.

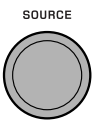
This unit can play MP3/WMA/WMA-DRM10*/WAV tracks stored in a USB device.

* *You can connect both MTP (Media Transfer Protocol) devices and USB mass storage class devices. See also page 36.*

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or detach the USB device.



If a USB device has been attached...



Playback starts from where it has been stopped previously.

- If a different USB device is currently attached, playback starts from the beginning.

To stop play and detach the USB device

Straightly pull it out from the unit.

- Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.

You can operate the USB device in the same way you operate the files on a disc. (See pages 11 and 12.)

- You can listen to WAV files by following the MP3/WMA files operations listed on pages 11 and 12.

Cautions:

- Avoid using the USB device if it might hinder your safety driving.
- Do not pull out and attach the USB device repeatedly while "Reading" is shown on the display.
- Do not start the car engine if a USB device is connected.
- This unit may not be able to play the files depending on the type of USB device.
- Operation and power supply may not work as intended for some USB devices.
- You cannot connect a computer to the USB input terminal of the unit.
- Make sure all important data has been backed up to avoid losing the data.
- Do not leave a USB device in the car, expose to direct sunlight, or high temperature to avoid deformation or cause damages to the device.
- Some USB devices may not work immediately after you turn on the power.
- For more details about USB operations, see page 36.

Using the Bluetooth® devices

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the **Bluetooth Adapter** (KS-BTA200) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to check the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.

- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO").

Registering a Bluetooth device

Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in the Bluetooth menu to register and establish the connection with a device.

- Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO" as the source to operate the Bluetooth menu.

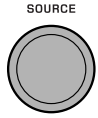
Open	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
Search	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the unit.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

Registering using "Open"

Preparation: Operate the device to turn on its Bluetooth function.

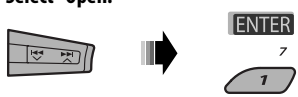
1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Select "NEW."

3 Enter setting menu.

4 Select "Open."



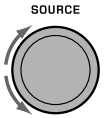
5 Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number) code to the unit.

- You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number). [Initial: 0000]
- To enter a PIN code less than 4-digit, firstly delete the initial PIN code (0000) by pressing number button 5 (CLEAR).

* *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*

1 Move to the next (or previous) number position.

2 Select a number or blank space.



3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you finish entering a PIN code.

4 Confirm the entry.

"Open..." flashes on the display.

6 Use the Bluetooth device to search and connect.

On the device to be connected, enter the same PIN code you have just entered for this unit.
"Connected (and device name)" appears on the display.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use "**Connect**" (or activate "**Auto Connect**") to connect the same device from next time on. (See the following and page 33.)

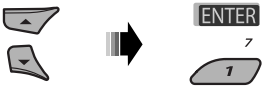
Connecting a device

Perform steps **1** – **3** on page 14, then...

1 • **Select "Search" to search for available devices.**
The unit searches and displays the list of the available devices.
If no available device is detected, "Device Not Found" appears.

• **Select "Special" to connect a special device.**
The unit displays the list of the preset devices.

2 Select a device you want to connect.

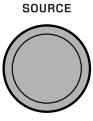


3 • **For available devices...**
1 Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit.
Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code.
2 Use the Bluetooth device to connect.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

• **For special device...**
Use "Open" or "Search" to connect.

Connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device

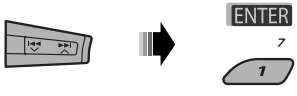
1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Select a registered device you want to connect/disconnect/delete.

3 Enter setting menu.

4 • **Select "Connect" or "Disconnect" to connect/disconnect the selected device.**



Continued on the next page

ENGLISH

- **Select "Delete," then confirm the selection.**

Press number button 3 to select "No" or return to the previous screen.

You can set the unit to connect the Bluetooth device automatically when the unit is turned on. (See "**Auto Connect**" on page 33.)

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone

1		**Select "BT-PHONE."**
2		**Enter Bluetooth menu.**
3	—	**Establish the connection with a device, then make a call (or settings using the Bluetooth menu).**

When a call comes in....

The source is automatically changed to "BT-PHONE."

When "Auto Answer" is activated....

The unit answers the incoming calls automatically, see page 33.

- When "Auto Answer" is deactivated, press any button (except ⏻/I/ATT/control dial) to answer the incoming call.

To end the call

Hold any button (except ⏻/I/ATT/control dial).

- You can adjust the microphone volume level (see page 33).

When an SMS comes in....

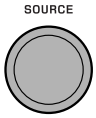
If the cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service) and "Message Info" is set to "Auto" (see page 33), the unit rings and "Received Message" appears on the display to inform you of the message arrival.

Making a call

You can make a call using one of the Dial Menu items.

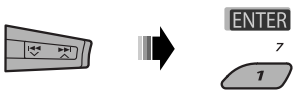
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Select "BT-PHONE."

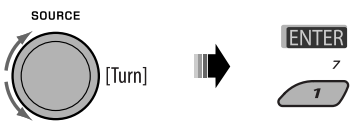


2 Enter setting menu.

3 Select "Dial Menu."



4 Select the method to make a call.

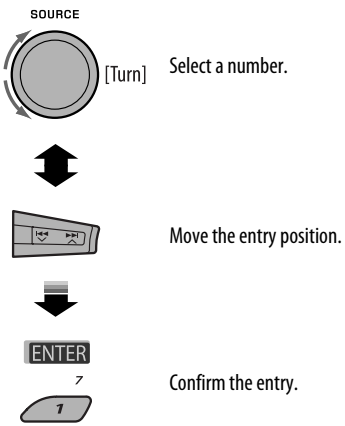


- **Redial***: Shows the list of the phone numbers you have dialed. Go to the following step.
- **Received***: Shows the list of the received calls. Go to the following step.
- **Phonebook***: Shows the phone book of the connected cellular phone. Go to the following step.
- **Missed***: Shows the list of the missed calls. Go to the following step.
- **Number**: Shows the phone number entry screen. See "How to enter phone number" on the right column.
- **Voice Dial** (Only accessible when the connected cellular phone has the voice recognition system): Speak the name (registered words) you want to call.

* **Displayed only when your cellular phone is equipped with these functions.**
– If not displayed, try to transfer the phone book memory of the cellular phone to this unit. (Refer to the instruction manual supplied with your cellular phone.)
– With some cellular phones, the phone book memory is transferred automatically.

5 Select the name/phone number you want to call.

How to enter phone number



Continued on the next page

ENGLISH

Using voice command

1 MODE / M — "Say..." appears on the display.

2 Speak the name (registered words) you want to call.

- You can also use voice command from the Dial Menu. Select "Voice Dial" from the Dial Menu.
- If your cellular phone does not support the voice recognition system, "Error" appears on the display.

Presetting the phone number

You can preset up to six phone numbers.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Display the phone number you want to preset by using one of the "Dial Menu" items.

2 Select a phone number.

You can also enter a new phone number (see also "How to enter phone number" on page 17) to store.

3 Select a preset number to store.

[Hold]

To call a preset number

While in Bluetooth phone....

Using the Bluetooth audio player

- Operations and display indications differ depending on their availability on the connected audio player.

SOURCE	**Select "BT-AUDIO."** If playback does not start automatically, operate the Bluetooth audio player to start playback.

	Reverse skip/forward skip
BAND	Start/pause playback
MODE / M	Enter setting menu (Device list)

- Refer also to pages 15 and 16 for connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device.

Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>.

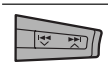
Listening to the CD changer

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit. You can connect a CD changer to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

- You can only play conventional CDs (including CD Text) and MP3 discs.

Preparation: Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 30.

1		**Select "CD-CH."**
2		**Select a disc to start playing.** [Press] For selecting disc number 1 – 6. [Hold] For selecting disc number 7 – 12.

	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track
*	MP3: Select folders

* *By holding either one of the buttons, you can display the Disc List (see page 12).*

To select a disc/folder/track on the list

See "Selecting a folder/track on the list (only for MP3/WMA file)" on page 12.

Select "Disc" in step **3** to display the Disc List of the CD changer.

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks MP3: Within the same folder
	Repeat Track: Repeat current track **Repeat Folder:** MP3: Repeat all tracks of current folder **Repeat Disc:** Repeat all tracks of the current disc
	Random Folder: MP3: Randomly play all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder **Random Disc:** Randomly play all tracks of current disc **Random All:** Randomly play all tracks of the discs in the magazine

- You can also cancel the playback mode by selecting "**Off**" or press number button 4 (OFF).

Listening to the iPod

You can play songs in an Apple iPod by:

– Connecting it with the USB cable supplied with your iPod to the USB input jack on the control panel.

– Connecting the Interface adapter for iPod, KS-PD100 (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

Preparation: Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 30.

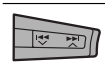
- You can control playback from the unit.
- Disconnecting the iPod will stop playback. Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.
- For details, refer also to the manual supplied for your iPod.

Caution:

- Avoid using the iPod if it might hinder your safety while driving.
- Make sure all important data has been backed up to avoid losing the data.

1	—	**Connect an iPod to the USB input jack or through KS-PD100.** Playback starts automatically from where it had been paused previously. • If an iPod has been connected, press SOURCE to select "USB-iPod" or "iPod" as the playback source.
2		**Select a track.**
3	—	**Adjust the volume and sound as you want. (See pages 26 and 27.)**

Playback control from the unit

Button	For iPod connected through KS-PD100	For iPod connected to the USB input jack
	[Press] Go to the next or previous track [Hold] Fast-forward or reverse the track during playback	[Press] Go to the next or previous track [Hold] Fast-forward or reverse the track during playback
	[Press] Enter main menu when you press ▲. Pause/resume playback when ▼ is pressed.	[Hold] Enter main menu [Press] Go to the top menu of "Playlists," "Artists," "Albums," "Songs," "Podcasts," "Genres," "Composers," or "Audiobooks" in the main menu. • Pressing the number buttons (1 – 6) or holding 1 (7) and 2 (8) can also select the preset top menus.
	—	[Press] Pause/resume playback.

Selecting a track from the menu

No.	Operation	For iPod connected through KS-PD100	For iPod connected to the USB input jack
1	**Enter the main menu.**		[Hold]
2	**Select the desired menu.**	Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Genres ↔ Composers	Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Podcasts ↔ Genres ↔ Composers ↔ Audiobooks
3	**Confirm the selection.**	• By holding I◄◄ ⌄/►►I ⌃, you can fast skip during song search in the main menu.	• By holding ►►I ⌃, you can start play back the selected item directly. • By holding I◄◄ ⌄, you can go back to the previous menu. • By holding ▲/▼, you can fast skip in every layer of the main menu.
		• If a track is selected, playback starts automatically. • If the selected item has another layer, you will enter the layer. Repeat steps **2** and **3** until the desired track is played.	

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

RPT 8 2	**Repeat One:** Same as "Repeat One." **Repeat All:** Same as "Repeat All." **Repeat Off:** Cancels.
RND 9 3	**Random Album*:** Same as "Shuffle Albums." **Random Song:** Same as "Shuffle Songs." **Random Off:** Cancels.

* *Functions only if you select "All Albums" or "All" in "Albums" of the main "MENU."*

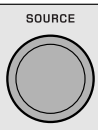
The menu selecting mode will be canceled:

- If no operations are performed for about:
  - 5 seconds for iPod connected through KS-PD100.
  - 15 seconds for iPod connected to the USB input jack.
- When you confirm the selection of a track.

Listening to the DAB tuner

Before operating, connect the **JVC DAB tuner**, KT-DB1000 (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

Preparation: Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 30 .

1		**Select "DAB."**
2		**Select the bands.** → DAB1 → DAB2 → DAB3 →
3		**Searching for an ensemble.** Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" flashes on the display, then press it repeatedly.
4		**Select a service (either primary or secondary) to listen to.**

When surrounding sounds are noisy

Some services provide Dynamic Range Control (DRC) signals together with their regular programme signals. DRC will reinforce the low level sounds to improve your listening.

1

2 Select one of the DRC signals levels (1, 2, or 3).

→ 1 → 2 → 3 → Off (Canceled) →

- As the number increases, the effect becomes stronger.

3 Exit from the setting.

DRC appears on the display.

- DRC will be highlighted only when receiving DRC signals from the tuned service.

Storing DAB services in memory

You can preset six DAB services (primary) for each band.

- When BACK appears on the display, you can move back to the previous display by pressing number button 3.
- When ◄ / ► appears on the display, you can move to the other lists by pressing number button 5 or 6 repeatedly.

Ex.: Storing an ensemble (primary service) into the preset number 4 of the DAB 1 band.

Using the number buttons

1 BAND → DAB1 → DAB2 → DAB3

2 **Select an ensemble (primary service).**

3 10 / 4 [Hold] — Preset number "P4" appears on the display.

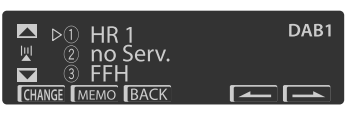
Using the Preset Service List

1 **Follow steps 1 and 2 above.**
- By holding ▲ / ▼, the Preset Service List will appear (go to step **4**).

2 MODE / M

3 **Display the Preset Service List.**

LIST (12 / 6) → ENTER (7 / 1)



4 **Select a preset number you want to store into.**

5 **Store the service.**

MEMO (8 / 2) — Preset number "P4" appears on the display.

Listening to the preset service using the Preset Service List

1 **Display the Preset Service List, then select the preset DAB service you want to listen to.**

2 **Change to the selected DAB service.**

CHANGE (7 / 1)

Using the standby reception

You can use three types of Standby Reception.
- Road Traffic News Standby Reception—TA Standby Reception
- Announcement Standby Reception
- PTY Standby Reception

Activating/deactivating TA/PTY Standby Reception
- Operations are exactly the same as explained on pages 9 and 10 for FM RDS stations.
- You cannot store PTY codes separately for the DAB tuner and for the FM tuner.

Announcement Standby Reception

Announcement Standby Reception allows the unit to switch temporarily to your favorite service (announcement type).

To activate the Announcement Standby Reception and select the announcement type

1 MODE / M

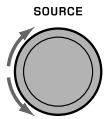
Continued on the next page

2 Activating the Announcement Standby Reception.

Display the currently selected announcement type.

ANN Off ↔ Currently selected announcement type

3 Selecting an announcement type.



4 Exit from the setting.

ANN either lights up or flashes on the playback display.

- If ANN lights up, Announcement Standby Reception is activated.
- If ANN flashes, Announcement Standby Reception is not yet activated.
  To activate, tune in to another service providing the related signals. ANN will stop flashing and remain lit.

To deactivate the Announcement Standby Reception

Select "Announce Off" in step **2**.

ANN goes off.

Announcement types

Travel, Warning, News, Weather, Event, Special, Rad Inf (Radio Information), Sports, Finance

Tracing the same programme—Alternative Frequency Reception (DAB AF)

You can keep listening to the same programme by activating the Alternative Frequency Reception.

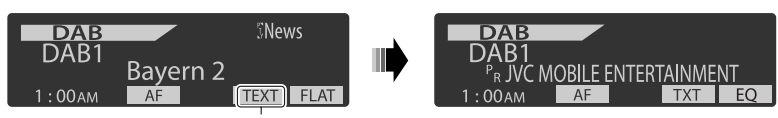
- **While receiving a DAB service:**
  When driving in an area where a service cannot be received, this unit automatically tunes in to another ensemble or FM RDS station, broadcasting the same programme.
- **While receiving an FM RDS station:**
  When driving in an area where a DAB service is broadcasting the same programme as the FM RDS station is broadcasting, this unit automatically tunes in to the DAB service.

When shipped from the factory, Alternative Frequency Reception is activated.

To deactivate the Alternative Frequency Reception, see page 30.

To show the Dynamic Label Segment (DLS) information

While listening to an ensemble that supports DLS....



Lights up when receiving a service providing Dynamic Label Segment (DLS)—DAB radio text.

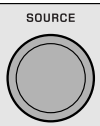
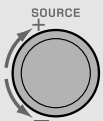
- The DLS display will be temporarily canceled when you operate the unit.

Listening to the other external components

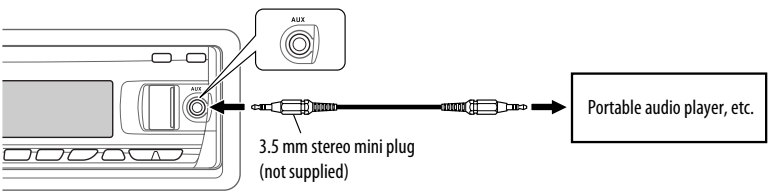
You can connect an external component to:

- CD changer jack on the rear of this unit using the following adapters:
  - **Line Input Adapter,** KS-U57
  - **AUX Input Adapter,** KS-U58

  Preparation: Make sure "Ext Input" is selected for the external input setting, see page 30.
- AUX (auxiliary) input jack on the control panel.

1		**Select "EXT IN" or "AUX IN."**
2	—	**Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**
3	 [Turn]	**Adjust the volume.**
4	—	**Adjust the sound as you want (see pages 26 and 27).**

Connecting an external component to the AUX input jack



Selecting a preset sound mode

You can select a preset sound mode suitable to the music genre (iEQ: intelligent equalizer).

1		**Enter setting menu.**
2		**Select "EQ."**
3		**Select a sound mode.** USER, ROCK, CLASSIC, POPS, HIP HOP, JAZZ

Preset value setting for each sound mode

Sound mode	Preset value								
	Bass			**Mid** (mid-range)			Treble		
	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q
USER	60 Hz	00	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	00	–
ROCK	100 Hz	+03	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	–
CLASSIC	80 Hz	+01	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	–
POPS	100 Hz	+02	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	+01	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	–
HIP HOP	60 Hz	+04	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	–02	Q1.0	10.0 kHz	+01	–
JAZZ	80 Hz	+03	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	–

Freq.: Frequency Q: Q-slope

Adjusting the sound

You can adjust the sound characteristics to your preference.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3 or 6.

1

2

EQ ↔ Fad/Bal ↔ Subwoofer* ↔ Loudness ↔ VolAdjust

- For "EQ" setting, see above.

* *Displayed only when "L/O Mode" is set to "Woofer" (see page 30).*

3 Adjust the selected setting item.

Ⓐ **Fad/Bal (Fader/Balance)**

1 Press number button 1 (SELECT) to move to the "Fad/Bal" adjustment display.

2 Adjust the speaker output balance by pressing:

▲ / ▼: between the front and rear speakers. [F6 to R6]

|◄◄ ∨/►►| ∧: between the left and right speakers. [L6 to R6]

Ⓑ **Subwoofer**

1 Press number button 1 (SELECT) to move to the "Subwoofer" adjustment display.

2 Use |◄◄ ∨/►►| ∧ to select a cutoff frequency to the subwoofer.

- OFF: All signals are sent to the subwoofer.
- 80Hz: Frequencies higher than 80 Hz are cut off.
- 120Hz: Frequencies higher than 120 Hz are cut off.
- 160Hz: Frequencies higher than 160 Hz are cut off.

3 Turn the control dial to adjust the subwoofer output level. [0 to 8]

4 Press number button 1 (MORE) to select the subwoofer phase. [0deg (normal) or 180deg (reverse)]

Ⓒ **VolAdjust,** [–5 to +5]

Turn the control dial to adjust the input level of each source (except FM).

Adjust to match the input level of the FM sound level.

- Before making an adjustment, select the source you want to adjust.

Ⓓ **Loudness,** [Off or On]

Turn the control dial to select "Off" or "On." When "On" is selected, low and high frequencies sound are boosted to produce a well-balanced sound at low volume level.

4 Exit from the setting.

Storing your own sound modes

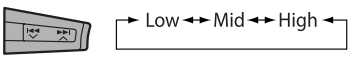
You can adjust the sound modes and store your own adjustments in memory.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 6.

1

2 Select a sound mode.

3 Select a frequency range.



4 Adjust the sound elements of the selected frequency range.

1 Use ▲ / ▼ to adjust the level.

2 Press number button 5 (FREQ), then turn the control dial to select the frequency.

3 Press number button 5 (Q), then turn the control dial to select the quality slope (Q).

Sound elements	Range/selectable items		
	Low	Mid	High
Frequency	60 Hz 80 Hz 100 Hz 200 Hz	500 Hz 1 kHz 1.5 kHz 2.5 kHz	10 kHz 12.5 kHz 15 kHz 17.5 kHz
Level	–6 to +6	–6 to +6	–6 to +6
Q (Q-slope)	Q1.0 Q1.25 Q1.5 Q2.0	Q0.5 Q0.75 Q1.0 Q1.25	Fix

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to adjust the other frequency bands.

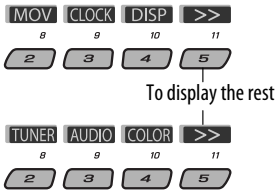
6 Store the adjustments.

General settings—PSM

You can change PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) items listed in the table below and on pages 29 – 31.

1 Enter the PSM settings.

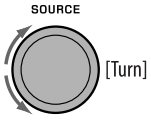
2 Select a PSM category.



3 Select a PSM item.

By pressing either one of the buttons repeatedly, you can also move to the item of the other categories.

4 Adjust the selected PSM item.



5 Repeat steps 2 – 4 to adjust other PSM items if necessary.

6 Finish the procedure.

Category	Indication	Item (__ : Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
MOV (movie)	**Demo** Display demonstration	• **On**	: Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [4].
		• **Off**	: Cancels.
	LevelMeter Audio level meter	• **Meter 1**	: Select the different level meter patterns.
		• **Meter 2**	• Press DISP to show the selected level meter.
CLOCK	**Clock Disp***1 Clock display	• **On**	: Clock time is shown on the display when the power is turned off.
		• **Off**	: Cancels; pressing DISP will show the clock time for about 5 seconds when the power is turned off, [4].

*1 *If the power supply is not interrupted by turning off the ignition key of your car, it is recommended to select "Off" to save the car's battery.*

Category	Indication	Item (__ : Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
CLOCK	**Clock Hr** Hour adjustment	**0 – 23** **(1 – 12AM/** **1 – 12PM)**	: Initial: 0 (0:00AM), [4].
	Clock Min Minute adjustment	**00 – 59**	: Initial: 00 (0:00AM), [4].
	24H/12H Time display mode	• **12Hours** • **24Hours**	: See also page 4 for setting.
	Clock Adj Clock adjustment	• **Auto** • **Off**	: The built-in clock is automatically adjusted using the CT (clock time) data in the RDS signal. : Cancels.
DISP (display)	**Scroll***2 Scroll	• **Once** • **Auto** • **Off**	: For track information: scrolls the track information only once. For DAB text: scrolls the detailed DAB text. : For track information: repeats the scroll (in 5-second intervals). For DAB text: scrolls the detailed DAB text. : For track information: cancels. For DAB text: shows only headline if any. • Pressing DISP for more than one second can scroll the display regardless of the setting.
	Dimmer Dimmer **From – To***3	• **Auto** • **Off** • **On** • **Time Set** —	: Dims the display when you turn on the headlights. : Cancels. : Dims the display and button illumination. : Set the timer for dimmer, [31]. Any hour – Any hour : Initial: 18 – 7.
	Contrast Contrast	**1 – 8** Initial: 5	: Adjust the display contrast to make the display indications clear and legible.
	LCD Type Display type	• **Auto** • **Positive** • **Negative**	: Positive pattern will be selected during the day time*4; while negative pattern will be used during the night time*4. : Positive pattern of the display. : Negative pattern of the display.
	Tag Tag display	• **On** • **Off**	: Shows the tag while playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks. : Cancels.

*2 *Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.*

*3 *Adjustable only when "Dimmer" is set to "Time Set."*

*4 *Depends on the "Dimmer" setting.*

Continued on the next page

Category	Indication	Item (__: Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
TUNER	**AF-Regn'l** Alternative frequency/ regionalization reception	• **AF**	: When the currently received signals become weak, the unit switches to another station or service (the programme may differ from the one currently received), [10].
		• **AF REG**	: When the currently received signals become weak, the unit switches to another station broadcasting the same programme.
		• **Off**	: Cancels (not selectable when "DAB AF" is set to "On").
	TA Volume Traffic announcement volume	• **Volume 0 – Volume 30** • **Volume 0 – Volume 50***5	: Initial: Volume 15
	P-Search Programme search	• **On**	: Activates Programme Search, [10].
		• **Off**	: Cancels.
	IF Band Intermediate frequency band	• **Auto**	: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.)
		• **Wide**	: Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
	DAB AF*6 Alternative frequency reception	• **On**	: Traces the programme among DAB services and FM RDS stations, [24].
		• **Off**	: Cancels.
AUDIO	**Ext Input***7 External input	• **Changer**	: To use a JVC CD changer, [19], JVC DAB tuner, [22], or an Apple iPod, [20].
		• **Ext In**	: To use any other external component, [25].
	Telephone Telephone muting	• **Muting1/ Muting2**	: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using a cellular phone.
		• **Off**	: Cancels. • Playback pauses/mutes while telephone muting is working.
	AudioBooks*8 Speed control of "Audiobook"	• **Normal** • **Faster** • **Slower**	: You can select the playback speed of the "Audiobook" sound file in your iPod. • Initial selected item depends on your iPod setting.
	L/O Mode Line output mode	• **Rear**	: Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting the rear speakers (through an external amplifier).
		• **Woofer**	: Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting a subwoofer (through an external amplifier).

*5 *Depends on the amplifier gain control.*

*6 *Displayed only when DAB tuner is connected.*

*7 *Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—TUNER, DAB, CD, USB, or Bluetooth.*

*8 *Displayed only when an iPod is connected to the USB input jack and playback is controlled from the unit.*

Category	Indication	Item (__: Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
AUDIO	**Amp Gain** Amplifier gain control	• **High PWR**	: Volume 00 – Volume 50
		• **Low PWR**	: Volume 00 – Volume 30 (Select if the maximum power of each speaker is less than 50 W to prevent damaging the speaker.)
COLOR	**Color Sel** Color selection	Initial: All Source; Color: Pale	: Select your favorite display color for each source (or for all sources), [31, 32].
	Color Set Color setting	—	: Create your own colors, and select them for the display color, [32].
		Day Color	: User color during the day time*9.
		NightColor	: User color during the night time*9.
	Red	**00 — 11**	: Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05
	Green	**00 — 11**	: Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05
	Blue	**00 — 11**	: Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05
	Key Illum Illumination switch	• **Red**	: You can select the button illumination according to your preference.
		• **Green**	

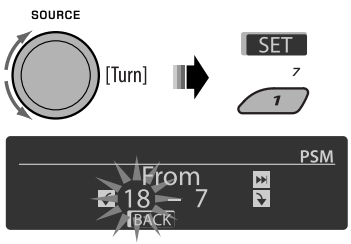
*9 *Depends on the "Dimmer" setting.*

Setting the time for dimmer

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 28.
- In step **2**, select "DISP."
- In step **3**, select "Dimmer."

2 Select "Time Set."



3 Adjust the dimmer start time.

1 Turn the control dial to set the dimmer start time.

2 Press ►►I ^ to select "To." Then, turn the control dial to set the dimmer end time.

4 Exit from the setting.

Changing the display color

You can select your favorite display color for each source (or all sources).

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3 or 6.

Setting the display color

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 28.
- In step **2**, select "COLOR."
- In step **3**, select "Color Sel."

Continued on the next page

ENGLISH

2

3 Select a source.

All Source*1 ↔ **CD** ↔ **Changer***3 (or **Ext In***2) ↔ **USB***3 ↔ **FM** ↔ **AM** ↔ **DAB***3 ↔ **iPod***3 ↔ **Aux In** ↔ **BT Phone***3 ↔ **BT Audio***3 ↔ (back to the beginning)

*1 *When you select "All Source," you can use the same color for all the sources.*
*2 *Depends on the "Ext Input" setting, see page 30.*
*3 *Displayed only when the target component is connected.*

4 Select a color.

Pale ↔ **Aqua** ↔ **Sky** ↔ **Sea** ↔ **Leaves** ↔ **Grass** ↔ **Apple** ↔ **Rose** ↔ **Amber** ↔ **Honey** ↔ **Violet** ↔ **Grape** ↔ **Every***4 ↔ **User***5 ↔ (back to the beginning)

*4 *The color changes every 2 seconds.*
*5 *The user-edited colors—"Day Color" and "NightColor" will be applied (see the right column for details).*

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to select the color for each source (except when selecting "All Source" in step 3).

6 Exit from the setting.

Creating your own color—User Color

You can create your own colors—"Day Color" or "NightColor."

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 28.
- In step **2**, select "COLOR."
- In step **3**, select "Color Set."

2 Select "Day Color" or "NightColor."

Day Color ↔ NightColor

3 Select a primary color.

4 Adjust the level (00 to 11) of the selected primary color.

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to adjust other primary colors.

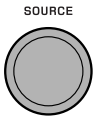
6 Exit from the setting.

Bluetooth settings

You can change the settings listed on the right column according to your preference.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

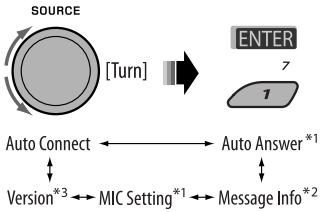
1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Enter the Bluetooth menu.

3 Select "Setting."

4 Select a setting item.

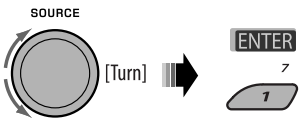


*1 *Displayed only when a Bluetooth phone is connected.*

*2 *Displayed only when a Bluetooth phone is connected and it is compatible with text message.*

*3 *Bluetooth Audio: Shows only "Version."*

5 Change the setting accordingly.



Setting menu (__ : Initial)

Auto Connect

When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with...

Off: No Bluetooth device.
Last: The last connected Bluetooth device.
Order: The available registered Bluetooth device found at first.

Auto Answer

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

On: The unit answers the incoming calls automatically.
Off: The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually.
Reject: The unit rejects all incoming calls.

Message Info

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

Auto: The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "Received Message."
Manual: The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.

MIC setting (microphone setting)

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."
Adjust the built-in microphone volume, [LEVEL 01/02/03].

Version

The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

More about this unit

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback also starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a track, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously next time you turn on the power.

General

- If you change the source while listening to a disc, playback stops.
  Next time you select "CD" as the playback source, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously.
- After ejecting a disc or removing a USB device, "No Disc" or "No USB" appears and you cannot operate some of the buttons. Insert another disc, reattach a USB device, or press SOURCE to select another playback source.

FM/AM/RDS

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
  – All previously stored stations are erased and the stations are stored anew.
  – Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
  – When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, the previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

FM RDS operations

- Network-Tracking Reception requires two types of RDS signals—PI (Programme Identification) and AF (Alternative Frequency) to work correctly. Without receiving these data correctly, Network-Tracking Reception will not operate correctly.
- If a Traffic Announcement is received by TA Standby Reception, the volume level automatically changes to the preset level (TA Volume) if the current level is lower than the preset level.
- When Alternative Frequency Reception is activated (with AF selected), Network-Tracking Reception is also activated automatically. On the other hand, Network-Tracking Reception cannot be deactivated without deactivating Alternative Frequency Reception. (See page 30.)
- If you want to know more about RDS, visit <http://www.rds.org.uk>.

Disc/USB operations

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

General

- This unit has been designed to reproduce CDs/CD Texts, and CD-Rs (Recordable)/CD-RWs (Rewritable) in audio CD (CD-DA), MP3 and WMA formats.
- When a disc is inserted upside down, "Please Eject" appears on the display. Press OPEN, then ⏏ to eject the disc.
- In this manual, words "track" and "file" are interchangeably used.
- While fast-forwarding or reversing on MP3/WMA/WAV files, you can only hear intermittent sounds.
- File/folder list may not appear correctly if too many hierarchies and folders are used.

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot again to protect it from dust. Playback starts automatically.

Playing a CD-R or CD-RW

- Use only "finalized" CD-Rs or CD-RWs.
- This unit can only play back files of the same type as those which are detected first if a disc includes both audio CD (CD-DA) files and MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some CD-Rs or CD-RWs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, or for the following reasons:
  – Discs are dirty or scratched.
  – Moisture condensation has occurred on the lens inside the unit.
  – The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
  – The files on the CD-R/CD-RW are written using the "Packet Write" method.
  – There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stained, scratched, warped, etc.).
- CD-RWs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of CD-RWs is lower than that of regular CDs.
- Do not use the following CD-Rs or CD-RWs:
  – Discs with stickers, labels, or a protective seal stuck to the surface.
  – Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

  Using these discs under high temperature or high humidity may cause malfunctions or damage to the unit.

Playing an MP3/WMA disc

- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3 files and for WMA files.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files meeting the conditions below:

  MP3:
  – Bit rate: 8 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz, 12 kHz, 11.025 kHz, 8 kHz

  WMA:
  – Bit rate: 32 kbps — 192 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz
  – Disc format: ISO 9660 Level 1/Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names vary depending on the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3> or <.wma>).
  – ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
  – ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
  – Romeo*: up to 128 characters
  – Joliet*: up to 64 characters
  – Windows long file name*: up to 128 characters

* *The parenthetic figure is the maximum number of characters for file/folder names in case the total number of files and folders is 271 or more.*

- This unit can recognize a total of 512 files, 200 folders, and 8 hierarchical levels.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).

  Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in the elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. In particular, this difference becomes noticeable after performing the search function.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded in MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriate format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded in lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.

Continued on the next page

– WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
– Files which have data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks from a USB device

- Connecting a USB device automatically changes the source to "USB."
- While playing from a USB device, the playback order may differ from the one from other players.
- This unit may be unable to play back some USB devices or some files due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- Depending on the shape of the USB devices and connection ports, some USB devices may not be attached properly or the connection might be loose.
- When connecting a USB mass storage class device, refer also to its instructions.
- Connect one USB mass storage class device to the unit at a time. Do not use a USB hub.
- You can connect two types of USB device to this unit—MTP device and Mass storage class device. If you connect an MTP device featuring "USB digital media streaming" to this unit, you can play back the WMA-DRM10 (Digital Right Management) files purchased through the music distributing web sites, through this unit.
- This unit is compatible with the USB Full-Speed.
- If the connected USB device does not have the correct files, "No File" appears.
- This unit can show ID3 Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3 and WMA/WAV Tag.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA/WAV files meeting the conditions below:
  MP3:
  – Bit rate: 32 kbps — 320 kbps (MPEG-1)
    8 kbps — 160 kbps (MPEG-2)
  – Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
  WMA:
  – Bit rate: 5 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 8 kHz — 48 kHz
  – Channel: 1 ch/2 ch
  WAV:
  – Bit rate: Linear PCM at 705 kbps and 1 411 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 44.1 kHz
  – Channel: 1 ch/2 ch
- This unit can play back MP3 files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- The maximum number of characters for folder and file names is 25 characters; 128 characters for MP3/WMA/WAV Tag.
- This unit can recognize a total of 20 000 files and 2 000 folders (999 files per folder). However, the display can shows until 9 999 folders/files.
- The unit cannot recognize a USB mass storage class device whose rating is other than 5 V and exceeds 500 mA.
- USB devices equipped with special functions such as data security functions cannot be used with the unit.
- Do not use a USB device with 2 or more partitions.
- This unit may not recognized a USB device connected through a USB card reader.
- This unit may not play back files in a USB device properly when using a USB extension cord.
- This unit cannot assure proper functions or supply power to all types of USB devices.

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on the circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

appears when the connection is established.

	Appears when the Bluetooth phone is connected.
	Appears when the Bluetooth audio player is connected.
	Appears when the Bluetooth phone and Bluetooth audio player are connected.

Icons for phone types

These icons indicate the phone type set on the device:

: Cellular phone	: General
: Household phone	: Other than above
: Office	: Unknown

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **Connection Error:**
  The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use "Connect" to connect the device again. (See page 15.)
- **Error**
  Try the operation again. If "Error" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **Device Not Found**
  No available Bluetooth device is detected by "Search...".
- **Loading...**
  The unit is updating the phone book and/or text messages.
- **Please Wait...**
  The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **Reset 08**
  Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

DAB

- Only the primary DAB service can be preset even when you store a secondary service.
- A previously preset DAB service is erased when a new DAB service is stored in the same preset number.

iPod

- Controllable iPod (connected through....):
  (A) KS-PD100:
  – iPod with dock connector (3rd Generation)
  – iPod with click wheel (4th Generation)
  – iPod nano (1st & 2nd*1 Generation)
  – iPod mini (1st Generation)
  – iPod video (5th Generation)*2
  – iPod photo
  (B) USB input jack:
  – iPod nano (1st & 2nd Generation)
  – iPod video (5th Generation)

*1 *When you connect the iPod nano to the interface adapter, be sure to disconnect the headphones; otherwise, no sound is heard.*

*2 *It is not possible to browse video files on the "Videos" menu while the iPod is connected to the interface adapter.*

- Update your iPod to the latest software version before using it with this unit.
  – You can check the software version of your iPod under "About" in the "Setting" menu of the iPod.
  – For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- While the unit is being turned on, the iPod is charged through this unit.
- While connecting an iPod with Video:
  – No video shows on the iPod's display or the external monitor (only the audio part is available).
  – It is not possible to browse video files on the "Video" menu. (If you connect the iPod during the playback or pausing of a video file, resuming playback will not work.)
- iPod shuffle and iPhone cannot be used with this unit.
- You can control the iPod from this unit when "JVC" or "√" appears on the iPod display after connection.

Continued on the next page

- The song order displayed on the selection menu of this unit may differ from that of the iPod.
- If playback is stopped, select a track from the selection menu or press BAND to play back the same track again.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly:
  – Some characters such as accented letters cannot be shown correctly on the display.
  – Communication between the iPod and the unit is not stable.
- If the text information includes more than 16 characters, it scrolls on the display. This unit can display up to 128 characters.

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>

General settings—PSM

- "Auto" setting for "Dimmer" may not work correctly on some vehicles, particularly on those having a control dial for dimming.
  In this case, change the "Dimmer" setting to any other than "Auto."
- If "LCD Type" is set to "Auto," the display pattern will change to the "Positive" or "Negative" pattern depending on the "Dimmer" setting.
- If you change the "Amp Gain" setting from "High PWR" to "Low PWR" while the volume level is set higher than "Volume 30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "Volume 30."

Available characters

Upper case

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N
O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	space	

Lower case

a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n
o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	space	

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	−	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	space							

Available PTY codes
News, Affairs, Info, Sport, Educate, Drama, Culture, Science, Varied, Pop M (music), Rock M (music), Easy M (music), Light M (music), Classics, Other M (music), Weather, Finance, Children, Social, Religion, Phone In, Travel, Leisure, Jazz, Country, Nation M (music), Oldies, Folk M (music), Document

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).
	• "Connect Error" appears on the display.	Remove the control panel, wipe the connector, then attach it again (see page 42).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the aerial firmly.
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played back. • Tracks on the CD-R/CD-RW cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized CD-R/CD-RW. • Finalize the CD-R/CD-RW with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc can neither be played back nor ejected.	• Unlock the disc (see page 11). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 3).
	• Disc sound is sometimes interrupted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
	• Disc cannot be recognized ("No Disc," "CD Loading Error," or "Eject Error" flashes).	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 3).
	• "Please Eject" appears on the display.	This occurs sometimes due to over-heating. Eject the disc or change to another playback source.
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Use a disc with MP3/WMA tracks recorded in a format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet. • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• A longer readout time is required ("Reading" keeps flashing on the display).	Do not use too many hierarchical levels and folders.
	• Tracks do not play back in the order you have intended them to play.	The playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	• The elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc (eg. variable bit rate).
	• "Please Eject" appears on the display.	Insert a disc that contains MP3/WMA tracks.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	Skip to the next track encoded in an appropriate format or to the next non-copy-protected WMA track.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (capital: A – Z, small: a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols (see page 38).

Continued on the next page

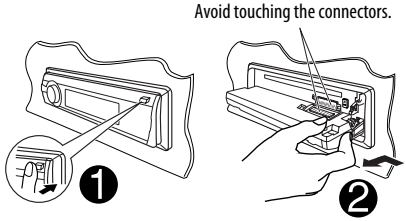
	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
USB device	• Noise is generated.	• The track played back is not a playable file format (MP3/WMA/WAV). Skip to another file. • Do not add the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav> to non-MP3/WMA/WAV tracks.
	• Tracks cannot play back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differs from the one played back using other players.
	• "Reading" keeps flashing on the display.	• Readout time varies depending on the USB device. • Do not use too many hierarchy, folders and empty folders.* • Turn off the power then on again. • Do not pull out or connect the USB device repeatedly while "Reading" is displayed on the display. * *Folder that is phisically empty or folder that contains data but does not contain valid MP3/WMA/WAV track.*
	• "No File" flashes on the display. • "No USB" appears on the display.	Connect a USB device that contains tracks encoded in an appropriate format.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	The track is unplayable.
	• "Read failed" appears on the display.	The connected USB device may be malfunctioning, or may not have been formatted correctly. The files included in the USB device are corrupted.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	For available characters, see page 38.
	• While playing a track, sound is sometimes interrupted.	The tracks have not been properly copied into the USB device. Copy tracks again into the USB device, and try again.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a USB device.	• Turn off, then turn on the unit. • Connect the device again, when the sound is not yet restored.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Bluetooth®	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	The unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio device at a time. While connecting a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device. After the device detects the unit, select "Open..." on the unit to connect the device. (See page 14.)
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. • Select the device name from "Special," then try to connect again. (See page 15.)
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to a place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a Bluetooth audio player.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio player. • Disconnect the device connected for "BT-PHONE." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • Connect the player again, when the sound is not yet restored.
	• The connected audio player cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio player supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile). (Operations depend on the connected audio player.)
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).

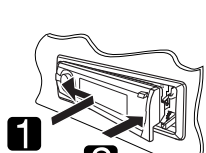
Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
DAB	• "noSIGNAL" appears on the display.	Move to an area with stronger signals.
	• "RESET 8" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly and reset the unit (see page 3).
	• "ANTENANG" appears on the display.	Check the cords and connections.
	• The DAB tuner does not work at all.	Reconnect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly and reset the unit (see page 3).
iPod	• The iPod does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version. • Charge the battery.
	• The sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the display.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Charge the battery.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation (see page 20).
	• No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano.	• Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano. • Update the firmware version of the iPod nano.
	• "No File" appears on the display.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the display.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect it again.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the display.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.

Detaching the control panel



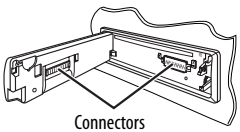
Attaching the control panel



Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors. To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connectors

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture has evaporated.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

Center holder

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc in its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs in cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

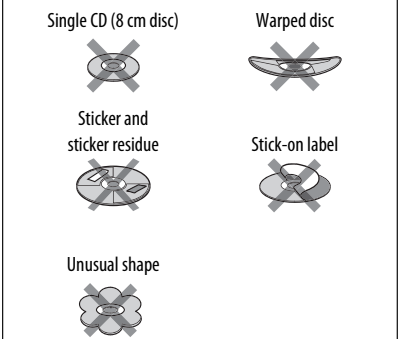
- Do not use any solvents (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:



- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Tone Control Range:	Bass:	±12 dB (60 Hz, 80 Hz, 100 Hz, 200 Hz)
		Mid-range	±12 dB (500 Hz, 1.0 kHz, 1.5 kHz, 2.5 kHz)
		Treble:	±12 dB (10.0 kHz, 12.5 kHz, 15.0 kHz, 17.5 kHz)
	Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Signal to Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Audio Output Level:	Line-Out Level/Impedance:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
		Subwoofer-Out Level/Impedance:	2.5 V /20 kΩ load (full scale)
	Other Terminals:	CD changer jack, AUX (auxiliary) input jack, USB input jack, Aerial input, Steering wheel remote input	

TUNER SECTION	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	MW: 522 kHz to 1 620 kHz LW: 144 kHz to 279 kHz
	FM Tuner:	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 µV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	30 dB
	MW Tuner:	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 µV/35 dB
	LW Tuner:	Sensitivity:	50 µV

CD PLAYER SECTION	Type:		Compact disc player
	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)	
	Number of Channels:		2 channels (stereo)
	Frequency Response:		5 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Dynamic Range:		96 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		98 dB
	Wow and Flutter:		Less than measurable limit
	MP3 Decoding Format: (MPEG1/2 Audio Layer 3)	Max. Bit Rate:	320 kbps
	WMA (Windows Media® Audio) Decoding Format:	Max. Bit Rate:	320 kbps

USB SECTION	USB Standard:		USB 1.1, USB 2.0
	Data Transfer Rate (Full Speed):	Full Speed:	Max. 12 Mbps
		Low Speed:	Max. 1.5 Mbps
	Compatible Device:		Mass storage class
	Compatible File System:		FAT 32/16/12
	Playable Audio Format:		MP3/WMA/WAV
	Max. Current:		500 mA/5V

GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
	Grounding System:		Negative ground
	Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C
	Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 52 mm × 160 mm
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 58 mm × 12 mm
	Mass (approx.):		1.4 kg (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?
Please reset your unit
Refer to page of How to reset your unit

Vous avez des PROBLÈMES de fonctionnement?
Réinitialisez votre appareil
Référez-vous à la page intitulée Comment réinitialiser votre appareil

Dear Customer,
This apparatus is in conformance with the valid European directives and standards regarding electromagnetic compatibility and electrical safety.

European representative of Victor Company of Japan, Limited is:
JVC Technical Services Europe GmbH
Postfach 10 05 04
61145 Friedberg
Germany

Cher(e) client(e),
Cet appareil est conforme aux directives et normes européennes en vigueur concernant la compatibilité électromagnétique et à la sécurité électrique.

Représentant européen de la société Victor Company of Japan, Limited:
JVC Technical Services Europe GmbH
Postfach 10 05 04
61145 Friedberg
Allemagne.

JVC

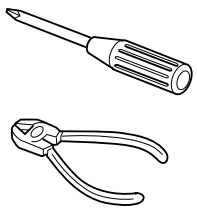
EN, FR

© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0408DTSMDTJEIN

KD-PDR62/KD-PDR61

Installation/Connection Manual
Manuel d'installation/raccordement



GET0524-010C
[EX]

0408DTSMDTJEIN
EN, FR
© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealers.

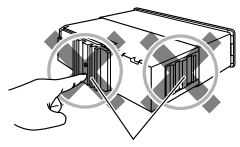
WARNINGS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with a maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amp Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 31 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



Heat sink
Dissipateur de chaleur

FRANÇAIS

Cet appareil est conçu pour fonctionner sur des sources de **courant continu de 12 V à masse NEGATIVE**. *Si votre véhicule n'offre pas ce type d'alimentation, il vous faut un convertisseur de tension, que vous pouvez acheter chez un revendeur d'autoradios JVC.*

AVERTISSEMENTS

Pour éviter tout court-circuit, nous vous recommandons de débrancher la borne négative de la batterie et d'effectuer tous les raccordements électriques avant d'installer l'appareil.

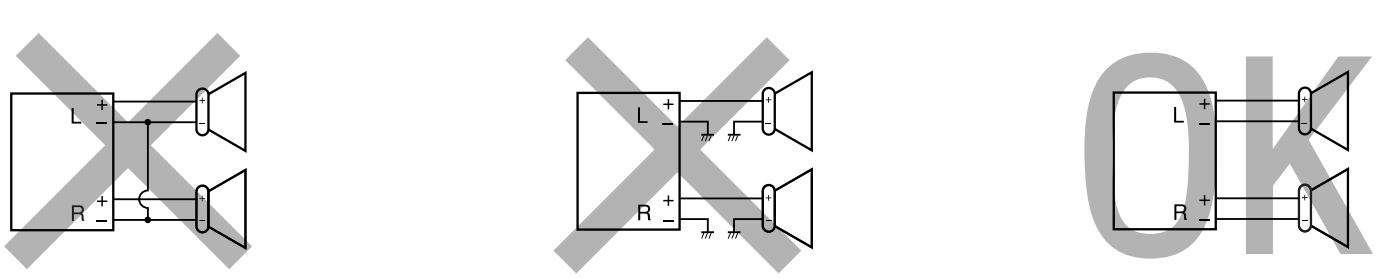
- **Assurez-vous de raccorder de nouveau la mise à la masse de cet appareil au châssis de la voiture après l'installation.**

Remarques:

- *Remplacer le fusible par un de la valeur précisée. Si le fusible saute souvent, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC.*
- *Il est recommandé de connecter des enceintes avec une puissance maximum de plus de 50 W (à l'arrière et à l'avant et avec une impédance de* **4 Ω à 8 Ω***). Si la puissance maximum est inférieure à 50 W, changez "Amp Gain" pour éviter d'endommager vos enceintes (voir page 31 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).*
- *Pour éviter les courts-circuits, recouvrez les extrémités des fils INUTILISÉS avec une bande isolante.*
- *Le dissipateur de chaleur devient très chaud après usage. Faire attention de ne pas le toucher en retirant cet appareil.*

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.



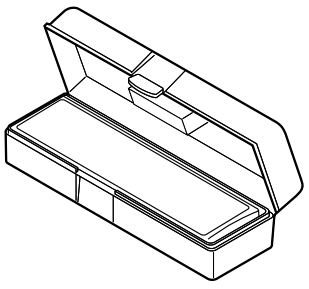
PRECAUTIONS sur l'alimentation et la connexion des enceintes:

- **NE CONNECTEZ PAS les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation à la batterie; sinon, l'appareil serait sérieusement endommagé.**
- *AVANT de connecter les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation aux enceintes, vérifiez le câblage des enceintes de votre voiture.*

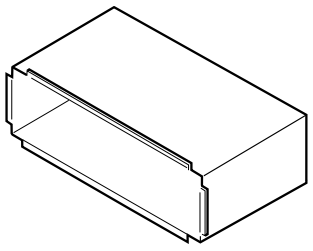
Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer immediately.

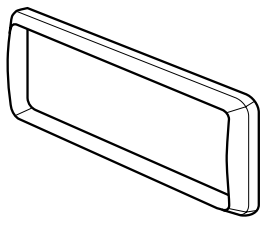
Ⓐ / Ⓑ
Hard case/Control panel
Etui de transport/Panneau de commande



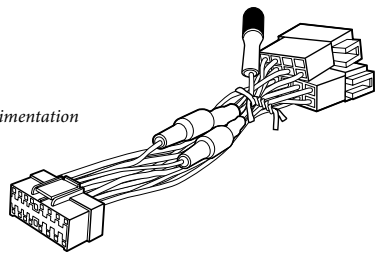
Ⓒ
Sleeve
Manchon



Ⓓ
Trim plate
Plaque d'assemblage



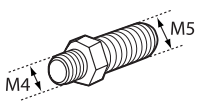
Ⓔ
Power cord
Cordon d'alimentation



Ⓕ
Washer (ø5)
Rondelle (ø5)

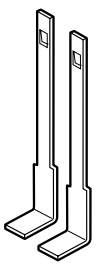
Ⓖ
Lock nut (M5)
Ecrou d'arrêt (M5)

Ⓗ
Mounting bolt
(M4 × 5 mm; M5 × 12.5 mm)
Boulon de montage
(M4 × 5 mm; M5 × 12,5 mm)

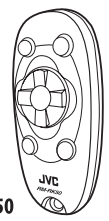


Ⓘ
Rubber cushion
Amortisseur en caoutchouc

Ⓙ
Handles
Poignées



Ⓚ
Remote controller
Télécommande



RM-RK50

Ⓛ
Battery
Pile

CR2025

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

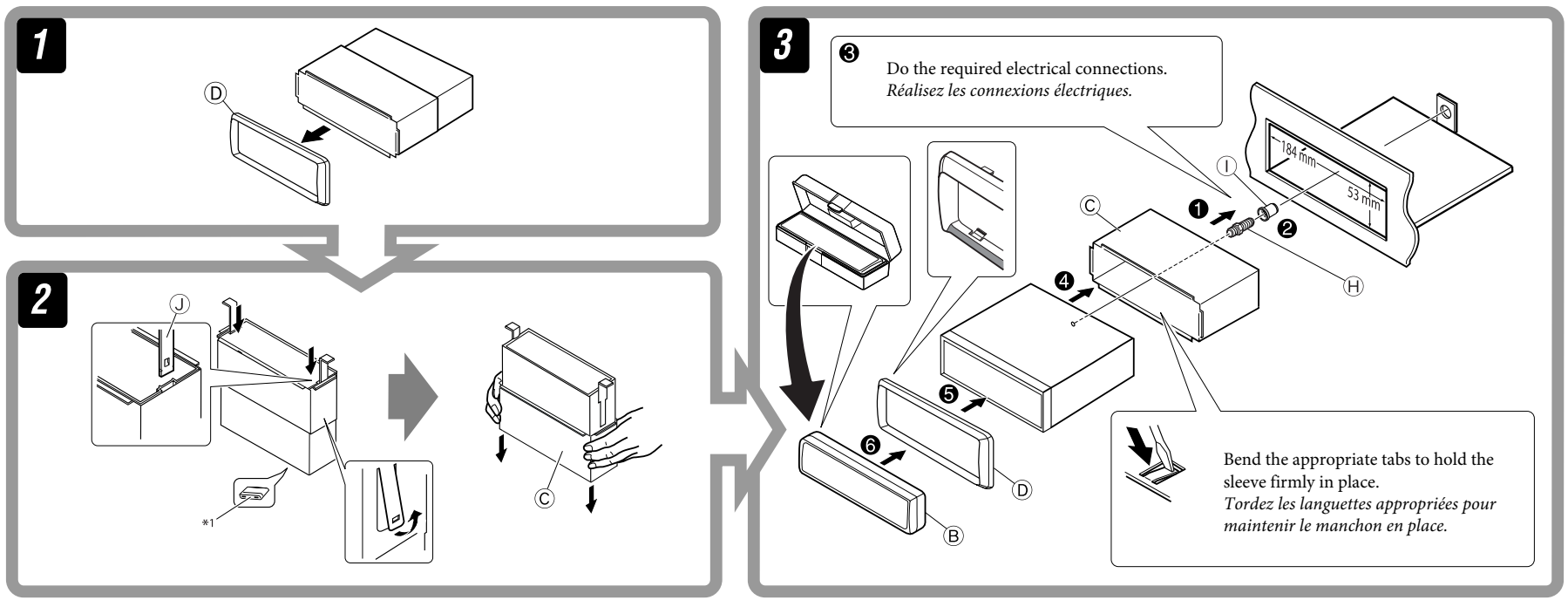
The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

INSTALLATION (MONTAGE DANS LE TABLEAU DE BORD)

L'illustration suivante est un exemple d'installation typique. Si vous avez des questions ou avez besoin d'information sur des kits d'installation, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC ou une compagnie d'approvisionnement.

- *Si l'on n'est pas sûr de pouvoir installer correctement cet appareil, le faire installer par un technicien qualifié.*

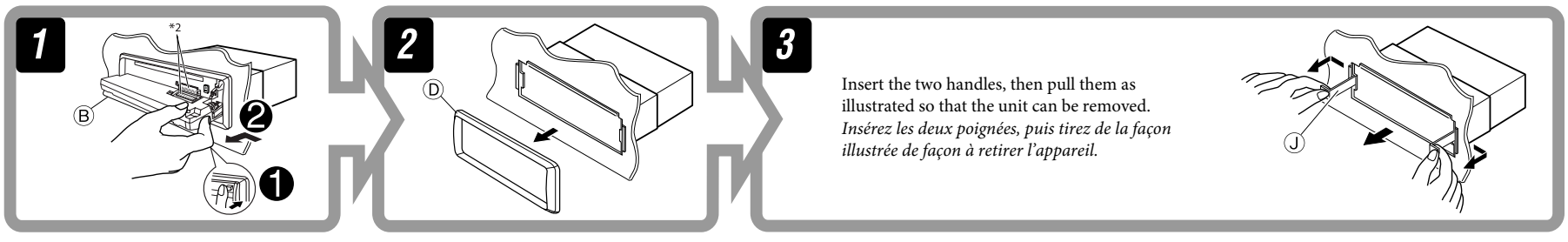


Removing the unit

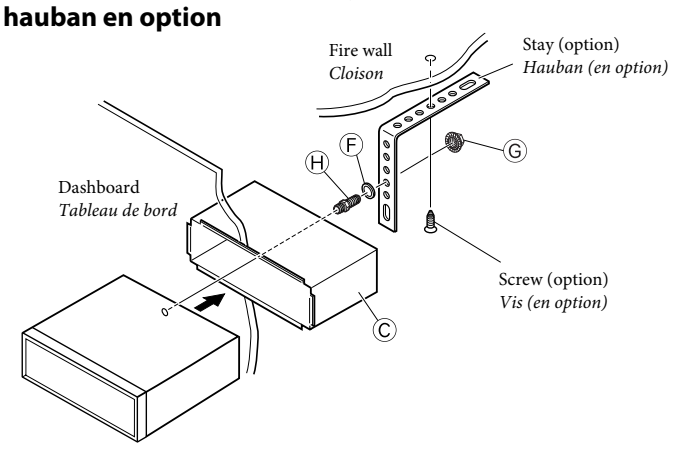
Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

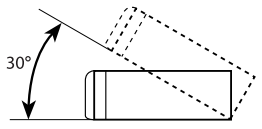
Retrait de l'appareil

Avant de retirer l'appareil, libérer la section arrière.



When using the optional stay / Lors de l'utilisation du hauban en option

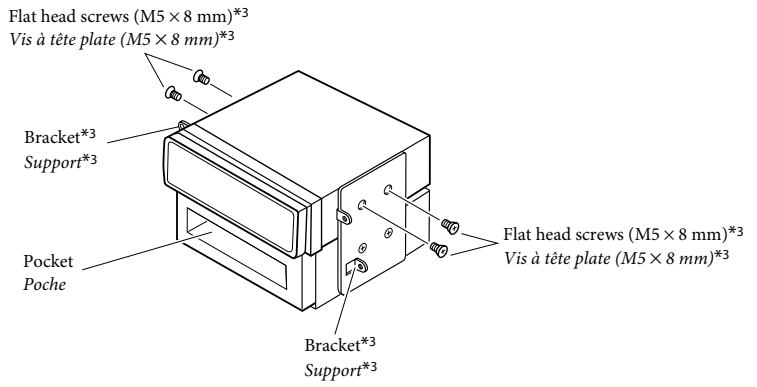




Install the unit at an angle of less than 30˚.
Installez l'appareil avec un angle de moins de 30˚.

When installing the unit without using the sleeve / Lors de l'installation de l'appareil scans utiliser de manchon

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.
Dans une voiture Toyota, par exemple, retirez d'abord l'autoradio et installez l'appareil à sa place.



Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

Remarque : *Lors de l'installation de l'appareil sur le support de montage, s'assurer d'utiliser des vis d'une longueur de 8 mm. Si des vis plus longues sont utilisées, elles peuvent endommager l'appareil.*

*1 When you stand the unit, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
*2 Avoid touching the connectors.
*3 Not supplied for this unit.

*1 *Lorsque vous mettez l'appareil à la verticale, faire attention de ne pas endommager le fusible situé sur l'arrière.*
*2 *Évitez de toucher les connecteurs.*
*3 *Non fourni avec cet autoradio.*

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?

- **Power cannot be turned on.**
* Is the yellow lead connected?

- **No sound from the speakers.**
* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?

- **Sound is distorted.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?

- **This unit becomes hot.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **This unit does not work at all.**
* Have you reset your unit?

EN CAS DE DIFFICULTES

- **Le fusible saute.**
* *Les fils rouge et noir sont-ils racordés correctement?*

- **L'appareil ne peut pas être mise sous tension.**
* *Le fil jaune est-elle raccordée?*

- **Pas de son des enceintes.**
* *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il court-circuité?*

- **Le son est déformé.**
* *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?*
* *Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?*

- **Interférence avec les sons.**
* *La prise arrière de mise à la terre est-elle connectée au châssis de la voiture avec un cordon court et épais?*

- **Cet appareil devient chaud.**
* *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?*
* *Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?*

- **Cet appareil ne fonctionne pas du tout.**
* *Avez-vous réinitialisé votre appareil?*

ENGLISH

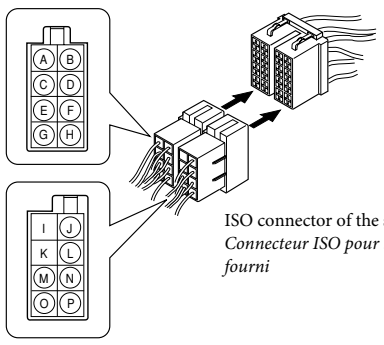
ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

FRANÇAIS

RACCORDEMENTS ELECTRIQUES

A If your car is equipped with the ISO connector / Si votre voiture est équippée d'un connecteur ISO

- Connect the ISO connectors as illustrated.
- *Connectez les connecteurs ISO comme montré sur l'illustration.*



From the car body
De la carrosserie de la voiture

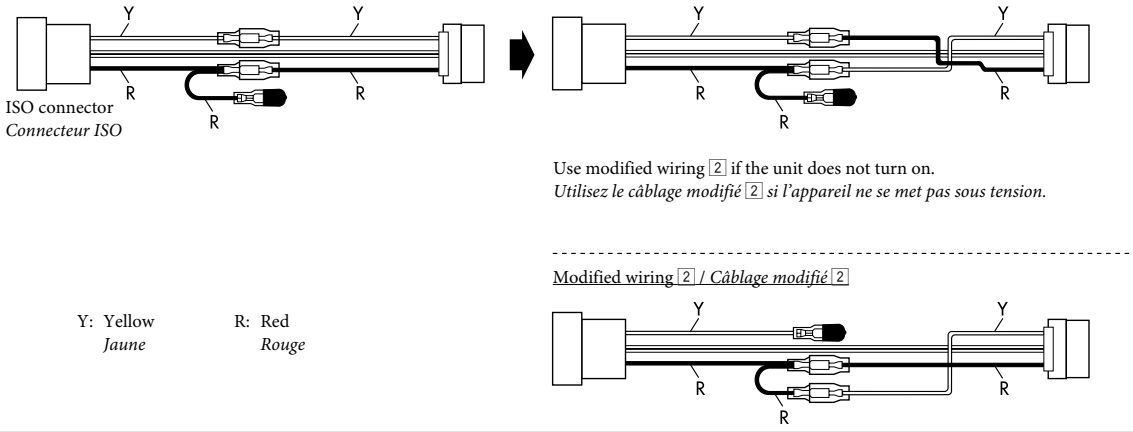
ISO connector of the supplied power cord
Connecteur ISO pour le cordon d'alimentation fourni

View from the lead side
Vue à partir du côté des fils

For some VW/Audi or Opel (Vauxhall) automobiles / Pour certaines automobiles VW/Audi ou Opel (Vauxhall)

You may need to modify the wiring of the supplied power cord as illustrated.
- Contact your authorized car dealer before installing this unit.

Vous aurrez peut-être besoin de modifier le câblage du cordon d'alimentation fourni comme montré sur l'illustration.
- *Contactez votre revendeur automobile autorisé avant d'installer l'appareil.*


Original wiring / Câblage original
Y
R
ISO connector
Connecteur ISO
Modified wiring 1 / Câblage modifié 1
Use modified wiring 2 if the unit does not turn on.
Utilisez le câblage modifié 2 si l'appareil ne se met pas sous tension.
Modified wiring 2 / Câblage modifié 2

Y: Yellow *Jaune*
R: Red *Rouge*

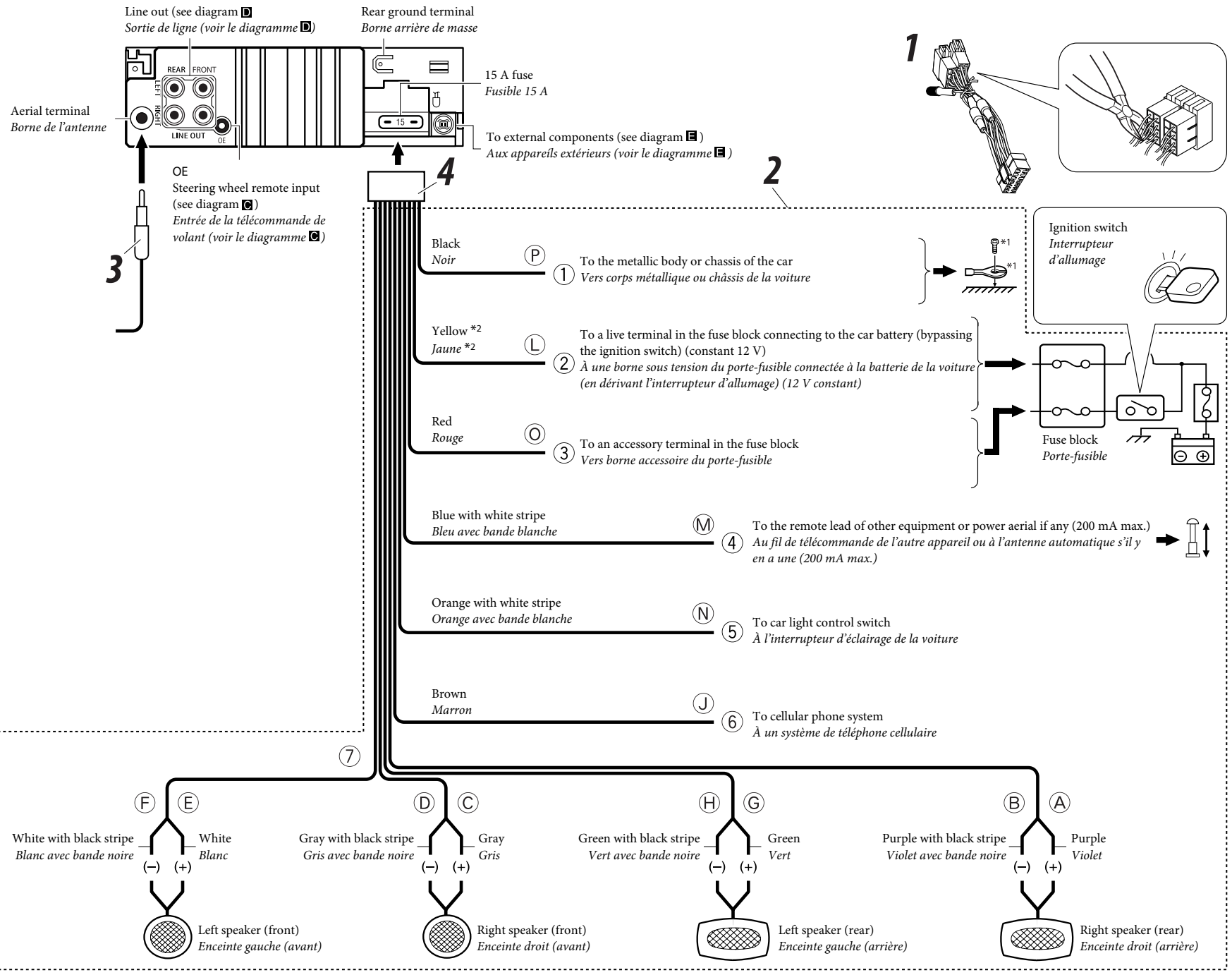
B Connections without using the ISO connector / Connexions sans utiliser le connecteur ISO

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

1. Cut the ISO connector.
2. Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
3. Connect the aerial cord.
4. Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

Avant de commencer la connexion: *Vérifiez attentivement le câblage du véhicule. Une connexion incorrecte peut endommager sérieusement l'appareil.*
Le fil du cordon d'alimentation et ceux des connecteurs du châssis de la voiture peuvent être différents en couleur.

1. *Coupez le connecteur ISO.*
2. *Connectez les fils colorés du cordon d'alimentation dans l'ordre spécifié sur l'illustration ci-dessous.*
3. *Connectez le cordon d'antenne.*
4. *Finalement, connectez le faisceau de fils à l'appareil.*



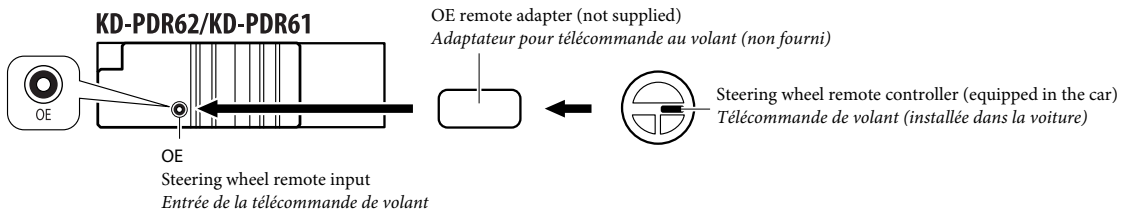
*1 Not supplied for this unit.
*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise the power cannot be turned on.

*1 *Non fourni avec cet autoradio.*
*2 *Pour vérifier le fonctionnement de cet appareil avant installation, ce fil doit être raccordé, sinon l'appareil ne peut pas être mis sous tension.*

C Connecting to the steering wheel remote controller / Connexion de la télécommande de volant

If your car is equipped with the steering wheel remote controller, you can operate this unit using the controller. To do it, a JVC's OE remote adapter (not supplied) which matches with your car is required. Consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer for details.

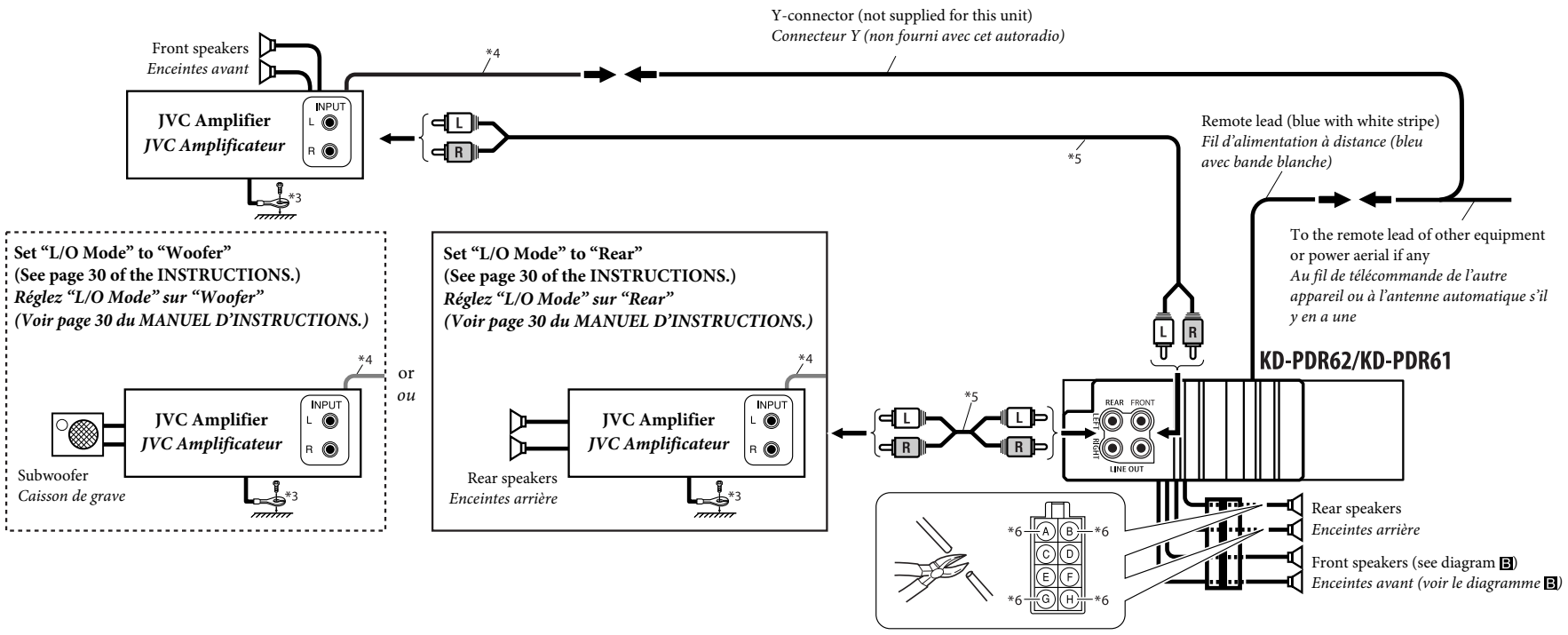
Si votre voiture est munie d'une télécommande de volant, vous pouvez commander cet autoradio en utilisant la télécommande. Pour le faire, un adaptateur pour télécommande au volant JVC (non fourni) correspondant à votre voiture est nécessaire. Consultez votre revendeur d'autoradio JVC pour les détails.


KD-PDR62/KD-PDR61
OE
OE remote adapter (not supplied)
Adaptateur pour télécommande au volant (non fourni)
Steering wheel remote controller (equipped in the car)
Télécommande de volant (installée dans la voiture)
OE
Steering wheel remote input
Entrée de la télécommande de volant

D Connecting the external amplifiers and/or subwoofer / Connexion d'amplificateurs extérieurs et/ou d'un caisson de grave

You can connect amplifiers to upgrade your car stereo system.
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**

Vous pouvez connecter des amplificateurs pour améliorer votre système stéréo.
- *Connectez le fil de commande à distance (bleu avec bande blanche) au fil de commande à distance de l'autre appareil de façon qu'il puisse être commandé via cet appareil.*
- **Déconnectez les enceintes de cet appareil et connectez-les à l'amplificateur. Laissez les fils d'enceintes de cet appareil inutilisés.**



E Connecting the external components / Connexion des appareils extérieurs

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

Lors de la connexion des appareils extérieurs, référez-vous aussi aux manuels fournis avec les appareils et les adaptateurs.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

PRECAUTION:
Avant de connecter les appareils extérieurs, assurez-vous que l'appareil est hors tension.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

Vous pouvez connecter les appareils JVC suivants à la prise de changeur de CD.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.
JVC DAB tuner	KT-DB1000

Appareil JVC	*Nom du modèle*
Changeur de CD (CD-CH)	*CH-X1500, etc.*
Tuner DAB JVC	*KT-DB1000*

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.
- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Vous pouvez aussi connecter les appareils suivants en utilisant divers adaptateurs JVC.
- *Vous pouvez avoir besoin d'acheter certains cordons de connexion séparément.*

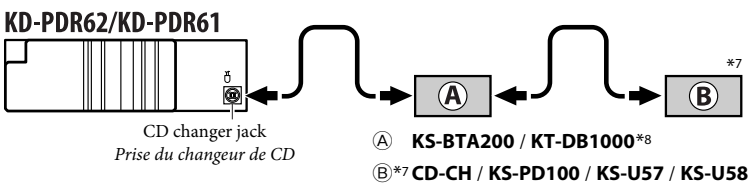
Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

Appareil	*Adaptateur*	*Nom du modèle*
Périphérique Bluetooth	*Adaptateur Bluetooth*	*KS-BTA200*
iPod	*Adaptateur d'interface pour iPod*	*KS-PD100*
Lecteur audio portable avec prises de sortie de ligne	*Adaptateur d'entrée de ligne*	*KS-U57*
Lecteur audio portable avec mini fiche stéréo de 3,5 mm	*Adaptateur d'entrée auxiliaire*	*KS-U58*

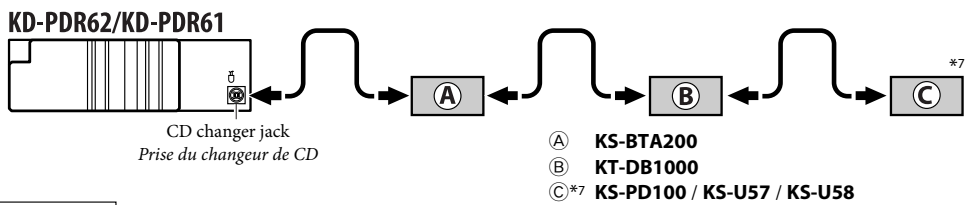
When connecting more than one component (maximum: three), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

Lors de la connexion de plus d'un appareil (maximum: trois), il est recommandé que vous connectiez les appareils en série comme nous l'expliquons ci-dessous.

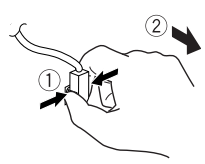
When connecting two components in series / Lors de la connexion de deux appareils en série



When connecting three components in series / Lors de la connexion de trois appareils en série



To disconnect the connector / *Pour déconnecter le connecteur*



Hold the connector tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
Tenez le connecteur solidement (①), puis tirez-le vers l'extérieur (②).

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
iPod est une marque de commerce d'Apple Inc., enregistrée aux États-Unis et dans les autres pays.

*3 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.
*4 Remote lead
*5 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit).
*6 Cut the rear speaker leads of the car's ISO connector and connect them to the amplifier.
*7 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 30 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
*8 If KS-BTA200 is available, connect it to position Ⓐ and connect KT-DB1000 to position Ⓑ.

*3 *Attachez solidement le fil de mise à la masse au châssis métallique de la voiture—à un endroit qui n'est pas recouvert de peinture (s'il est recouvert de peinture, enlevez d'abord la peinture avant d'attacher le fil). L'appareil peut être endommagé si cela n'est pas fait correctement.*
*4 *Fil d'alimentation à distance*
*5 *Cordon de signal (non fourni avec cet autoradio).*
*6 *Coupez les fils des enceintes arrière du connecteur ISO de la voiture et connectez-les à l'amplificateur.*
*7 *Pour utiliser ces appareils, réglez l'entrée extérieure correctement (voir page 30 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).*
*8 *Si vous disposez du KS-BTA200, connectez-le à la position Ⓐ et connectez le KT-DB1000 à la position Ⓑ.*

JVC

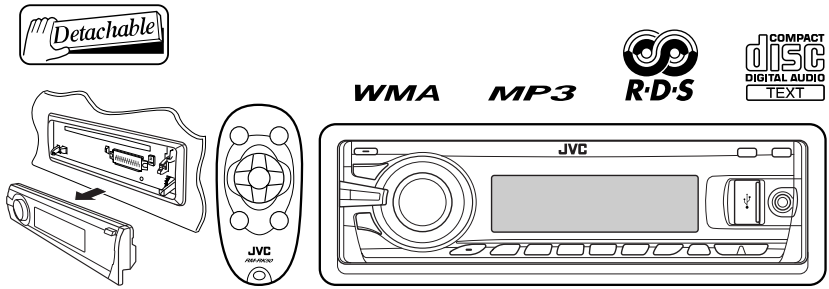
ENGLISH

DEUTSCH

РУССКИЙ

CD RECEIVER
CD-RECEIVER
РЕСИВЕР С ПРОИГРЫВАТЕЛЕМ КОМПАКТ-ДИСКОВ

KD-PDR62/KD-PDR61



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 4.
Zum Abbrechen der Displaydemonstration siehe Seite 4.
Информацию об отмене демонстрации функций дисплея см. на стр. 4.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Für den Einbau und die Anschlüsse siehe das eigenständige Handbuch.
Указания по установке и выполнению соединений приводятся в отдельной инструкции.

INSTRUCTIONS
BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG
ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ

GET0524-006B
[EY]

ENGLISH

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス1M レーザー放射が出ます。光学装置で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS II LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG)

This symbol is only valid in the European Union.

Information for Users on Disposal of Old Equipment

This symbol indicates that the product with this symbol should not be disposed as general household waste at its end-of-life. If you wish to dispose of this product, please do so in accordance with applicable national legislation or other rules in your country and municipality. By disposing of this product correctly, you will help to conserve natural resources and will help prevent potential negative effects on the environment and human health.

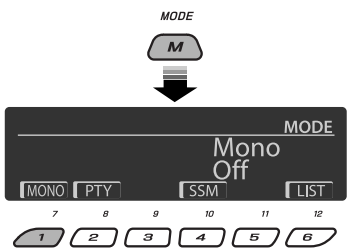
Warning:

If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.

How to use the M MODE and SEL buttons

If you use M MODE or SEL (select), the display and some controls (such as the number buttons, ⏮/⏭ buttons, ▲/▼ buttons, and the control dial) enter the corresponding control mode.

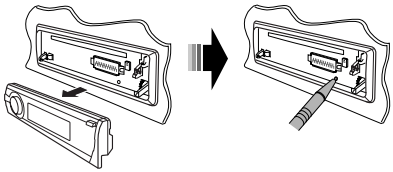
Ex.: When you press number button 1 after pressing M MODE, to operate the FM tuner.



To use these controls for original functions, press M MODE again.

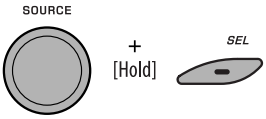
- However, pressing SEL makes the unit enters a different mode.
- Waiting for about 15 seconds (or 30 seconds for Bluetooth sources) without pressing any of these buttons will automatically cancels the control.

How to reset your unit

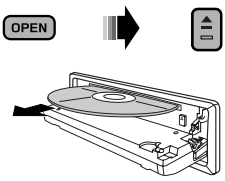


- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased (except the registered Bluetooth device, see pages 14 and 15).*

How to forcibly eject a disc



"Please Eject" appears on the display.



- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*
- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*

For security reasons, a numbered ID card is provided with this unit, and the same ID number is imprinted on the unit's chassis. Keep the card in a safe place, as it will help the authorities to identify your unit if stolen.

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTIONS

Preparation 4

OPERATIONS

Basic operations 5
- Using the control panel 5
- Using the remote controller (RM-RK50) 6

Listening to the radio 7
Disc operations 11
Listening to the USB device 13

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Using the Bluetooth® devices 14
- Using the Bluetooth cellular phone 16
- Using the Bluetooth audio player 18

Listening to the CD changer 19
Listening to the iPod 20
Listening to the DAB tuner 22
Listening to the other external components 25

SETTINGS

Selecting a preset sound mode 26
General settings—PSM 28
Bluetooth settings 33

REFERENCES

More about this unit 34
Troubleshooting 38
Maintenance 43
Specifications 44

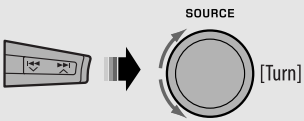
For detaching/attaching the control panel, see page 42.

ENGLISH

Preparation

Cancel the display demonstration and set the clock

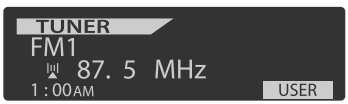
- See also pages 28 and 29.

1		**Turn on the power.**
2	[Hold]	**Enter the PSM settings.**
3	 [Turn]	**Cancel the display demonstrations** Select "Demo," then "Off." **Set the clock** Select "Clock Hr" (hour), then adjust the hour. Select "Clock Min" (minute), then adjust the minute. Select "24H/12H," then "24Hours" or "12Hours."
4		**Finish the procedure.**

Changing the display information and pattern

When the power is turned off: Check the current clock time

Ex.: When tuner is selected as the source



Source operation display

Audio level meter display
(see "LevelMeter" on page 28)

Caution:

If the temperature inside the car is below 0°C, the movement of animation and text scroll will be halted on the display to prevent the display from being blurred. L.TEMP appears on the display.
When the temperature increases, and the operating temperature is resumed, these functions will start working again.

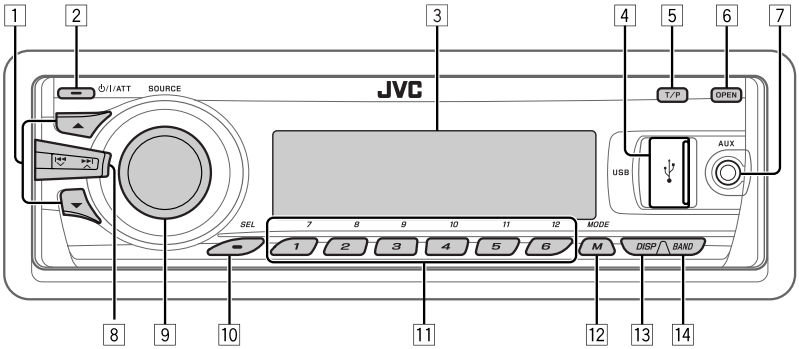
Caution on volume setting:

Digital devices (CD/USB) produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing these digital sources to avoid damaging the speakers by sudden increase of the output level.

This unit is equipped with the steering wheel remote control function.
- See the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume) for connection.

Basic operations

Using the control panel



1 • **DAB**: Select DAB service
  • **CD/USB/CD-CH:** Select folder.
  • **USB-iPod:** Enter the main menu [Hold].
  • **iPod:** Enter the main menu/Pause playback/Confirm selection.
  • **BT-PHONE/BT-AUDIO:** Select a registered device.

2 • Turn on the power.
  • Turn off the power [Hold].
  • Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).

3 Display window

4 USB (Universal Serial Bus) input jack

5 • Activate/deactivate TA Standby Reception.
  • Enter programme type searching mode [Hold].

6 Flip down the control panel.
  • To eject the disc, flip down the control panel then press ⏏ on the unit.

7 AUX (auxiliary) input jack

8 • **TUNER:** Search for station.
  • **DAB**: Search for DAB ensemble.
  • **CD/USB/CD-CH/USB-iPod/iPod:** Select track.
  • **BT-AUDIO:** Reverse skip/forward skip.

9 • Volume control [Turn].
  • Select the source [Press]*1.
  TUNER → **DAB***2 → **CD***2 → **USB***2 (or **USB-iPod**)*2 → **CD-CH***2/**iPod***2 (or **EXT IN**) → **BT-PHONE***2 → **BT-AUDIO***2 → **AUX IN** → (back to the beginning)

10 • Select/adjust the sound mode.
  • Enter the PSM settings [Hold].

11 • **TUNER:** Select preset station.
  • **DAB**: Select preset DAB service.
  • **CD/USB/CD-CH:** Select folder/track/disc (for CD changer).
  • **USB-iPod:** Select preset top menu items.
  • **BT-PHONE:** Dial preset phone number*3.

12 • Enter functions mode.
  • **BT-PHONE:** Activate Voice Dialing [Hold].

13 Change the display information and pattern.

14 • **TUNER:** Select the bands.
  • **USB-iPod/BT-AUDIO:** Start/pause playback.

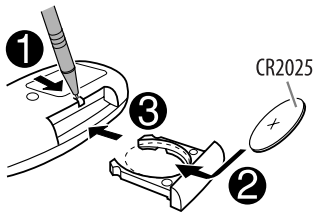
*1 *Holding SOURCE will enter the Bluetooth menu.*

*2 *You cannot select these sources if they are not ready or not connected.*

*3 *For storing preset phone number, see page 18.*

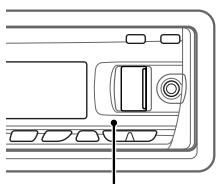
Using the remote controller (RM-RK50)

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



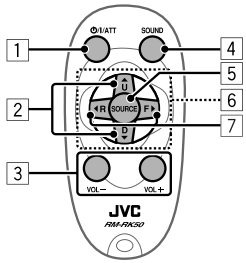
Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).



Warning (to prevent accidents and damage):

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent.
- Do not leave the remote controller in a place (such as dashboards) exposed to direct sunlight for a long time.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
- Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.



1 • Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
  • Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 • Changes the FM/AM/DAB bands with ▲ U.
  • Changes the preset stations with D ▼.
  • Changes the folder of the MP3/WMA/WAV.
  • While playing an MP3 disc on an MP3-compatible CD changer:
    – Changes the disc if pressed briefly.
    – Changes the folder if pressed and held.
  • While listening to an Apple iPod:

Connected to KS-PD100:

– Pauses or resumes playback with D ▼.
– Enters the main menu with ▲ U. (Now ▲ U/D ▼/◄ R/F ► work as the menu selecting buttons.)*

* ▲ U : *Returns to the previous menu.*
D ▼ : *Confirms the selection.*

Connected to the USB input jack:

– Enter the main menu if pressed and held.
– Select the desired menu if pressed briefly.
– Fast skip in every layer of the main menu if pressed and held.

3 Adjusts the volume level.

4 Selects the sound mode (iEQ: intelligent equalizer).

5 Selects the source.

6 For Bluetooth cellular phone:
– Answers calls if pressed briefly.
– Rejects calls if pressed and held.

7 • Searches for stations if pressed briefly.
  • Fast-forwards or reverses the track if pressed and held.
  • Changes the tracks if pressed briefly.

- While listening to an iPod (in menu selecting mode):
  Connected to KS-PD100:
  – Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press D ▼ to confirm the selection.)
  – Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.
  Connected to the USB input jack:
  – Start play back the selected folder directly if pressed and held.
- Reverse skip/forward skip for Bluetooth audio.

Listening to the radio

1	SOURCE	**Select "TUNER."**
2	BAND	**Select the bands.** FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM
3		**Search for a station to listen—Auto Search.** Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" lights up on the display, then press it repeatedly. • When receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength, ST lights up on the display.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1 MODE (M)

2 MONO (7, 1)

Mono Off → Mono On

Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.
- MO lights up on the display.

3 Exit from the setting.

MODE (M)

FM station automatic presetting —SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

You can preset up to six stations for each band.

1 While listening to a station...

MODE (M)

2 SSM (10, 4)

3 SSM (10, 4)

Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the selected FM band.

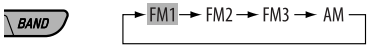
Continued on the next page

Manual presetting

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

Using the number buttons

1



2

3

Preset number flashes for a while.

Using the Preset Station list

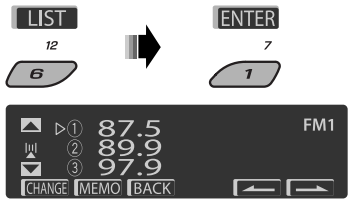
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Follow steps 1 and 2 of "Using the number buttons" above.

- By holding ▲ / ▼, the Preset Station List will also appear (go to step **4**).

2

3 Display the Preset Station List.



4 Select the preset number you want to store into.

- You can move to the lists of the other FM bands by pressing number button 5 ( ) or 6 ( ) repeatedly.

5 Store the station.

Listening to the preset station on the Preset Station List

1 Display the Preset Station List, then select the preset station you want to listen to.

2 Change to the selected station.

The following features are available only for FM RDS stations.

Searching for FM RDS programme —PTY Search

You can search for your favorite programmes being broadcast by selecting the PTY code for your favorite programmes.

- When BACK appears on the display, you can move back to the previous display by pressing number button 3.

• When ◄ / ► appears on the display, you can move to the other lists by pressing number button 5 or 6 repeatedly.

1 T/P [Hold]

2 Select "Search."

The three preset PTY codes appears on the display.

3 Select a PTY code.

You can select a PTY code from the 29 preset PTY codes or from the six stored PTY codes.

• To store your favorite programme types, see the following.

4 Start searching for your favorite programme.

PTY Search

If there is a station broadcasting a programme of the same PTY code as you have selected, that station is tuned in.

Storing your favorite programme types

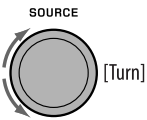
You can store six favorite programme types.

• When BACK appears on the display, you can move back to the previous display by pressing number button 3.

1 T/P [Hold]

2 Select "Memory."

3 Select a preset number ("Preset1"–"Preset6") you want to store into.



[Turn]

4 Select one of the PTY codes.

5 Store the selected PTY code.

Ex.: When "Classics" is selected in step **5**

6 Repeat steps 3 to 5 to store other PTY codes into other preset numbers.

7 Exit from the setting.

Activating TA/PTY Standby Reception

TA Standby Reception

Continued on the next page

TP either lights up or flashes on the display.
- If TP lights up, the unit temporarily will switch to Traffic Announcement (TA), if available, from any source other than AM.
  The volume changes to the preset TA volume level if the current level is lower than the preset level (see page 30).
- If TP flashes, TA Standby reception is not yet activated. Tune in to another station providing the RDS signals.

To deactivate TA Standby Reception, press T/P again. TP goes off.

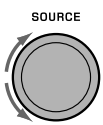
PTY Standby Reception

1

2

PTY Off ↔ Currently selected PTY code

3 **Select a PTY code.**



[Turn]

4 **Exit from the setting.**

PTY either lights up or flashes on the display.
- If PTY lights up, the unit temporarily will switch to your favorite PTY programme from any source other than AM.
- If PTY flashes, PTY Standby reception is not yet activated. Tune in to another station (or service) providing the RDS signals.

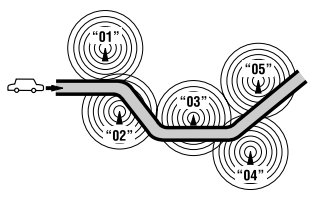
To deactivate PTY Standby Reception, select "Off" in step **2**. PTY goes off.

- When a DAB tuner is connected, TA/PTY Standby Reception also searches for services. (See also page 23.)
- The unit will not switch to Traffic Announcement or PTY programme when a call connection is established through "BT-PHONE."

Tracing the same programme— Network-Tracking Reception

When driving in an area where FM reception is not sufficient enough, this unit automatically tunes in to another FM RDS station of the same network, possibly broadcasting the same programme with stronger signals (see the illustration below).

Programme A broadcasting on different frequency areas (01 – 05)



When shipped from the factory, Network-Tracking Reception is activated.

To change the Network-Tracking Reception setting, see "AF-Regn'l" on page 30.
- When the DAB tuner is connected, refer to "Tracing the same programme—Alternative Frequency Reception (DAB AF)" on page 24.

Automatic station selection— Programme Search

Usually when you press the number buttons, the preset station is tuned in.
If the signals from the FM RDS preset station are not sufficient for good reception, this unit, using the AF data, tunes in to another frequency broadcasting the same programme as the original preset station is broadcasting.
- The unit takes some time to tune in to another station using programme search.
- See also page 30.

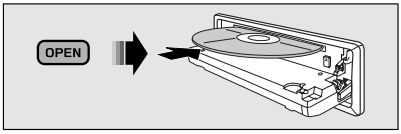
Disc operations

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

Caution:

Make sure to detach the USB device before opening the control panel, as it might block the opening mechanism.

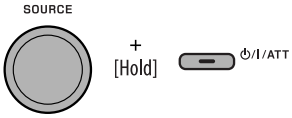
- To detach the USB device, see page 13.



To stop play and eject the disc

- Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.

Prohibiting disc ejection



To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure.

Pressing (or holding) the following buttons allows you to...

	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track
*1	MP3/WMA: Select folder
(Number buttons)*2	Locate particular folder*3 (for MP3/WMA disc) or track directly

*1 *By holding either one of the buttons, you can display the Folder List (see page 12).*

*2 *Press to select number 1 to 6; hold to select number 7 to 12.*

*3 *It is required that folders be assigned with 2-digit numbers at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.*

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks MP3/WMA: Within the same folder
	Repeat Track: Repeat current track **Repeat Folder:** MP3/WMA: Repeat current folder
	Random Folder: MP3/WMA: Randomly play all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders **Random Disc:** Randomly play all tracks

- You can also cancel the playback mode by selecting "**Off**" or press number button 4 (OFF).

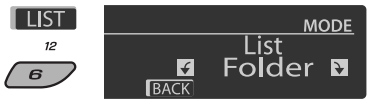
Continued on the next page

Selecting a folder/track on the list (only for MP3/WMA file)

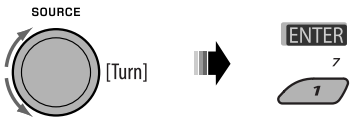
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1

2 Select "LIST."



3 Select the list type.



Folder ↔ File

4 Select an item.

Ex.: When "File" is selected in step **3**

- You can move to the other lists by pressing number button 5 ( ) or 6 ( ) repeatedly.

5 Change to the selected item.

Ⓐ If File List is selected

The list disappears and playback starts.

Ⓑ If Folder List is selected

- If the current folder is selected, File List appears, then repeat steps **4** and **5** Ⓐ to start playback.
- If another folder is selected, playback starts from the 1st file of the selected folder.

Listening to the USB device

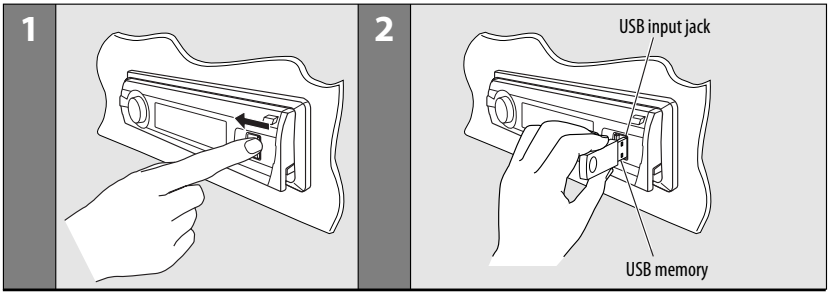
You can connect a USB mass storage class device such as a USB memory, Digital Audio Player*, portable HDD, etc. to the unit.

- You can also connect an Apple iPod to the USB input jack. For details of the operations, see pages 20 and 21.

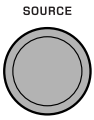
This unit can play MP3/WMA/WMA-DRM10*/WAV tracks stored in a USB device.

** You can connect both MTP (Media Transfer Protocol) devices and USB mass storage class devices. See also page 36.*

All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or detach the USB device.



If a USB device has been attached...



Playback starts from where it has been stopped previously.

- If a different USB device is currently attached, playback starts from the beginning.

To stop play and detach the USB device

Straightly pull it out from the unit.

- Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.

You can operate the USB device in the same way you operate the files on a disc. (See pages 11 and 12.)

- You can listen to WAV files by following the MP3/WMA files operations listed on pages 11 and 12.

Cautions:

- Avoid using the USB device if it might hinder your safety driving.
- Do not pull out and attach the USB device repeatedly while "Reading" is shown on the display.
- Do not start the car engine if a USB device is connected.
- This unit may not be able to play the files depending on the type of USB device.
- Operation and power supply may not work as intended for some USB devices.
- You cannot connect a computer to the USB input terminal of the unit.
- Make sure all important data has been backed up to avoid losing the data.
- Do not leave a USB device in the car, expose to direct sunlight, or high temperature to avoid deformation or cause damages to the device.
- Some USB devices may not work immediately after you turn on the power.
- For more details about USB operations, see page 36.

Using the Bluetooth® devices

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the **Bluetooth Adapter** (KS-BTA200) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to check the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.

- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO").

Registering a Bluetooth device

Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in the Bluetooth menu to register and establish the connection with a device.

- Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO" as the source to operate the Bluetooth menu.

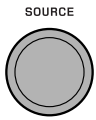
Open	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
Search	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the unit.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

Registering using "Open"

Preparation: Operate the device to turn on its Bluetooth function.

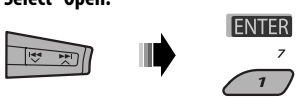
1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Select "NEW."

3 Enter setting menu.

4 Select "Open."



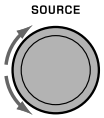
5 Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number) code to the unit.

- You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number). [Initial: 0000]
- To enter a PIN code less than 4-digit, firstly delete the initial PIN code (0000) by pressing number button 5 (CLEAR).

* *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*

1 Move to the next (or previous) number position.

2 Select a number or blank space.



3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you finish entering a PIN code.

4 Confirm the entry.

"Open..." flashes on the display.

6 Use the Bluetooth device to search and connect.

On the device to be connected, enter the same PIN code you have just entered for this unit.
"Connected (and device name)" appears on the display.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use "**Connect**" (or activate "**Auto Connect**") to connect the same device from next time on. (See the following and page 33.)

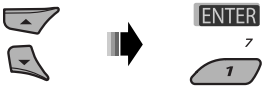
Connecting a device

Perform steps **1** – **3** on page 14, then...

1 • **Select "Search" to search for available devices.**
The unit searches and displays the list of the available devices.
If no available device is detected, "Device Not Found" appears.

• **Select "Special" to connect a special device.**
The unit displays the list of the preset devices.

2 Select a device you want to connect.

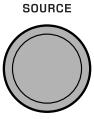


3 • **For available devices...**
1 Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit.
Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code.
2 Use the Bluetooth device to connect.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

• **For special device...**
Use "Open" or "Search" to connect.

Connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device

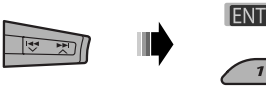
1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Select a registered device you want to connect/disconnect/delete.

3 Enter setting menu.

4 • **Select "Connect" or "Disconnect" to connect/disconnect the selected device.**



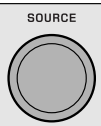
Continued on the next page

- **Select "Delete," then confirm the selection.**

Press number button 3 to select "No" or return to the previous screen.

You can set the unit to connect the Bluetooth device automatically when the unit is turned on. (See "**Auto Connect**" on page 33.)

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone

1		**Select "BT-PHONE."**
2		**Enter Bluetooth menu.**
3	—	**Establish the connection with a device, then make a call (or settings using the Bluetooth menu).**

When a call comes in....

The source is automatically changed to "BT-PHONE."

When "Auto Answer" is activated....

The unit answers the incoming calls automatically, see page 33.

- When "Auto Answer" is deactivated, press any button (except ⏻/I/ATT/control dial) to answer the incoming call.

To end the call

Hold any button (except ⏻/I/ATT/control dial).

- You can adjust the microphone volume level (see page 33).

When an SMS comes in....

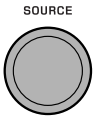
If the cellular phone is compatible with SMS (Short Message Service) and "Message Info" is set to "Auto" (see page 33), the unit rings and "Received Message" appears on the display to inform you of the message arrival.

Making a call

You can make a call using one of the Dial Menu items.

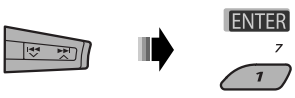
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Select "BT-PHONE."

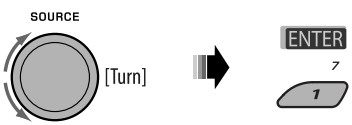


2 Enter setting menu.

3 Select "Dial Menu."



4 Select the method to make a call.



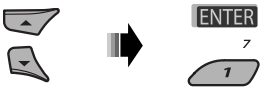
- **Redial***: Shows the list of the phone numbers you have dialed. Go to the following step.
- **Received***: Shows the list of the received calls. Go to the following step.
- **Phonebook***: Shows the phone book of the connected cellular phone. Go to the following step.
- **Missed***: Shows the list of the missed calls. Go to the following step.
- **Number**: Shows the phone number entry screen. See "How to enter phone number" on the right column.
- **Voice Dial** (Only accessible when the connected cellular phone has the voice recognition system): Speak the name (registered words) you want to call.

*** Displayed only when your cellular phone is equipped with these functions.**

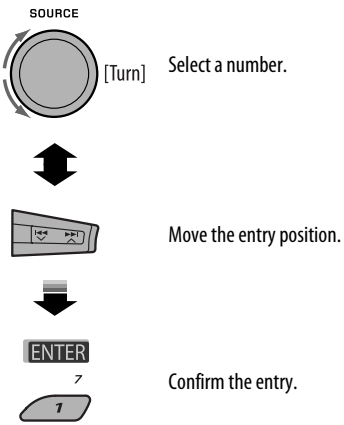
– If not displayed, try to transfer the phone book memory of the cellular phone to this unit. (Refer to the instruction manual supplied with your cellular phone.)

– With some cellular phones, the phone book memory is transferred automatically.

5 Select the name/phone number you want to call.



How to enter phone number



Continued on the next page

Using voice command

1 MODE / M — "Say..." appears on the display.

2 Speak the name (registered words) you want to call.

- You can also use voice command from the Dial Menu. Select "Voice Dial" from the Dial Menu.
- If your cellular phone does not support the voice recognition system, "Error" appears on the display.

Presetting the phone number

You can preset up to six phone numbers.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Display the phone number you want to preset by using one of the "Dial Menu" items.

2 Select a phone number.

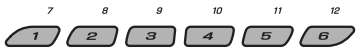
You can also enter a new phone number (see also "How to enter phone number" on page 17) to store.

3 Select a preset number to store.

[Hold]

To call a preset number

While in Bluetooth phone....



Using the Bluetooth audio player

- Operations and display indications differ depending on their availability on the connected audio player.

SOURCE	**Select "BT-AUDIO."** If playback does not start automatically, operate the Bluetooth audio player to start playback.

	Reverse skip/forward skip
BAND	Start/pause playback
MODE / M	Enter setting menu (Device list)

- Refer also to pages 15 and 16 for connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device.

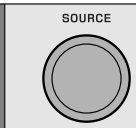
Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc-victor.co.jp/english/car/>.

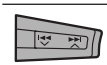
Listening to the CD changer

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit. You can connect a CD changer to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

- You can only play conventional CDs (including CD Text) and MP3 discs.

Preparation: Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 30.

1		**Select "CD-CH."**
2		**Select a disc to start playing.** [Press] For selecting disc number 1 – 6. [Hold] For selecting disc number 7 – 12.

	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track
*	MP3: Select folders

* *By holding either one of the buttons, you can display the Disc List (see page 12).*

To select a disc/folder/track on the list

See "Selecting a folder/track on the list (only for MP3/WMA file)" on page 12.

Select "Disc" in step **3** to display the Disc List of the CD changer.

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks MP3: Within the same folder
	Repeat Track: Repeat current track **Repeat Folder:** MP3: Repeat all tracks of current folder **Repeat Disc:** Repeat all tracks of the current disc
	Random Folder: MP3: Randomly play all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder **Random Disc:** Randomly play all tracks of current disc **Random All:** Randomly play all tracks of the discs in the magazine

- You can also cancel the playback mode by selecting "**Off**" or press number button 4 (OFF).

Listening to the iPod

You can play songs in an Apple iPod by:
– Connecting it with the USB cable supplied with your iPod to the USB input jack on the control panel.
– Connecting the Interface adapter for iPod, KS-PD100 (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.
Preparation: Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 30.

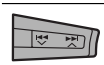
- You can control playback from the unit.
- Disconnecting the iPod will stop playback. Press SOURCE to listen to another playback source.
- For details, refer also to the manual supplied for your iPod.

Caution:

- Avoid using the iPod if it might hinder your safety while driving.
- Make sure all important data has been backed up to avoid losing the data.

1	—	**Connect an iPod to the USB input jack or through KS-PD100.** Playback starts automatically from where it had been paused previously. • If an iPod has been connected, press SOURCE to select "USB-iPod" or "iPod" as the playback source.
2		**Select a track.**
3	—	**Adjust the volume and sound as you want. (See pages 26 and 27.)**

Playback control from the unit

Button	For iPod connected through KS-PD100	For iPod connected to the USB input jack
	[Press] Go to the next or previous track [Hold] Fast-forward or reverse the track during playback	[Press] Go to the next or previous track [Hold] Fast-forward or reverse the track during playback
	[Press] Enter main menu when you press ▲. Pause/resume playback when ▼ is pressed.	[Hold] Enter main menu [Press] Go to the top menu of "Playlists," "Artists," "Albums," "Songs," "Podcasts," "Genres," "Composers," or "Audiobooks" in the main menu. • Pressing the number buttons (1 – 6) or holding 1 (7) and 2 (8) can also select the preset top menus.
	—	[Press] Pause/resume playback.

Selecting a track from the menu

No.	Operation	For iPod connected through KS-PD100	For iPod connected to the USB input jack
1	**Enter the main menu.**		[Hold]
2	**Select the desired menu.**	Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Genres ↔ Composers	Playlists ↔ Artists ↔ Albums ↔ Songs ↔ Podcasts ↔ Genres ↔ Composers ↔ Audiobooks
3	**Confirm the selection.**	• By holding ⏮ ∨/⏭ ∧, you can fast skip during song search in the main menu.	• By holding ⏭ ∧, you can start play back the selected item directly. • By holding ⏮ ∨, you can go back to the previous menu. • By holding ▲/▼, you can fast skip in every layer of the main menu.
		• If a track is selected, playback starts automatically. • If the selected item has another layer, you will enter the layer. Repeat steps **2** and **3** until the desired track is played.	

After pressing M MODE, press the following buttons to...

	Repeat One: Same as "Repeat One." **Repeat All:** Same as "Repeat All." **Repeat Off:** Cancels.
	Random Album*: Same as "Shuffle Albums." **Random Song:** Same as "Shuffle Songs." **Random Off:** Cancels.

* *Functions only if you select "All Albums" or "All" in "Albums" of the main "MENU."*

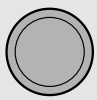
The menu selecting mode will be canceled:

- If no operations are performed for about:
  - 5 seconds for iPod connected through KS-PD100.
  - 15 seconds for iPod connected to the USB input jack.
- When you confirm the selection of a track.

Listening to the DAB tuner

Before operating, connect the **JVC DAB tuner**, KT-DB1000 (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

Preparation: Make sure "Changer" is selected for the external input setting, see page 30 .

1		**Select "DAB."**
2		**Select the bands.** → DAB1 → DAB2 → DAB3 →
3		**Searching for an ensemble.** Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" flashes on the display, then press it repeatedly.
4		**Select a service (either primary or secondary) to listen to.**

When surrounding sounds are noisy

Some services provide Dynamic Range Control (DRC) signals together with their regular programme signals. DRC will reinforce the low level sounds to improve your listening.

1

2 Select one of the DRC signals levels (1, 2, or 3).

→ 1 → 2 → 3 → Off (Canceled) →

- As the number increases, the effect becomes stronger.

3 Exit from the setting.

DRC appears on the display.

- DRC will be highlighted only when receiving DRC signals from the tuned service.

Storing DAB services in memory

You can preset six DAB services (primary) for each band.

- When BACK appears on the display, you can move back to the previous display by pressing number button 3.
- When / appears on the display, you can move to the other lists by pressing number button 5 or 6 repeatedly.

Ex.: Storing an ensemble (primary service) into the preset number 4 of the DAB 1 band.

Using the number buttons

1 BAND → DAB1 → DAB2 → DAB3

2 Select an ensemble (primary service).

3 10 / 4 [Hold] Preset number "P4" appears on the display.

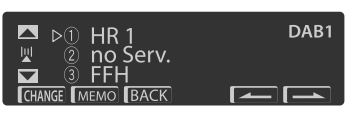
Using the Preset Service List

1 Follow steps 1 and 2 above.
- By holding ▲ / ▼, the Preset Service List will appear (go to step **4**).

2 MODE / M

3 Display the Preset Service List.

LIST (12 / 6) → ENTER (7 / 1)



4 Select a preset number you want to store into.

5 Store the service.

MEMO / 8 / 2 Preset number "P4" appears on the display.

Listening to the preset service using the Preset Service List

1 Display the Preset Service List, then select the preset DAB service you want to listen to.

2 Change to the selected DAB service.

CHANGE / 7 / 1

Using the standby reception

You can use three types of Standby Reception.
- Road Traffic News Standby Reception—TA Standby Reception
- Announcement Standby Reception
- PTY Standby Reception

Activating/deactivating TA/PTY Standby Reception
- Operations are exactly the same as explained on pages 9 and 10 for FM RDS stations.
- You cannot store PTY codes separately for the DAB tuner and for the FM tuner.

Announcement Standby Reception

Announcement Standby Reception allows the unit to switch temporarily to your favorite service (announcement type).

To activate the Announcement Standby Reception and select the announcement type

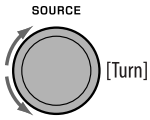
1 MODE / M

Continued on the next page

2 Activating the Announcement Standby Reception.

Display the currently selected announcement type.

3 Selecting an announcement type.



4 Exit from the setting.

ANN either lights up or flashes on the playback display.

- If ANN lights up, Announcement Standby Reception is activated.
- If ANN flashes, Announcement Standby Reception is not yet activated.
  To activate, tune in to another service providing the related signals. ANN will stop flashing and remain lit.

To deactivate the Announcement Standby Reception

Select "Announce Off" in step **2**.
ANN goes off.

Announcement types

Travel, Warning, News, Weather, Event, Special, Rad Inf (Radio Information), Sports, Finance

Tracing the same programme—Alternative Frequency Reception (DAB AF)

You can keep listening to the same programme by activating the Alternative Frequency Reception.

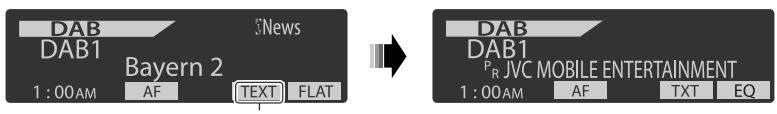
- **While receiving a DAB service:**
  When driving in an area where a service cannot be received, this unit automatically tunes in to another ensemble or FM RDS station, broadcasting the same programme.
- **While receiving an FM RDS station:**
  When driving in an area where a DAB service is broadcasting the same programme as the FM RDS station is broadcasting, this unit automatically tunes in to the DAB service.

When shipped from the factory, Alternative Frequency Reception is activated.

To deactivate the Alternative Frequency Reception, see page 30.

To show the Dynamic Label Segment (DLS) information

While listening to an ensemble that supports DLS....



Lights up when receiving a service providing Dynamic Label Segment (DLS)—DAB radio text.

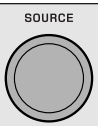
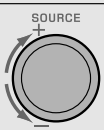
- The DLS display will be temporarily canceled when you operate the unit.

Listening to the other external components

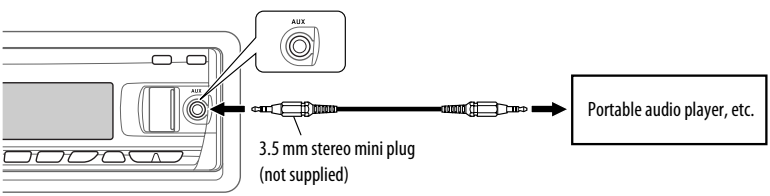
You can connect an external component to:

- CD changer jack on the rear of this unit using the following adapters:
  - **Line Input Adapter,** KS-U57
  - **AUX Input Adapter,** KS-U58

  Preparation: Make sure "Ext Input" is selected for the external input setting, see page 30.
- AUX (auxiliary) input jack on the control panel.

1		**Select "EXT IN" or "AUX IN."**
2	—	**Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**
3		**Adjust the volume.**
4	—	**Adjust the sound as you want (see pages 26 and 27).**

Connecting an external component to the AUX input jack



Selecting a preset sound mode

You can select a preset sound mode suitable to the music genre (iEQ: intelligent equalizer).

1		**Enter setting menu.**
2		**Select "EQ."**
3		**Select a sound mode.** USER, ROCK, CLASSIC, POPS, HIP HOP, JAZZ

Preset value setting for each sound mode

Sound mode	Preset value								
	Bass			**Mid** (mid-range)			Treble		
	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q
USER	60 Hz	00	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	00	–
ROCK	100 Hz	+03	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	–
CLASSIC	80 Hz	+01	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	–
POPS	100 Hz	+02	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	+01	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	–
HIP HOP	60 Hz	+04	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	–02	Q1.0	10.0 kHz	+01	–
JAZZ	80 Hz	+03	Q1.25	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	–

Freq.: Frequency Q: Q-slope

Adjusting the sound

You can adjust the sound characteristics to your preference.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3 or 6.

1

2

→ EQ ↔ Fad/Bal ↔ Subwoofer* ↔
→ Loudness ↔ VolAdjust ↔

- For "EQ" setting, see above.

* *Displayed only when "L/O Mode" is set to "Woofer" (see page 30).*

3 Adjust the selected setting item.

Ⓐ **Fad/Bal (Fader/Balance)**

1 Press number button 1 (SELECT) to move to the "Fad/Bal" adjustment display.

2 Adjust the speaker output balance by pressing:
▲ / ▼: between the front and rear speakers. [F6 to R6]
◀◀ ∨/▶▶ ∧: between the left and right speakers. [L6 to R6]

Ⓑ **Subwoofer**

1 Press number button 1 (SELECT) to move to the "Subwoofer" adjustment display.

2 Use ⏮ ⌄ / ⏭ ⌃ to select a cutoff frequency to the subwoofer.
- OFF: All signals are sent to the subwoofer.
- 80Hz: Frequencies higher than 80 Hz are cut off.
- 120Hz: Frequencies higher than 120 Hz are cut off.
- 160Hz: Frequencies higher than 160 Hz are cut off.

3 Turn the control dial to adjust the subwoofer output level. [0 to 8]

4 Press number button 1 (MORE) to select the subwoofer phase. [0deg (normal) or 180deg (reverse)]

Ⓒ **VolAdjust,** [–5 to +5]
Turn the control dial to adjust the input level of each source (except FM).
Adjust to match the input level of the FM sound level.
- Before making an adjustment, select the source you want to adjust.

Ⓓ **Loudness,** [Off or On]
Turn the control dial to select "Off" or "On." When "On" is selected, low and high frequencies sound are boosted to produce a well-balanced sound at low volume level.

4 Exit from the setting.

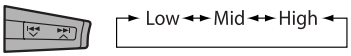
Storing your own sound modes

You can adjust the sound modes and store your own adjustments in memory.
- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 6.

1

2 Select a sound mode.

3 Select a frequency range.



4 Adjust the sound elements of the selected frequency range.

1 Use ▲ / ▼ to adjust the level.

2 Press number button 5 (FREQ), then turn the control dial to select the frequency.

3 Press number button 5 (Q), then turn the control dial to select the quality slope (Q).

Sound elements	Range/selectable items		
	Low	Mid	High
Frequency	60 Hz 80 Hz 100 Hz 200 Hz	500 Hz 1 kHz 1.5 kHz 2.5 kHz	10 kHz 12.5 kHz 15 kHz 17.5 kHz
Level	–6 to +6	–6 to +6	–6 to +6
Q (Q-slope)	Q1.0 Q1.25 Q1.5 Q2.0	Q0.5 Q0.75 Q1.0 Q1.25	Fix

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to adjust the other frequency bands.

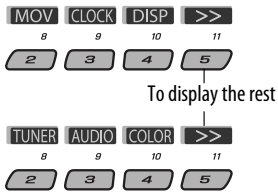
6 Store the adjustments.

General settings—PSM

You can change PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) items listed in the table below and on pages 29 – 31.

1 Enter the PSM settings.

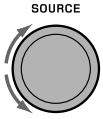
2 Select a PSM category.



3 Select a PSM item.

By pressing either one of the buttons repeatedly, you can also move to the item of the other categories.

4 Adjust the selected PSM item.



5 Repeat steps 2 – 4 to adjust other PSM items if necessary.

6 Finish the procedure.

Category	Indication	Item (__ : Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
MOV (movie)	**Demo** Display demonstration	• **On**	: Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [4].
		• **Off**	: Cancels.
	LevelMeter Audio level meter	• **Meter 1**	: Select the different level meter patterns.
		• **Meter 2**	• Press DISP to show the selected level meter.
CLOCK	**Clock Disp***1 Clock display	• **On**	: Clock time is shown on the display when the power is turned off.
		• **Off**	: Cancels; pressing DISP will show the clock time for about 5 seconds when the power is turned off, [4].

*1 *If the power supply is not interrupted by turning off the ignition key of your car, it is recommended to select "Off" to save the car's battery.*

Category	Indication	Item (__ : Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
CLOCK	**Clock Hr** Hour adjustment	**0 – 23** **(1 – 12AM/** **1 – 12PM)**	: Initial: 0 (0:00AM), [4].
	Clock Min Minute adjustment	**00 – 59**	: Initial: 00 (0:00AM), [4].
	24H/12H Time display mode	• **12Hours** • **24Hours**	: See also page 4 for setting.
	Clock Adj Clock adjustment	• **Auto** • **Off**	: The built-in clock is automatically adjusted using the CT (clock time) data in the RDS signal. : Cancels.
DISP (display)	**Scroll***2 Scroll	• **Once** • **Auto** • **Off**	: For track information: scrolls the track information only once. For DAB text: scrolls the detailed DAB text. : For track information: repeats the scroll (in 5-second intervals). For DAB text: scrolls the detailed DAB text. : For track information: cancels. For DAB text: shows only headline if any. • Pressing DISP for more than one second can scroll the display regardless of the setting.
	Dimmer Dimmer **From – To***3	• **Auto** • **Off** • **On** • **Time Set** —	: Dims the display when you turn on the headlights. : Cancels. : Dims the display and button illumination. : Set the timer for dimmer, [31]. Any hour – Any hour : Initial: 18 – 7.
	Contrast Contrast	**1 – 8** Initial: 5	: Adjust the display contrast to make the display indications clear and legible.
	LCD Type Display type	• **Auto** • **Positive** • **Negative**	: Positive pattern will be selected during the day time*4; while negative pattern will be used during the night time*4. : Positive pattern of the display. : Negative pattern of the display.
	Tag Tag display	• **On** • **Off**	: Shows the tag while playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks. : Cancels.

*2 *Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.*

*3 *Adjustable only when "Dimmer" is set to "Time Set."*

*4 *Depends on the "Dimmer" setting.*

Continued on the next page

Category	Indication	Item (__: Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
TUNER	**AF-Regn'l** Alternative frequency/ regionalization reception	• **AF**	: When the currently received signals become weak, the unit switches to another station or service (the programme may differ from the one currently received), [10].
		• **AF REG**	: When the currently received signals become weak, the unit switches to another station broadcasting the same programme.
		• **Off**	: Cancels (not selectable when "DAB AF" is set to "On").
	TA Volume Traffic announcement volume	• **Volume 0 – Volume 30** • **Volume 0 – Volume 50***5	: Initial: Volume 15
	P-Search Programme search	• **On**	: Activates Programme Search, [10].
		• **Off**	: Cancels.
	IF Band Intermediate frequency band	• **Auto**	: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.)
		• **Wide**	: Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
	DAB AF*6 Alternative frequency reception	• **On**	: Traces the programme among DAB services and FM RDS stations, [24].
		• **Off**	: Cancels.
AUDIO	**Ext Input***7 External input	• **Changer**	: To use a JVC CD changer, [19], JVC DAB tuner, [22], or an Apple iPod, [20].
		• **Ext In**	: To use any other external component, [25].
	Telephone Telephone muting	• **Muting1/ Muting2**	: Select either one which mutes the sounds while using a cellular phone.
		• **Off**	: Cancels.
			• Playback pauses/mutes while telephone muting is working.
	AudioBooks*8 Speed control of "Audiobook"	• **Normal**	: You can select the playback speed of the "Audiobook" sound file in your iPod.
		• **Faster**	
		• **Slower**	• Initial selected item depends on your iPod setting.
	L/O Mode Line output mode	• **Rear**	: Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting the rear speakers (through an external amplifier).
		• **Woofer**	: Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting a subwoofer (through an external amplifier).

*5 *Depends on the amplifier gain control.*

*6 *Displayed only when DAB tuner is connected.*

*7 *Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—TUNER, DAB, CD, USB, or Bluetooth.*

*8 *Displayed only when an iPod is connected to the USB input jack and playback is controlled from the unit.*

Category	Indication	Item (__ : Initial)	Setting, [reference page]
AUDIO	**Amp Gain** Amplifier gain control	• **High PWR**	: Volume 00 – Volume 50
		• **Low PWR**	: Volume 00 – Volume 30 (Select if the maximum power of each speaker is less than 50 W to prevent damaging the speaker.)
COLOR	**Color Sel** Color selection	Initial: All Source; Color: Pale	: Select your favorite display color for each source (or for all sources), [31, 32].
	Color Set Color setting	—	: Create your own colors, and select them for the display color, [32].
		Day Color	: User color during the day time*9.
		NightColor	: User color during the night time*9.
	Red	**00 — 11**	: Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05
	Green	**00 — 11**	: Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05
	Blue	**00 — 11**	: Initial: Day Color: 07, NightColor: 05
	Key Illum Illumination switch	• **Red**	: You can select the button illumination according to your preference.
		• **Green**	

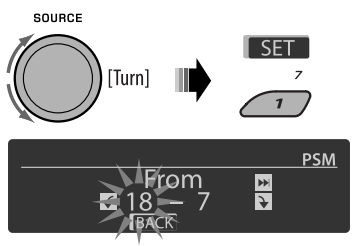
*9 *Depends on the "Dimmer" setting.*

Setting the time for dimmer

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 28.
- In step **2**, select "DISP."
- In step **3**, select "Dimmer."

2 Select "Time Set."



3 Adjust the dimmer start time.

1 Turn the control dial to set the dimmer start time.

2 Press ►►I ^ to select "To." Then, turn the control dial to set the dimmer end time.

4 Exit from the setting.

Changing the display color

You can select your favorite display color for each source (or all sources).

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3 or 6.

Setting the display color

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 28.
- In step **2**, select "COLOR."
- In step **3**, select "Color Sel."

Continued on the next page

ENGLISH

2

3 Select a source.

All Source*1 ↔ **CD** ↔ **Changer***3 (or **Ext In***2) ↔ **USB***3 ↔ **FM** ↔ **AM** ↔ **DAB***3 ↔ **iPod***3 ↔ **Aux In** ↔ **BT Phone***3 ↔ **BT Audio***3 ↔ (back to the beginning)

*1 *When you select "All Source," you can use the same color for all the sources.*
*2 *Depends on the "Ext Input" setting, see page 30.*
*3 *Displayed only when the target component is connected.*

4 Select a color.

Pale ↔ **Aqua** ↔ **Sky** ↔ **Sea** ↔ **Leaves** ↔ **Grass** ↔ **Apple** ↔ **Rose** ↔ **Amber** ↔ **Honey** ↔ **Violet** ↔ **Grape** ↔ **Every***4 ↔ **User***5 ↔ (back to the beginning)

*4 *The color changes every 2 seconds.*
*5 *The user-edited colors—"Day Color" and "NightColor" will be applied (see the right column for details).*

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to select the color for each source (except when selecting "All Source" in step 3).

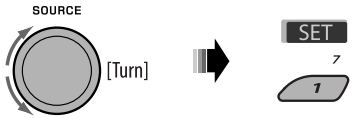
6 Exit from the setting.

Creating your own color—User Color

You can create your own colors—"Day Color" or "NightColor."

1 Follow steps 1 to 3 on page 28.
- In step **2**, select "COLOR."
- In step **3**, select "Color Set."

2 Select "Day Color" or "NightColor."



3 Select a primary color.

4 Adjust the level (00 to 11) of the selected primary color.

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to adjust other primary colors.

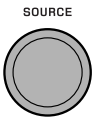
6 Exit from the setting.

Bluetooth settings

You can change the settings listed on the right column according to your preference.

- When BACK is shown on the display, you can move back to the previous screen by pressing number button 3.

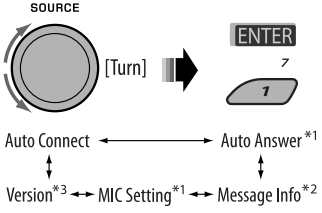
1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."



2 Enter the Bluetooth menu.

3 Select "Setting."

4 Select a setting item.

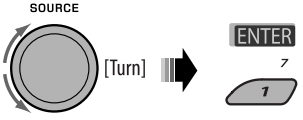


*1 *Displayed only when a Bluetooth phone is connected.*

*2 *Displayed only when a Bluetooth phone is connected and it is compatible with text message.*

*3 *Bluetooth Audio: Shows only "Version."*

5 Change the setting accordingly.



Setting menu (__ : Initial)

Auto Connect

When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with...

Off: No Bluetooth device.
Last: The last connected Bluetooth device.
Order: The available registered Bluetooth device found at first.

Auto Answer

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

On: The unit answers the incoming calls automatically.
Off: The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually.
Reject: The unit rejects all incoming calls.

Message Info

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

Auto: The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "Received Message."
Manual: The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.

MIC setting (microphone setting)

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."
Adjust the built-in microphone volume, [LEVEL 01/02/03].

Version

The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

More about this unit

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback also starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a track, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously next time you turn on the power.

General

- If you change the source while listening to a disc, playback stops.
  Next time you select "CD" as the playback source, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously.
- After ejecting a disc or removing a USB device, "No Disc" or "No USB" appears and you cannot operate some of the buttons. Insert another disc, reattach a USB device, or press SOURCE to select another playback source.

FM/AM/RDS

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
  – All previously stored stations are erased and the stations are stored anew.
  – Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
  – When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, the previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

FM RDS operations

- Network-Tracking Reception requires two types of RDS signals—PI (Programme Identification) and AF (Alternative Frequency) to work correctly. Without receiving these data correctly, Network-Tracking Reception will not operate correctly.
- If a Traffic Announcement is received by TA Standby Reception, the volume level automatically changes to the preset level (TA Volume) if the current level is lower than the preset level.
- When Alternative Frequency Reception is activated (with AF selected), Network-Tracking Reception is also activated automatically. On the other hand, Network-Tracking Reception cannot be deactivated without deactivating Alternative Frequency Reception. (See page 30.)
- If you want to know more about RDS, visit <http://www.rds.org.uk>.

Disc/USB operations

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

General

- This unit has been designed to reproduce CDs/CD Texts, and CD-Rs (Recordable)/CD-RWs (Rewritable) in audio CD (CD-DA), MP3 and WMA formats.
- When a disc is inserted upside down, "Please Eject" appears on the display. Press OPEN, then ⏏ to eject the disc.
- In this manual, words "track" and "file" are interchangeably used.
- While fast-forwarding or reversing on MP3/WMA/WAV files, you can only hear intermittent sounds.
- File/folder list may not appear correctly if too many hierarchies and folders are used.

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot again to protect it from dust. Playback starts automatically.

Playing a CD-R or CD-RW

- Use only "finalized" CD-Rs or CD-RWs.
- This unit can only play back files of the same type as those which are detected first if a disc includes both audio CD (CD-DA) files and MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some CD-Rs or CD-RWs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, or for the following reasons:
  – Discs are dirty or scratched.
  – Moisture condensation has occurred on the lens inside the unit.
  – The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
  – The files on the CD-R/CD-RW are written using the "Packet Write" method.
  – There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stained, scratched, warped, etc.).
- CD-RWs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of CD-RWs is lower than that of regular CDs.
- Do not use the following CD-Rs or CD-RWs:
  – Discs with stickers, labels, or a protective seal stuck to the surface.
  – Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

  Using these discs under high temperature or high humidity may cause malfunctions or damage to the unit.

Playing an MP3/WMA disc

- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3 files and for WMA files.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files meeting the conditions below:

  MP3:
  – Bit rate: 8 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz, 12 kHz, 11.025 kHz, 8 kHz

  WMA:
  – Bit rate: 32 kbps — 192 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz
  – Disc format: ISO 9660 Level 1/Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names vary depending on the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3> or <.wma>).
  – ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
  – ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
  – Romeo*: up to 128 characters
  – Joliet*: up to 64 characters
  – Windows long file name*: up to 128 characters

* *The parenthetic figure is the maximum number of characters for file/folder names in case the total number of files and folders is 271 or more.*

- This unit can recognize a total of 512 files, 200 folders, and 8 hierarchical levels.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).

  Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in the elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. In particular, this difference becomes noticeable after performing the search function.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded in MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriate format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded in lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.

Continued on the next page

– WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
– Files which have data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Playing MP3/WMA/WAV tracks from a USB device

- Connecting a USB device automatically changes the source to "USB."
- While playing from a USB device, the playback order may differ from the one from other players.
- This unit may be unable to play back some USB devices or some files due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- Depending on the shape of the USB devices and connection ports, some USB devices may not be attached properly or the connection might be loose.
- When connecting a USB mass storage class device, refer also to its instructions.
- Connect one USB mass storage class device to the unit at a time. Do not use a USB hub.
- You can connect two types of USB device to this unit—MTP device and Mass storage class device. If you connect an MTP device featuring "USB digital media streaming" to this unit, you can play back the WMA-DRM10 (Digital Right Management) files purchased through the music distributing web sites, through this unit.
- This unit is compatible with the USB Full-Speed.
- If the connected USB device does not have the correct files, "No File" appears.
- This unit can show ID3 Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3 and WMA/WAV Tag.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA/WAV files meeting the conditions below:
  MP3:
  – Bit rate: 32 kbps — 320 kbps (MPEG-1)
    8 kbps — 160 kbps (MPEG-2)
  – Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
  WMA:
  – Bit rate: 5 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 8 kHz — 48 kHz
  – Channel: 1 ch/2 ch
  WAV:
  – Bit rate: Linear PCM at 705 kbps and 1 411 kbps
  – Sampling frequency: 44.1 kHz
  – Channel: 1 ch/2 ch
- This unit can play back MP3 files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
- The maximum number of characters for folder and file names is 25 characters; 128 characters for MP3/WMA/WAV Tag.
- This unit can recognize a total of 20 000 files and 2 000 folders (999 files per folder). However, the display can shows until 9 999 folders/files.
- The unit cannot recognize a USB mass storage class device whose rating is other than 5 V and exceeds 500 mA.
- USB devices equipped with special functions such as data security functions cannot be used with the unit.
- Do not use a USB device with 2 or more partitions.
- This unit may not recognized a USB device connected through a USB card reader.
- This unit may not play back files in a USB device properly when using a USB extension cord.
- This unit cannot assure proper functions or supply power to all types of USB devices.

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on the circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

appears when the connection is established.

	Appears when the Bluetooth phone is connected.
	Appears when the Bluetooth audio player is connected.
	Appears when the Bluetooth phone and Bluetooth audio player are connected.

Icons for phone types

These icons indicate the phone type set on the device:

: Cellular phone	: General
: Household phone	: Other than above
: Office	: Unknown

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **Connection Error:**
  The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use "Connect" to connect the device again. (See page 15.)
- **Error**
  Try the operation again. If "Error" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **Device Not Found**
  No available Bluetooth device is detected by "Search...".
- **Loading...**
  The unit is updating the phone book and/or text messages.
- **Please Wait...**
  The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **Reset 08**
  Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

DAB

- Only the primary DAB service can be preset even when you store a secondary service.
- A previously preset DAB service is erased when a new DAB service is stored in the same preset number.

iPod

- Controllable iPod (connected through....):
  (A) KS-PD100:
  – iPod with dock connector (3rd Generation)
  – iPod with click wheel (4th Generation)
  – iPod nano (1st & 2nd*1 Generation)
  – iPod mini (1st Generation)
  – iPod video (5th Generation)*2
  – iPod photo
  (B) USB input jack:
  – iPod nano (1st & 2nd Generation)
  – iPod video (5th Generation)

*1 *When you connect the iPod nano to the interface adapter, be sure to disconnect the headphones; otherwise, no sound is heard.*

*2 *It is not possible to browse video files on the "Videos" menu while the iPod is connected to the interface adapter.*

- Update your iPod to the latest software version before using it with this unit.
  – You can check the software version of your iPod under "About" in the "Setting" menu of the iPod.
  – For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- While the unit is being turned on, the iPod is charged through this unit.
- While connecting an iPod with Video:
  – No video shows on the iPod's display or the external monitor (only the audio part is available).
  – It is not possible to browse video files on the "Video" menu. (If you connect the iPod during the playback or pausing of a video file, resuming playback will not work.)
- iPod shuffle and iPhone cannot be used with this unit.
- You can control the iPod from this unit when "JVC" or "√" appears on the iPod display after connection.

Continued on the next page

- The song order displayed on the selection menu of this unit may differ from that of the iPod.
- If playback is stopped, select a track from the selection menu or press BAND to play back the same track again.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly:
  – Some characters such as accented letters cannot be shown correctly on the display.
  – Communication between the iPod and the unit is not stable.
- If the text information includes more than 16 characters, it scrolls on the display. This unit can display up to 128 characters.

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>

General settings—PSM

- "Auto" setting for "Dimmer" may not work correctly on some vehicles, particularly on those having a control dial for dimming.
  In this case, change the "Dimmer" setting to any other than "Auto."
- If "LCD Type" is set to "Auto," the display pattern will change to the "Positive" or "Negative" pattern depending on the "Dimmer" setting.
- If you change the "Amp Gain" setting from "High PWR" to "Low PWR" while the volume level is set higher than "Volume 30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "Volume 30."

Available characters

Upper case

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N
O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	space	

Lower case

a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n
o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	space	

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	!	”	#	$
%	&	’	(	)	*	+	,	–	.	/	:	;	<
=	>	?	@	_	`	space							

Available PTY codes
News, Affairs, Info, Sport, Educate, Drama, Culture, Science, Varied, Pop M (music), Rock M (music), Easy M (music), Light M (music), Classics, Other M (music), Weather, Finance, Children, Social, Religion, Phone In, Travel, Leisure, Jazz, Country, Nation M (music), Oldies, Folk M (music), Document

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).
	• "Connect Error" appears on the display.	Remove the control panel, wipe the connector, then attach it again (see page 42).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the aerial firmly.
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played back. • Tracks on the CD-R/CD-RW cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized CD-R/CD-RW. • Finalize the CD-R/CD-RW with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc can neither be played back nor ejected.	• Unlock the disc (see page 11). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 3).
	• Disc sound is sometimes interrupted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
	• Disc cannot be recognized ("No Disc," "CD Loading Error," or "Eject Error" flashes).	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 3).
	• "Please Eject" appears on the display.	This occurs sometimes due to over-heating. Eject the disc or change to another playback source.
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Use a disc with MP3/WMA tracks recorded in a format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet. • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• A longer readout time is required ("Reading" keeps flashing on the display).	Do not use too many hierarchical levels and folders.
	• Tracks do not play back in the order you have intended them to play.	The playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	• The elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc (eg. variable bit rate).
	• "Please Eject" appears on the display.	Insert a disc that contains MP3/WMA tracks.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	Skip to the next track encoded in an appropriate format or to the next non-copy-protected WMA track.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (capital: A – Z, small: a – z), numbers, and a limited number of symbols (see page 38).

Continued on the next page

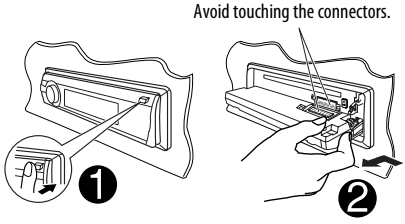
	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
USB device	• Noise is generated.	• The track played back is not a playable file format (MP3/WMA/WAV). Skip to another file. • Do not add the extension code <.mp3>, <.wma>, or <.wav> to non-MP3/WMA/WAV tracks.
	• Tracks cannot play back as you have intended them to play.	Playback order may differs from the one played back using other players.
	• "Reading" keeps flashing on the display.	• Readout time varies depending on the USB device. • Do not use too many hierarchy, folders and empty folders.* • Turn off the power then on again. • Do not pull out or connect the USB device repeatedly while "Reading" is displayed on the display. * *Folder that is phisically empty or folder that contains data but does not contain valid MP3/WMA/WAV track.*
	• "No File" flashes on the display. • "No USB" appears on the display.	Connect a USB device that contains tracks encoded in an appropriate format.
	• "Not Support" appears on the display and track skips.	The track is unplayable.
	• "Read failed" appears on the display.	The connected USB device may be malfunctioning, or may not have been formatted correctly. The files included in the USB device are corrupted.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	For available characters, see page 38.
	• While playing a track, sound is sometimes interrupted.	The tracks have not been properly copied into the USB device. Copy tracks again into the USB device, and try again.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a USB device.	• Turn off, then turn on the unit. • Connect the device again, when the sound is not yet restored.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Bluetooth®	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	The unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio device at a time. While connecting a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device. After the device detects the unit, select "Open..." on the unit to connect the device. (See page 14.)
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. • Select the device name from "Special," then try to connect again. (See page 15.)
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to a place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a Bluetooth audio player.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio player. • Disconnect the device connected for "BT-PHONE." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • Connect the player again, when the sound is not yet restored.
	• The connected audio player cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio player supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile). (Operations depend on the connected audio player.)
CD changer	• "No Disc" appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "No Magazine" appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).

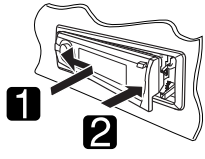
Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
DAB	• "noSIGNAL" appears on the display.	Move to an area with stronger signals.
	• "RESET 8" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly and reset the unit (see page 3).
	• "ANTENANG" appears on the display.	Check the cords and connections.
	• The DAB tuner does not work at all.	Reconnect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly and reset the unit (see page 3).
iPod	• The iPod does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version. • Charge the battery.
	• The sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• "Disconnect" appears on the display.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Charge the battery.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation (see page 20).
	• No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano.	• Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano. • Update the firmware version of the iPod nano.
	• "No File" appears on the display.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• "Reset 01" – "Reset 07" appears on the display.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect it again.
	• "Reset 08" appears on the display.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.

Detaching the control panel



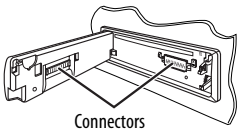
Attaching the control panel



Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors. To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connectors

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture has evaporated.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc in its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs in cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

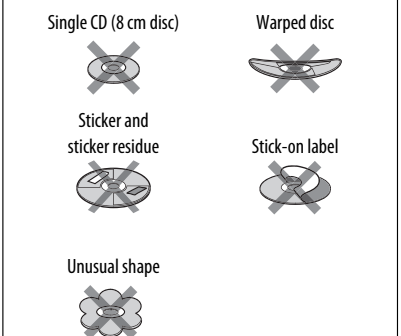
- Do not use any solvents (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:



- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Tone Control Range:	Bass:	±12 dB (60 Hz, 80 Hz, 100 Hz, 200 Hz)
		Mid-range	±12 dB (500 Hz, 1.0 kHz, 1.5 kHz, 2.5 kHz)
		Treble:	±12 dB (10.0 kHz, 12.5 kHz, 15.0 kHz, 17.5 kHz)
	Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Signal to Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Audio Output Level:	Line-Out Level/Impedance:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
		Subwoofer-Out Level/Impedance:	2.5 V /20 kΩ load (full scale)
	Other Terminals:	CD changer jack, AUX (auxiliary) input jack, USB input jack, Aerial input, Steering wheel remote input	

TUNER SECTION	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	MW: 522 kHz to 1 620 kHz LW: 144 kHz to 279 kHz
	FM Tuner:	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 µV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	30 dB
	MW Tuner:	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 µV/35 dB
	LW Tuner:	Sensitivity:	50 µV

CD PLAYER SECTION	Type:		Compact disc player
	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)	
	Number of Channels:		2 channels (stereo)
	Frequency Response:		5 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Dynamic Range:		96 dB
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		98 dB
	Wow and Flutter:		Less than measurable limit
	MP3 Decoding Format: (MPEG1/2 Audio Layer 3)	Max. Bit Rate:	320 kbps
	WMA (Windows Media® Audio) Decoding Format:	Max. Bit Rate:	320 kbps

USB SECTION	USB Standard:		USB 1.1, USB 2.0
	Data Transfer Rate (Full Speed):	Full Speed:	Max. 12 Mbps
		Low Speed:	Max. 1.5 Mbps
	Compatible Device:		Mass storage class
	Compatible File System:		FAT 32/16/12
	Playable Audio Format:		MP3/WMA/WAV
	Max. Current:		500 mA/5V

GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
	Grounding System:		Negative ground
	Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C
	Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 52 mm × 160 mm
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 58 mm × 12 mm
	Mass (approx.):		1.4 kg (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?
Please reset your unit
Refer to page of How to reset your unit

Haben Sie PROBLEME mit dem Betrieb?
Bitte setzen Sie Ihr Gerät zurück
Siehe Seite Zurücksetzen des Geräts

Затруднения при эксплуатации?
Пожалуйста, перезагрузите Ваше устройство
Для получения информации о перезагрузке Вашего устройства обратитесь на соответствующую страницу

Dear Customer,
This apparatus is in conformance with the valid European directives and standards regarding electromagnetic compatibility and electrical safety.

European representative of Victor Company of Japan, Limited is:
JVC Technical Services Europe GmbH
Postfach 10 05 04
61145 Friedberg
Germany

Sehr geehrter Kunde, sehr geehrte Kundin,
dieses Gerät stimmt mit den gültigen europäischen Richtlinien und Normen bezüglich elektromagnetischer Verträglichkeit und elektrischer Sicherheit überein.

Die europäische Vertretung für die Victor Company of Japan, Limited ist:
JVC Technical Services Europe GmbH
Postfach 10 05 04
61145 Friedberg
Deutschland

Уважаемый клиент.
Данное устройство соответствует действительным Европейским директивам и стандартам по электромагнитной совместимости и электрической безопасности.

Представительство компании Victor Company of Japan, Limited в Европе:
JVC Technical Services Europe GmbH
Postfach 10 05 04
61145 Friedberg
Германия

JVC

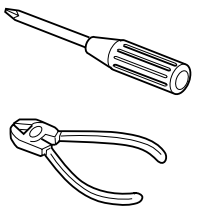
EN, GE, RU

© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0408DTSMDTJEIN

KD-PDR62/KD-PDR61

Installation/Connection Manual
Einbau/Anschlußanleitung
Руководство по установке/подключению



GET0524-013C
[EY]

0408DTSMDTJEIN
EN, GE, RU
© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealers.

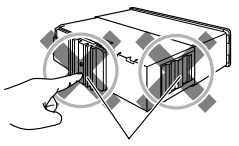
WARNINGS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with a maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4** Ω **to 8** Ω). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "Amp Gain" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 31 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



Heat sink
Abstrahlblech
Радиатор

DEUTSCH

Dieses Gerät ist für einen Betrieb in **elektrischen Anlagen mit 12 V Gleichstrom und (–) Erdung ausgelegt**. *Verfügt Ihr Fahrzeug nicht über diese Anlage, ist ein Spannungsinverter erforderlich, der bei JVC Autoradiohändler erworben werden kann.*

WARNUNGEN

Zur Vermeidung von Kurzschlüssen empfehlen wir, daß Sie den negativen Batterieanschluß abtrennen und alle elektrischen Anschlüsse herstellen, bevor das Gerät eingebaut wird.

- **Sicherstellen, daß das Gerät nach dem Einbau a Chassis des Fahrzeugs geerdet wird.**

Hinweise:

- *Die Sicherung mit einer der entsprechenden Nennleistung ersetzen. Brennt die Sicherung häufig durch, wenden Sie sich an ihren JVC Autoradiohändler.*
- *Es wird empfohlen, Lautsprecher mit einer Maximalleistung von mehr als 50 W anzuschließen (sowohl hinten als auch vorne, mit einer Impedanz von* **4** Ω **bis 8** Ω*). Wenn die Maximalleistung weniger als 50 W beträgt, stellen Sie „Amp Gain" anders ein, um Schäden an den Lautsprechern zu vermeiden (siehe Seite 31 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG).*
- *Um Kurzschlüsse zu verhindern, die Klemmen der NICHT VERWENDETEN Leitungen mit Isolierband abdecken.*
- *Das Abstrahlblech wird nach dem Gebrauch sehr heiß. Beim Ausbau des Geräts darauf achten, das Abstrahlblech nicht zu berühren.*

РУССКИЙ

Это устройство разработано для эксплуатации на **12 В постоянного напряжения с минусом на массе**. Если Ваш автомобиль не имеет этой системы, требуется инвертор напряжения, который может быть приобретен у дилера автомобилнего специалиста JVC.

ПРЕДУПРЕЖДЕНИЯ

Для предотвращения коротких замыканий мы рекомендуем Вам отсоединить отрицательный разъем аккумулятора и осуществить все подключения перед установкой устройства.

- **После установки обязательно заземлите данное устройство на шасси автомобиля.**

Примечания:

- Заменяйте предохранитель другим предохранителем указанного класса. Если предохранитель сгорает слишком часто, обратитесь к дилеру автомобилнего специалиста JVC.
- Рекомендуется подключать динамики с максимальной мощностью более 50 Вт (к задней и передней панели устройства, с полным сопротивлением от **4** Ω **до 8** Ω). Если максимальная мощность динамиков менее 50 Вт, перейдите в режим "Amp Gain", чтобы предотвратить их повреждение (см. ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ на стр. 31).
- Для предотвращения коротких замыканий обмотайте терминалы НЕИСПОЛЬЗУЕМЫХ проводов изоляционной лентой.
- Радиатор во время использования сильно нагревается. Старайтесь его не трогать во время удаления устройства.

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

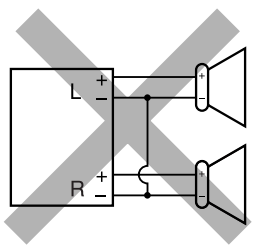
- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

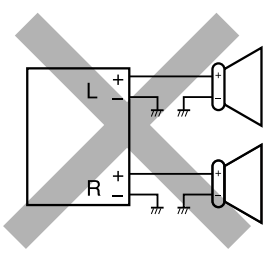
VORSICHTSMASSREGELN beim Anschließen der Stromversorgung und Lautsprecher:

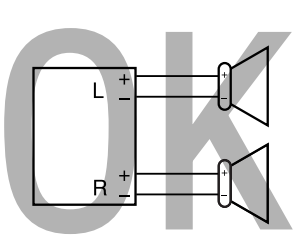
- **Die Lautsprecherleitungen des Netzkabels NICHT an der Autobatterie anschließen, da sonst das Gerät schwer beschädigt wird.**
- *VOR dem Anschließen der Lautsprecherleitungen des Spannunsgversorgungskabels an die Lautsprecher, die Lautsprecherverdrahtung in Ihrem Auto überprüfen.*

ПРЕДОСТЕРЕЖЕНИЯ по питанию и подключению громкоговорителей:

- **НЕ подключайте провода громкоговорителей к аккумулятору автомобиля, иначе устройство будет повреждено.**
- ПЕРЕД подключением проводов громкоговорителей к кабелю питания громкоговорителя проверьте схему соединений громкоговорителей в Вашем автомобиле.







Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer immediately.

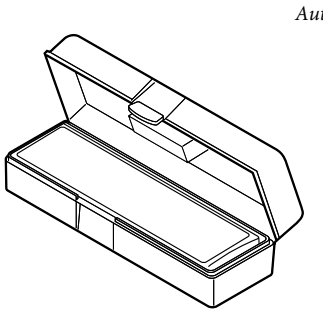
Teileliste für den Einbau und Anschluß

Die folgenden Teile werden zusammen mit diesem Gerät geliefert. Falls ein Artikel fehlt, wenden Sie sich sofort an Ihren JVC-Autoradiohändler.

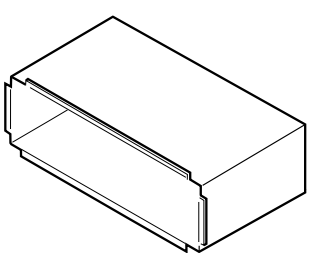
Список деталей для установки и подключения

Следующие детали поставлены в комплекте с устройством. При отсутствии какого-либо элемента немедленно свяжитесь с дилером автомобильного специалиста JVC.

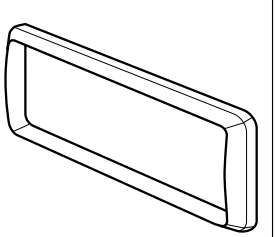
Ⓐ / Ⓑ
Hard case/Control panel
Etui/Schalttafel
Жесткий футляр/панель управления



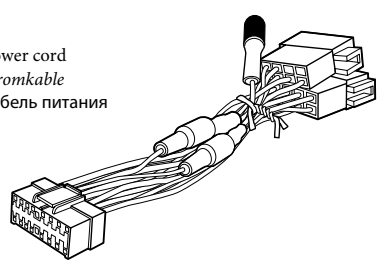
Ⓒ
Sleeve
Halterung
Муфта



Ⓓ
Trim plate
Frontrahmen
Декоративную панель



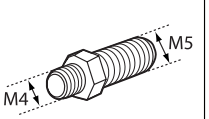
Ⓔ
Power cord
Stromkable
Кабель питания



Ⓕ
Washer (ø5)
Unterlegscheibe (ø5)
Шайба (ь5)

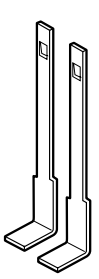
Ⓖ
Lock nut (M5)
Sicherungsmutter (M5)
Фиксирующая гайка (M5)

Ⓗ
Mounting bolt
(M4 × 5 mm; M5 × 12.5 mm)
Befestigungsschraube
(M4 × 5 mm; M5 × 12,5 mm)
Крепежный болт
(M4 × 5 мм; M5 × 12,5 мм)



Ⓘ
Rubber cushion
Gummipuffer
Резиновый чехол

Ⓙ
Handles
Griffe
Рычаги



Ⓜ
Remote controller
Fernbedienung
Дистанционного управления
RM-RK50

Ⓝ
Battery
Batterie
Батарейка
CR2025

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

EINBAU (IM ARMATURENBRETT)

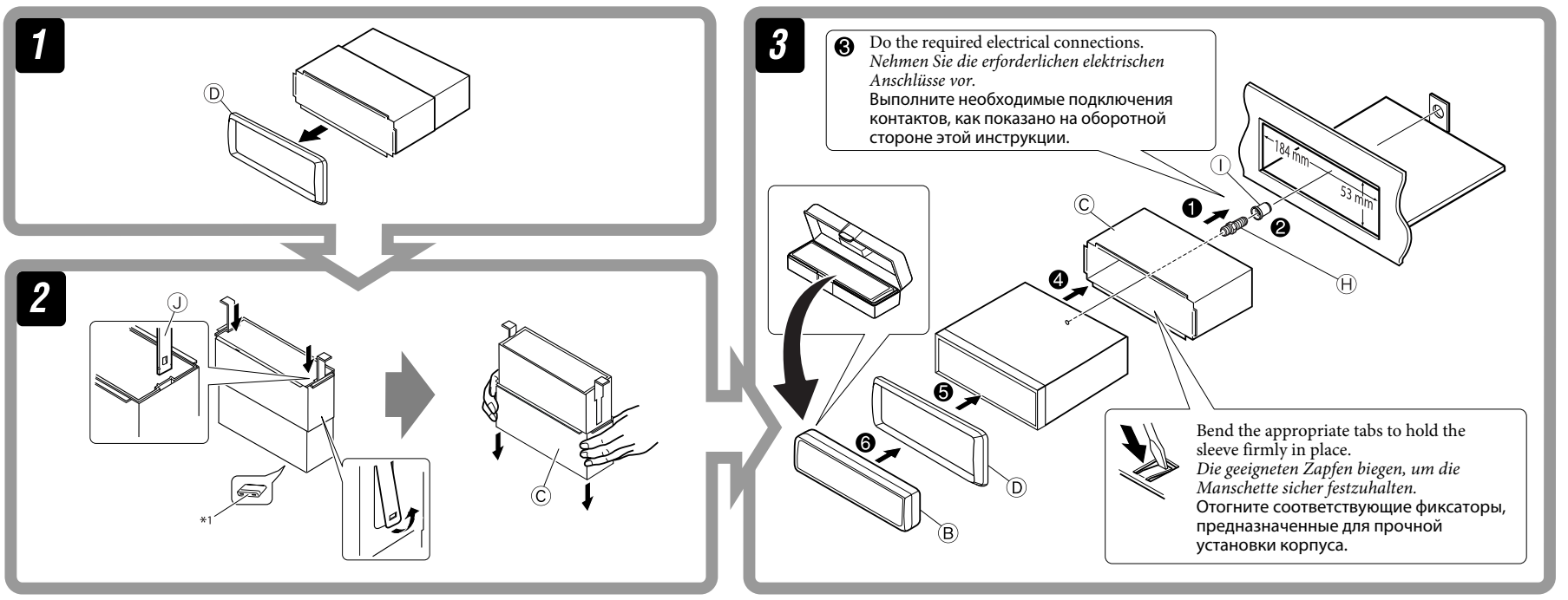
Die folgende Abbildung zeigt einen typischen Einbau. Bei irgendwelchen Fragen oder wenn Sie Informationen hinsichtlich des Einbausatzes brauchen, wenden Sie sich an ihren JVC Autoradiohändler oder ein Unternehmen das diese Einbausätze vertreibt.

- *Sind Sie sich über den richtigen Einbau des Geräts nicht sicher, lassen Sie es von einem qualifizierten Techniker einbauen.*

УСТАНОВКА (УСТАНОВКА В ПРИБОРНУЮ ПАНЕЛЬ)

На следующих иллюстрациях показана типовая установка. Если у Вас есть какие-либо вопросы, касающиеся установки, обратитесь к Вашему дилеру автомобилнего специалиста JVC или в компанию, поставляющую соответствующие принадлежности.

- Если Вы не знаете точно, как следует устанавливать это устройство, обратитесь к квалифицированному специалисту.



Removing the unit

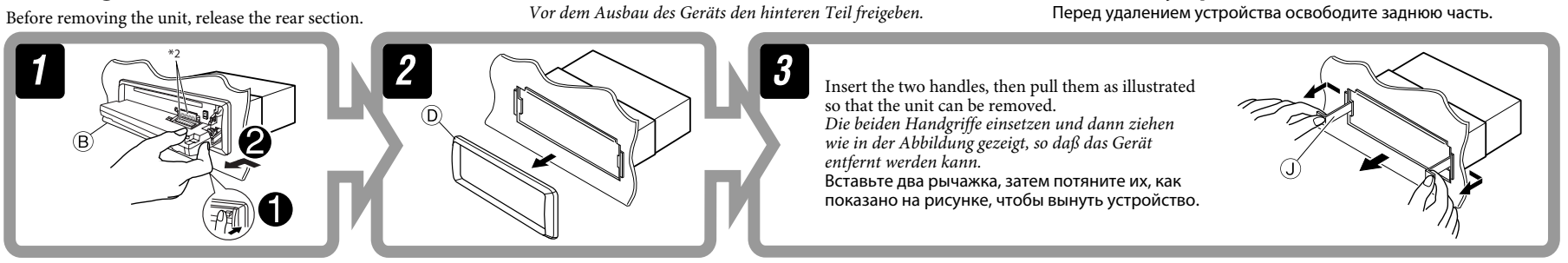
Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

Ausbau des Geräts

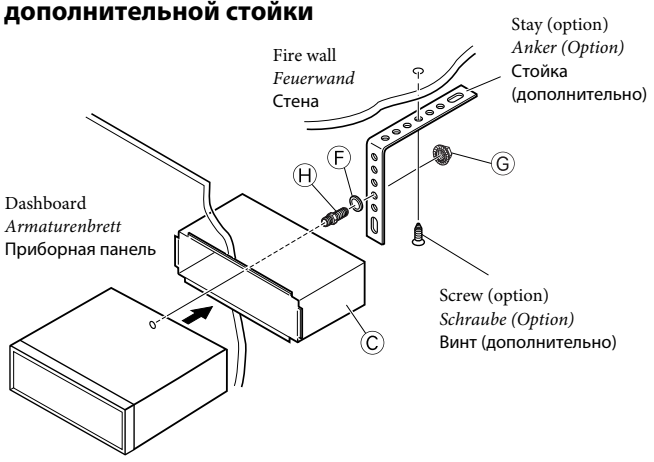
Vor dem Ausbau des Geräts den hinteren Teil freigeben.

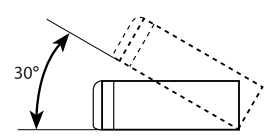
Удаление устройства

Перед удалением устройства освободите заднюю часть.


1
*2
B
❷
❶
2
D
3
Insert the two handles, then pull them as illustrated so that the unit can be removed.
Die beiden Handgriffe einsetzen und dann ziehen wie in der Abbildung gezeigt, so daß das Gerät entfernt werden kann.
Вставьте два рычажка, затем потяните их, как показано на рисунке, чтобы вынуть устройство.
J

When using the optional stay / Beim Verwenden der Anker-Option / При использовании дополнительной стойки

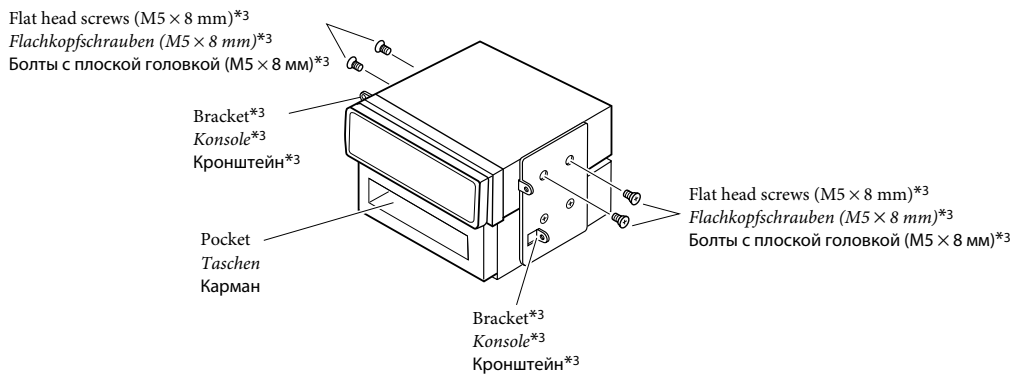




Install the unit at an angle of less than 30°.
Stellen Sie das Gerät mit einem Winkel von weniger als 30° auf.
Установите устройство под углом менее 30°.

When installing the unit without using the sleeve / Beim Einbau des Geräts ohne Halterung / При установке устройства без использования муфты

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.
Zum Beispiel in einem Toyota zuerst das Autoradio ausbauen und dann das Gerät an seinem Platz einbauen.
В автомобиле Тойота, например, сначала извлеките автомобильный радиоприемник и установите устройство на место.



Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

Hinweis : *Beim Anbringen des Gerät an der Konsole sicherstellen, daß 8 mm lange Schrauben verwendet werden. Wenn längere Schrauben verwendet werden, können diese die Einheit beschädigen.*

Примечание : При установке устройства на крепежный кронштейн, используйте только винты длиной 8 мм. При использовании более длинных болтов можно повредить устройство.

*1 When you stand the unit, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
*2 Avoid touching the connectors.
*3 Not supplied for this unit.

*1 *Beim Aufstellen des Geräts darauf achten, daß die Sicherung auf der Rückseite nicht beschädigt wird.*
*2 *Berühren Sie nicht die Steckerkontakte.*
*3 *Wird nicht mit Gerät mitgeliefert.*

*1 Устанавливайте устройство таким образом, чтобы не повредить предохранитель, расположенный сзади.
*2 Не прикасайтесь к разъемам.
*3 Не входит в комплект поставки.

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
* Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **This unit becomes hot.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This unit does not work at all.**
* Have you reset your unit?

FEHLERSUCHE

- **Die Sicherung brennt durch.**
* *Sind die roten und schwarzen Leitungen richtig angeschlossen?*
- **Stromversorgung kann nicht eingeschaltet werden.**
* *Ist die gelbe Leitung angeschlossen?*
- **Kein Ton aus den Lautsprechern.**
* *Ist die Lautsprecherausgangsleitung kurzgeschlossen?*
- **Ton verzerrt.**
* *Ist die Lautsprecherausgangsleitung geerdet?*
* *Sind die „–" Anschlußklemmen der linken und rechten Lautsprecher zusammen geerdet?*
- **Störgeräusche im Klang.**
* *Ist die hintere Erdungsklemme mit kürzeren und dickeren Kabeln an das Fahrzeugchassis angeschlossen?*
- **Gerät wird heiß.**
* *Ist die Lautsprecherausgangsleitung geerdet?*
* *Sind die „–" Anschlußklemmen der linken und rechten Lautsprecher zusammen geerdet?*
- **Dieser Receiver funktioniert überhaupt nicht.**
* *Haben Sie einen Reset am Receiver vorgenommen?*

ВЫЯВЛЕНИЕ НЕИСПРАВНОСТЕЙ

- **Сработал предохранитель.**
* Правильно ли подключены черный и красный провода?
- **Питание не включается.**
* Подключен ли желтый провод?
- **Звук не выводится через громкоговорители.**
* Нет ли короткого замыкания на кабеле выхода громкоговорителей?
- **Звук искажен.**
* Заземлен ли провод выхода громкоговорителей?
* Заземлены ли разъемы "–" правого (R) и левого (L) громкоговорителей?
- **Шум мешает звучанию.**
* Соединен ли находящийся сзади зажим заземления с шасси автомобиля с помощью более короткого и тонкого шнуров?
- **Устройство нагревается.**
* Заземлен ли провод выхода громкоговорителей?
* Заземлены ли разъемы "–" правого (R) и левого (L) громкоговорителей?
- **Приемник не работает.**
* Выполнена ли перенастройка приемника?

ENGLISH

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

DEUTSCH

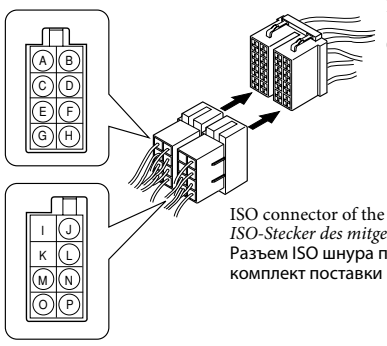
ELEKTRISCHE ANSCHLÜSSE

РУССКИЙ

ЭЛЕКТРИЧЕСКИЕ ПОДКЛЮЧЕНИЯ

A If your car is equipped with the ISO connector / Wenn Ihr Fahrzeug mit dem ISO-Steckverbinder ausgestattet ist / Если автомобиль оснащен разъемом ISO

- Connect the ISO connectors as illustrated.
- *Schließen Sie die ISO-Steckverbinder an, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt.*
- Подключите разъемы ISO, как показано на рисунке.



From the car body
Von der Fahrzeugkarosserie
От корпуса автомобиля

ISO connector of the supplied power cord
ISO-Stecker des mitgelieferten Stromkabels
Разъем ISO шнура питания, входящего в комплект поставки

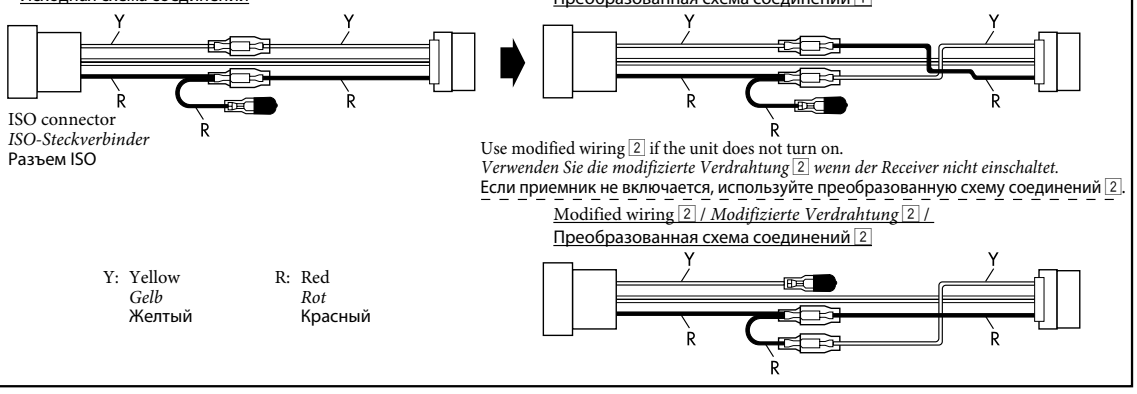
View from the lead side
Von der Kabelseite aus gesehen
Вид со стороны выводов

For some VW/Audi or Opel (Vauxhall) automobiles / Bei bestimmten VW-/Audi- oder Opel-(Vauxhall-) Fahrzeugen / Для некоторых автомобилей VW/Audi или Opel (Vauxhall)

You may need to modify the wiring of the supplied power cord as illustrated.
- Contact your authorized car dealer before installing this unit.

Es kann erforderlich sein, die Verdrahtung des mitgelieferten Stromkabels zu modifizieren, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt.
- *Wenden Sie sich vor dem Einbau dieses Receivers an Ihre Auto-Fachwerkstatt.*

Возможно, потребуется изменить схему соединений для прилагаемого шнура питания, как показано на рисунке.
- Перед установкой приемника обратитесь к авторизованному агенту по продажам автомобильных систем.


Original wiring / Original verdrahtung / Исходная схема соединений
Y
R
ISO connector
ISO-Steckverbinder
Разъем ISO
Modified wiring 1 / Modifizierte Verdrahtung 1 / Преобразованная схема соединений 1
Use modified wiring 2 if the unit does not turn on.
Verwenden Sie die modifizierte Verdrahtung 2 wenn der Receiver nicht einschaltet.
Если приемник не включается, используйте преобразованную схему соединений 2.
Modified wiring 2 / Modifizierte Verdrahtung 2 / Преобразованная схема соединений 2

Y: Yellow / *Gelb* / Желтый

R: Red / *Rot* / Красный

B Connections without using the ISO connector / Anschlüsse ohne Verwendung der ISO-Steckverbinder / Подключение без использования разъемов ISO

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit. The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

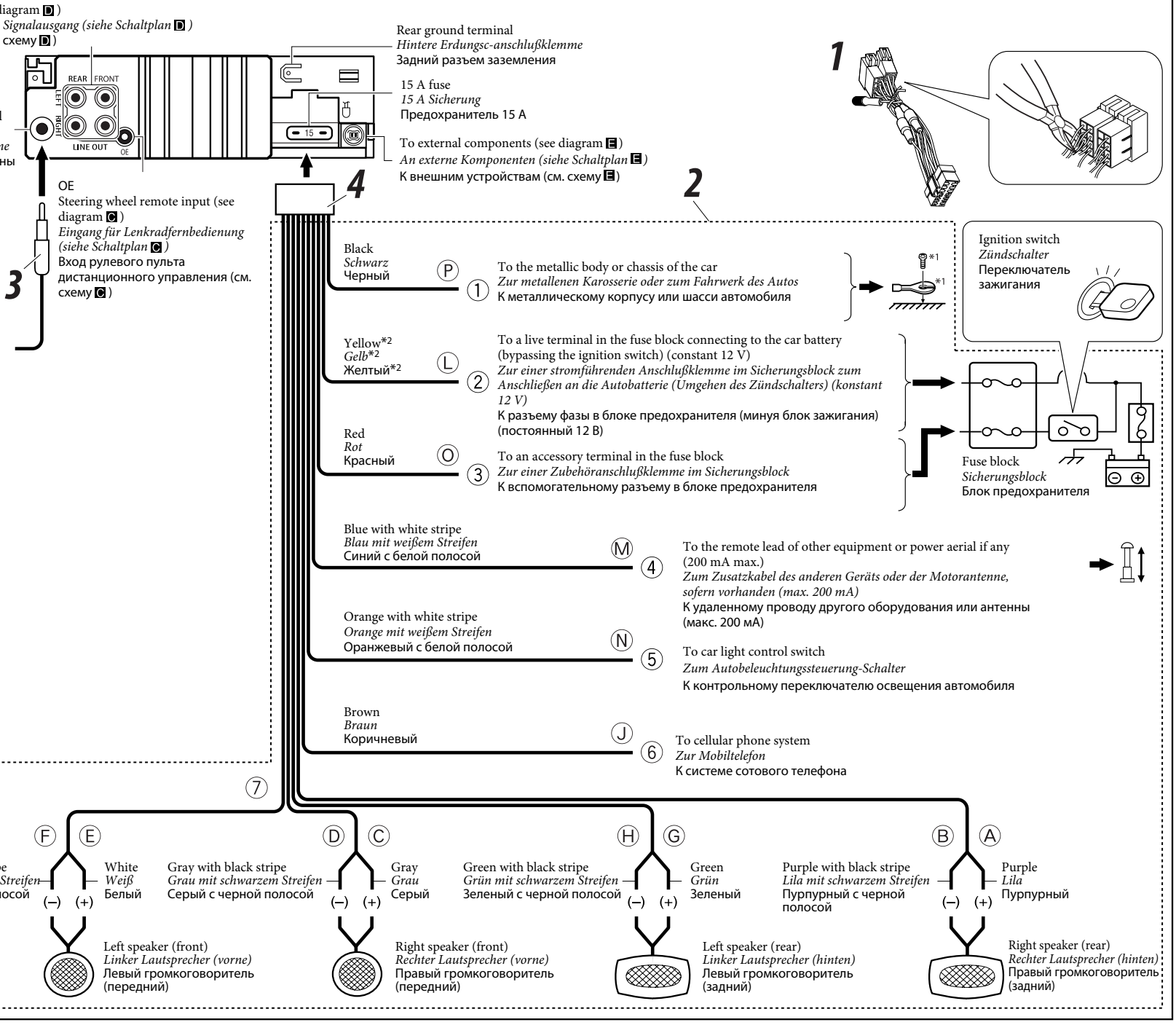
1. Cut the ISO connector.
2. Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
3. Connect the aerial cord.
4. Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

Vor dem Anschließen: *Die Verdrahtung im Fahrzeug sorgfältig überprüfen. Falsche Anschlüsse können ernsthafte Schäden am Gerät hervorrufen. Die Leiter des Stromkabels und die Leiter des Anschlusses im Fahrzeug können sich farblich unterscheiden.*

1. *Schneiden Sie den ISO-Steckverbinder auf.*
2. *Die farbigen Adern des Stromkabels in der Reihenfolge anschließen, wie in der Abbildung unten gezeigt.*
3. *Das Antennenkabel anschließen.*
4. *Die Kabelbäume am Gerät anschließen.*

Перед началом подключений: Тщательно проверьте проводку в автомобиле. Неправильное подключение может привести к серьезному повреждению устройства. Жилы силового кабеля и жилы соединителя от кузова автомобиля могут быть разного цвета.

1. Обрежьте разъем ISO.
2. Подсоедините цветные провода шнура питания в указанном ниже порядке.
3. Подключите кабель антенны.
4. В последнюю очередь подключите электропроводку к устройству.



*1 Not supplied for this unit.
*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise the power cannot be turned on.

*1 Wird nicht mit Gerät mitgeliefert.
*2 Vor der Überprüfung der Funktionsfähigkeit des Geräts vor dem Einbau, muß diese Leitung angeschlossen werden, da sonst die Stromversorgung nicht eingeschaltet werden kann.

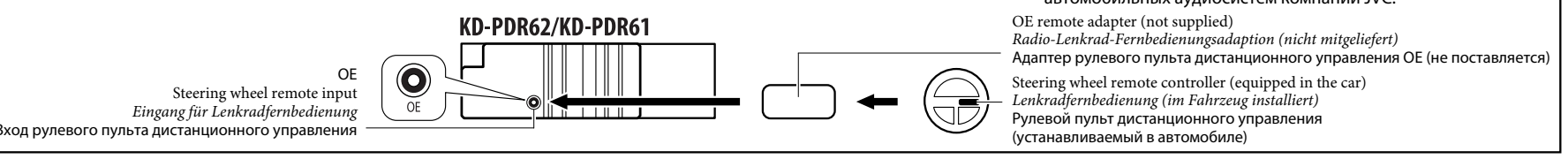
*1 Не входит в комплект поставки.
*2 Перед проверкой работы устройства подключите этот провод, иначе питание не включится.

C Connecting to the steering wheel remote controller / Anschluß an die Lenkradfernbedienung / Подключение к рулевому пульту дистанционного управления

If your car is equipped with the steering wheel remote controller, you can operate this unit using the controller. To do it, a JVC's OE remote adapter (not supplied) which matches with your car is required. Consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer for details.

Wenn Ihr Fahrzeug mit einer Lenkradferndienung ausgestattet ist, können Sie damit diesen Receiver steuern. Hierfür ist ein für Ihr Fahrzeug passender Radio-Lenkrad-Fernbedienungsadaption von JVC (nicht mitgeliefert) erforderlich. Für weitere Einzelheiten wenden Sie sich an Ihren JVC Autoradiohändler.

Если автомобиль оборудован рулевым пультом дистанционного управления, его можно использовать для управления данным устройством. Для этого необходим адаптер рулевого пульта дистанционного управления JVC OE (не поставляется), подходящий для Вашего автомобиля. За более подробной информацией обратитесь к поставщику автомобильных аудиосистем компании JVC.

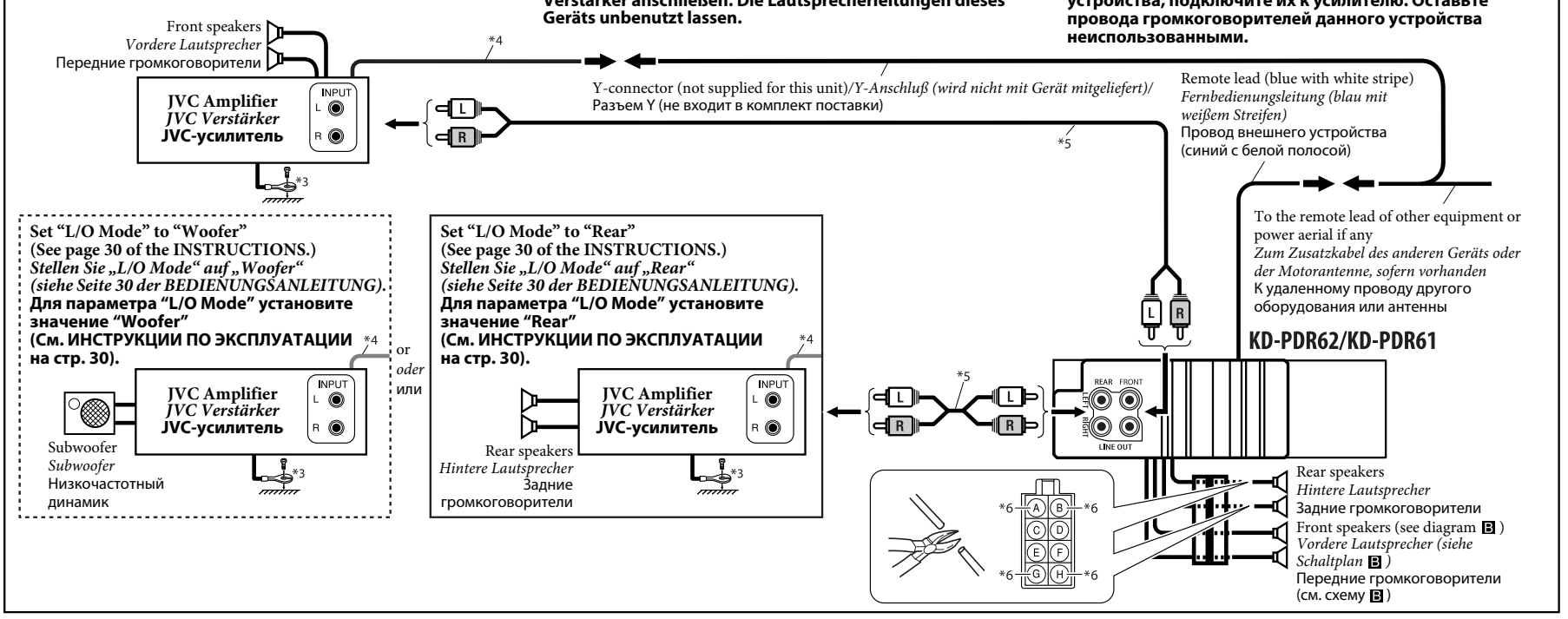

KD-PDR62/KD-PDR61
OE
Steering wheel remote input
Eingang für Lenkradfernbedienung
Вход рулевого пульта дистанционного управления
OE
OE remote adapter (not supplied)
Radio-Lenkrad-Fernbedienungsadaption (nicht mitgeliefert)
Адаптер рулевого пульта дистанционного управления OE (не поставляется)
Steering wheel remote controller (equipped in the car)
Lenkradfernbedienung (im Fahrzeug installiert)
Рулевой пульт дистанционного управления (устанавливаемый в автомобиле)

D Connecting the external amplifiers and/or subwoofer / Anschließen der externen Verstärker und/oder Subwoofer / Подключение внешних усилителей и/или низкочастотного динамика

You can connect amplifiers to upgrade your car stereo system.
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**

Sie können Verstärker anschließen, um Ihre Autostereoanlage zu erweitern.
- *Schließen Sie das Fernbedienungskabel (blau mit weißem Streifen) an das Fernbedienungskabel des anderen Geräts an, so daß es über dieses Gerät gesteuert werden kann.*
- **Die Lautsprecher von diesem Gerät abtrennen und am Verstärker anschließen. Die Lautsprecherleitungen dieses Geräts unbenutzt lassen.**

Можно подключить усилители для обновления автомобильной стереосистемы.
- Подсоедините провод внешнего устройства (синий с белой полосой) к проводу внешнего устройства другого оборудования так, чтобы им можно было управлять с этого устройства.
- **Отсоедините громкоговорители от данного устройства, подключите их к усилителю. Оставьте провода громкоговорителей данного устройства неиспользованными.**



E Connecting the external components / Anschließen der externen Komponenten / Подключение внешних устройств

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION :
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.
JVC DAB tuner	KT-DB1000

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.
- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

When connecting more than one component (maximum: three), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

Beim Anschließen der externen Komponenten siehe auch für die Komponenten und den Adapter mitgelieferte Anleitungen.

ACHTUNG :
Vor dem Anschließen der externen Komponenten sicherstellen, dass das Gerät ausgeschaltet ist.

Sie können die folgenden JVC-Komponenten an die CD-Wechslerbuchse anschließen.

JVC-Komponente	Modellname
CD-Wechsler (CD-CH)	*CH-X1500 usw.*
DAB-Tuner von JVC	*KT-DB1000*

Sie können auch die folgenden externen Komponenten über die verschiedenen JVC-Adapter anschließen.
- *Es kann erforderlich sein, Verbindungskabel getrennt zu kaufen.*

Komponente	Adapter	Modellname
Bluetooth-Gerät	*Bluetooth-Adapter*	*KS-BTA200*
iPod	*Schnittstellenadapter für iPod*	*KS-PD100*
Tragbarer Audio-Player mit Line-Ausgangsbuchsen	*Line-Eingangsadapter*	*KS-U57*
Tragbarer Audio-Player mit 3,5-mm-Stereo-Minibuchse	*AUX-Eingangsadapter*	*KS-U58*

Beim Anschließen von mehr als einer Komponente (Maximum: drei) wird empfohlen, dass Sie die Komponenten in Serie anschließen, wie unten beschrieben.

При подключении внешних устройств см. также руководства, поставляемые для устройств и адаптера.

ПРЕДОСТЕРЕЖЕНИЕ :
Перед подключением внешних компонентов убедитесь в том, что устройство выключено.

К разъему устройства автоматической смены компакт-дисков можно подключать указанные ниже устройства JVC.

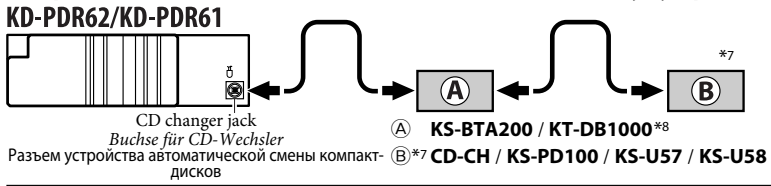
Устройство JVC	Название модели
Устройство автоматической смены компакт-дисков (CD-CH)	CH-X1500 и т. д.
Тюнер DAB JVC	KT-DB1000

Указанные ниже устройства можно также подключать с помощью различных адаптеров JVC.
- Кабели подключения могут быть приобретены отдельно.

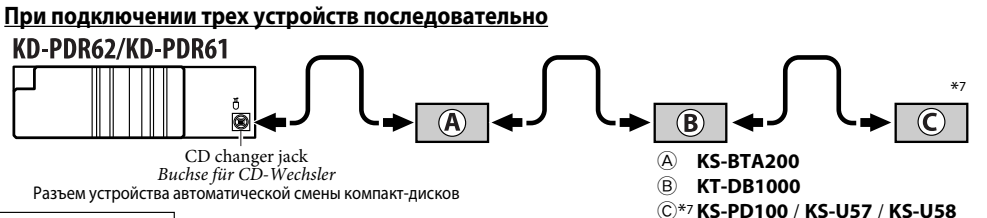
Компонентный	Адаптер	Название модели
Устройство Bluetooth	Адаптер Bluetooth	KS-BTA200
iPod	Интерфейсный адаптер для проигрывателя iPod	KS-PD100
Портативный аудиопроигрыватель с разъемами линейного выхода	Адаптер линейного входа	KS-U57
Портативный аудиопроигрыватель со стерео мини-разъемом 3,5 мм	Адаптер входа AUX	KS-U58

При подключении нескольких устройств (максимум: трех) рекомендуется подключить устройства последовательно, как описано ниже.

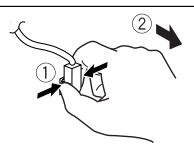
When connecting two components in series / Beim Anschließen von zwei Komponenten in Serie / Последовательное подключение двух устройств



When connecting three components in series / Beim Anschließen von drei Komponenten in Serie / При подключении трех устройств последовательно



To disconnect the connector / *Zum Abtrennen des Steckers* / Отключение разъема



Hold the connector tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
Halten Sie den Steckverbinder fest (①) und ziehen Sie ihn heraus (②).
Крепко удерживая разъем (①), извлеките его (②).

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
iPod ist ein Warenzeichen von Apple Inc., eingetragen in den USA und anderen Ländern.
iPod является торговой маркой Apple Inc., зарегистрированной в США и других странах.

*3 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.
*4 Remote lead
*5 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)
*6 Cut the rear speaker leads of the car's ISO connector and connect them to the amplifier.
*7 *To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 30 of the INSTRUCTIONS).*
*8 *If KS-BTA200 is available, connect it to Ⓐ and connect KT-DB1000 to position Ⓑ.*

*3 *Verbinden Sie den Erdungsleiter mit der Karosserie oder dem Rahmen des Fahrzeugs. Die Kontaktstelle darf nicht lackiert sein (sollte die Kontaktstelle lackiert sein, entfernen Sie den Lack der Kontaktstelle, bevor Sie den Leiter befestigen). Wenn der Erdungsleiter nicht ordnungsgemäß angeschlossen wird, kann dieses Gerät beschädigt werden.*
*4 *Fernbedienungsleitung*
*5 *Einzelleitung (wird nicht mit Gerät mitgeliefert)*
*6 *Schneiden Sie die hinteren Lautsprecherkabel des ISO-Steckverbinders des Fahrzeugs ab, und schließen diese an den Verstärker an.*
*7 *Zur Verwendung dieser Komponenten stellen Sie die externe Eingangseinstellung richtig ein (siehe Seite 30 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG).*
*8 *Falls KS-BTA200 zur Verfügung steht, an Position Ⓐ anschließen und KT-DB1000 an Position Ⓑ anschließen.*

*3 Плотно прикрепите заземляющий провод к металлическому кузову или шасси автомобиля—в месте, не покрытом краской (если оно покрыто краской, удалите краску перед тем, как прикреплять провод). Невыполнение этого требования может привести к повреждению данного устройства.
*4 Провод внешнего устройства
*5 Кабель сигнала (не входит в комплект поставки)
*6 Отрежьте провода задних громкоговорителей разъема ISO и подсоедините их к усилителю.
*7 Чтобы использовать данные устройства, необходима правильная настройка внешнего входа (см. ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ на стр. 30).
*8 Если устройство KS-BTA200 доступно, подключите его к Ⓐ, а устройство KT-DB1000 — к Ⓑ